

State of California

Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties

2025 Edition



Malia M. Cohen

California State Controller's Office

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties

2025 Edition

Published by:

Local Government Policy Unit

California State Controller's Office

Local Government Programs and Services Division

*Chapters in keeping with GASB pronouncements
in effect for fiscal years beginning June 15, 2025*

*Appendices providing preliminary guidance on new GASB pronouncements
in effect for fiscal years beginning June 15, 2025, and thereafter, as applicable*

Publication date December 22, 2025

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FOREWORD

California Government Code section 30200 requires the State Controller to prescribe uniform accounting procedures for counties. Pursuant to this code section, the *Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties* (ASP) manual was first issued in 1961.

The manual provides uniform accounting and reporting procedures that conform to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) as prescribed by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB). Guidance for specific account structure (e.g., account numbers, names, etc.) is left to the discretion of the individual local government as long as the statutory reporting requirements (e.g., Financial Transactions Reports, Apportionments, etc.) of the State Controller's Office (SCO) and the requirements within this manual are sufficiently met and satisfied.

SCO is the legal authority for prescribing uniform accounting and reporting procedures for all local agencies, with the exception of cities, counties, school districts, and those local agencies that follow a system prescribed by the Public Utilities Commission of the State of California or the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. Local agencies will be referred to as either a local government or a local government entity throughout the manual.

While the guidance and examples found in this manual may correlate with SCO Financial Transaction Reporting (FTR) instructions, this manual is not intended to serve as a guide for FTR forms and is not all-inclusive. For detailed FTR guidance, users should refer to the SCO's Local Government Reporting Forms and Instructions, which can be accessed using the following link:

https://www.sco.ca.gov/ard_local_reporting_forms.html

This edition of the manual has been updated to be consistent with GASB Codification as of February 2025. At that time, GASB Codification included all GASB Statements up to and including GASB Statement No. 102, *Certain Risk Disclosures*. Although not incorporated into Codification as of June 2025, the provisions of GASB Statement No. 103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements* and GASB Statement No. 104, *Disclosure of Certain Capital Assets*, have been incorporated into the applicable chapters of this manual.

The provisions of GASB pronouncements (if any) that have been released, but whose guidance will not be effective for the upcoming fiscal year (2025 – 26) are presented in Appendix A, *Upcoming Changes*, as applicable. This is to assist local government entities in preparing for future changes. Provisions from additional materials published after GASB Statement No. 104 will be incorporated into future editions of the manual. The current effective dates of GASB pronouncements are available at <https://www.gasb.org/>.

While this manual provides guidance on accounting and reporting procedures, it also contains instances in which legal provisions are cited for reference purposes only. It is up to the local government entity to determine the applicability of each law for its individual reports. Refer to Chapter 3.05, *Conflicts between Legal Provisions and GAAP*, for guidance concerning this topic.

FOREWORD

The manual provides guidance on uniform charts of accounts, fund structures, functions, activities, and specific accounting procedures for specialized fields. The intent of the manual is to:

- ensure conformance to generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP);
- promote transparency and consistency in financial reporting; and
- facilitate comparison and analysis of financial reports on a statewide basis by minimizing differences between local governments' philosophies, methods, and terminologies.

The manual serves as a guide to aid local governments in the development of accounting and financial systems, provide continuity and consistency with State reporting requirements, answer questions on authority and procedures, provide accounting guidance to meet GAAP reporting and auditing requirements, and assist in accounting evaluations.

The task of revising and/or updating the ASP manual is a cooperative effort between SCO, the Advisory Committee on County Accounting Procedures, and the State Association of County Auditors Accounting Standards and Procedures Committee. The result of this collaborative effort is a manual that provides local government entities with current information that is consistent with GAAP.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD	iii
CONTENTS	v
INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL GOVERNING STANDARDS.....	vii
Chapter 1: Introduction to County Government	1
Chapter 2: Governing Standards and Reporting.....	5
ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES	15
Chapter 3: Governmental Accounting Principles	17
Chapter 4: Basis of Accounting	29
Chapter 5: Fund Accounting	35
Chapter 6: Budgetary Accounting	65
Chapter 7: Classification and Terminology	193
Chapter 8: The Reporting Entity	194
Chapter 9: Reporting Capital Assets.....	203
Chapter 10: Reporting Liabilities.....	233
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	245
Chapter 11: Financial Reports	247
Chapter 12: Cash Flows Statements	285
Chapter 13: Component Unit Presentation and Disclosure	301
SPECIFIC ACCOUNTING ITEMS	307
Chapter 14: Contracts and Agreements	309
Chapter 15: PPPs and APAs	325
Chapter 16: Investments and Lending	361
Chapter 17: Demand Bonds and Debt Obligations	369
Chapter 18: Taxes	383
Chapter 19: Sales, Pledges, and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues	437
Chapter 20: Special Assessment Accounting	445
Chapter 21: Risk Management	459
Chapter 22: Retirement Systems.....	477
Chapter 23: Deferred Compensation Plans	535
Chapter 24: Compensated Absences	543
Chapter 25: Municipal Solid Waste Landfill Closure and Postclosure Care Costs.....	553

CONTENTS

Chapter 26: Leases 559

Chapter 27: Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements 581

APPENDICES 601

Appendix A: Upcoming Changes 603

Appendix B: Glossary 607

Appendix C: Resources 731

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting.....739

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting 781

Appendix F: Record Retention.....913

Acknowledgements.....935

INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL GOVERNING STANDARDS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 1: Introduction to County Government

Chapter Contents

Introduction 3

Types of Counties.....3

1.01 General Law Counties 3

1.02 Charter Counties.....3

County Authority 4

1.03 County Powers 4

1.04 Board of Supervisors 4

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 1: Introduction to County Government

Introduction

According to section 1 of Article XI of the California State Constitution, the State is divided into counties which are legal subdivisions of the State. The State of California is comprised of 58 counties. The counties are generally responsible for elections, property tax collection, and the maintenance of public records (e.g., deeds, etc.). County governments may also provide other services such as property assessment, building inspections, public health, social services, fire protection, and animal control. Refer to additional provisions of Article XI of the California State Constitution and Government Code sections 23000 – 33205, et al., for more information concerning county responsibilities.

Types of Counties

The California Constitution recognizes two types of counties: general law counties and charter counties. California counties are general law counties by default, but may be chartered according to the provisions in Article XI, Section 3, of the California State Constitution. According to the California State Association of Counties, there are 15 counties governed by a charter and 43 general law counties. For more information, refer to the California State Association of Counties website at <https://www.counties.org>.

1.01 General Law Counties

General law counties must adhere to the general laws approved by the California State Legislature and the governor. These State statutes dictate the number, appointment, duties, and election procedures for county officials. Over time, the California State Legislature has granted general law counties more structural autonomy, making the adoption of a county charter less attractive and/or advantageous.

1.02 Charter Counties

Charter counties have a limited degree of authority that may provide for, among other things, the:

- election, compensation, terms, removal and salary of the governing board;
- election or appointment, compensation, terms and removal of all county officers (exceptions apply);
- powers and duties of all officers; and
- consolidation and segregation of county offices.

A charter does not give county officials extra authority over local regulations, revenue-raising abilities, budgetary decisions, or intergovernmental relations. It should also be noted that charter counties cannot legislate on matters that are of statewide concern. When a matter is deemed to be of statewide concern, the states' authority supersedes that of the charter county.

A county may initiate proceedings to enact or revise a charter by ordinance adopted by a majority vote of the members of the governing body or it can be initiated by a petition of qualified electors. Either the elected charter commission, which is required by the ordinance, or the governing body may prepare and propose the charter or charter revision.

The proposal is then submitted by the governing body for public vote at either a general or special election. The voter-ratified charter does not take effect until accepted and filed by the Secretary of State.

County Authority

1.03 County Powers

Article XI of the California State Constitution authorizes a county to make and enforce local ordinances that do not conflict with general laws. Among other authorities, a county has the power to sue and be sued, purchase and hold land, manage or dispose of its properties, and levy and collect taxes authorized by law.

Counties must follow State laws that require open meetings, due process, and other procedural requirements, or their actions could be invalidated. However, where State law does not specifically prescribe a method for how a task must be completed, the county may adopt reasonably suitable procedures.

Many additional powers have been granted to counties by the State Legislature as found in Government Code sections 23000 – 33205, et al. The powers of a county can be exercised only by their board of supervisors or through officers acting under the authority of the Board or other authority that has been conferred by law.

1.04 Board of Supervisors

Under the provisions of Government Code section 25000, each county is required to have a board of supervisors consisting of five board members. This statute is applicable to both general law and charter counties, except where the charter provides otherwise; for instance, the City and County of San Francisco has 11 board members.

An official act of the board of supervisors can be performed only in a regularly or specially convened meeting. The individual members have no power to act independently for the county merely because they are members of the board of supervisors. Meetings of the board of supervisors are subject to the restrictions and provisions of the Ralph M. Brown Act (Gov. Code, §54950 et seq.).

With limited exceptions, the Ralph M. Brown Act requires that all board of supervisors meetings are open to the public. Furthermore, a record of all board of supervisors decisions and the proceedings of all regular and special meetings must be kept. The county clerk, whose duty it is to record all proceedings of the board of supervisors, is the ex officio clerk of the board, unless the board appoints its own separate clerk.

Chapter 2: Governing Standards and Reporting

Chapter Contents

Introduction 7

Statutorily Required Reporting.....7

2.01 Local Government Financial Reporting.....7

2.02 Legal Disclosures 8

2.03 Reporting to California State Agencies 8

2.04 Reporting between Local Governments.....9

2.05 LAFCo Reporting Requirements.....9

2.06 Noncomplying Local Governments 9

2.07 Enforcement 10

2.08 Inactive Special Districts.....10

2.09 Minimum Requirements for Special Districts 11

2.10 Other Uniform Systems of Accounts.....11

2.11 Internal Controls 12

2.12 Documentation and Retention 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 2: Governing Standards and Reporting

Introduction

Through the passage of principal acts and special acts, as amended by California legislation, the following statements are applicable to local governments:

- Financial reporting is an essential requirement by law;
- Local governments exist to serve a public purpose and must be held to certain minimum standards of accountability to keep the public, general-purpose local governments, and California State agencies informed of their statuses and activities;
- A function of the reporting requirements is to improve communication and coordination among California State agencies, general-purpose local governments, counties, and special districts; and
- When local governments fail to comply with minimum disclosure requirements, the State of California has the authority to take action to assist the noncomplying local governments to come into compliance. If necessary, legal action may be required to enforce compliance (e.g., refer to Gov. Code, §12464).

Statutorily Required Reporting

2.01 Local Government Financial Reporting

Local government financial reporting helps to provide for the timely, accurate, uniform, and cost-effective accumulation of financial and other information. Counties, special districts, municipalities, and California State agencies have vital roles and responsibilities in this system. Members of the California State Legislature and other officials rely on this information to:

- enhance citizen participation in local government;
- improve the financial condition of local governments;
- provide essential government services in an efficient and effective manner; and
- improve decision-making on the part of the California State Legislature, California State agencies, and local government officials on matters relating to local government.

Local governments are primarily accountable to the voters who elect their governing bodies and the citizenry who use their services. Additionally, the State of California provides critical oversight to special district operations.

Pursuant to Government Code section 53891, local governments are required to submit annual financial reports to the State Controller consistent with generally accepted accounting principles. Local governments must also follow California State laws pertaining to public meetings, bonded debt, record keeping, and elections.

While local governments may maintain accounts best suited to their operations, they should maintain a system that is consistent with the guidelines in this manual. Local governments are also advised to keep records that readily correlate to the requirements needed to prepare the various State Controller's Office (SCO) required financial reports.

2.02 Legal Disclosures

Listed below are just a few of the statutes that are applicable to all local governments:

- The *Ralph M. Brown Act* — most commonly referred to as The Brown Act — mandates that all meetings of the legislative body of a local government (such as the board of directors/supervisors) shall be open and public, and any member of the public is permitted to attend (refer to Gov. Code, §54950 et seq.).
- The *California Public Records Act* gives the public the right to access public information in the possession of public agencies, subject to privacy laws (refer to Gov. Code, §7920 et seq.).
- The *Political Reform Act of 1974* formed the California Fair Political Practices Commission, which requires disclosure of receipts and expenditures (such as gifts, money, or services) by public officials and employees and the filing of reports or statements. The annual filing of Statements of Economic Interest is one such statement to ensure government serves the needs of citizens equally without regard to wealth (refer to Gov. Code, §81000 et seq.).

2.03 Reporting to California State Agencies

California State agencies are responsible for reviewing, interpreting, and summarizing financial information for the public, the California State Legislature, and other officials. Therefore, each local government must submit the following reports to California State agencies, as applicable:

- Annual Financial Audit Report
- Financial Transactions Reports
- Bond Reports
- Retirement System Reports
- Government Compensation in California Report

The California State Controller's Office: Pursuant to Government Code section 12463, every local government in California must report its financial information, as well as the salary and compensation of all staff and board members, to the State Controller every year. The financial information is then published on the State Controller's website for public use.

The County Auditor-Controller's Office: California State law (Gov. Code, §26909) requires special districts to submit to regular audits that are performed by a county auditor or a certified public accountant. These audits are public documents and must be filed with the State Controller's Office and the County Auditor-Controller.

The California State Treasurer's Office: Pursuant to Government Code section 53410 et. seq., every local government in California must report its bond sales, and must include a statement indicating the specific purposes of the bond and an annual report to the Public Finance Division of the California State Treasurer.

2.04 Reporting between Local Governments

Local governments need certain information to coordinate activities. Therefore, each special district must submit the following to each county government in which it is located:

- Public facilities report;
- Designation of registered office and agent; and
- Regular public meeting schedule.

2.05 LAFCo Reporting Requirements

The Local Agency Formation Commission (LAFCo) is responsible for conducting mandatory reviews to ensure that special districts do not overstep their boundaries by providing services without prior approval, and for recommending the dissolution of any special district that no longer serves its intended purpose.

Special district information must properly classify each district and provide required information to certain California State agencies, all general-purpose local governments, and LAFCo. Each special district must file the following information:

- Creation document (including amendments, if any);
- A written statement referencing the basis for its independent or dependent status (from newly formed special districts); and
- Boundary map (including amendments, if any).

In addition, Government Code section 26909 requires special districts to submit their audited financial statements to the LAFCo of the county in which the special district is located. If the special district is located in two or more counties, then the audited financial statement must be provided to each LAFCo within each county in which the special district is located.

2.06 Noncomplying Local Governments

A local government that fails, or refuses, to make and file its report(s) within 20 days after receipt of a written notice of the failure from the State Controller's Office, shall receive a penalty in accordance with Government Code section 53895.

When the Attorney General receives notice that a local government has failed to comply with statutorily required reporting, the State Controller's Office will provide technical assistance and, if necessary, initiate enforcement. Upon a satisfactory showing of good cause, the State Controller's Office may waive the penalties for late filing.

In the case of a local government that did not file its required reports or information on time, the State Controller's Office will send a certified letter that summarizes the requirements. The purpose of the letter is to encourage local governments to take steps to prevent noncompliance from reoccurring.

In the case of a special district, the State Controller's Office will send a certified letter to the special district's registered agent and a copy of the letter to the chair of the governing body of the local government. The letter will include the following:

- description of the required report;
- statutory submission deadlines;
- contact telephone number for technical assistance;
- address where the report must be filed; and
- consequences of failing to comply with the requirements.

2.07 Enforcement

The State Controller's Office (SCO) will notify the Attorney General of any local government that failed or refused to file the required reports within 20 days after receiving written notice of the failure from SCO. At the request of SCO, the Attorney General will impose one of the following penalties pursuant to Government Code section 53895 et al.:

- One thousand dollars (\$1,000), when the local government's total prior year revenue is less than one hundred thousand dollars (\$100,000), as reported in the Controller's annual financial reports;
- Two thousand five hundred dollars (\$2,500), when the local government's total prior year revenue is at least one hundred thousand dollars (\$100,000) but less than two hundred fifty thousand dollars (\$250,000), as reported in the Controller's annual financial reports; or
- Five thousand dollars (\$5,000), when the local government's total prior year revenue is at least two hundred fifty thousand dollars (\$250,000), as reported in the Controller's annual financial reports.

Upon a satisfactory showing of good cause, the State Controller's Office may waive the penalties for late filing.

2.08 Inactive Special Districts

According to Government Code section 56042, a special district is deemed to be inactive if it meets all of the following criteria:

- The special district meets the requirements as defined in Government Code section 56036;
- The special district has had no financial transactions in the previous fiscal year;
- The special district has no assets and liabilities; and
- The special district has no outstanding debts, judgments, litigation, contracts, liens or claims.

Pursuant to Government Code section 56879.5, if a special district was formed by special legislation that is required by its enabling statute to obtain funding within a specified period of time or be dissolved, the special district shall not be regarded as an inactive special district during that specified period of time. For more information on inactive special districts, refer to Government Code section 56879.

2.09 Minimum Requirements for Special Districts

Special districts should maintain a carefully kept, readable checkbook that has been reconciled to the bank statements. The following checkbook tasks should be performed:

- All money coming into the special district should be deposited into the special district bank account and recorded in the accounting records.
- Payments should not be made using cash on hand unless the cash is part of a properly established petty cash fund.
- A running checkbook balance should be kept and all entries made in the checkbook should be immediate so nothing is forgotten, clearly documented, and well explained (e.g., it is not necessary to write Deposit because that is obvious from the column it is placed in, but it is necessary to explain where it came from and what it was for).
- The checkbook should be reconciled monthly to the bank statement.

The legislative body of the special district may adopt a resolution for the destruction or disposition of its categorized records or adopt and comply with a record retention schedule that complies with guidelines provided by the California Secretary of State (refer to section 2.12, *Documentation and Retention* for more information).

For special districts in which the checkbook may be the official financial record, the checkbook should be kept in a secure location.

2.10 Other Uniform Systems of Accounts

In the preparation of financial statements, local governments must determine if other guidance (accounting or statutory) supersedes the guidance found in this manual. Local governments should maintain their accounting systems on a legal compliance basis, but they should also maintain sufficient additional reports to facilitate reporting according to the GAAP guidelines.

The discussion provided in this chapter section is for guidance only and contains general recommendations. This chapter section is not an all-inclusive list of other accounting or statutory provisions that may be applicable to local governments.

Public Utility Districts

Pursuant to Government Code section 53891(b), local governments that substantially follow a system of accounting prescribed by the California Public Utilities Commission (CPUC) or the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC) are not required to follow the accounting procedures prescribed in this manual.

According to Public Utilities Code section 216(a), a public utility:

Includes every common carrier, toll bridge corporation, pipeline corporation, gas corporation, electrical corporation, telephone corporation, telegraph corporation, water corporation, sewer system corporation and heat corporation, where the service is performed for, or the commodity is delivered to, the public or any portion thereof.

To review accounting guidance prescribed by the CPUC, refer to their website at:

<https://www.cpuc.ca.gov/>

To review accounting guidance prescribed by the FERC, refer to their website at:

<https://www.ferc.gov>.

Transit Districts

Local governments may also refer to the Federal Transit Administration's (FTA) — Uniform Systems of Accounts publication on the FTA website at <https://www.transit.dot.gov>, for supplemental guidance on their accounting procedures.

Hospital Districts

California Health and Safety Code section 128675, et seq., provides legal guidance for handling health data and requires local governments that operate health facilities to follow the uniform system of accounting and reporting prescribed by the California Department of Health Care Access and Information (HCAI).

Refer to the HCAI website, at <https://hcai.ca.gov>, to view the *Accounting and Reporting Manual for California Hospitals*.

Municipal Utility District Act California Law

Pursuant to Public Utilities Code section 11881 et seq., water and electric distribution districts formed under the California Municipal Utility District Act may follow the appropriate Uniform System of Accounts prescribed by the California Public Utilities Commission (CPUC). For more information refer to the CPUC website at <https://www.cpuc.ca.gov/>.

2.11 Internal Controls

All accounting systems should contain appropriate internal controls for both the system function and all elements of accounting. Development of either manual or automated financial systems should provide for a methodology for review by qualified auditing personnel to verify the adequacy of the accounting procedures, internal controls, and audit trails. Refer to the internal control guidelines for local agencies (governments) available on the SCO's website at https://sco.ca.gov/pubs_guides.html (scroll down to the Other section).

The systems covered should not only include financial accounting systems, but also non-accounting systems with financial accounting elements.

2.12 Documentation and Retention

All financial transactions and records are subject to audit and should be well documented to provide a complete audit trail. Expenditures, for example, should be adequately supported by purchase agreements (purchase orders, contracts, etc.), invoices, bills of lading, inventory records, or similar support.

The purchase agreement should be properly authorized and approved, verifying that it is supported by both budget requirements and legal authority for the expenditure. It should also identify an agreed-upon price and other expectations for a deliverable. The invoice should then match the amount on the purchase agreement before payment is made. Payment should also be supported with a bill of lading, showing the delivery was made and correctly charged, and the inventory receipt record should further support that the delivery was properly controlled on site.

Records should be maintained and disposed of as required by applicable laws and regulations, with internal controls and transparency in mind. According to Government Code section 12236, the Secretary of State (SOS) administers the Local Government Records Program, which provides the minimum guidelines for local government records maintenance and retention.

These guidelines can be found in the California State Archives section of the SOS website at <https://www.sos.ca.gov/archives> (click the link on the SOS page for Local Government Records Management). In addition, a guide on record retention pertaining to the auditor-controller and treasurer-tax collector offices (not intended to be authoritative or all-inclusive) can also be found in Appendix F. *Record Retention*.

Federal, State, and local agencies may have additional specific guidelines for documentation and retention (e.g., grants, etc.). It is the responsibility of each local government to ensure that they are in compliance with any applicable requirements. For example, records related to grants and federally funded programs may require retention for longer periods (e.g., per 2 CFR Part 200—Uniform Guidance).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 3: Governmental Accounting Principles

Chapter Contents

Introduction 19

Basic Governmental Accounting Principles 20

3.01 GAAP Hierarchy 20

3.02 Fundamental Principles 21

3.03 Use of Accounts.....21

3.04 Generally Accepted Accounting Principles 22

3.05 Conflicts between Legal Provisions and GAAP 22

3.06 Legal and Contractual Restrictions 22

3.07 The Accounting Cycle 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 3: Governmental Accounting Principles

Introduction

The guidelines in this manual are consistent with and in accordance to governmental Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), established as an arm of the Financial Accounting Foundation in April 1984, was created to promulgate standards of financial accounting and reporting on activities and transactions of governments and is the source of authoritative governmental GAAP for California local governments. Refer to Chapter 3.04, *Generally Accepted Accounting Principles* for specific information on this topic.

The standards established by GASB provide guidance in accounting and reporting for governmental operations. Government operations that are similar to business enterprises closely parallel commercial accounting and reporting.

The GASB provides governmental accounting and reporting standards through the issuance of GASB Pronouncements. These pronouncements require numerous changes to the manual. A complete listing of all GASB Pronouncements is located on the GASB website, which can be accessed at: <http://www.gasb.org>

Legal provisions sometimes conflict with GAAP; however, such conflicts do not require maintaining two accounting systems. The accounting system may be maintained on a legal compliance basis, but should include sufficient additional records to permit GAAP-based reporting.

A government accounting system should make it possible to both:

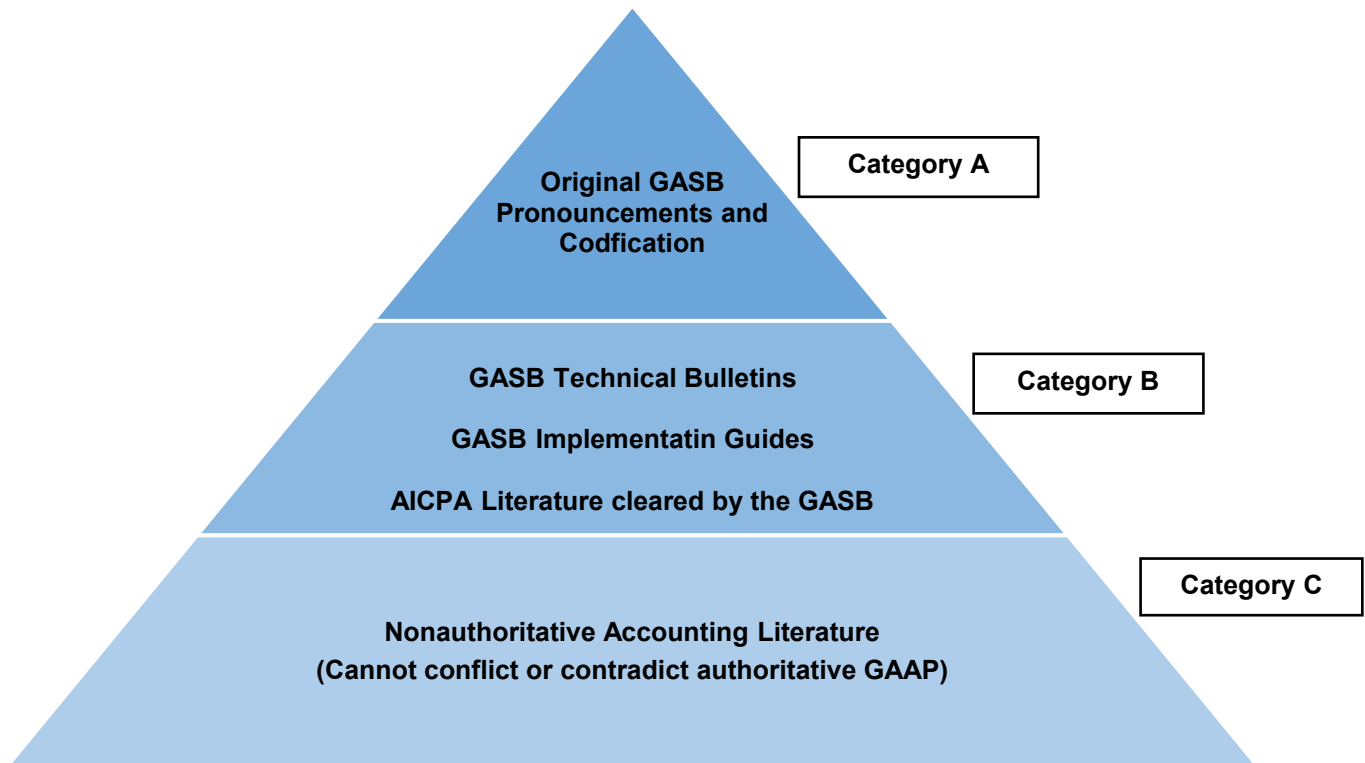
- A) present fairly and with full disclosure the funds and activities of the governmental unit in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles; and
- B) determine and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal and contractual provisions.

In California, there are few, if any, provisions of general statutory law that conflict with GAAP. However, if a conflict does exist, financial statements should still be prepared in conformance with GAAP. In situations where legal provisions conflict with GAAP, legal basis data is typically reflected in the accounts and in the budgetary statements, and are used as the starting point for deriving statements prepared in conformity with GAAP. Refer to Chapter 3.05, *Conflicts between Legal Provisions and GAAP*, for specific information on this topic.

Basic Governmental Accounting Principles

3.01 GAAP Hierarchy

The hierarchy levels of authoritative GAAP guidance are displayed in the following pyramid and table.



Legend Table — GAAP Hierarchy

Legend	Definition
Category A	Accounting literature officially established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB), including original GASB Pronouncements and Codification.
Category B	GASB Technical Bulletins, Implementation Guides, and American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) literature cleared by the GASB.
Category C	Nonauthoritative literature that does not conflict with or contradict authoritative GAAP listed in the above categories. This would include GASB literature that is outside of categories A and B.

3.02 Fundamental Principles

Below is a list of basic and fundamental principles of accounting and reporting that are applicable for local governments when choosing to apply fund-based accounting as integrated into the GASB Codification of Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards. These principles are covered in detail throughout the manual and include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Accounting and Reporting Capabilities
- Fund Types
- Fund Accounting Systems
- Number of Funds
- Reporting Capital Assets
- Valuation of Capital Assets
- Depreciation of Capital Assets
- Reporting Long-Term Liabilities
- Measurement Focus and Basis of Accounting
- Government-wide Financial Statements
- Fund Financial Statements
- Budgeting, Budgetary Control, and Budgetary Reporting
- Transfer, Revenue, and Expenditure Account Classification
- Common Terminology and Classification
- Interim and Annual Financial Reports

Financial statements and other reports should be prepared as needed to facilitate management control of financial operations, legislative oversight, and, where necessary or desired, for external reporting purposes.

3.03 Use of Accounts

There is no generic set of accounts that is applicable to all local governments. Organizations should structure accounts (accounting systems) according to their own internal reporting needs and requirements. Where appropriate, local governments may supplement the suggested classifications in this manual with additional account titles in order to meet the needs of their management and reporting requirements.

Additionally, local governments do not need to incorporate all of the accounts prescribed in this manual when designing their accounting systems. The numbering system used in this manual is for illustrative purposes only and each local government should devise its own account coding system consistent with its accounting needs.

A local government should keep in mind its individual purpose and the legislation that directs its functions when designing its chart of accounts. For example, a police district will have accounts related to public safety; a cemetery district would not use the same chart of accounts, as its primary function does not involve public protection.

3.04 Generally Accepted Accounting Principles

Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) are uniform minimum standards and guidelines for financial accounting and reporting. They provide a foundation for recording and reporting financial transactions. The resulting standardization of financial statements allow comparability and consistency between governmental entities across reporting periods, making them more reliable for end users.

The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Codification and original pronouncements, as amended, are the authoritative sources of U.S. GAAP. According to the Financial Accounting Foundation (FAF), “The GASB establishes accounting and financial reporting standards for U.S. state and local governments that follow GAAP.”

The FAF also states that “GAAP-based financial information enables rating agencies to compare governments, while helping investors obtain more comprehensive and reliable information on a government’s finances.”

3.05 Conflicts between Legal Provisions and GAAP

As previously stated, legal provisions sometimes conflict with GAAP. For example, the law may require that both operating and capital expenditures for a designated general governmental function be paid from and accounted for through the general fund, even though long-term borrowing is being used to finance the capital expenditures. A legal provision of this type violates the GAAP principle that capital outlays of this nature, which are being financed from general obligation bond proceeds, should be accounted for through a capital projects fund. When these types of conflicts occur, the basic financial statements should be prepared in conformity with GAAP.

Additional schedules and narrative explanations should be included in the Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) to identify and explain any differences between GAAP and the legal requirements. The accounting system may be maintained on a legal compliance basis if sufficient records are included to permit reporting in accordance with GAAP.

3.06 Legal and Contractual Restrictions

The entire pattern of governmental organizational structure, operations, accounting, auditing, and financial reporting is dictated by a combination of federal, state, and local laws and other legislative, administrative, and judicial determinations. A thorough working knowledge of the legal requirements to which a local government is subject is a prerequisite for understanding its operation and financial affairs.

3.07 The Accounting Cycle

Accounting fundamentals are part of the process for recording, classifying, and summarizing in a significant manner and in terms of money, transactions and events of the financial character of a local government. The recording and processing of accounting data follows the cycle indicated in the following diagram:



Uniformity

In order to ensure comparability from year to year and between governments, the systems and procedures prescribed in this manual provide uniformity and are applicable to all California local governments.

Materiality

An item may be considered material if the omission or misstatement of the item would affect the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the financial statements. For example, a common measure for determining whether a misstatement was material to the statement of activity (operations) is to determine whether the amount of the misstatement was more than an established percentage of the net increase or decrease in the net position.

Source Documents

Transactions are first evidenced by a source document, such as a deposit permit, purchase order, invoice, warrant, or journal voucher, along with any other supporting documentation. Source documents are the first record of a financial transaction; they serve to initiate the accounting cycle.

Journals

A journal (or register) is a book or form in which financial transactions are recorded. A single journal is usually limited to recording the transactions represented by a specific type of source document, such as a:

- check register records all checks;
- deposit register records all deposit; and
- general journal records all general journal entries.

Today, local governments can use accounting systems that have the ability to record multiple journal entries. In order to ensure completeness of the record and to assist in its audit, source documents should be either pre-numbered or numbered as prepared. It is also helpful if the source documents being journalized are recorded in numerical order. Some journals may also serve as a means of classification. For example, a check register may classify checks according to the fund or fund group against which they are drawn.

General Ledgers

A general ledger receives postings from the general journals, along with summarized totals from subsidiary ledgers. The general ledger summarizes all transactions of a given organization or operating unit for presentation in the financial statements. Funds in the general ledger are a subset of financial books and have their own assets, liabilities, revenue, expenses, and fund balances.

Subsidiary Ledgers

As the general ledger holds all the historical journal entries, some key general ledger accounts become so complex that a separate ledger, or subsidiary ledger, is needed to keep track of its transactions. A subsidiary ledger is any group of accounts, the sum of the balances of which is equal to the balance of the control account. Ledgers may be subsidiary to a general ledger control account or they may be subsidiary to an accounting in another subsidiary ledger.

For example, the general ledger for a local government entity, such as the Sacramento Municipal Utility District (SMUD), might include only one accounts receivable account for purposes of recording utility bills not paid, yet it may have thousands of customers. It would be necessary for SMUD to create a subsidiary ledger to hold each customer's account and include the grand total of that ledger in the general ledger.

Control Account	Subsidiary Ledger
Expenditures	Expenditure Ledger
Revenues	Revenue Ledger
Taxes Receivable — Current — Secured	Current Secured Tax Roll
Capital Assets	Capital Assets — Building and Capital Assets — Motor Vehicles

Trial Balance

A trial balance is a comparison of the debit balances in a general ledger, with a similar listing of the credit balances. If the two are equal, the accounts are said to be in balance. This process substantiates that both the debit and the credit effects of all recorded transactions have been posted to the general ledger. The term trial balance is also used to designate the act of totaling all balances in a subsidiary ledger and comparing the sum with the balance of the related control account.

Journal Entries

A journal entry is a logging of transactions into an account record keeping system. It is a concise method of expressing the accounting effect of a transaction. The journal entry may consist of several recordings, each of which is either a debit or credit. Account names and the amounts to be posted are shown to be either debits or credits by their relative position, rather than by a written designation. The total of the debits should equal the total of the credits or the general journal entry is said to be out of balance. If subsidiary accounts are involved, the total of their debit or credit postings should roll up to the related general ledger control account.

The standard journal entry format used in this manual is shown in the following examples:

Example 1—Sales Journal Entry:

December Sales

12/10 Johnson Sale, Lot	\$60,000
12/15 Singh Sale, Condominium	\$345,000
12/15 Singh Sales Credit, Condo 10% promo	<u>(\$34,500)</u>
12/31 Net Monthly Sales	\$370,500
12/31 Cash Receipts	\$370,500

Subsidiary Ledger — Johnson

Accounts Receivable	DR: \$60,000	
Sales		CR: \$60,000
(Record Sales of Lot — Johnson)		

Cash	DR: \$60,000	
Accounts Receivable		CR: \$60,000
(Record Cash Receipts—Johnson)		

Subsidiary Ledger — Singh

Accounts Receivable	DR: \$345,000	
Sales		CR: \$345,000
(Record Sales of Condominium — Singh)		

Cash	DR: \$310,500	
Discount Allowed (10% Promo)	DR: \$34,500	
Accounts Receivable		CR: \$345,000
(Record Cash Receipts — Singh)		

General Ledger

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Accounts Receivable	DR: \$405,000	
Sales		CR: \$405,500
(Record Sales of Lot and Condominium)		
Cash	DR: \$370,500	
Discount Allowed	DR: \$34,500	
Accounts Receivable		CR: \$405,000
(Record Sales of Lot and Condominium)		

Example 2 — Recording Property Tax Revenues:

The following entry shows that the general ledger Cash account is debited \$40,000, and the Revenues control account is credited \$40,000.

In the subsidiary revenue ledger, the accounts are:

- Revenues — Property Taxes — Prior Year — Secured; and
- Revenues — Property Taxes — Prior Year — Unsecured

These accounts are credited \$39,000 (Secured) and \$1,000 (Unsecured), respectively.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debits (DR)</u>	<u>Credits (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$40,000	
Revenues — Property Taxes — Prior Year — Secured		CR: \$39,000
Revenues — Property Taxes — Prior Year — Unsecured		CR: \$1,000
(Receipt of Property Tax Revenues)		

General Ledger

Cash	DR: \$40,000	
Revenues — Property Taxes		CR: \$40,000
(Receipt of Apportioned Taxes)		

Example 3 — Recording Cash Purchases of Office Supplies:

The following journal entry example shows that the general ledger account Office Supplies and Non-Capitalized Equipment account is debited \$470 and the Cash account is credited \$470. In the subsidiary ledger, the Office Supplies account is debited \$150, and the Surveyor's Minor Equipment account is debited \$320. In actual practice, the journal entry will probably be used in this form only in the general ledger.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debits (DR)</u>	<u>Credits (CR)</u>
Subsidiary Ledger		
Office Supplies	DR: \$150	
Surveyor — Minor Equipment	DR: \$320	
Cash		CR: \$470
(Purchases of Office Supplies and Surveyor Equipment)		

General Ledger

Office Supplies and Non Capitalized Equipment	DR: \$470	
Cash		CR: \$470
(Purchases by Treasurer and Surveyor)		

Electronic Methods

The formal journals and ledgers associated with manual processing are often unseen by the user in computer-posted records. Transactions are updated and stored in data tables in the background of the accounting system rather than physical books of original entry. Even though the journal transactions are performed electronically, the details of the accounting cycle remain unchanged.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 4: Basis of Accounting

Chapter Contents

Introduction 31

Accrual Basis and Measurement Focus 31

4.01 Modified Accrual Basis 31

4.02 Full Accrual Basis 32

4.03 Measurement Focus 32

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 4: Basis of Accounting

Introduction

Generally speaking, the basis of accounting has to do with when transactions should be recognized in financial statements (timing). The types are:

- modified accrual basis;
- full accrual basis; and
- cash basis.

Local governments entities use both the modified accrual basis of accounting (governmental funds) and the full accrual basis of accounting (proprietary and fiduciary funds). Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, revenues are recognized when they become available and measurable, and expenditures are recognized when liabilities are incurred and due in the measurement period.

In contrast, the full accrual basis of accounting recognizes revenues when they are earned, regardless of when they are received. Unlike the modified accrual basis, expenses are recorded at the time the liability is incurred, regardless of when it is due. Under the cash basis of accounting, transactions are recognized only upon the exchange of cash. Revenues are not recognized until cash is received and expenses are not recognized until they are paid.

In fund financial statements, governmental funds should be accounted for using the modified accrual basis. Proprietary and fiduciary funds should be accounted for using the full accrual basis. In government-wide financial statements, all fund types are reported on the full accrual basis. The following sections will discuss both the full accrual basis and the modified accrual basis in more detail.

Accrual Basis and Measurement Focus

4.01 Modified Accrual Basis

The modified accrual basis differs from the full accrual basis in that revenues are recognized when they become both measurable and available to finance expenditures of the current period.

The term available means collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period. The term measurable refers to the ability to reasonably, and with some certainty, compute the actual revenue or expenditure.

Expenditures are recognized when incurred, except:

- Inventories may be expenditures when either purchased or used; however, significant inventories should be reported.
- Principal and interest on long-term debt are usually recognized when due.
- Prepaid expenditures extending over more than one accounting period may be accounted for as expenditures when acquired instead of being allocated between accounting periods.

As previously stated, the modified basis of accrual recognizes revenues and other financial resources (e.g., bond issue proceeds) in the accounting period in which they become both measurable and available to finance expenditures of the fiscal period.

Revenues and other increases in governmental fund financial resources that usually can and should be recorded on the modified accrual basis include property taxes, regularly billed charges for inspection or other routinely provided services, most grants from other governments, interfund transfers, and other reasonably estimated transactions. Fines and forfeitures, golf and swimming fees, inspection charges, parking fees and parking meter receipts, and the vast multitude of miscellaneous revenues are best recognized when cash is received.

Property taxes or other imposed revenues may be collected in advance of the fiscal year to which they apply. Such prepayments of imposed nonexchange revenues should initially be recorded as a deferred inflow of resources and recognized as revenue in the period for which they are levied.

4.02 Full Accrual Basis

The full accrual basis of accounting is used for preparing non-governmental (proprietary and fiduciary) fund statements and the government-wide statements. Under the full accrual basis of accounting, most transactions are recorded when they occur, regardless of when cash is received or disbursed.

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
Cash flow should occur within a short enough period(s) to affect current spendable resources. Revenues should be both measurable and available, and expenditures are generally recognized when they are expected to draw upon current spendable resources.	Revenue/gain or expense/loss recognized when they affect economic resources, regardless of cash flow.

4.03 Measurement Focus

Economic Focus:

Operational accounting focuses on reporting economic activity, which includes both capital and financial resources. It recognizes economic transactions as events occur rather than when outflows of cash and other financial resources take place.

This focus is referred to as the economic resources measurement focus, which utilizes the full accrual basis of accounting. Operations are charged in the period when goods and services are used or consumed, referred to as the consumption method in accounting. The economic measurement focus provides for a more comparable and objective view of government costs.

Fiscal Focus:

Governmental accounting, on the other hand, focuses more on fiscal accountability, compliance, and budgetary controls. Operational accounting is incompatible with fiscal accountability and the reporting of existing funds and current expenditures is necessary for the management and control of limited budgets. In order to facilitate that control and public information, the receipt and uses of current resources are recognized. This focus is referred to as the current financial resources measurement focus, which utilizes the modified accrual basis of accounting.

Reporting:

Governmental fund revenues and expenditures should be recognized using the current financial resources measurement focus (modified accrual basis) in order to provide the appropriate indicators of fiscal responsibility regarding public moneys in the financial statements.

Non-governmental funds (proprietary and fiduciary funds) should be recognized using the economic resources measurement focus (full accrual basis) since these entities are self-supporting through operational activities and not public moneys.

The government as a whole is represented on an operational basis in the government-wide statements, using the economic resources measurement focus (full accrual basis). This provides overall comparability to both commercial and public operations worldwide.

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
Flow of current financial resources – <u>Modified Accrual</u>	Flow of economic resources – <u>Full Accrual</u>
Are there more or less resources that will be spent or received in the near future as a result of events and transactions of the current period?	Will the local government be better or worse off economically as a result of events and transactions of the period?
Increase in spendable resources – revenue or other financing sources	Events and transactions that improve the economic position – revenues or gains
Decrease in spendable resources expenditures and other financing uses	Events and transactions that diminish economic position – expenses or losses

The following situations illustrate the differences between the two types of measurement focus:

Receipt of Long-Term Bond Proceeds:

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
Increase in spendable resources	Economic position not improved
DR Cash CR Other Financing Sources	DR Cash CR Bonds Payable (Activity Statement only)

Repayment of Long-Term Bond Debt:

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
Decrease in spendable resources	Economic position not diminished
DR Expenditure CR Cash	DR Bonds Payable CR Cash

Capital Acquisition:

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
Decrease in spendable resources	Economic position not diminished
DR Capital Outlay Expenditure CR Cash	DR Equipment CR Cash

Depreciation of Capital Assets:

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
No effect on spendable resources	Economic position diminished
Depreciation is not recognized	DR Depreciation Expense CR Accumulated Depreciation

Amortization of Deferred Outflows:

Governmental Fund Financial Statements	Non-governmental and Government-wide Financial Statements
No effect on spendable resources	Economic position diminished only by the expense for the benefited period
Entire outflow is recognized in the prior period	DR Amortization Expense CR Deferred Outflows

Chapter 5: Fund Accounting

Chapter Contents

Introduction 37

Governmental Environment 37

5.01 Number of Funds 37

5.02 Fund Categories 38

Fund Types.....39

5.03 Governmental Funds 39

5.04 Proprietary Funds 39

5.05 Fiduciary Funds 40

5.06 Fund Category Tables and Examples.....43

5.07 Fiduciary Component Units.....51

5.08 Pension and OPEB Arrangements That Are Not Component Units.....54

5.09 Other Fiduciary Activities 55

5.10 Illustrative Examples 55

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 5: Fund Accounting

Introduction

Governmental accounting systems should be organized and operated on a fund basis.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1300, *Statements of Principle*, a fund is defined as:

A fiscal and accounting entity with a self-balancing set of accounts recording cash and other financial resources, together with all related liabilities and residual equities or balances, and changes therein, which are segregated for the purpose of carrying on specific activities or attaining certain objectives in accordance with special regulations, restrictions, or limitations.

Unlike private business, which is accounted for as a single entity, a governmental unit is accounted for through several separate fund entities as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.101 (Section 1300, paragraph .101). Each of these funds accounts for assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, deferred inflows of resources, and net position or fund balance within each fund.

Fund accounting systems must not only be capable of recording the day-to-day transactions in the appropriate funds, but should also facilitate the preparation of the basic financial statements. These basic financial statements require both government-wide and fund reporting for government entities. Additionally, fund financial statements should be used to report additional and detailed information with regard to the primary government entity, including its blended component units. The focus of fund financial statements is on major funds.

Governmental Environment

5.01 Number of Funds

Governmental accounting and financial reporting requirements are intended to provide assurance that available governmental resources are controlled and spent in accordance with the organization's spending, product and service delivery decisions, and a variety of legal and contractual provisions. The general rule is to establish the minimum number of separate funds consistent with legal specifications, operational requirements, and the principles of fund classification.

As described in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.101 (Section 1300, paragraph .101):

The diverse nature of governmental operations and the necessity of assuring legal compliance preclude recording and summarizing all governmental financial transactions and balances in a single accounting entity. Unlike a private business, which is accounted for as a single entity, a governmental unit is accounted for through several separate fund entities, each accounting for designated assets, liabilities, and equity or other balances.

Thus, from an accounting and financial management viewpoint, a governmental unit is a combination of several distinctly different fiscal and accounting entities, each having a separate set of accounts and functioning independently.

5.02 Fund Categories

Governmental funds, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102a (Section 1300, paragraph .102a), are primarily focused on the sources, uses, and balances of current financial resources and often have a budgetary orientation. Current financial resources are those assets that are expendable during a budgetary period and they are often segregated into a specific governmental fund based on restrictions imposed by outside authorities or parties, or strategies established by internal management. Liabilities of a governmental fund are obligations that will be paid from the current period resources held by that particular fund.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102a (Section 1300, paragraph .102a), financial statements for governmental funds should be presented using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. The governmental fund category's includes the general fund, special revenue funds, capital projects funds, debt service funds, and permanent funds.

Fund Balance, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102a (Section 1300, paragraph .102a), is referred to as fund equity. It is the difference between governmental fund assets and deferred outflows of resources, and liabilities and deferred inflows of resources.

Proprietary funds, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102b (Section 1300, paragraph .102b), are primarily focused on the determination of operating income, changes in net position (or cost recovery), financial position, and cash flows. They are used to account for local government activities similar to those that may be performed by commercial enterprise-type organizations.

According to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102b (Section 1300, paragraph .102b), the required financial statements for proprietary funds are a statement of net position; a statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in fund net position; and a statement of cash flows. These financial statements should be reported using the full accrual basis of accounting and the economic resources measurement focus. The proprietary fund category includes enterprise funds and internal service funds.

Fiduciary funds, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102c (Section 1300, paragraph .102c), are primarily focused on fiduciary net position and changes in fiduciary net position. They are used to account for assets held by a local government for other parties (either as a trustee or as an agent) and that cannot be used to finance the local government's own operating programs.

According to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102c (Section 1300, paragraph .102c), the required financial statements for fiduciary funds are the statement of fiduciary net position and the statement of changes in fiduciary net position. These financial statements should include information about all fiduciary funds of the primary government, including fiduciary component units.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.102c (Section 1300, paragraph .102c), fiduciary funds should be reported using the full accrual basis of accounting and the economic resources measurement focus. The fiduciary fund category includes pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds, investment trust funds, private-purpose trust funds, and custodial funds. Custodial funds are distinguished from the three types of trust funds by the existence of a trust agreement or equivalent arrangement that has certain characteristics.

Fund Types

5.03 Governmental Funds

Governmental funds are based on the following accounting relationship:

$$\text{Assets} + \text{Deferred Outflows of Resources} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Deferred Inflows of Resources} + \text{Fund Balance}$$

As previously discussed, the Governmental Fund category includes the General Fund, Special Revenue Funds, Capital Projects Funds, Debt Service Funds, and Permanent Funds and account for the current operating expenditures of the local government. The guidelines for the five types of governmental funds are stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.104 – .108 (Section 1300, paragraphs .104 – .108).

The general fund is used to account for and report all financial resources not accounted for and reported in another fund. There is only one general fund and it should only be used if no other fund is applicable and/or appropriate.

Special revenue funds are used to account for and report proceeds of specific revenue sources that are restricted or committed to expenditure for specified purposes other than debt service or capital projects.

Capital projects funds are used to account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for capital outlays, including the acquisition or construction of capital facilities and other capital assets.

Debt service funds are used to account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for principal and interest. Debt service funds should be used to report resources if legally mandated. Financial resources that are being accumulated for principal and interest maturing in future years should also be reported in debt service funds. The debt service transactions of a special assessment issue for which the government is not obligated in any manner should be reported in a custodial fund rather than a debt service fund.

Permanent funds are used to account for and report financial resources that are legally restricted to the extent that only earnings, and not principal, may be used for purposes that support the reporting government's programs—that is, for the benefit of the government or its citizenry. Permanent funds do not include private-purpose trust funds.

5.04 Proprietary Funds

Proprietary funds include enterprise funds and internal service funds. Funds in this category are considered self-supporting in that the services they render are generally financed through user charges or on a cost reimbursement basis. Proprietary funds (as well as fiduciary and government-wide financial statements) are based on the following accounting relationship:

$$(\text{Assets} + \text{Deferred Outflows of Resources}) - (\text{Liabilities} + \text{Deferred Inflows of Resources}) = \text{Net Position}$$

This accounting relationship can also be displayed in a balance sheet format as:

Assets + Deferred Outflows of Resources = Liabilities + Deferred Inflows of Resources + Net Position

According to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.109 – .110 (Section 1300, paragraphs .109 – .110), the enterprise fund category is used to report any activity for which a fee is charged to external users for goods or services. According to GASB, activities are required to be reported as enterprise funds if any one of the GASB criteria below for an enterprise activity is met.

Governments should apply each of following criteria in the context of the activity's principal revenue sources:

- a) The activity is financed with debt that is secured solely by a pledge of the net revenues from fees and charges of the activity. Debt that is secured by a pledge of net revenues from fees and charges and the full faith and credit of a related primary government or component unit — even if that government is not expected to make any payments — is not payable solely from fees and charges of the activity. (Some debt may be secured, in part, by a portion of its own proceeds but should be considered as payable solely from the revenues of the activity.)
- b) Laws or regulations require that the activity's costs of providing services, including capital costs (such as depreciation or debt service), be recovered with fees and charges, rather than with taxes or similar revenues.
- c) The pricing policies of the activity establish fees and charges designed to recover its costs, including capital costs (such as depreciation or debt service).

The internal service fund category is used to report any activity that provides goods or services to other funds, departments, or agencies of the primary government and its component units, or to other governments, on a cost-reimbursement basis. Internal service funds should be used only if the reporting government is the predominant participant in the activity.

5.05 Fiduciary Funds

Fiduciary funds focus on net position and changes in net position. These funds are used to report assets held in a trust or agency capacity for others and, therefore, cannot be used to support the government's own programs. Fiduciary funds include pension (and other employee benefits) trust funds, investment trust funds, private-purpose trust funds, and custodial funds.

Fiduciary funds (as well as proprietary and government-wide financial statements) are based on the following accounting relationship:

(Assets + Deferred Outflows of Resources) – (Liabilities + Deferred Inflows of Resources) = Net Position

This accounting relationship can also be displayed in a balance sheet format as:

Assets + Deferred Outflows of Resources = Liabilities + Deferred Inflows of Resources + Net Position

Resources held in trust for the benefit of the local government entity's own programs, taxes, or individuals are accounted for in a governmental or proprietary fund rather than a fiduciary fund. Fiduciary funds are required to report net position as the difference between assets, plus deferred outflows of resources, less liabilities, less deferred inflows of resources. The three components of net position (restricted, net investment in capital assets, and unrestricted) are not required to be presented in the statement of fiduciary net position.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.115 (Section 1300, paragraph .115), the custodial fund category is used to "report fiduciary activities that are not required to be reported in pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds, investment trust funds, or private-purpose trust funds."

The three categories of trust funds should be used to report resources held and administered by the reporting government when it is acting in a fiduciary capacity for individuals, private organizations, or other governments. As stated earlier in this section, the trust funds are distinguished from custodial funds by the existence of a trust agreement that affects the degree of management involvement and the length of time that the resources are held. The three categories of trust funds are:

- Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds: used to report fiduciary activities for pension and other post-employment benefit plans (OPEB) that are administered through trusts that meet certain criteria (refer GASB Cod. Sections Pe5.101, Pe6.101, Po50.101, and Po51.101) and are required to be held in trust for the members and beneficiaries of defined benefit pension plans, defined contribution plans, or OPEB. Also used to report fiduciary activities for other employee benefit plans for which resources are held in a trust that meets certain criteria [refer to GASB Cod. Section 1300.134c(1)] and contributions to the trust and earnings on those contributions are irrevocable.
- Investment Trust Funds: used to report fiduciary activities from the external portion of investment pools and individual investment accounts that are held in a trust that meets certain criteria [refer to GASB Cod. Section 1300.134c(1)].
- Private-Purpose Trust Funds: used to report all fiduciary activities that are not required to be reported in pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds or investment trust funds and are held in a trust that meets certain criteria [refer to GASB Cod. Section 1300.134c(1)].

The following table presents a description and examples for the fiduciary fund classification:

Classification	Includes	Examples
Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds	Funds accounting for locally-administered retirement systems.	• 1937 Act Retirement Funds • Defined Contribution Plans • Defined Benefit Plans
Investment Trust Funds	Amounts managed by the local government treasury for the external pool participants.	• Cities with approved resolution and investment agreement with Treasurer's Office • Other Local Government Entities
Private-Purpose Trust Funds	Amounts held by a local government entity under which the principal and income benefit individuals, private organizations, or other governments.	• When legally mandated or under a formal trust agreement
Custodial Funds	Used to account for assets held by a local government in a fiduciary capacity pending transfer or distribution of these assets to individuals, private organizations, other governmental entities, and/or other funds.	• Taxes withheld/collected on behalf of other governments (e.g., property taxes) • Interest • Tax Defaulted Land Rentals • In-lieu Monies • Tax Redemption Fees • Inheritance Taxes • Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties (held on behalf of other government entities) • Sales and Use Tax • Withholding Tax • Credit Union Deduction • State Retirement System

5.06 Fund Category Tables and Examples

General Fund

Category	Governmental
Purpose	To account for and report all financial resources under the control of the local government except those required to be accounted for in another fund. Only used if no other fund is applicable and/or appropriate.
Basis of Accounting	Modified Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Annual budget appropriation limitations.
Usual Financing Sources	All sources except bonds.
Measurement Focus	Flow of current financial resources
Specific Accounting Treatment	Capital asset purchases are expenditures. Capital assets and long-term liabilities are not recorded in the general fund.

Special Revenue Funds

Category	Governmental
Purpose	To account for and report the proceeds of specific revenue sources (other than an expendable trust or for major capital projects) that are legally restricted to expenditure for specified purposes.
Basis of Accounting	Modified Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Annual budget appropriation limitations
Usual Financing Sources	Legally or contractually identified revenues.
Measurement Focus	Flow of current financial resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Capital asset purchases are expenditures. Capital assets and long-term liabilities are not recorded in this fund. Special revenue funds are not required unless legally or contractually mandated. Accounting for funds of insignificant amounts may be consolidated as long as the expenditures, revenues, and balance sheet or statement of net position accounts can be identified with the specific revenues, respectively.

Capital Projects Funds

Category	Governmental
Purpose	Capital projects funds are used to account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for capital outlays, including the acquisition or construction of capital facilities and other capital assets.
Basis of Accounting	Modified Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Grant provisions and annual/multi-year budget appropriation limitation and bond indentures.
Usual Financing Sources	Grants, contributions from other funds, bonds.
Measurement Focus	Flow of current financial resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	The capital projects funds does not account for the capital activities of proprietary funds or assets that will be held in trust for others. The capital project funds would account only for capital activities of those projects that are considered to be governmental rather than proprietary. In practice, a separate Capital Projects Fund is often established when the acquisition or construction of a capital project extends beyond a single fiscal year and the financing sources are provided by more than one fund, or a capital asset is financed by specifically designated resources. Capital outlays financed from general obligation bond proceeds should be accounted for through a capital projects fund.

Debt Service Funds

Category	Governmental
Purpose	To account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for principal and interest. Debt service funds should be used to report resources if legally mandated. Financial resources that are being accumulated for principal and interest maturing in future years also should be reported in debt service funds.
Basis of Accounting	Modified Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	A government should determine whether it is legally obligated to establish debt service funds. If not, the government should decide from a managerial perspective whether it is useful to establish a debt service fund. Where resources are being accumulated for principal and interest maturing for future years, those financial resources should be reported in a debt service fund.
Usual Financing Sources	Special taxes or contributions from the general fund.
Measurement Focus	Flow of current financial resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	The proceeds from the issuance of long-term debt are recorded in governmental funds as <u>other financing sources</u> in governmental funds and is not reported as debt of the governmental funds, instead it is reported as an obligation in the governmental-wide financial statements. Principal and interest payments due should be recorded as a payable from the debt service fund servicing the debt payments. Generally speaking, under the modified accrual basis of accounting, expenditures of a governmental fund are recognized when the related liability is incurred.

Accounting for Debt Service Funds

A local government may create a debt service fund to account for resources that will be accumulated and used to service general long-term debt, which are obligations of the government. Debt service transactions for which the local government entity is not obligated in any manner should not be reported in a debt service fund. Instead, these transactions should be reported in a custodial fund to reflect the fact that the local government duties are limited. Although the long-term debts are not reported in the governmental financial statements at the fund level, assets set aside for future payment of the debt are reported at the fund level.

Only the minimum number of debt service funds consistent with legal and operating requirements should be established. While most indenture agreements require the creation of a separate debt service fund for each bond issue, it is desirable, when possible, to account for general obligation bonds serviced by restricted components of the general property tax in a single debt service fund.

Debt service spending usually requires the approval of the operating budget and governing board approval of bond documents. Such spending is controlled primarily through bond indenture provisions. Debt service payments are usually accounted for as expenditures in the year of payment.

Revenues such as property taxes or sales taxes that are restricted to debt service on general long-term debt are generally reported in the debt service fund, but legal statutes may require tax revenues to be recorded in the general fund before being transferred to the debt service fund.

Accounting for Debt Repayments in Governmental Funds

As no liability for long-term debt is recorded in governmental fund statements, repayment of the debt is not recorded as a reduction of the liability. Instead, such payments are recorded as financing uses. This also applies to current and advance refundings. Payments due within one month after year-end may be accrued if financial resources are transferred to a debt service fund.

Permanent Funds

Category	Governmental
Purpose	To account for and report resources that are restricted to the extent that only earnings, and not principal, may be used for purposes that support the reporting government's programs — that is, for the benefit of the government or its citizenry.
Basis of Accounting	Modified Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Trust agreement and laws.
Usual Financing Sources	Donations.
Measurement Focus	Flow of current financial resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Permanent funds should be used to report situations in which the government is required to use the principal or earnings for the benefit of individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Enterprise Funds

Category	Proprietary
Purpose	To account for the provision of supplies and tangible services to the general public that are similar to services provided by business enterprises; includes only services financed primarily by user charges.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	For supplies and services provided, matching the total cost (including noncash expense and overhead) with the service charge revenues generated; if bonds are issued, the bond indenture; the annual budget (operating plan) to the extent that it is required by the governing body.
Usual Financing Sources	Revenues, expenses, debt issue, capital contributions, and operating subsidies.
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Accounting practices of similar commercial enterprises are followed. Long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid by the fund, as well as its capital assets, are included in its accounts. All expenses (including noncash and overhead) are charged to the fund.
Rates	Service charges should recover the full cost (including noncash expenses and overhead), less any authorized subsidy.

For purposes of uniformity, common examples of enterprise funds include:

- Airports
- Harbors
- Recreation facilities and services, such as:
 - Marinas
 - Golf courses/Stadiums/Tennis centers
 - Parks/Swimming pools
- Parking facilities
- Transit systems
- Public housing
- Toll bridges
- Health services and facilities, such as:
 - Hospitals/Medical facilities
- Public utilities, such as:
 - Water/Electricity/Gas
 - Waste Collection and disposal
 - Cable TV

Internal Service Funds

Category	Proprietary
Purpose	To account for supplies and tangible services provided to other units of the same government or different governments on a cost reimbursement basis.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	The total cost for the supplies and services provided (including noncash expenses and overhead) should be matched with the service charge reimbursements generated. Other controls include the annual budget, to the extent required by the governing body, and indirectly through other departments' annual budget receiving the product or service.
Usual Financing Sources	Reimbursements
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Accounting practices of similar commercial enterprises are followed. Long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid by the fund, and capital assets, are included in its accounts. All expenses (including noncash and overhead) are charged to the fund. Cost reimbursement entries would be recorded as revenues in the internal service fund.
Rates	Service charges should recover the full cost (including noncash expenses and overhead). Subsidizing internal service fund activities should not be required.

Examples of central services appropriate for Internal Service Fund accounting include:

- Equipment, vehicle, and office machine maintenance and rental
- Medical Insurance
- Information technology/Communications
- Mailing services/Printing and duplicating
- Purchasing
- Carpentry and repair shops
- Risk management

Fiduciary Funds (Including Fiduciary Component Units)

Fund financial statements should include information about all fiduciary funds of the primary government, including fiduciary component units. Local government entities should report fiduciary activities in the fiduciary fund financial statements. Fiduciary funds are comprised of the following categories:

- Pension (and Other Post-Employment Benefits) Trust Funds
- Investment Trust Funds
- Private Purpose Trust Funds
- Custodial Funds

Pension (and Other Employment Benefit) Trust Funds

Category	Fiduciary
Purpose	To account for assets held by a government in a trustee capacity for public employee retirement system and other employee benefits in the public employee retirement system. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.112 (Section 1300, paragraph .112) for more details.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Contractual arrangements, legislative requirements (e.g., pension, and OPEB provisions of the law), etc.
Usual Financing Sources	Contributions by private entities, employee/employer contributions, investment earnings, etc.
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	• Capital assets and long-term liabilities are included in the funds' accounts. • Plan assets used in plan operations (for example, buildings, equipment, furniture and fixtures, and leasehold improvements) should be reported at historical cost less accumulated depreciation or amortization.

Investment Trust Funds

Category	Fiduciary
Purpose	Used to report fiduciary activities from the external portion of investment pools and individual investment accounts that are administered/held through a trust in which the local government entity itself is not a beneficiary, the assets are dedicated to providing benefits to recipients in accordance with the benefit terms, and the assets are legally protected from the creditors of the local government entity.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Cash receipts and disbursements at the direction of other entities with cash in the local government's treasury.
Usual Financing Sources	Deposits from external pool participants and investment earnings.
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Funds that are maintained by other entities to account for the external entities' activities.

Private-Purpose Trust Funds

Category	Fiduciary
Purpose	Used to report all fiduciary activities that are not required to be reported in pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds or investment trust funds and are administered/held through a trust in which the local government entity itself is not a beneficiary, the assets are dedicated to providing benefits to recipients in accordance with the benefit terms, and the assets are legally protected from the creditors of the local government entity.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Trust agreements and laws.
Usual Financing Sources	Donations and earnings of private-purpose trust funds.
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Private-purpose trust funds generally should be used when legally mandated or a formal trust agreement exists. Capital assets and long-term liabilities are included in the funds' accounts.

Custodial Funds

Category	Fiduciary
Purpose	Custodial funds are used to report those fiduciary activities that are not required to be reported in pension and OPEB trust funds, investment trust funds, or private-purpose trust funds.
Basis of Accounting	Full Accrual Basis.
Primary Means of Spending Control	Fiduciary agreements and laws.
Usual Financing Sources	Custodial funds financing sources typically include resources held in a custodial capacity. This includes resources such as receipt, temporary investment, and remittance of fiduciary resources to their respective owners.
Measurement Focus	Flow of economic resources.
Specific Accounting Treatment	Custodial funds are reported in a column on the statement of fiduciary net position and the statement of changes in fiduciary net positions. The components of net position (net investment in capital assets, restricted, and unrestricted) are not required to be presented in the statement of fiduciary net position. A government <u>may</u> report a single aggregated total for additions and a single aggregated total for deductions of custodial funds in which resources, upon receipt, are normally expected to be held for three months or less.

Identification of Fiduciary Activities

A local government entity or its component units may be engaged in fiduciary activities. Refer to Chapter Section 8.02, *Financial Reporting Entity Structure* to get more information about what constitutes a component unit.

5.07 Fiduciary Component Units

A component unit is a fiduciary activity (a fiduciary component unit) if it has one of the following three arrangements:

- A defined benefit or defined contribution pension or OPEB plan administered through a trust where plan contributions and earnings are irrevocable, plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members, and plan assets are legally protected from creditors. For more information refer to GASB Statement No. 67 *Financial Reporting for Pension Plans—An Amendment of GASB Statement No. 25*, as amended.
- A pension or OPEB plan not administered through a trust (custodial fund) where plan contributions and earnings are irrevocable, plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members, and plan assets are legally protected from creditors. For more information refer to GASB Statement No. 74 *Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefit Plans Other Than Pension Plan*, as amended.

- c) Circumstances in which assets from entities that are not part of the reporting entity are accumulated for pension and OPEB purposes. For more information refer to:
- GASB Statement No. 73 *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions and Related Assets That Are Not within the GASB Statement 68 and Amendments to Certain Provisions of GASB Statement 67 and 68*, as amended.
 - GASB Statement No. 74 *Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefit Plans Other Than Pension Plan*, as amended.

Generally speaking, pension and OPEB plans that are administered through GASB Statement No. 67, as amended, and GASB Statement No. 74, as amended, are legally separate entities. In determining whether these separate legal entities are component units, the primary government is considered to have a financial burden, if it is legally obligated to make contributions to the defined benefit pension and defined benefit OPEB plans.

A component unit, that is not a pension or OPEB arrangement as described in the preceding list is considered to be a fiduciary activity if the assets associated with this activity have one or more of the following characteristics (a-c):

- a) The assets are
- i. administered through a trust in which the government itself is not a beneficiary,
 - ii. dedicated to providing benefits to recipients according to benefit terms; and
 - iii. legally protected from the creditors of the government.
- b) The assets are for the benefit of individuals and the government does not have administrative involvement with the assets or direct financial involvement.
- c) The assets are for the benefit of organizations or other governments that are not part of the financial reporting entity.

Control of the asset by the primary government is not a factor in determining whether a component unit is fiduciary, but it is a factor in determining whether activities other than component units are fiduciary.

The following charts (1, 1A, and 1B) are intended to aid in the identification of fiduciary activities. These charts are sourced from GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.901 (Section 130 paragraph .901), and are not meant to be all-inclusive. These charts are nonauthoritative, and as such, guidance for local agencies should be based on the above paragraphs and tables.

Note: The paragraph references in the charts refer to paragraphs in GASB Cod. Section 1300.

Chart 1—Flowchart for Evaluating and Reporting Potential Fiduciary Activities

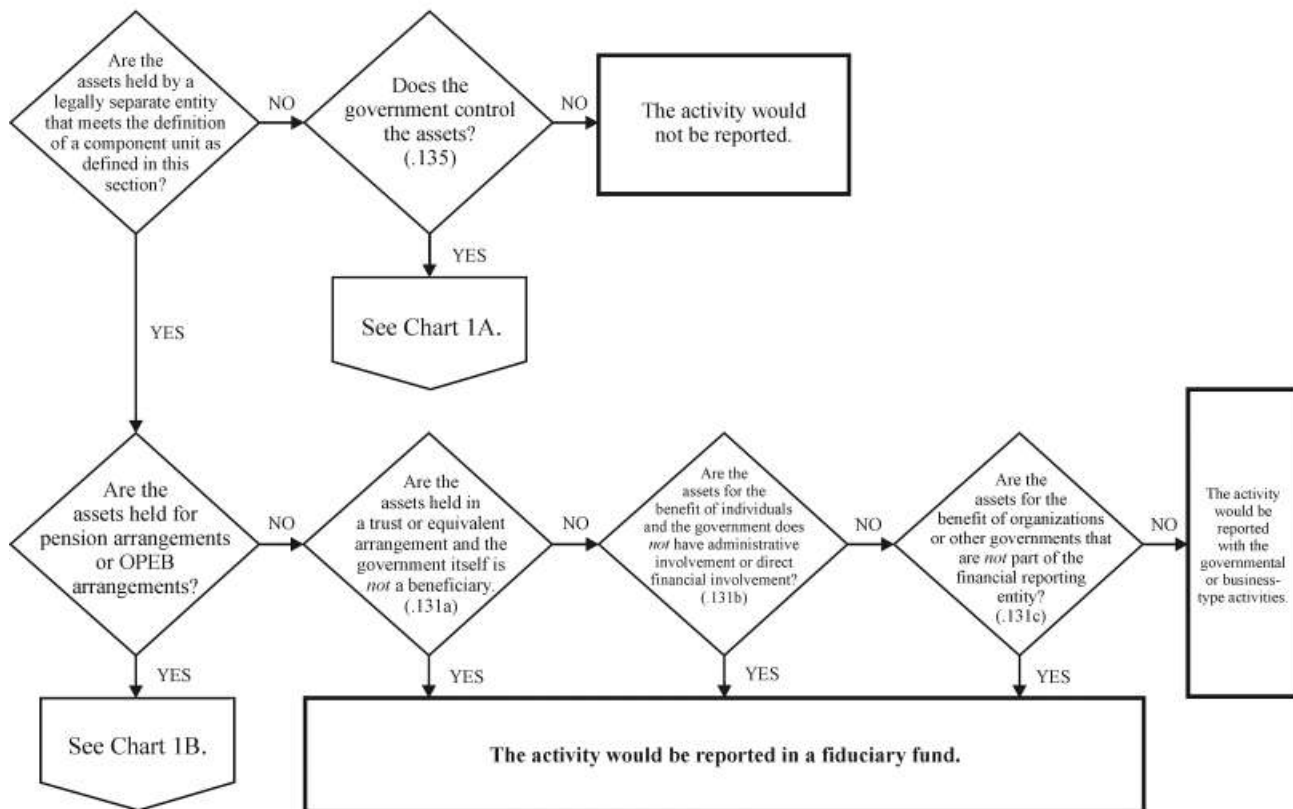


Chart 1A—Flowchart for Evaluating and Reporting Potential Fiduciary Activities

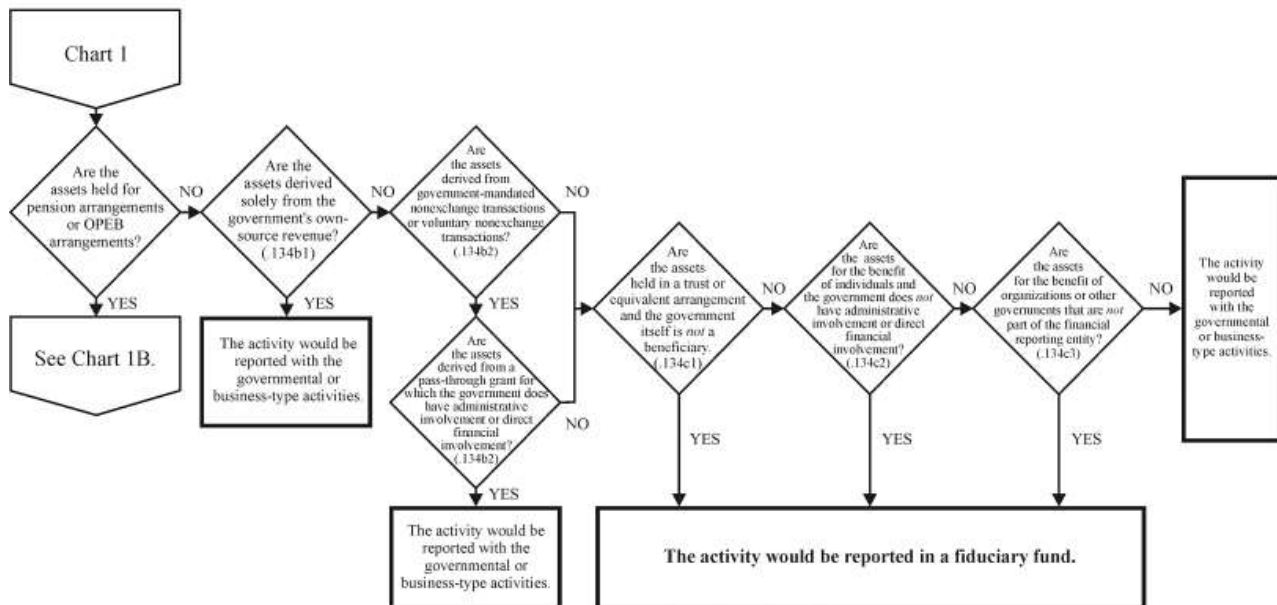
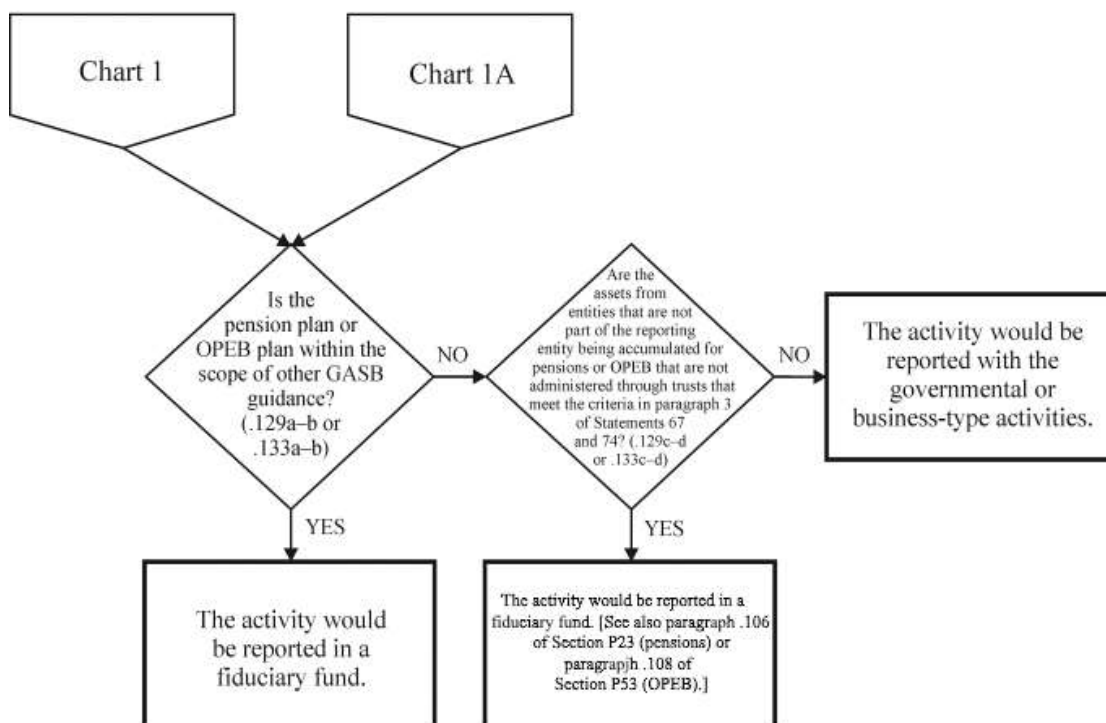


**Chart 1B—Flowchart for Evaluating and Reporting Potential Fiduciary Activities
(Postemployment Benefit Arrangements)**



[GASBS 84, ¶C1, as modified]

5.08 Pension and OPEB Arrangements That Are Not Component Units

Pension and OPEB arrangements that are not component units are fiduciary activities if the government controls the assets of the arrangement and they are one of the following arrangements:

1. A pension or OPEB plan administered through a trust where plan contributions and earnings are irrevocable, plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members, and plan assets are legally protected from creditors. Refer to GASB Statement No. 67, as amended, for more details.
2. Accumulated assets not administered through a trust (custodial fund) where assets are designated for pension or OPEB purposes, plan contributions and earnings are irrevocable, plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members, and plan assets are legally protected from creditors. Refer to GASB Statement No. 74, as amended, for more details.

5.09 Other Fiduciary Activities

Other activities are fiduciary if all three of the following criteria is met:

1. The assets associated with the activity are controlled by the government.
2. The assets are not derived solely from the either government's own source revenues or from government-mandated and voluntary nonexchange transactions other than pass-through grants.
3. The assets associated with the activity have one or more of the following characteristics:
 - a) The assets are administered through a trust in which the government itself is not a beneficiary, dedicated to providing benefits to recipients in accordance with the benefit terms, and legally protected from the creditors of the government.
 - b) The assets are for the benefit of individuals and the government does not have administrative or direct financial involvement with the assets.
 - c) The assets are for the benefit of organizations or other governments that are not part of the financial reporting entity.

5.10 Illustrative Examples

Note that the journal entries in the following examples for each of the fund categories are not inter-related (stand-alone entries).

General Fund

The following events took place within Sacramento County:

- In July 20X4, the County expected to collect \$30,000,000 in property taxes for the fiscal year 20X4–X5. Based on historical collection patterns the County expects to collect 30% of the property taxes by November 20X4 and the remainder 70% by May 20X5.

The following entries were recorded in the County's general fund

July 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Property Tax Receivable	DR: \$30,000,000	
Revenues — Property Taxes		CR: \$30,000,000
(Record property taxes receivable for fiscal year 20X4–X5)		

November 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$9,000,000	
Property Taxes Receivable		CR: \$9,000,000
(Record property tax receipts)		

January 20X5 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$21,000,000	
Property Taxes Receivable		CR: \$21,000,000
(Record property tax receipts)		

Special Revenue Fund

The following events took place within the City of Rancho Cordova:

- In October 20X4, the California legislature passed legislation that will allow various cities to receive \$50,000 grant for transit operations in January 20X5. The City usually records these types of grants in its Special Revenue Fund —Transit Operations.
- In November 20X4, the City purchased supplies worth \$2,000 to perform maintenance services on its existing E-Transit bus fleet from CDE Parts. The City paid for these expenditures in December 20X4.

The following entries were recorded in the City's Special Revenue Fund—Transit Operations.

October 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due from State Government	DR: \$50,000	
Intergovernmental Revenues — Grants		CR: \$50,000
(Record transit grant due from State Government)		

November 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Maintenance Expenditures	DR: \$2,000	
CDE Parts Payable		CR: \$2,000
(Record purchase of maintenance supplies from CDE Parts)		

December 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
CDE Parts Payable	DR: \$2,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,000
(Record payment to CDE Parts)		

January 20X5 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$50,000	
Due from State Government		CR: \$50,000
(Record transit grant receipts received from State Government)		

Capital Projects Fund

The following events took place within the Sonoma Water District:

- In July 20X4, the district approved a \$20,000,000 water project . The project is to be financed via issuance of general obligation bonds.
- The district received the bond proceeds in August 20X4.
- Since the majority of the bond proceeds will not be spent until 20X5, the district invested \$15,000,000 in short-term bonds in August 20X4. The bonds will mature in January 20X5. Interest rate on short-term bonds is 5%.

The following entries were recorded in the districts Capital Projects Funds.

August 20X4 Entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$20,000,000	
Other Financing Source — Bonds		CR: \$20,000,000

(Record bond receipts in the capital projects funds)

Note: Governmental funds follow modified accrual basis of accounting therefore do not recorded long-term debt liabilities. This will recorded in the districts government-wide financial statements.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Investment — Short-Term Bonds	DR: \$15,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$15,000,000

(Record investment in short-term bonds)

January 20X5 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$15,375,000	
Interest Revenue		CR: \$375,000
Investment — Short Term Bonds		CR: \$15,000,000

(Record principal and interest received from investments in short-term bonds)

Debt Service Funds

The following events took place within a local government agency:

- On January 15, 20XX, the voters authorized an addition to the civic auditorium and the issuance of bonds aggregating \$2,000,000. No formal accounting entry is necessary.

Chapter 5: Fund Accounting

- In October 20XX, bonds with a face value of \$2,000,000 are sold, at 10% annual interest, for \$2,050,000, with issuance cost of \$22,500 and interest payable semi-annually on April 1 and October 1. The bond payments are to be paid from property tax levies:

The following entries will be recorded by the local governmental entity:

Governmental Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,027,500	
Debt Issuance Expenditure	DR: \$22,500	
Other Financing Sources — Bonds Issued		CR: \$2,000,000
Other Financing Sources — Premium on Bonds Issued		CR: \$50,000

(Record the sale of bonds)

Note: Although no long-term debt is recorded in the governmental fund, the debt is reported in the government-wide financial statements.

On December 15, the first installment of 20XX–20X1 secured taxes is apportioned (note that the tax revenues may be required to pass through the general fund prior to transfer to the debt service fund):

Debt Service Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash- Debt Service Reserve	DR: \$125,000	
Tax Revenues		CR: \$125,000

(Record receipts of the first installment of secured tax revenues)

On April 1, the first semi-annual interest installment of \$100,000 and 5% of the bond's principal payment of \$100,000 are due:

Debt Service Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures — Interest	DR: \$100,000	
Expenditures — Bond Principal	DR: \$100,000	
Cash – Debt Service Reserve		CR: \$200,000

(Record principal and expenditure payments on bond repayments)

Note: The related reduction in the balance of the long-term debt is reported in the government-wide financial statements only.

On April 15, the second installment of 20XX–20X1 secured taxes is apportioned.

Debt Service Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$130,000	

Tax Revenue CR: \$130,000
(Record receipts of the second installment of secured tax revenues)

Permanent Funds

The following events took place within Mono County:

- In July 20X4, a citizen donated \$10,000,000 to Mono County. The trust agreement stated the principal is to be invested and revenues from the investment are to be used to support the operations of the County's museum.
- The County deposited the funds into an interest bearing account with WBC Bank on 30th July 20X4. WBC Bank offers an interest rate of 5% yearly on long-term fixed deposits. The interest will be paid on monthly basis (starting August 20X4).

The following entries were recorded in the County's Permanent Funds.

July 20X4 Entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$10,000,000	
Revenues — Donations		CR: \$10,000,000
(Record proceeds of Donations)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Investments	DR: \$10,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$10,000,000
(Record investment with WBC Bank)		

August 20X4 Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$41,667	
Interest Income		CR: \$41,667
(Record interest income)		

Note: The County will be recording this interest on a monthly basis

Internal Service Funds

The following events took place within the City of Elk Grove:

- In August 20X4, the City's Internal Service Fund (ISF)—Vehicle Maintenance received an invoice from ABC Parts for \$4,000. The invoice was for maintenance parts that will be used to repair the City's vehicle fleet. The funding for this was to come from the General Fund.
- In September 20X4, the General Fund transferred \$4,000 into the ISF—Vehicle Maintenance to pay ABC Parts. ABC Parts was paid in September 20X4.

The following entries were recorded in the City's ISF — Vehicle Maintenance.

August 20X4 Entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due from General Fund	DR: \$4,000	
Revenue — Vehicle Maintenance Charges		CR: \$4,000
(Record amount due from General Fund in ISF — Vehicle Maintenance)		

Vehicle Maintenance Expenditure	DR: \$4,000	
ABC Parts Payable		CR: \$4,000
(Record liability related to ABC Parts in ISF — Vehicle Maintenance Fund)		

September 20X4 Entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$4,000	
Due from General Fund		CR: \$4,000
(Record cash received from General Fund in ISF — Vehicle Maintenance)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
ABC Parts Payable	DR: \$4,000	
Cash		CR: \$4,000
(Record payment to ABC Parts from ISF—Vehicle Maintenance)		

Enterprise Funds

The Folsom Waste Disposal District provides waste disposal services to the residents of the City of Folsom. This special district is an independent district and its funding primarily comes from providing waste disposal services. The following events took place within the district in **July 20X4**:

- The district issued invoices worth \$600,000 to customers for waste disposal services
- Depreciation expenses were as follows:
 - Buildings \$50,000
 - Equipment \$70,000
 - Vehicles \$60,000
- Other operating expenses:
 - Doubtful Debts was estimated to be \$15,000
 - Wages/Salaries expenses incurred amounted to \$100,000
 - Invoice received from SMUD for electricity expenses \$45,000

The following entries were recorded by district in **July 20X4**:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Accounts Receivable	DR: \$600,000	
Revenues — Waste Disposal Services		CR: \$600,000
(Record receivables pertaining to July 20X4 waste disposal services)		
Depreciation — Buildings	DR: \$50,000	
Depreciation — Equipment	DR: \$70,000	
Depreciation — Vehicles	DR: \$60,000	
Accumulated Depreciation — Buildings		CR: \$50,000
Accumulated Depreciation — Equipment		CR: \$70,000
Accumulated Depreciation — Vehicles		CR: \$60,000
(Record depreciation/accumulated depreciation expenses for July 20X4)		
Doubtful Debts	DR: \$15,000	
Allowance for Doubtful Debts		CR: \$15,000
(Record Doubtful Debts estimated for July 20X4)		

July 20X4 Entries (Continued)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Wages/Salaries Expenses	DR: \$100,000	
Wages/Salaries Payable		CR: \$100,000
(Record Wages/Salaries expenses incurred in July 20X4)		
Electricity Expenses	DR: \$45,000	
SMUD Payable		CR: \$45,000
(Record Electricity expenses for July 20X4)		

Fiduciary Funds – Pension Trust Fund

The following events took place within a local government entity's pension trust fund during the current fiscal year:

- The pension trust fund sold investments worth \$2,500,000. The cost of these investments were \$1,800,000.
- The County's pension trust fund made an investment US Treasury Bonds amount to \$5,000,000
- The County's pension trust fund received interest income from investments amounting to \$215,000
- Contributions made towards the County's pension fund was as follows:
 - County (Employer) contribution's \$2,000,000
 - Employee (Member) contributions \$300,000
- Payment to retired County employees amounted to \$1,200,000

Chapter 5: Fund Accounting

The following entries were recorded in the pension trust fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,500,000	
Investments		CR: \$1,800,000
Additions — Gain on Sale of Investments		CR: \$700,000
(Record sale of investments)		
Investments — US Treasury Bonds	DR: \$5,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$5,000,000
(Record purchase of US Treasury Bonds)		
Cash	DR: \$215,000	
Additions — Interest Income on Investments		CR: \$215,000
(Record interest income on investments)		
Cash	DR: \$2,300,000	
Additions — Employer Contributions		CR: \$2,000,000
Additions — Member Contributions		CR: \$300,000
(Record employer and member contributions)		
<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deductions — Benefit Payments	DR: \$1, 200,000	
Cash		CR: \$1, 200,000
(Record benefit payments to members)		

Fiduciary Funds — Private Trust Funds

A local government entity maintains a canteen fund for inmates in a county prison. The following events took place within the canteen fund during the current fiscal year:

- The canteen fund received interest income on its fixed deposits amounting to \$10,000
- Families of inmates contributed \$3,000 into the canteen fund
- The canteen made cash purchases on behalf of inmates totaling \$1500.

The following entries were recorded in the Canteen Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$10,000	
Additions — Interest Income		CR: \$10,000
(Record interest income from fixed deposits)		
Cash	DR: \$3,000	
Additions — Contributions		CR: \$3,000
(Record contributions received from family members of inmates)		

Deductions — Purchases	DR: \$1,500	
Cash		CR: \$1,500
(Record cash purchases)		

Fiduciary Funds — Investment Trust Funds

The City of Elk Grove maintains an external investment pool called EG Investment Trust Fund, The City of Lodi and the City of Galt invests in this external investment pool. The EG Investment Trust Fund invests primarily in US Government securities and corporate securities. The following events took place within EG Investment Trust Fund during the fiscal year:

- The City of Lodi and the City of Galt made deposited \$100,000 each into EG Investment Trust Fund.
- EG Investment Trust Fund purchased the following securities:
 - US Government Securities: \$60,000
 - Corporate Securities: \$40,000
- During the fiscal year the following securities were sold:
 - US Government Securities sold for \$10,000 (cost \$8,000)
 - Corporate Securities sold for \$5,000 (cost \$3,000)

The following entries were recorded the EG Investment Trust Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$200,000	
Additions — Contributions from City of Lodi		CR: \$100,000
Additions — Contributions from City of Galt		CR: \$100,000
(To record contributions from City of Lodi and the City of Galt)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Investments — US Government Securities	DR: \$60,000	
Investments — Corporate Securities	DR: \$40,000	
Cash		CR: \$100,000
(To record investments in US Government and Corporate Securities)		

Cash	DR: \$15,000	
Investments — US Government Securities		CR: \$8,000
Investments — Corporate Securities		CR: \$3,000
Additions — Gain on Sale of Investments		CR: \$4,000
(To record sale of investments)		

Fiduciary Funds — Custodial Funds

A non-profit organization called Folsom Day Parade Association maintains its account with the City of Folsom. The City provides bookkeeping services to the association at no cost. The purpose of the association is to organize the Folsom Day parade. The City records the

transactions pertaining to the association in a fund called Folsom Day Parade Fund. The following events occurred during the current fiscal year:

- Donations collected for the Folsom Day parade amounted to \$200,000
- Interest income collected from investments amounted to \$10,000
- The costs incurred by the association for putting on the parade were as follows:
 - Flower Arrangements \$50,000
 - Costumes \$30,000
 - Vehicle and Equipment Rentals \$20,000

The following entries were recorded the Folsom Day Parade Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$200,000	
Additions — Donations		CR: \$200,000
(To record receipts of donations collected)		

Cash	DR: \$10,000	
Additions — Interest Income		CR: \$10,000
(To record interest income received)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deductions — Flower Arrangements	DR: \$50,000	
Deductions — Costumes	DR: \$30,000	
Deductions — Vehicle and Equipment Rentals	DR: \$20,000	
Cash		CR: \$100,000
(To record costs associated to the Folsom Day Parade)		

Chapter 6: Budgetary Accounting

Chapter Contents

Introduction 67

Budgetary Accounting.....67

6.01 Budgetary Accounts.....67

6.02 Government Spending Limitation.....69

6.03 Budgetary Classification and Terminology.....72

6.04 Control and Subsidiary Ledger Accounts.....75

6.05 The Encumbrance System 76

Adopted Budget.....78

6.06 Recording the Adopted Budget.....78

6.07 Reconciling Encumbrance.....78

6.08 Year-End Budgetary Accounting.....79

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 6: Budgetary Accounting

Introduction

One of the fundamental principles of governmental accounting is that the accounting system should provide the basis for appropriate budgetary control. This chapter describes the accounts and procedures by which such control may be established. It does not deal with budget forms, presentation, or procedure, which are governed by State law and administrative directive and separately published in the State Controller's *County Budget Guide*.

This chapter is concerned with accounting for actual transactions within the framework of the adopted (final) budget. An accurate comparison of transactions with budget estimates shows compliance with legal provisions and assists in the preparation of future budgets.

The State Controller's *County Budget Guide* (which includes the County Budget Act) can be found on the California State Controller's website at https://www.sco.ca.gov/pubs_guides.html.

Budgetary Accounting

6.01 Budgetary Accounts

Budgeting is an important component of the financial planning, control, and evaluation processes of governments. According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.101 (Section 1700, paragraph .101), every local government should prepare a comprehensive budget covering all governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary funds for each annual (or, in some cases, biennial) fiscal period.

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.106 – .108 (Section 1700, paragraph .106 – .108), a budget is a plan of financial operation for a given period of time. There are typically two types of budgets:

- Annual Budget: authorizes and provides the basis for control of financial operations during a fiscal year.
- Long-Term Budgets: presents estimates of revenues and expenditures or expenses for a period of several years—usually four to six—and the proposed means of financing them. The long-term budget is a planning document that typically emphasizes major program or capital outlay (capital budget) plans.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.118 – .119 (Section 1700, paragraph .118 – .119), formal budgetary accounting is an effective way of managing and controlling expenditures and revenues of governmental entities and do not affect revenue and expenditure measurement. The budgetary account balances are reversed at year-end during the closing process.

Formal budgetary integration is generally necessary to account for multiple projects that are undertaken by a government's labor force and financed through capital projects fund. In the case of turnkey projects undertaken through contracts and independent contractors, budgetary integration may not be necessary (professional judgment should be exercised).

Budgetary integration is an effective way of protecting local governments against capital projects cost overruns as well as ensuring timely and sufficient availability of resources to meet expenditure requirements.

Budgetary accounts are those which are necessary to reflect budget operations and conditions. Budgetary accounts are generally used as a control mechanism for general, special revenue and similar governmental funds because the annual budget is a legal requirement for some local governments (counties and dependent special districts). This does not mean that independent special districts are prohibited from using budgetary accounting as a control mechanism. For example, a community services district may adopt a budget pursuant to Government Code section 61110 et seq.

Although largely based on estimates, budgetary accounts are used exclusively for control purposes and therefore do not affect actual revenues and expenditures. Government Code section 29000 et al. (County Budget Act) specifies the content of the budget, budget adoption procedures, and dates by which actions must be taken. Special districts whose affairs and finances are under the supervision and control of a county board of supervisors are subject to the same rules and regulations. Government Code section 53901 requires every local agency, including every special purpose assessing or taxing district, to file their adopted budget with the county in which it conducts its principal operation.

Flexible budgets, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.109 (Section 1700, paragraph .109), embody estimates based on fluctuating demands for goods and services, while fixed budgets typically contain estimates of fixed dollar amounts. In proprietary funds, according to GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.120 (Section 1700, paragraph .120), the demand for goods and services typically drives revenues and expenses; therefore, they are better suited for proprietary fund planning, control, and evaluation purposes than are fixed budgets.

Local governments have the option to use encumbrances. As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.127 (Section 1700, paragraph .127), encumbrance accounting should be used to the extent necessary to assure effective budgetary control and accountability and facilitate effective cash planning and control.

Any encumbrances at year-end do not constitute expenditures or liabilities. They represent the estimated amount of expenditures that will result if unperformed contracts in process at year-end are completed. Local governments that use encumbrance accounting should disclose significant encumbrances in the notes to the financial statements section by major funds and non-major funds taken together in conjunction with any required disclosures about other significant commitments.

Amounts encumbered for specific purposes should be classified as restricted, committed, or assigned fund balance, depending upon the spending limitations of the funding source. Local governments should not report an amount if it is going to cause a deficit in the unassigned fund balance within the general fund.

A contingency appropriation is an appropriation that is established for unforeseen requirements. No specific purpose is designated for this appropriation. No expenditures may be made against a contingency appropriation; they are available only for transfer to a specific-purpose appropriation by the governing body. This must be accomplished through the legally specified process. These are not restricted for reporting purposes if the contingency is internal.

6.02 Government Spending Limitation

The California State Constitution added Article XIII B as a result of the Proposition 4 (1979) Gann Limit Initiative to put a limit on government spending for all levels of California government (state and local). Additionally, the Traffic Congestion Relief And Spending Limitation Act of 1990, known as California Proposition 111, has made some additional changes in the appropriations limits formula as well as funding changes for transportation and education. This resulted in additional changes to Article XIII B of the California Constitution in several places.

Article XIII B provides the guidelines for calculating this legislated appropriation limit and the total annual appropriations subject to the limit. To effectively implement the provisions of Article XIII B, the Legislature added Government Code sections 7900 to 7914 to the California legislation. Both resources should be carefully referenced when calculating these two reporting items.

The County Budget Act (Gov. Code section 29000 – 29144) applies to counties, dependent special districts, and other agencies under the supervision of the county board.

The following two Gann Limit items, as defined in Article XIII B, are required to be included in the budget reports under the provisions of Government Code section 29006 (f). They are to be reported on Schedule 2 of the State Controller's *County Budget Guide* schedules and are also to be reported in the State Controller's Office Financial Transaction Reports summary.

Total annual appropriations subject to limitation (ASL)

Appropriation limit (AL)

ASL = authorization to expend within a fiscal year the proceeds of taxes levied by or for the government entity.

Includes:

- Subventions from the State, with exceptions (see Section 6 of Article XIII B).
- Contributions derived from taxes applied to a rainy day or similar fund in the year of contribution, excluding related withdrawals, expenditures, or transfers from the fund.

Excludes:

- Appropriations for debt service.
- Appropriations required to comply with mandates of the courts or federal government.
- Appropriations of any special district which existed 1/1/1978 that meets criteria in Section 9 of Article XIII B.
- Appropriation for all qualified capital outlay projects, as defined by the Legislature.
- Appropriations of revenue from the Cigarette and Tobacco Products Surtax Fund.
- Appropriations of revenue from the California Children and Families First Trust Fund.
- Appropriations of revenue from the California Healthcare, Research and Prevention Tobacco Tax Act of 2016 Fund.
- Appropriations of revenues from the Road Maintenance and Rehabilitation Account.

AL = Prior year AL* + Δ COL + Δ Population +/- Adjustments

(Δ = change in; COL = Cost of Living)

Adjustments include those from:

- Returns of revenues appropriated in excess of AL
- Transfers of services
- Changes in financial sources

**The base year for AL calculations was in 1978-79, and the formula applies to each subsequent year. The base AL for newly created entities is to be established by electors.*

Pursuant to the provisions of Article XIII B, Section 3(c)(1), if an emergency is declared by the legislative body of an entity government, then "...the appropriations limit of the affected entity of government may be exceeded provided that the appropriations limits in the following three years are reduced accordingly to prevent an aggregate increase in appropriations resulting from the emergency."

Should an emergency be declared by the Governor, the provisions of Article XIII B, Section 3(c)(2) state that the "...appropriations approved by a two-thirds vote of the legislative body of an affected entity of government to an emergency account for expenditures relating to that emergency shall not constitute appropriations subject to limitation."

Article XIII B Definitions

According to Article XIII B of the California State Constitution, the following terminology applies to government spending limitation:

Appropriations subject to limitation of an entity of local government means any authorization to expend during a fiscal year the proceeds of taxes levied by or for that entity and the proceeds of State subvention (other than subventions made pursuant to State mandated reimbursements and tax refunds). With some exception, it does not include local agency loan funds or indebtedness funds, or investment in accounts at banks or savings and loan associations or in liquid securities. [Article XIII B, Sections 8(a) and 8(b) and 8(i)]

Proceeds of taxes include but are not restricted to all tax revenues and proceeds from (1) regulatory licenses, user charges, and user fees, to the extent the proceeds exceed reasonable costs of the related service or product, and (2) the investment of tax revenues. They include receipts of subventions from the State other than mandated reimbursements. [Article XIII B, Section 8(c)]

Local government means any city, county, city and county, school district, special district, authority, or other political subdivision of the State. [Article XIII B, Section 8(d)]

Change in the cost of living for the State, a school district, or a community college district means the percentage change in California per capita personal income from the preceding year. For an entity of local government, other than a school district or a community college district, it shall be either (A) the percentage change in California per capita personal income from the preceding year, or (B) the percentage change in the local assessment roll from the preceding year for the jurisdiction due to the addition of local nonresidential new construction. Each entity of local government shall select its change in the cost of living pursuant to this paragraph annually by a recorded vote of the entity's governing body. [Article XIII B, Section 8(e)]

Change in population of any entity of government, other than the State, a school district, or a community college district, shall be determined by a method prescribed by the Legislature. For a school district or a community college district it shall be the percentage change in the average daily attendance of the school district or community college district from the preceding fiscal year, as determined by a method prescribed by the Legislature. [Article XIII B, Section 8(f)]

Debt service means appropriations required for the cost of interest and redemption charges on indebtedness approved according to law. [Article XIII B, Section 8(g)]

Appropriations limit of each entity of government for each fiscal year is that amount which total annual appropriations subject to limitation shall not exceed. It shall not exceed the appropriations limit of the entity of government for the prior year adjusted for the change in the cost of living and the change in population, with legally necessary adjustments). [Article XIII B, Section 8(h)]

Additional Resources

For determining the change in population and the change in the California per capita personal income, refer to RTC Code section 2227 and the Department of Finance website posting of Price and Population Factors Used for Appropriation Limit Calculations at its website (bottom of the webpage) <http://www.dof.ca.gov/Forecasting/Demographics/Estimates/>

For further guidance from the California State Legislature, refer to Chapter 5 of its publication, *Revenue and Taxation Reference Book*, available at its website <https://arev.assembly.ca.gov/reports>

6.03 Budgetary Classification and Terminology

Governmental Funds and Terminology

Common language and uniform classification can enhance effective management control and accountability. The established terminology and classifications should be used consistently in all phases of budgeting, accounting, and financial reporting.

Proprietary Funds Terminology

The accounts and financial reports of proprietary funds should be maintained and prepared in essentially the same manner as those of similar business enterprises. The terminology and classifications of the flexible budgets (operating plans) should be consistent with those used in financial reports.

The Budgetary Accounts

Estimated Revenues: Amounts of revenue estimated to accrue or to be collected during a given period.

Appropriations: Authorizations granted by the legislative body to make expenditures and incur obligations for specific purposes during the fiscal year.

Encumbrances: Commitments related to open purchase orders, contracts or other obligations that are chargeable to an appropriation and for which a part of an appropriation is reserved. The encumbrances account should never have a credit balance and should always agree with the Reserve for Encumbrance account. Encumbrances outstanding at fiscal year-end do not constitute expenditures.

Estimated Transfers: Estimated transfers between funds within the local government, for example, the capital project fund returns all or part of the funds borrowed from the general fund. (Applicable to governmental funds only.)

Budgetary Fund Balance: This budgetary account is used to account for differences between estimated revenue and appropriations. The use of a budgetary fund balance account simplifies the integration of budgetary accounts into the general ledger and permits the periodic testing of budgetary account balances with a budgetary trial balance. (Applicable to governmental funds only)

At all times during the year: (1) total general ledger budgetary account debits and credits should be equal, (2) total general ledger debits and credits should be equal, and (3) total integrated general ledger (including both budgetary and actual account balances) debits and credits should be equal. The equality of these relationships should be tested periodically.

Reserve for Encumbrances: The Reserve for Encumbrances account is used to offset an encumbrance entry and identify the encumbrance commitments in the budgetary fund balance. For example, a local government issues a purchase order expressing the intent to buy a motor vehicle. An encumbrance is debited against the appropriation with the offsetting credit posted to the Reserve for Encumbrances account. The amount in the Reserve for Encumbrances account is required to be disclosed in the footnotes of the financial statements by major and non-major funds in conjunction with other significant commitments.

The budgetary control exerted by these accounts consists of a comparison of their balances with those of their operating account counterparts. Such a comparison indicates the degree to which operations deviate from the original plan. Both budgetary and operating accounts are often placed on the same subsidiary ledger page to facilitate this comparison.

Balances of budgetary accounts are always opposite in effect (debit, credit) to those of the accounts controlled.

Budgetary Account	Account or Balance Controlled	Difference Indicates
Estimated Revenues (debit)	Revenues (credit)	Over-realized or under-realized revenues
Appropriations (credit)	Expenditures (debit)	Unexpended or over-expended appropriations
Encumbrances (debit)	Unexpended Appropriations (credit)	Unexpended or over-expended unencumbered
Estimated Transfers (debit/credit)	Transfers (in/out)	Unrealized transfers between funds
Budgetary Fund Balance (debit/credit)	Estimated Revenues and Appropriations (planned expenditures)	Available fund balance

Budgetary Account Definitions

Code	Accounts	Definition
602	Estimated Revenues and Estimated Other Financing Sources	The amount of revenues estimated to accrue or be collected (depending on accounting basis) during a fiscal period.
603	Unanticipated Revenues and Other Financing Sources	The amount of revenues which had not been estimated in the budget and which are appropriated for expenditure or applied to the increase of specific fund balance classifications during the current fiscal period.
604	Unrealized Estimated Revenues and Estimated Other Financing Sources	The amount of appropriations and segregated fund balance provisions which are canceled because of failure to realize budgeted estimated revenues.
605	Appropriations and Estimated Other Financing Uses	The authorizations by the governing body to make expenditures and incur obligations for specific purposes.
606	Budgetary Nonspendable Fund Balance – Acct Name	This account shows those budgetary allocations that are either not in a spendable form or there is a legal/ contractual restriction on the use of these funds.
607	Budgetary Restricted Fund Balance – Acct Name	This account shows those budgetary allocations that have restrictions placed on them by creditors or enabling legislation.
608	Budgetary Committed Fund Balance – Acct Name	This account contains budgetary allocations that represent commitments imposed by the governing authority of the local government entity.
609	Budgetary Assigned Fund Balance – Acct Name	This account contains those budgetary allocations that the local government entity intends to use for specific purposes. These allocations not restricted, committed, or nonspendable.
610	Budgetary Unassigned Fund Balance – Acct Name	This account represents budgetary allocations with no specific allocations or restrictions (internal or external) on the use of funds.
611	Encumbrances	Obligations in the form of purchase orders, contracts, or other commitments that recorded for budgetary control purposes.
612	Budgetary Fund Balance – Reserve for Encumbrances	The segregation of a portion of the fund balance for expenditure to offset the Encumbrances account. It should always match the balance in the Encumbrance account.

6.04 Control and Subsidiary Ledger Accounts

Budgetary accounts in the general ledger are also referred to as control accounts, including their subsidiary ledger accounts. Detailed appropriations by budget unit and subobject can be summarized in the general ledger appropriations control account in the same manner detailed expenditure subobjects of a fund are summarized in a single general ledger expenditures account.

Note: The use of budgetary control accounts in the general ledger does not affect the actual revenues and expenditures recognized during the accounting period. This is accomplished by simply reversing, at the end of the reporting period, the budgetary control accounts created when the budget was initially recorded.

Combined Subsidiary Ledgers

A subsidiary ledger could be established for estimated revenues and another for appropriations, which are both budgetary accounts. However, as both estimated revenues and expenses are expressed in terms of the same accounts, their subsidiary ledgers are often combined.

Combining ledgers facilitates the budgetary control function and adds little, if anything, to the size of the resulting ledger, as the recording of estimated revenue seldom requires more than one entry for each account on an annual basis. Encumbrances may be set up in a separate subsidiary ledger; however, it is usually more convenient and useful to include them in the combined appropriation-expenditure ledger.

An illustrative example of a combined Revenue Ledger is shown below. For example purposes, assume that a local government expects to receive \$900,000 in property taxes in fiscal year 20X1-20X2 and on 08/06/20X1, the local government received \$400,000 worth of July property taxes.

Fund: General		20X1-20X2	Account: Recreation Services		
			Revenues		
Date	Posting Reference	Description	Revenue Estimate (Debit)	Actual Revenues (Credit)	Unrealized Balance
7-1	J 1	Budget	\$ 900,000		\$ 900,000 (Debit)
8-6	DP 161	July Property Taxes		\$ 400,000	\$ 500,000 (Debit)

The credit of \$400,000 to Revenues is posted to the Actual Revenues column of the revenues ledger; the resulting \$500,000 balance indicates that this amount of property tax revenue remains to be realized to meet the budget estimate.

Similarly, Appropriations and Expenditures are both expressed in terms of the expenditure accounts and may be readily combined in a single appropriations/expenditure ledger. For example, assume that a local government estimated salaries to be \$100,000 in fiscal year 20X1–20X2. On 07/31/20X1, the local government paid \$10,000 in salaries.

Fund: General		20X1-20X2	Account: Recreation Office Expense		
			Expenditures		
Date	Posting Reference	Description	Appropriations (Debit)	Expenditures (Credit)	Unrealized Balance
7-1	J 1	Budget	\$ 100,000		\$ 100,000 (Credit)
7-5	W 98	July Salaries		\$ 10,000	\$ 90,000 (Credit)

The debit of \$10,000 to expenditures is posted to the Actual Salaries Expenditure Account in the salaries ledger, resulting in a \$90,000 remaining appropriation balance, which indicates that this amount of salary expenditures remains to be realized to meet the budget estimate.

6.05 The Encumbrance System

When appropriations are restricted on the basis of commitments, an encumbrance system is in effect. Under this system, the encumbrances are debited and the Budgetary Fund Balance—Reserve for Encumbrances is credited at the time a commitment is issued. The appropriation remains encumbered until payment is made or a cancellation occurs, at which time the encumbering entry is reversed.

Example:

- 1) A purchase order is issued for a laptop for a manager within the local government. The estimated cost is \$2,500.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Encumbrances – Manager - Equipment	DR: \$2,500	
Budgetary Fund Balance - Reserved for Encumbrances		CR: \$2,500
(To record encumbrance for manager's laptop)		

- 2) The laptop is received along with a statement for \$2,530. The statement is paid.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Budgetary Fund Balance - Reserved for Encumbrances	DR: \$2,500	
Encumbrances – Manager - Equipment		CR: \$2,500
(To reverse the encumbrance for manager's laptop)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures – Manager - Equipment	DR: \$2,530	
Cash		CR: \$2,530
(To record the payment for manager's laptop)		

Encumbrances represent commitments (e.g., contracts and purchase orders). While doing so is not compulsory, governments often use encumbrance accounting to control expenditures. According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.185 (Section 1800, paragraph .185), governments that use encumbrance accounting should disclose significant encumbrances in their notes to the financial statements by major funds and non-major funds in conjunction with required disclosures about other significant commitments.

Note: The encumbrance transaction is always reversed in the same amount for which it was placed, regardless of the amount of the related expenditure. An encumbrance system reduces the possibility of commitments in excess of appropriations that may arise from a delay in the receipt of billings.

If a difference exists between the estimate and the actual cost of an item, an additional appropriation might still be required.

Need for Encumbrance System

Generally, the need for the type of control provided by encumbrance accounting increases as the size of the local government increases. No exact rule can be stated as to what size a local government should be to use an encumbrance system. Encumbrance accounting should be used to the extent necessary to assure effective budgetary control and accountability, and to facilitate effective cash planning and control.

An alternative, to facilitate appropriate budgetary control, is through the use of a simple file of unfilled purchase orders. When a particular purchase is proposed, this file is reviewed to determine whether any encumbrances are outstanding against the relevant appropriation.

If so, no commitment should be made unless the unencumbered balance is sufficient to cover the proposed purchase or there are transferrable funds in another account.

It is not necessary for a local government to have a purchasing agent in order to use the encumbrance system. However, purchase orders should be reviewed by the chief fiscal officer or his or her designee to determine the adequacy of unencumbered appropriations prior to approval and issuance to vendors. A purchasing policy should be established to provide guidelines.

If an encumbrance system is used by a local government entity, significant encumbrances should be disclosed in the notes to financial statements. For more information on disclosure requirements for encumbrances refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1700.127.

Adopted Budget

6.06 Recording the Adopted Budget

The adopted budget must be balanced. In other words, the available financing should be sufficient to cover the total expenditure requirements.

Example:

On June 30, the General Fund has a fund balance of \$60,000. The adopted budget has estimated revenues of \$1,000,000 and appropriations of \$1,060,000.

The budgetary entry would be:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Estimated Revenues	DR: \$1,000,000	
Budgetary Unassigned Fund Balance	DR: \$60,000	
Appropriations for Expenditures		CR: \$1,060,000

(To record the 20X1-X2 budget adopted by the board 7-25-X1)

If the legally adopted budget is not amended, the budgetary account balances will remain unchanged until the end of the accounting period. If the budget is amended, appropriate revisions are posted to the affected budgetary accounts.

6.07 Recording Encumbrances

Example:

The following transactions took place within a local government entity:

- In August 20X1, the Public Works Department ordered motor vehicles with an estimated cost of \$250,000. In September 20X1, the motor vehicles were shipped to the local government entity with an invoice totaling \$245,000.
- In August 20X1, the local government entity ordered gravel for a road maintenance project with an estimated cost of \$300,000. In September 20X1, the gravel was delivered to the maintenance site with an invoice totaling \$310,000.

August 20X1 entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Encumbrance — Motor Vehicles	DR: \$250,000	
Reserved for Encumbrance — Motor Vehicles		CR: \$250,000
(To record encumbrance for motor vehicles)		
Encumbrance—Gravel	DR: \$300,000	
Reserved for Encumbrance — Gravel		CR: \$300,000
(To record encumbrance for gravel)		

September 20X1 entries

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Reserved for Encumbrance — Motor Vehicles	DR: \$250,000	
Encumbrance — Motor Vehicles		CR: \$250,000
(Reverse encumbrance of motor vehicles)		
Expenditures	DR: \$245,000	
Accounts Payable		CR: \$245,000
(Record purchase of motor vehicles)		
Reserved for Encumbrance — Gravel	DR: \$300,000	
Encumbrance — Gravel		CR: \$300,000
(Reverse encumbrance of gravel)		
Expenditures	DR: \$310,000	
Accounts Payable		CR: \$310,000
(Record purchase of gravel)		

6.08 Year-End Budgetary Accounting

At fiscal year-end, after reports are complete, the balances of the Appropriation and Estimated Revenue accounts are reversed in the same amount for which they were initially entered for the year.

Encumbrances are also reversed at year-end in the same amount entered, regardless of the actual amount of the related expenditure, along with the offset to the Reserve for Encumbrance account. The Budgetary Fund Balance account, with the approval of the governing body, should be re-established, as applicable, in the new fiscal year. If prior year commitments are not re-established in the new fiscal year, they should be canceled.

Encumbrances outstanding at year-end represent the estimated amount of the expenditures; they do not constitute expenditures or liabilities. There is no detailed presentation of the encumbrance system in the financial statements.

Example:

1) At fiscal year-end when the books are closed.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Revenues	DR: \$1,000,000	
Appropriations	DR: \$1,200,000	
Reserve for Encumbrances	DR: \$50,000	
Fund Balance	DR: \$100,000	
Estimated Revenues		CR: \$900,000
Expenditures		CR: \$1,100,000
Encumbrances		CR: \$50,000
Budgetary Fund Balance		CR: \$300,000

2) As of day one of the new fiscal year, the new budget is recorded.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Estimated Revenue	DR: \$950,000	
Budgetary Fund Balance	DR: \$150,000	
Appropriations		CR: \$1,100,000

3) Encumbrances outstanding at the end of the preceding year are re-established, along with their encumbered appropriations.

Budgetary Accounts

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Encumbrances	DR: \$50,000	
Reserve for Encumbrances		CR: \$50,000

Deposit with Others

With respect to amounts on deposit with others, all or part of which are expected to become expenditures, an encumbrance should be placed on the appropriation at the time the deposit is made. In this case, the deposit is considered the equivalent of a commitment.

The encumbrance remains until the amount of expenditure is determined, at which time the encumbrance is lifted and the appropriate part of the deposit is charged to expenditures.

Example:

1) A deposit is made for the project.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Encumbrances	DR: \$50,000	
Reserve for Encumbrances		CR: \$50,000
(Professional and special services)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deposits with Others	DR: \$50,000	
Cash		CR: \$50,000
(Deposit Paid to Vendors)		

2) Upon completion of the project, the local governments' share of the cost is \$46,000. The remaining \$4,000 on deposit is refunded.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Reserve for Encumbrances	DR: \$50,000	
Encumbrances		CR: \$50,000
(Professional and special services)		

Chapter 6: Budgetary Accounting

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$4,000	
Expenditures	DR: \$46,000	
Deposits with Other		CR: \$50,000
(Professional and special services)		
Payments will be expensed when the check is written		

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 7: Classification and Terminology

Chapter Contents

Introduction	85
Balance Sheet and Statement of Net Position Accounts	86
7.01 Chart of Accounts Terminology.....	86
Balance Sheet	95
7.02 Fund Balance Classification and Reporting	95
7.03 Reporting Interfund Activity.....	100
7.04 Chart of Accounts — Balance Sheet	102
7.05 Stabilization Arrangements	119
7.06 General Reserves.....	119
Expenditures/Expenses	120
7.07 Expenditure and Expense Classifications	120
7.08 Use of Objects (Accounts) and Subobjects	121
7.09 Chart of Objects (Accounts) and Subobjects	122
7.10 Explanation of Objects and Subobjects	124
7.11 Expenditure/Expense Accounts by Function (Program)/Budget Unit.....	148
Revenues	154
7.12 Revenue Classification	154
7.13 Program Revenues.....	154
7.14 General Revenues.....	155
7.15 Extraordinary and Special Items	155
7.16 Operating vs. Nonoperating Revenues.....	156
7.17 Reporting Revenue.....	156
7.18 Chart of Accounts — Revenues.....	157
7.19 Explanation of Revenue Accounts	161
Pension/OPEB Plan Accounts	184
7.20 Chart of Accounts and Explanation of Accounts	184

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 7: Classification and Terminology

Introduction

The use of proper terminology and appropriate classification is essential throughout the budgeting, accounting, and reporting processes, according to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.101 (Section 1800, paragraph .101). Common terminology and classification should be used consistently throughout the budget, accounts, and financial reports of each fund or activity. Among other benefits, doing so will provide a reasonable degree of comparability among the financial reports of governmental units.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.101 (Section 1800, paragraph .101):

It is especially important that:

- a) transfers be distinguished from revenues and expenditures or expenses in the basic financial statements;
- b) proceeds of general long-term debt issues be distinguished from governmental fund revenues and expenditures; and
- c) the terms revenues and expenses, as used in the government-wide financial statements and in proprietary and trust fund financial statements, be distinguished from the terms revenues and expenditures as used in the governmental fund financial statements and that their distinctive meaning be understood by all concerned with governmental budgeting, accounting, and reporting.

Users of this manual should note that the chart of accounts information prescribed in this chapter is not all-inclusive. It is strongly suggested that local government entities design their chart of accounts based on their specific operational needs.

In 2024 GASB approved Statement No. 103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements* (GASBS 103), which will become effective for local government entities with fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2025. Following is a table of key terms covered by GASBS 103.

Term	Description
Operating Revenues and Expenses (Proprietary Fund)	GASBS 103 provides more consistency on how revenues and expenses are classified. GASBS 103 also provides a definition of what constitutes nonoperating revenues or expenses. If a revenue or expense item does not meet the definition of <u>nonoperating revenue or expense</u> , then it is reported as an <u>operating revenue or expense</u> .
Nonoperating Revenues and Expenses (Proprietary Fund)	
Subsidies (Proprietary Fund)	GASBS 103 defines <u>Subsidies</u> and also illustrates how they are to be reported in the financial statements.
Unusual or Infrequent Items	GASBS 103 no longer requires local government entities to report “ <u>Special</u> ” and/or “ <u>Extraordinary</u> ” items. GASBS 103 now requires these items to be reported as “ <u>Unusual</u> ” or “ <u>Infrequent</u> ” items.

Balance Sheet and Statement of Net Position Accounts

7.01 Chart of Accounts Terminology

The numbering systems used throughout this manual are intended for reference purposes only. Common terminology and classifications should be used throughout the budgeting, accounting, and financial reporting activities for California counties, and should align with the annual State Controller's Office Counties Financial Transactions Report. Similar classifications enhance the comparability of governmental financial statements and improve their usefulness for comparative analysis purposes.

Where appropriate, counties may supplement these classifications with additional ones in light of local circumstances. Some counties will not need all of the accounts included in this chapter. Only the necessary accounts should be used.

The accounts used in this chapter are numbered consecutively. The 100 series is for Assets, the 200 series is for Deferred Outflows of Resources, the 300 series is for Liabilities, the 400 series is for Deferred Inflows of Resources, the 500 series is for Fund Balance and Net Position, and the 600 series is for Financing Sources/Uses and Budgetary accounts.

The related chart of accounts for the 100 through 500 series are located in Chapter section 7.04, *Chart of Accounts — Balance Sheet*. The related chart of accounts for the 600 series is located at the end of Chapter section 6.03, *Budgetary Classification and Terminology*.

A county may develop its own numbering system as long as the system allows the county to comply with statutory reporting requirements. Each county should develop an account coding system consistent with its own accounting needs.

An account coding system permits the identification of individual accounts without reporting the full titles in each instance. It also facilitates the referencing of entries on documents and records and aids in reflecting account relationships. Additionally, all modern financial accounting software requires a unique alphanumeric code for each specific account.

Current Assets

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.109 (Section 1800, paragraph .109):

For accounting and financial reporting purposes, the term current assets is used to designate cash and other assets or resources commonly identified as those that are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed within a year. Therefore, current assets generally include such resources as:

- (a) cash available for current operations and cash equivalents;
- (b) inventories of merchandise, raw materials, goods in process, finished goods, operating supplies, and ordinary maintenance material and parts;
- (c) trade accounts, notes, and acceptances receivable;
- (d) receivables from taxpayers, other governments, vendors, customers, beneficiaries, and employees, if collectible within a year;

- (e) installment or accounts and notes receivable if they conform generally to normal trade practices and terms within the business-type activity;
- (f) marketable securities representing the investment of cash available for current operations; and
- (g) prepayments such as insurance, interest, rents, unused royalties, current paid advertising service not yet received, and operating supplies.

Note that prepayments are not current assets in the sense that they will be converted into cash, but in the sense that, if not paid in advance, they would require the use of current assets within a year. As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.111 (Section 1800, paragraph .111), unearned discounts (other than cash, quantity discounts, etc.), finance charges, and interest included in the face amount of receivables should be shown as a deduction from the related receivables.

Other Assets

In some instances, restriction of assets, primarily cash, is required or prudent. Such action ensures that the resources are available when needed. The restriction of cash or other assets could be mandated, as in the case of loan requirements, or optional, as in the case of a capital asset replacement reserve.

Restricted assets have external enforceable limitations and include money or other items of value received by or promised to an organization, the use of which is legally or contractually restricted. The restrictions generally arise from externally imposed requirements, such as those imposed by law.

Some examples of restricted assets include:

- Cash with fiscal agent
- Customer deposits
- Revenue bond construction account
- Capital asset replacement

Noncurrent assets are expected either to be liquidated or consumed beyond one year or are restricted from being liquidated in the current year. Assets under this classification would include restricted assets (noncurrent), capital assets (not being depreciated), capital assets (being depreciated), and other noncurrent assets.

General capital assets such as land, easements, buildings, infrastructure, intangible assets (e.g. software, trademarks, leases, etc.) and equipment purchases used by governmental funds should be recorded as a capital outlay expenditure in the governmental funds and not represented as a fund asset. However, the capital asset is removed from expenditures and shown in the balance sheet when reported in the government-wide financial statements.

Inexhaustible capital assets should be presented in the proprietary and fiduciary funds, and government-wide financial statements of net position. Refer to Chapter 9, *Reporting Capital Assets*, for additional information.

Current Liabilities

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.113 (Section 1800, paragraph .113), the term current liabilities “is primarily used to designate obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources properly classified as current assets, or the creation of other current liabilities.”

It should be noted that current liabilities apply to both governmental and proprietary funds. However in governmental funds, liabilities are recognized only to the extent that they are normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources (i.e., modified accrual basis).

The term current liabilities is intended to include obligations the government expects to liquidate within one year. This includes liabilities such as:

- payables incurred to acquire materials and supplies for current services;
- collections received in advance of services;
- debts that arise from operations of the operating cycle, such as accruals for wages, salaries, commissions, rentals, and royalties;
- short-term debts arising from the acquisition of capital assets;
- maturities of long-term obligations;
- amounts required to be expended within one year under sinking fund provisions; and
- collections or acceptance of cash or other assets on behalf of third parties.

The current liability classification also includes obligations that are either due on demand or will be due on demand within one year from the date of the financial statements. Refer to Chapter 10, *Reporting Liabilities*, for additional information.

Deferred Resources (Outflows/Inflows)

Inflows of resources (such as accounts receivable from revenues) are an acquisition of net assets applicable to the current reporting period. Outflows of resources are a consumption of net assets applicable to the current reporting period, for example (e.g., salaries and wages paid for work performed). When outflows or inflows of resources are applicable to future periods, they are deferred for reporting and shown in the financial statements separately as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources.

In governmental funds, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources represent certain defined transactions related to future periods that do not qualify for treatment as either assets or liabilities (e.g., property taxes levied in the current year to finance the subsequent year's budget).

Amounts that are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources should be reported in a separate section following assets in the Statement of Net Position. Similarly, amounts that are required to be reported as deferred inflows of resources should be reported in a separate section following liabilities in the Statement of Net Position.

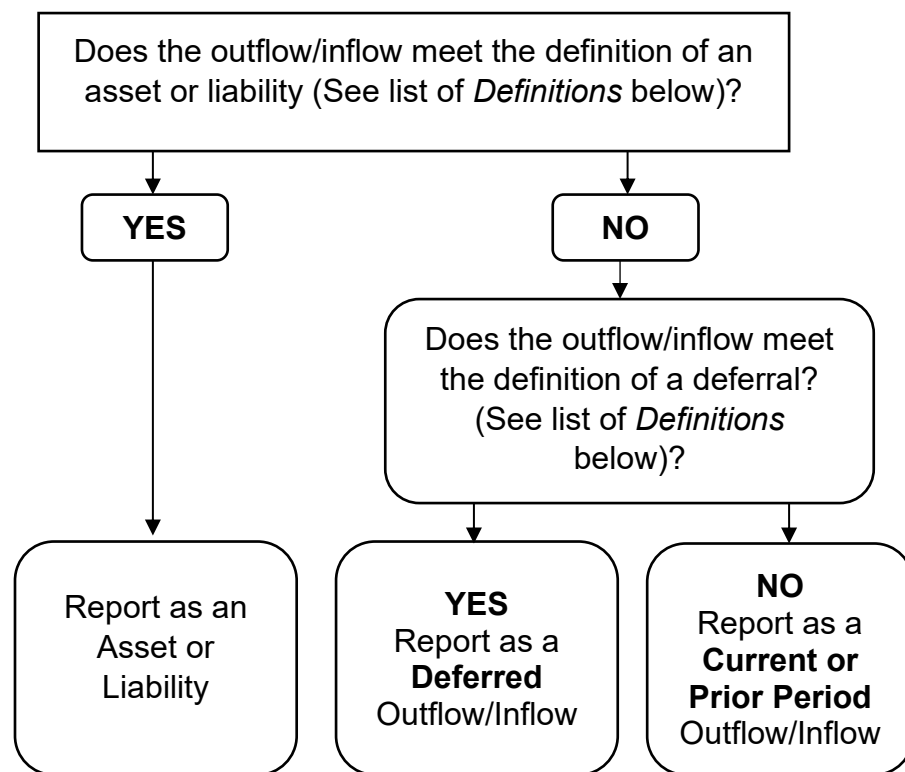
A deferred outflow of resources has a positive effect on the current reporting period's net position, similar to assets, deferred inflows of resources has a negative effect on the current reporting period's net position, similar to liabilities. Notwithstanding those similarities, deferred outflows of resources are not assets, and deferred inflows of resources are not liabilities and, therefore should not be included in those sections of a statement of financial position.

Additionally, the use of the term deferred is limited to items reported as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources and should not be used in connection with any other account title.

The primary differences between current outflows/inflows of resources and deferred outflows/inflows of resources is the timing of when expenses/expenditures and revenues are recognized, and the financial statements on which they are reported.

Current outflows/inflows of resources (expenses/expenditures/revenues) are recognized when incurred/received and are reported on the income statements. Deferred outflows/Deferred inflows of resources (deferred expenses/revenues), on the other hand, are deferred (delayed) until a future period and are reported on the Statement of Net Position following Assets/Liabilities.

The following flowchart can be used to determine whether or not an outflow or inflow meets the definition of an asset, liability, a current outflow/inflow, or a deferred outflow/inflow.



Outflows/Inflows Flowchart Instructions

- Use the flowchart to the left to determine whether a transaction is an asset/liability, current/prior outflow/inflow, or a deferred outflow/inflow.
- Refer to the list below for transaction types that may be classified as an asset/liability, current/prior outflow/inflow, or a deferred outflow/inflow.

The following definitions are related to the terminology used in the preceding outflows/inflows flowchart:

- **Assets** are resources with present service capacity that the government presently controls.
- **Liabilities** are present obligations to sacrifice resources that the government has little or no discretion to avoid.
- A **deferred outflow of resources** is a consumption of net position by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period.
- A **deferred inflow of resources** is an acquisition of net position by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period.
- An **outflow of resources** is a consumption of net assets by the government that is applicable to the current period.
- An **inflow of resources** is an acquisition of net assets by the government that is applicable to the current reporting period.

Common Outflows/Inflows

Items That May Be Classified As Outflows/Inflows

Items listed in the following chart should first be filtered through the Outflows/Inflows Flowchart that was presented in the preceding section to determine whether the item is an asset/liability, a current outflow/inflow, or a deferred outflow/inflow. The following list is not all-inclusive.

Term	General Definition
Charges for Current Services (Governmental Fund)	Charges for current services exclusive of revenues of proprietary funds.
Contributions and Donations from Private Sources	Financial resources provided by private contributors.
Escheat (Property)	The State as legal <u>sovereign</u> typically takes custody of private property when the owner cannot be found. Examples include estates without an heir or an abandoned bank account.
Unusual or Infrequent items	Transactions or other events that are either unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence. An event or transaction is unusual in nature if the underlying event or transaction possesses a high degree of abnormality and be of a type clearly unrelated to, or only incidentally related to, the ordinary and typical activities of the government. If the underlying event or transaction is not reasonably expected to recur in the foreseeable future, it is considered to have infrequency of occurrence. In order to designate an event or transaction as unusual in nature or infrequent in nature, the environment in which the government operates has to be taken into consideration.
Fines	Includes money exacted as a penalty by a court or other authority. Examples include fines imposed by a commission for statutory offenses, violation of lawful administrative rules and regulations, and neglect of official duty.
Forfeitures	Includes money derived from confiscating deposits held as performance guarantees.
Insurance Other Than Employee Benefits	Expenditures for all types of insurance coverage, including property, liability, and fidelity, exclusive of employee benefits.
Intergovernmental Expenditures	Includes expenditures made by one level or unit of government to another in support of government activities administered by the recipient. Excluded from this classification are matching employer contributions by a government to a pension or retirement system administered by another government.
Intergovernmental Payable	Amounts owed by one government entity to another. For example, the City of Elk Grove owes money to a Special District in Sacramento County for providing garbage disposal services.

Term	General Definition
Intergovernmental Receivable	Represents balance of amounts due to the reporting agency from another government. The amounts may represent intergovernmental grants, entitlements, or shared revenues. May also represent taxes collected for the reporting government by an intermediary collecting government, loans, and charges for goods or services rendered by the reporting government to another government.
Intergovernmental Revenues	Revenues collected from one government on behalf of another. Examples include operating grants, entitlements, shared revenues, or payments in lieu of taxes.
Issuance Cost (specify debt)	Costs associated with underwriting and bond issuance. Generally, these costs include legal fees, and other costs associated with bond issuance.
Leases	Lease revenues expected by a lessor should initially be recorded as a deferred inflow of resources and then recognized as revenue in a systematic and rational manner over the lease term (Does not include short-term lease rentals).
Official/Administrative Fees	Services in support of the government's various policy-making and managerial activities. Includes management consulting activities directed toward general governance or business and financial management of the government, election, and tax assessing and collecting services.
Other Financing Uses	Includes financial outflows classified separately from expenditures.
Penalties and Interest on Delinquent Taxes	Amount assessed as penalties for the payment of taxes after their due date, and the interest charge on delinquent taxes from their due date to the date of actual payment. Separate accounts should be used for penalties and interest on each type of tax (e.g., general property tax, general and selective sales, and use taxes).
Printing and Binding Fees	Expenditures for printing and binding, usually according to specifications of the government. Includes designing and printing forms and posters, as well as printing and binding government publications.
Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP)	PPP revenues expected by a transferor should initially be recorded as a deferred inflow of resources and then recognized as revenue in a systematic and rational manner over the PPP term.
Proceeds of General Capital Asset Dispositions	Financial inflows provided from the disposition of general capital assets (e.g., sales of buildings, compensation for loss of general capital assets).

Term	General Definition
Purchased Property Services	Services purchased to operate, repair, maintain, and rent property owned or used by the government. These services are performed by persons other than government employees.
Regulated Operations	Rate actions of a regulator can result in a deferred inflows of resources being imposed on a regulated business-type activity. For example, a regulator can establish current rates intended to recover costs that are expected to be incurred in the future with the understanding that if those costs are not incurred, future rates will be reduced by corresponding amounts. The regulated business-type activity should not recognize the amounts charged pursuant to such rates as revenue. Those amounts should be reported as deferred inflows of resources and recognized as revenue when the associated costs are incurred. A regulator can require that a gain or other reduction of net allowable costs be given to customers over future periods. If a gain or other reduction of net allowable costs is to be allocated over future periods for rate-making purposes, the regulated business-type activity should not recognize that gain or other reduction of net allowable costs in the current period. It should be reported as a deferred inflow of resources for future reductions of charges to customers that are expected to result.
Rents and Royalties	Financial resources derived from the use by others of the government's tangible and intangible assets.
Special Assessments	Amounts levied against certain properties to defray all or part of the cost of a specific capital improvement or service deemed to benefit those properties primarily.
Special Assessment Financing	Resources provided by the issuance of bond debt for which the government is obligated to defray all or part of the cost of a specific capital improvement.
Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA)	SBITA variable payments expected to be incurred (not dependent on an index or rate) by a government should be recognized as outflows of resources in the period in which these payments are due (exceptions apply). In subsequent financial reporting periods, the amortization of the discount on the subscription liability should also be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., interest expense).
Travel	Expenditures for transportation, meals, hotel, and other expenses associated with staff travel for the government. Payments for per diem in lieu of reimbursements for subsistence (room and board) are also charged here.

Uncommon Outflows/Inflows

Items in the following chart are rarely deferrals; however, they should be first filtered through the Outflows/Inflows Flowchart that was presented earlier in this chapter to determine whether the item is an asset/liability, a current outflow/inflow, or a deferred outflow/inflow.

The following list is not all-inclusive.

Term	General Definition
Advance to Other Funds (specify fund)	Long-term loans to other funds.
Advance from Other Funds (specify fund)	Long-term loans from other funds.
Due to Other Fund (specify fund)	Amounts due to other funds for goods and services normally transferred in the following fiscal year.
Due from Other Fund (specify fund)	Amounts due from other funds for goods and services normally transferred in the following fiscal year.
Due to Component Unit	Amounts owed by a primary government to a discretely presented component unit as a result of goods or services provided or loans made by the discretely presented component unit.
Due from Component Unit	Amounts owed by a discretely presented component unit to a primary government as a result of goods or services provided or loans made to the discretely presented component unit.

Examples of Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources

Most grants made and received by local governments are expenditure-driven. In other words, local governments first spend money on a program or function and then qualify to receive a grant reimbursing them. Sometimes a local government is required to meet certain conditions other than spending money before the grantor will provide the grant payment, even though grants are often paid before the recipient or receiving special district has met all of the eligibility requirements.

If a local government receives a \$500 grant payment but has not yet met all of the requirements necessary to be eligible for the grant, it technically owes that grant payment back to the grantor until it meets the requirements. For that reason, the recipient should report a liability and the provider of the grant should report an asset until all of the eligibility requirements have been met (with the exception of time requirements).

	Assets	+	Deferred Outflows	-	Liabilities	-	Deferred Inflows	=	Net Position
(A)	\$500 Cash	+		-	\$500 Grants Received in Advance	-		=	No Change

Alternatively, if a cash grant is received and all of the eligibility requirements have been met (except for the time requirement), and the grant will not be used until the next fiscal year. The grant should be recognized as a deferred inflow of resources.

	Assets	+	Deferred Outflows	-	Liabilities	-	Deferred Inflows	=	Net Position
(B)	\$500 Cash	+		-		-	\$500 Grants With Time Requirements	=	No Change

There is no effect on net position in either case. In (A), the recipient local government has not yet done what is required in order to be eligible for the grant, and if it never meets the eligibility requirements, then the grant should be returned. In (B), however, the local government should wait for the next fiscal year; the inflow is related to a future period and, therefore, should be reported as a deferral.

Balance Sheet

7.02 Fund Balance Classification and Reporting

For governmental fund types, the fund balance is the equity section of the balance sheet. The fund balance is classified into five segments: Nonspendable, Restricted, Committed, Assigned, and Unassigned. As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.166 (Section 1800, paragraph .166), these classifications provide a hierarchy based primarily on the extent to which the government is bound to honor constraints on the specific purposes for which amounts can be spent.

Depending on the type of fund, each organization should choose the appropriate fund balance classification that meets its needs. Fund balance classifications should be reported in the fund level financial statements. The guidance in the following sections cover only governmental-type funds (General Fund, Special Revenue Funds, Capital Projects Funds, Debt Service Funds, and Permanent Funds).

Nonspendable, Restricted, Committed, and Assigned Fund Balances indicate those portions of the total fund balance that are not available for appropriation, until some action has occurred internally or externally, and as defined in the following chart.

Classification	General Definition	Examples
Nonspendable	Amounts that cannot be spent because they are either: (a) Not in spendable form; or (b) Legally or contractually required to be maintained intact.	• Inventories • Prepaid items • Long-term receivables in the general fund • Permanent principal of permanent funds
Restricted	Fund balances should be reported as restricted when constraints placed on the use of resources are either: (a) Externally imposed by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments; or (b) Imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.	• Restricted by state statute • Unspent bond proceeds • Grants earned but not spent • Debt covenants • Taxes dedicated to a specific purpose • Revenues restricted by enabling legislation • Long-term receivables in the General Fund • Property taxes
Committed	Used for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the government's highest level of decision-making authority.	• The governing board has decided to spend \$1M for a new city hall (self-imposed restriction) • Property tax levies set for a specific purpose by resolution
Assigned	Amounts that are constrained by the government's intent to be used for specific purposes, but are neither restricted nor committed.	• Governing board has set aside \$2M for a hospital. Executive management of the local government entity may amend this up to \$10M • Governing body delegates the authority to assign fund balances to the finance officer • Governing board has appropriated fund balance to balance next year's budget • Positive residual balances in governmental funds other than the general fund
Unassigned	Unassigned fund balance is the residual classification for the general fund. This is fund balance that has <u>not</u> been reported in any other classification. The general fund is the only fund that can report a positive unassigned fund balance. Other governmental funds would report deficit fund balances as unassigned.	• The stabilization fund (provided there are no specific conditions placed on the use of the fund).

Nonspendable Fund Balance

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.167 (Section 1800, paragraph .167):

The nonspendable fund balance classification includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either (a) not in spendable form or (b) legally or contractually required to be maintained intact.” The not spendable-in-form amounts include items that are not expected to be converted to cash (e.g., inventories and prepaid amounts).

This classification also includes long-term loans and notes receivables, as well as property held for resale. If the use of proceeds from the collection of the receivables or from the sale of the properties is restricted, committed, or assigned, then the proceeds should be included in the appropriate fund balance classification, rather than the nonspendable fund balance. The principal component of a permanent fund is an example of an amount that is statutorily or contractually required to be maintained intact.

The nonspendable fund balance may be inadequate to meet the anticipated actual nonspendable fund balance requirements. In such cases, the nonspendable fund balance should be increased by transfers from other financing requirements or, if possible, be augmented by the unanticipated financing provisions.

Example:

A five-year, \$10,000 loan is to be made to a county service area from the general fund. The budget contains no provision for this item. An amount of \$10,000 from unassigned fund balance (general fund) will be used to make a loan to the county service area.

a) To record provisions for making a of \$10,000 to the county service area (CSA):

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Unassigned Fund Balance	DR: \$10,000	
Nonspendable Fund Balance—Advance to CSA		CR: \$10,000

b) To record the loan made to the CSA:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Advance to CSA Receivable	DR: \$10,000	
Cash		CR: \$10,000

Restricted Fund Balance

Restricted fund balance should be used when constraints placed on the use of resources are either imposed by external parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation. This classification is established to offset those balance sheet assets that are not available to meet expenditure requirements during the year. Restricted fund balance classifications include limitations imposed externally by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments.

Restricted fund balance may be inadequate to meet the anticipated actual restricted requirements. In such cases, the restricted fund balance should either be increased by transfers from other financing requirements or, if possible, be augmented by the unanticipated financing provisions.

Example:

A local government entity's governing board passed a resolution to increase its debt service payments by an additional \$100,000 due to contractual obligations. The increase in debt payments will be met by excess funds available in the assigned fund balance portion of the general fund.

General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Assigned Fund Balance	DR: \$100,000	
Due to Debt Service Fund		CR: \$100,000
Due to Debt Service Fund	DR: \$100,000	
Cash		CR: \$100,000

Debt Service Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due from General Fund	DR: \$100,000	
Restricted Fund Balance—Debt Service		CR: \$100,000
Cash	DR: \$100,000	
Due from General Fund		CR: \$100,000

Committed Fund Balance

Amounts that are constrained for a specific purpose by a local government using its highest level of decision-making authority should be classified as committed fund balance. The formal action of the local governments' highest level of decision-making authority that commits fund balance should occur prior to the end of the reporting period, but the amount, if any, which will be subject to the constraint, may be determined in the subsequent period.

Committed fund balance classifications are established to offset those balance sheet assets that are not available to meet expenditure requirements during the year. These classifications may include limitations internally imposed, such as those approved by the Board of Supervisors.

The committed fund balance may be inadequate to meet the anticipated actual committed requirements. Unless the decision-making authority changes the commitment, the committed fund balance should either be increased by transfers from other financing requirements or, if possible, be augmented by the unanticipated financing provisions.

Assigned Fund Balance

The assigned fund balance is the amount that is constrained by a local government's intent to be used for specific purposes, but is neither restricted nor committed, with the exception of stabilization arrangements that meet the GASB criteria to be considered as assigned fund balance. This amount may include the aggregation of resources for equipment replacement, capital projects, and capital asset acquisition not subject to accrual, which are expected to develop in future periods. When there is no longer a need or intent to use the assigned fund balance, the local government may make all or a portion of the remaining assigned fund balance available for unassigned fund balance.

Unassigned Fund Balance

The unassigned fund balance is the residual amount not classified as nonspendable, restricted, committed, or assigned in the general fund. The general fund should be the only fund that reports a positive unassigned fund balance. For other governmental funds, a negative unassigned fund balance should be reported when the amounts expended are in excess of the resources received by that fund.

Example:

As the result of an audit, it was determined that the expenditures for 20X1 were understated by \$100,000. The expenditures used amounts that had been classified as assigned fund balance. The actual accounts for 20X1 are adjusted and the correction is reflected in the financial statement.

The entry to record the 20X1 audit adjustments affecting available fund balance would be as follows:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Assigned Fund Balance	DR: \$100,000	
Unassigned Fund Balance		CR: \$100,000

If the changes resulted in a material increase in the available fund balance, the estimated financing requirements could be increased using the provisions for unanticipated available financing.

7.03 Reporting Interfund Activity

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.102 (Section 1800, paragraph .102), activity that takes place between funds or blended component units within the same local government — such as transfers and their associated due to and due from, and revenues and expenses/expenditures with their associated receivable and payable is called interfund activity.

Interfund activity within and among the three fund categories (governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary) should be analyzed, reclassified, and eliminated in the government-wide statement of net position and statement of activities. Such activity is reported in the fund financial statements.

Interfund activity should be classified and reported as either reciprocal or nonreciprocal.

Reciprocal interfund activity is the internal counterpart to exchange and exchange-like transactions and includes:

- Interfund loans — amounts provided with a requirement for repayment.
- Interfund services provided and used — sales and purchases of goods and services between funds for a price approximating their external exchange value.

Nonreciprocal interfund activity is the internal counterpart to nonexchange transactions and includes:

- Interfund transfers — flows of assets (e.g., cash or goods) without an equivalent flows of assets in return and without a requirement for repayment.
- Interfund reimbursements — repayments from the funds responsible for specific expenditures or expenses to the funds that initially paid for them.

It is important to carefully handle transactions and transfers between funds, in order to ensure that the proper financing sources and uses are reflected in each fund. This same level of care should also be exercised when handling intrafund transfers (transfers of costs between budget units in the same governmental type fund).

When preparing consolidated financial statements and reports such as the State Controller's Financial Transactions Report, it may be necessary to eliminate interfund transactions to remove the doubling-up effects, as is done with the government-wide financial statements. Interfund transfers should net to zero on the government-wide financial statements, since the primary government cannot owe funds to itself or expect a reimbursement from itself.

Interfund Transactions Table

Transaction	Fund Statement	Statement of Net Position	Statement of Activities
Interfund Loans (Reciprocal)	Interfund Receivables/Payables	1. Within governmental or business-type activities: eliminating receivables and payables so that both sides have a zero balance. 2. This activity should not be reported as <u>other financing sources or uses</u> in the fund financial statements.	Not Applicable
Interfund Services provided and used (Reciprocal)	Interfund Receivables/Payables Revenues/Expenses or Expenditures	1. Within governmental or business-type activities: receivables/payables: should not be eliminated and should be reported in the fund balance sheet or statement of net position. 2. Between governmental and business-type activities: should not be eliminated.	1. Within governmental or business-type activities: revenues/expenses should not be eliminated. 2. Between governmental or business-type activities: present as internal activity.
Interfund Transfers (Nonreciprocal)	Governmental Funds should report these transactions as other financing uses and other financial sources of funds. Proprietary Funds should report this type of transfer in their activity statements	1. Transfers within the same activity type (governmental or business type) are eliminated. 2. Transfers between governmental and business-type activities: present as internal balances.	1. Within governmental or business-type activities: should not be eliminated 2. Between governmental or business-type activities: present as internal activity

Transaction	Fund Statement	Statement of Net Position	Statement of Activities
Reimbursements (Reciprocal)	1. Expenditures/Expenses in reimbursing fund 2. Reduction of expenditure/expenses in fund that is reimbursed	Not Applicable	1. Expense in reimbursing entity 2. Reduction of expenses in entity that is reimbursed
Transfers between a local government and fiduciary funds (Non Reciprocal)	Governmental Funds should report these transactions as other financing uses and other financial sources of funds. Proprietary Funds should report this type of transfers in their activity statements	Receivables/Payables from external parties	Revenues/Expenses from external parties
Transfers between a local government and discrete component units (Reciprocal)	Receivables/Payables Revenues/Expenses or Expenditures	Receivables/Payables shown as separate line item (receivable from state, payable to component units)	Revenues/Expenses from external parties

7.04 Chart of Accounts — Balance Sheet

Current Assets

In some cases, the accounts Advances To/From and Due To/From may be current or deferred outflows/inflows of resources. Refer to the [Outflows/Inflows Flowchart](#) and the [Items That May Be Classified as Outflows/Inflows](#) chart previously discussed in this chapter for additional guidance.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
100	Cash (including cash equivalents)	Currency, coin, checks, checking accounts, savings accounts, money orders, and bankers' drafts on hand or on deposit with the County Treasurer. May also include deposits in other types of accounts or cash management pools that have general characteristic of demand deposit accounts.
101	Petty Cash	A sum of money set aside for making change or paying small obligations for which the issuance of a voucher or warrant would be too expensive and time-consuming.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
102	Certificate of Deposit	A savings certificate given by a bank for the deposit of funds for a specific time. Certificates of deposit are usually negotiable and bear an interest rate greater than that for ordinary bank savings accounts
103	Cash With Fiscal Agent (Restricted Asset)	Deposits with fiscal agents, such as commercial banks, for the payment of matured bonds and interest.
104	Deposits with Others	Amounts placed with others as a condition precedent to a contractual offer, a legal processing, or performance by a second party. An example would be a paying a security deposit for a short-term equipment lease.
105	Short-Term Investments	Securities and real estate held for the production of income in the form of interest, dividends, rentals, or lease payments. This account does not include real estate used in governmental operations. It should include any investments that a local government has made that will expire within one year.
106	Accounts Receivable	The uncollected portion of earned revenues and reimbursable projects for which a receivable account has not otherwise been provided.
107	Short-Term Notes Receivables	The portion of the notes receivable which is to be received within one year. Notes Receivables represents claims for which format instruments of credit are issued as evidence of debt.
108	Taxes Receivable	The uncollected portion of taxes that a government has levied. Typically, these taxes would be collected within one financial period.
109	Other Receivables	The current portion of other receivables not otherwise accounted for. Examples include trade/non-trade receivables, interest receivable, insurance claim receivable, etc.
110	Inventory of Materials and Supplies	Materials and supplies on hand for future consumption.
111	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	That portion of Taxes Receivable that is estimated to be uncollectible. The balance in this account is reported as a deduction from <u>Taxes Receivable</u> to indicate net taxes receivable.
112	Allowance for Uncollectible Accounts Receivables	That portion of <u>Accounts Receivable</u> that is estimated to be uncollectible. The balance in this account is reported as a deduction from <u>Accounts Receivable</u> to indicate net accounts receivable. Acts as a contra account to <u>Accounts Receivable</u> .
113	Prepaid Expenses	Charges entered in the accounts for benefits not yet received. Examples of prepaid items are prepaid rent, prepaid interest, and unexpired insurance premiums.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
114	Restricted Asset — Current	Current assets, whose use is subject to constraints that are generally externally imposed by creditors (debt covenants), grantors, contributors, or laws through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.
115	Other Current Assets	The current portion of other current assets not otherwise accounted for within the current asset category.

Allowances for uncollectible accounts should be established, as appropriate. For all fund types, the offsetting entry is a reduction in the appropriate accounts. For example, with regard to property taxes, the accounts affected could be Property Tax Receivable and Allowance for Uncollectible Property Taxes.

Capital Assets

Capital assets owned by proprietary or fiduciary funds are accounted for through those funds. Governmental fund capital assets should be maintained in a capital assets accounting system and maintained in sufficient detail.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
116	Land	The cost of land purchased, or if acquired via gift or donation, the estimated acquisition value on the date received. Land that is part of the county road system or flood control districts is not included.
117	Buildings and Improvements	The cost of all permanent buildings, structures, monuments, fences, retaining walls, pavement, sidewalks, bridges (not part of the county road system), grading and landscaping, docks and waterfront improvements, tunnels, viaducts, canals, and any other feature that adds value to property. This includes the cost of fixtures attached to and forming a permanent part of buildings and improvements. It also includes the costs of improvements made by a local government entity to leased property. If the items listed in the prior sentence are acquired by gift or donation, they are recorded at the estimated acquisition value on the date received.
118	Accumulated Depreciation — Buildings and Improvements	The accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of buildings or improvements. A contra account to <u>Buildings and Improvements</u> .

Code	Accounts	General Definition
119	Leasehold Improvements	Alterations made to rental premises in order to customize it for the specific needs of a tenant. Leasehold improvements include painting, installing partitions, changing the flooring, putting in customized light fixtures, etc.
120	Accumulated Depreciation — Leasehold Improvements	The accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of leasehold improvements. A contra account to <u>Leasehold Improvements</u> .
121	Furniture and Fixtures	Movable furniture, fixtures, or other equipment that has no permanent connection to the structure of a building or utilities.
122	Accumulated Depreciation — Furniture and Fixtures	The accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of furniture and fixtures. A contra account to <u>Furniture and Fixtures</u> .
123	Equipment	The cost of all physical property of a permanent nature other than land, buildings, improvements, and furniture. If the items listed are acquired via gift or donation, they are recorded at the estimated acquisition value on the date received.
124	Accumulated Depreciation — Equipment	The accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of the equipment. A contra account to <u>Equipment</u> .
125	Infrastructure	These are long-lived capital assets that are normally stationary in nature and normally can be preserved for a significantly greater number of years than most capital assets. Examples include roads, bridges, tunnels, drainage systems, water and sewer systems, dams, lighting systems, buildings (if they are an ancillary part of a network of infrastructure assets), etc.
126	Accumulated Depreciation — Infrastructure	The accumulation of periodic credits that record the expiration of the estimated useful life of the infrastructure. A contra account to <u>Infrastructure</u> .
127	Construction in Progress	The cost of construction work (typically capital assets) undertaken but not yet completed.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
128	Intangible Assets	These assets have a useful life which extends beyond one accounting period but do not have any physical substance and are non-financial in nature. Examples include cost or historical cost of easements, land use rights (water rights, timber rights), computer software, patents, and trademarks. <u>Note:</u> Lease assets, PPP assets, and SBITA IT assets should be recorded separately. See Accounts #131 - #132 (Leases), Accounts #133 - #136 (PPP assets), and Accounts #137 - #138 (SBITA assets).
129	Accumulated Amortization	The accumulation of periodic credits that record the expiration of the estimated useful life of intangible assets. Typically a contra account to <u>Intangible Assets</u>. <u>Note:</u> Intangible assets that are considered to have an indefinite life should not be amortized.
130	Other Capital Assets	The capital assets not otherwise accounted for in any other capital asset category. (Miscellaneous capital assets grouped under one account.)
131	Intangible Right to Use Asset — Leases (Lessee)	Lease assets arise (via a contractual arrangement) when a primary government has the noncancelable right to use another entity's nonfinancial assets. For example, a county leases land from a private organization exclusively for public recreation purposes. The lease asset amount recorded is the sum of the following: • Initial measurement of lease liability; • Lease payments made to the lessor before the commencement of the lease term adjusted for any lease incentives; and • Initial direct costs necessary to place the lease asset into service.
132	Accumulated Amortization — Leases (Lessee)	The accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of a lease asset. A contra account to Intangible <u>Right to Use Asset — Leases</u> .
133	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP) Underlying Asset (Transferor)	Includes the carrying value of existing underlying PPP assets or the acquisition value of new (purchased or constructed) underlying PPP assets when they are placed into service.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
134	Intangible Right-to-Use Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP) Asset (Operator)	PPP assets occur when a local government (transferor) contracts with an operator to provide public services by conveying control of the right to operate or use a nonfinancial asset (PPP asset). The amount recorded by the operator for the PPP asset is the sum of the following: • Initial measurement of the liability for installment payments; • PPP payments made to the transferor at or before the commencement of the PPP term; • Cost of the purchased or constructed PPP asset (if PPP meets definition of an Service Concession Arrangement); • Cost of improvements to an existing PPP asset; and • Initial direct costs that are ancillary charges necessary to place the asset into service.
135	Accumulated Amortization — Private-Public and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Asset (Operator)	The right-to-use PPP asset should be amortized in a systematic and rational manner over either the PPP term or the useful life of the PPP asset, whichever is shorter. Amortization of the right-to-use PPP asset should be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., amortization expense), which may be combined with depreciation expense related to other capital assets for financial reporting purposes.
136	Accumulated Depreciation — Private-Public and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Asset (Transferor)	Transferor should apply all other accounting and financial reporting requirements related to the PPP asset, including depreciation and impairment. If the PPP requires the operator to return the PPP asset in its original condition, the transferor should <u>not</u> depreciated the PPP asset during the PPP term.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
137	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA) Subscription Asset	Subscription assets occur when a local government contractually obtains the right to use another party's (SBITA vendor) IT software, alone or in combination with tangible capital assets (subscription asset). The amount recorded by the local government for the subscription asset is the sum of the following, less any SBITA vendor incentives received at the commencement of the subscription term): • Initial measurement of the subscription liability; • Payments made to the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term; and • Capitalizable initial implementation costs SBITA vendor incentives are (1) payments made to or on behalf of a local government for which the local government has a right of offset with its obligation to the SBITA vendor or (2) other concessions granted to the local government.
138	Accumulated Amortization — Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA) Asset	The subscription asset should be amortized in a systematic and rational manner over either the subscription term or the useful life of the IT assets, whichever is shorter. Amortization of the subscription asset should begin at the commencement of the subscription term and be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., amortization expense), which may be combined with depreciation expense related to other capital assets for financial reporting purposes.

Other Noncurrent Assets

Noncurrent assets include resources such as (a) cash and claims to cash that are restricted as to withdrawal or use for other than current operations, that are designated for disbursement in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets, or that are segregated for the liquidation of long-term debts; (b) receivables arising from unusual transactions (e.g., sale of capital assets) that are not expected to be collected within 12 months; (c) cash surrender value of life insurance policies; (d) land and other natural resources; and (e) depreciable assets.

It should be noted that capital assets are discussed in the preceding section. All other non-current assets that do not fall under the capital assets category are discussed in this section.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	Definition
150	Restricted Assets — Noncurrent	Restricted cash and investment or other items of value received by a promise to an organization, the use of which is legally or contractually restricted.
151	Lease Receivable (Lessor)	Includes the present value of lease payments expected to be received during the lease term. When measuring the lease receivable the following items may also be included (based on the lease terms): fixed/variable payments, residual value guarantees, and lease incentives payable to the lessee.
152	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP) Receivable (Transferor)	Includes the present value of installment payments expected to be received during the PPP term. When measuring the PPP receivable, the following items should be included (if required by a PPP): fixed/variable payments (including variable payments dependent on an index rate or that are fixed in substance) and residual value guarantee payments that are fixed in substance.

Deferred Outflows of Resources

In some cases, the accounts Advances To/From and Due To/From may be current or deferred outflows/inflows of resources. Refer to the Outflows/Inflows Flowchart and the Items That May Be Classified as Outflows/Inflows chart previously discussed in this chapter for additional guidance.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	Definition
200	Grants (Provider)	Grant paid in advance of meeting the timing requirements as stipulated in the grant agreement.
201	Matured Bonds Payable	Deferred amounts from refunding of debt (debits). Examples include unpaid bonds that have reached or passed their maturity date.
202	Refundings of Debt (Loss)	Deferred loss from the difference between reacquisition price and net carrying amount of old debt.
203	Sale-Leaseback (Loss)	Loss on the sale of property that is accompanied by a leaseback of all or any part of the property for all or any part of its remaining economic life. <u>Note:</u> A gain would be recorded as a deferred inflow of resources.
204	Hedging Derivative Instruments	Accumulated decrease in fair value of hedging derivative instruments.
205	Government-Mandated Nonexchange Transactions (Provider)	Transactions in which one local government provides resources to another local government. The provider may require the resources to be used at a certain time. Resources received before time requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements are met, are reported as deferred outflows.
206	Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues (Transferee)	Future revenues to be recognized over the duration of the sale/transfer agreement and recorded as a deferred outflow of resources.
207	Voluntary Nonexchange Transactions (Provider)	Resources received (before time requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements are met) that result from legislative or contractual agreements, other than exchanges, entered into willingly by the parties to the agreement. These resources are recorded as deferred outflow of resources by the local government providing the resources.

Current Liabilities

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
300	Warrants Payable (Optional)	The amount of warrants issued that have not yet been paid.
301	Vouchers Payable	Liabilities for goods and services evidenced by vouchers that have been pre-audited and approved for payment, but have not been paid.
302	Accounts Payable	Amounts owed on open account to private persons or organizations for goods and services furnished to the county (but not including amounts owed to other funds or to other governments).
303	Salaries and Benefits Payable	Amounts owed because of accrued salaries and benefits.
304	Compensated Absences Payable	Amounts owed to employees for unpaid vacation, sick leave, sabbatical leave and other compensated absences with similar characteristics. Examples of other compensated absences with similar characteristics would include Annual Leave, Professional Development Days, and Personal Holidays.
305	Interest Payable	Unpaid interest on bonds that have reached or passed their maturity date.
306	Accrued Expenses	An accounting expense recognized in the books before it is paid for.
307	Short-term Loans	This account is comprised of any debt incurred by a county that is due within one year.
308	Current Maturities of Long-Term Debt	The total amount of long-term debt that should be paid within the next year.
309	Lease Payable (Short-Term)	Unpaid short-term lease liabilities expected to be paid with governmental resources within the current reporting period. Lease liabilities arising from lease contracts that have a lease term greater than 12 months should be recorded under Account #316, <i>Lease Liability (Lessee)</i> .
310	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Payable (Short-Term)	Has a maximum possible term under the SBITA contract of 12 months (or less), including any options to extend, regardless of their probability of being exercised. SBITA's liabilities arising from SBITA's that have a subscription term greater than 12 months should be recorded under Account #317, <i>Subscription Liability</i> .

Code	Accounts	General Definition
311	Unearned Revenue	Unearned revenues arise when revenues are received in an exchange transaction prior to their normal time of receipt and should be recorded as liabilities. Revenues that are the result of imposed and other nonexchange transactions have separate recognition rules that apply and are generally recorded as deferred inflows of resources.
312	Other Current Liabilities	Current liabilities not included in the above categories.

Long-Term Liabilities

Long-term liabilities of proprietary and fiduciary funds are accounted for through those funds. Governmental fund long-term liabilities should be maintained in sufficient detail in the debt accounting records to provide sufficient information for financial reporting.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
313	Loans	Long-term principal portion.
314	Notes Payable	Long-term principal portion (other than bank notes).
315	Bonds Outstanding	Long-term principal portion of the unmatured portion of bonds sold.
316	Lease Liability (Lessee)	Includes the present value of lease payments expected to be made during the lease term. When measuring lease liability the following items may also be included (based on the lease contract): • fixed/variable payments • residual value guarantees • purchase (exercise) price • penalties for lease termination • lease incentives and any other payments that are reasonable of being required based on assessment of all relevant factors

Code	Accounts	General Definition
317	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA) — Liability	Includes present value of subscription payments expected to be made during the subscription term. When measuring the subscription liability, the following items may also be included: • Fixed payments • Variable payments that depend on an index/rate or are fixed in substance • Payments for penalties for terminating the SBITA • Any contract incentives • Other payments to the SBITA vendor associated with the SBITA contract that are reasonably certain of being required on an assessment of all factors
318	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP) Liability (Operator)	Liabilities for installment payments should be measured initially at the present value of the PPP payments expected to be made during the PPP term. Measurement of the liability for install payments should include the following (if required by the PPP): • Fixed payments; • Variable payments dependent on a an index or a rate (e.g., consumer price index or a market interest rate); • Variable payments that are fixed in substance; • Amounts that are reasonably certain of being required to be paid by the operator under residual value guarantees; • Payments for penalties for terminating the PPP (if PPP term shows operator exercising a termination option or a fiscal funding or cancellation clause); • Any other payments to the transferor related to the PPP that are reasonable certain of being required based on assessment of all relevant factors.
319	Availability Payment Arrangement (APA) Liability	APAs may contain multiple components. An operator may design, construct, finance, operate, and maintain an asset (e.g., a public toll road) for a local government in exchange for (1) fixed payments to compensate the operator for the associated costs and (2) variable payments based on whether measures related to availability have been met. These payments will take place over a number of years. This is where the APA liability (long-term liability) will be recognized by the local government (not by the operator).

Code	Accounts	General Definition
320	Other Long-Term Liabilities	A number of other long-term liabilities that should be recorded, if appropriate, are below: • Total Pension Liability or Net Pension Liability* • Other Post-Employment Benefits • Worker's Compensation liability • Other self-insurance liabilities • Compensated absences

* Net Pension Liability is the difference between Total Pension Liability and Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Deferred Inflows of Resources

In some cases, the accounts Advances To/From and Due To/From may be current or deferred outflows/inflows of resources. Refer to the [Outflows/Inflows Flowchart](#) and the [Items That May Be Classified as Outflows/Inflows](#) chart previously discussed in this chapter for additional guidance.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
400	Deposits from Others	Amounts received from others as a condition precedent to a contractual offer, a legal proceeding, or performance by the county.
401	Unavailable Revenues	Resource inflows that do not qualify for recognition as revenue in a governmental fund because they are not yet considered to be available.
402	Property Taxes Receivable	Property taxes received or reported as a receivable before (a) the period for which property taxes are levied or (b) the period when resources are required to be used or when use is first permitted for all other imposed nonexchange revenues in which the enabling legislation includes time requirements.
403	Assessments Received in Advance	Derived tax revenues (e.g., sales tax, MVFT, hotel/motel tax, etc.), imposed nonexchange revenues, and/or any other assessments received in advance.
404	Hedging Derivative Instruments	Accumulated increase in fair value of hedging derivative instruments/contracts (that meet the criteria of derivatives).
405	Service Concession Arrangements (Transferor)	Difference between any up-front payments or the present value of installment payments (asset) received from an operator and any contractual obligations (liabilities).
406	Regulatory Credits	Regulatory credits (gains or other reductions).

Code	Accounts	General Definition
407	Sale-Leaseback (Gain)	Gain on the sale of property that is accompanied by a leaseback of all or any part of the property for all or part of its remaining economic life (deferred inflows of resources)
408	Securities Sold Under Agreement to Repurchase	Proceeds from sales of future revenues that have been added to Investments for <u>reverse repo</u> of the investment pool.
409	Refundings of Debt (Gain)	Deferred gain from the difference between reacquisition price and net carrying amount of old debt.
410	Tax Anticipation Notes Payable	A short-term interest bearing note issued by a local government entity in anticipation of tax revenues to be received at a later date. The debt is repaid with future tax collections.
411	Grants (Recipient)	Grants received in advance of meeting timing requirements as stipulated in the grant agreement.
412	Imposed Nonexchange Revenue Transactions	Resources associated with imposed nonexchange revenue transactions received or reported as a receivable before (a) the period for which property taxes are levied or (b) the period when resources are required to be used or when use is first permitted for all other imposed non-exchange revenues in which the enabling legislation includes time requirements.
413	Government-Mandated Nonexchange Transactions (Recipient)	Resources received before timing requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements are met.
414	Voluntary Nonexchange Transactions (Recipient)	Resources received before timing requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements are met.
415	Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues (Transferor Government)	Amount received reported in the government-wide and fund financial statements and recognized as revenue over duration of the sale agreement.
416	Sales of Future Revenues (Transferor Government)	Proceeds should be reported in both the government-wide and fund financial statements, except for instances wherein recognition as revenue in the period of sale is appropriate. Revenue should be recognized at the time of the sale only if the revenue sold was recognized previously because of the uncertainty of realization or the inability to reliably measure the revenue.
417	Loan Origination Fees (Points)	Points received by a lender in relation to a loan origination should be reported as a deferred inflow of resources and recognized as revenue in a systematic and rational manner over the duration of the related loan.

Code	Accounts	General Definition
418	Deferred Inflow of Resources — Lease Payments (Lessor)	These are expected future payments a government (lessor) is expected to receive as result of entering into a lease contract. A <u>lessor</u> should take into account the following when measuring deferred inflow of resources: • Initial measurement of lease receivable; and • Lease payments received from lessee that apply to future periods (e.g., final month's rent).
419	Deferred Inflow of Resources — Public-Private and Public- Public Partnership (PPP) Payments (Transferor)	These deferred inflows of resources are expected future payments a local government (transferor) is expected to receive as a result of entering into a PPP. A transferor should take into account the following when measuring deferred inflow of resources: • Initial measurement of the receivable for install payments; • PPP payments received from the operator at or prior to the beginning of the PPP term; • Amount of the initial measurement for the underlying PPP asset; • Amount of the initial measurement for improvements to the underlying PPP asset; and; • The amount of the initial measurement of the receivable for the underlying PPP asset.

Fund Balance and Net Position

Fund balance should be used only in connection with governmental funds and should not be used in government-wide financial statements or in funds that use the full accrual basis of accounting. Net position should be displayed in three components: net investment in capital assets; restricted; and unrestricted. The following charts illustrate the related terminology.

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Fund Balance

Code	Accounts	General Definition
500	Nonspendable Fund Balance — Acct Name	Fund balance amounts that are segregated and cannot be spent because they are (a) not in spendable form (not expected to be converted to cash) or (b) legally or contractually required to be maintained intact for specific purposes and not available for financing the budget requirements.
501	Restricted Fund Balance — Acct Name	The amount of fund balance that is segregated for specific purposes due to constraints placed by external creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments, or imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation and is not available for financing the budget requirements.
502	Committed Fund Balance — Acct Name	The amount of fund balance that can only be used for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the government's highest level of decision-making authority and is not available for financing the budget requirements.
503	Assigned Fund Balance — Acct Name	The amount of fund balance that has been segregated to indicate the government's tentative plans for financial resource utilization in a future period, such as for equipment replacement. The tentative managerial plans or intent should be clearly distinguished from nonspendable, restricted, or committed fund balances.
504	Unassigned Fund Balance	That portion of the fund balance that has not been restricted, committed, or assigned to specific purposes and is available to finance the budgetary requirements.
Note: The following account is optional and may be used by counties to facilitate the accounting for encumbrances. However, for financial reporting purposes, this account should be reclassified to restricted, committed, or assigned fund balance depending on the county's spending prioritization policy.		
505	Fund Balance — Reserved for Encumbrances	The amount of actual fund balance reserved for outstanding contractual obligations for which goods and services have not yet been received.

Net Position

Code	Accounts	General Definition
506	Net Position — Net Investment in Capital Assets	Component of net position consisting of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation, and reduced by the outstanding balances of any bonds, mortgages, notes, or other borrowings that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets. Deferred outflows and inflows of resources that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets or related debt should be included in this component of net position
507	Net Position — Restricted For Acct Name	Component of net position consisting of restricted assets reduced by liabilities and deferred inflows of resources related to those assets. When constraints on its use are either (a) externally imposed by creditors (such as through debt covenants), grantors, contributors, or law or regulations of governments, or (b) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.
508	Net Position — Unrestricted Acct Name	Component of net position consisting of the net amount of the assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources that are not included in the determination of the <u>Net Investment in Capital Assets</u> or the <u>Restricted</u> components of net position.

Note: For financial reporting purposes the Fund Balance account should be reclassified to either restricted, committed, or assigned fund balance depending on the local government's spending prioritization policies.

Financing Sources/Uses and Budgetary Accounts

The definitions in the following chart of accounts act as a guide to show how the accounts may be used. In addition to the accounts listed, other accounts may be required in the preparation of financial statements.

Code	Accounts	Definition
600	Other Financing Sources	Increases in the fund balance of a governmental fund other than revenues and inflows associated with future periods. Examples include proceeds from debt issuance, capital asset sales and transfers of resources (e.g., assets) from other funds.
601	Other Financing Uses	Decreases in the fund balance of a governmental fund other than expenditures and outflows of resources associated with future periods. Examples include debt extinguishments, payments of lease transactions, and transfers of resources (e.g., assets) to other funds.

7.05 Stabilization Arrangements

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.181 (Section 1800, paragraph .181), some local governments formally set aside part of their fund balance for emergencies, working capital, cash flows, revenue shortages, or other contingencies. The authority to set aside these amounts usually comes from statute, ordinance, resolution, charter, or constitution. These funds are known as stabilization arrangements.

For local governments to be able to set aside these types of funds as restricted or committed, the local government should define when these amounts may be used and specify a situation that is not expected to occur on a routine basis. For example, identifying funds to be accessed in an emergency does not sufficiently detail the circumstances or conditions that should be met to consider the funds committed. The local government entity should be more specific in defining an emergency to commit these funds.

If the stabilization arrangement meets the criteria outlined in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.169 – .173 (Section 1800, paragraphs .169 – .173), it should be reported as either restricted or committed, depending on the source of the constraints on their use. Stabilization arrangements that do not meet the criteria should be reported as part of unassigned fund balance in the general fund. For more information on Stabilization Arrangements refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.181 – .182 (Section 1800, paragraphs .181 – .182).

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.187 (Section 1800, paragraph .187), governments that establish stabilization arrangements, even if an arrangement does not meet the criteria to be classified as restricted or committed, should disclose the following information in the notes to the financial statements:

- The authority for establishing stabilization arrangements (for example, by statute or ordinance);
- The requirements for the additions to the stabilization amount;
- The conditions under which stabilization amounts may be spent; and
- The stabilization balance, if not apparent on the face of the financial statements.

7.06 General Reserves

It is recommended that a general reserve be established in whatever fund might need such a reserve. For financial reporting purposes, the general reserve should be classified as either assigned or committed if the general reserve represents amounts that have been constrained for specific purposes. Classifying the general reserve to restricted is appropriate when the amounts are restricted to specific purposes and when constraints placed on those resources are either imposed by others external to the government or imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation, including ordinances. The general reserve established in the general fund without specific purpose constraints should be classified as unassigned.

The general reserve is an appropriation of resources to cover potential cash flow shortfalls. The general reserve can only be established upon resolution adopted by the governing body of the local government.

The following terms are commonly used when using a general reserve:

- Establishment: The general reserve is established during the budget process primarily to provide dry period financing (when financial resources are insufficient to meet obligations).
- Adjustment: The general reserve may be adjusted only during the annual budget adoption process, except during a legally declared emergency as defined in Government Code section 29127.
- Use of Reserve: The general reserve is only available for use only as defined by the governing body and may be committed, restricted, assigned, or unassigned.

For financial reporting purposes, the general reserves should be classified as restricted, committed, or assigned fund balance dependent upon the constraints placed on those resources.

Expenditures/Expenses

7.07 Expenditure and Expense Classifications

Whether transactions are considered to be an expenditure or an expense depends upon the nature of the fund in which it is recorded. Expenditures are the focus of governmental fund financial statements, while expenses are the focus of nongovernmental fund financial statements.

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.131 (Section 1800, paragraph .131), the term expenditures means decreases in (uses of) fund financial resources other than through interfund transfers and expirations of demand bond takeout agreements (refer to GASB Cod. Sec. D30 for additional information on demand bond takeout agreements). Because governmental funds operate on a budgetary basis rather than an operating basis, the term is more relevant to a reduction in a fixed amount.

Local governments should use multiple classifications (such as functions/programs, objects/object classes, activities, organization unit, location, and character) to meet the applicable reporting and budgetary requirements.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.133 (Section 1800, paragraph .133):

Multiple classification of governmental fund expenditure data is important from both internal and external management control and accountability standpoints. It facilitates the aggregation and analysis of data in different ways for different purposes and in manners that cross fund and organization lines, for internal evaluation, external reporting, and intergovernmental comparison purposes. The major accounting classifications of expenditures are by fund, function (or program), organization unit, activity, character, and object class.

Expenses are decreases in net position resulting from the outflow of resources in the course of operations for nongovernmental funds (includes providing goods and services) and represent

the full costs associated with providing services. Expense accounts reflect changes in the net position as a result of operations during a specified time period.

GASB requires that local governments should report all expenses by function (program), as well as by object, except for those that meet the definitions of unusual or infrequent items. Direct expenses are those that are specifically associated with a particular service or program; they should be clearly identifiable to that function in the financial statements. Some functions, such as support services and administration, are indirect expenses of other functions. Local governments are not required to allocate these indirect expenses to other functions; however, they should do so if statutorily required.

Some local governments charge funds or programs (through internal service funds or the general fund) for indirect centralized expenses, which may include an administrative overhead component. Local governments are not required to identify and eliminate these administrative overhead charges, but the summary of significant accounting policies should disclose whether or not they are included in direct expenses.

Expenditures are usually related to their revenue stream, therefore direct expenditures may follow activity classifications. However, the use of multiple classifications, such as additional codes by object or by organizational unit often allows for better evaluation of operations and budgetary controls. Proprietary fund expenses should be classified in essentially the same manner as those found in similar business organizations, functions, or activities.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.141 (Section 1800, paragraph .141), governments should provide data in the statement of activities at a more detailed level if the additional detail provides more useful information without significantly reducing the readers' understanding of the statement. No specific level of detail is appropriate for all governments. While some governments will have hundreds of programs, others may have only a few. It is for that reason that reporting in greater detail than the minimum requirements (see the following paragraph) may be practical for some governments, but not for others.

The government-wide statement of activities, at a minimum, should present the following according to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.140 (Section 1800, paragraph .140):

- Activities accounted for in governmental funds by function to coincide with the level of detail required in the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances.
- Activities accounted for in enterprise funds by different identifiable activities.

7.08 Use of Objects (Accounts) and Subobjects

Expenditures should be classified by object classes; that is, according to the types of items purchased or services obtained. Examples are goods and services, salaries and benefits, capital outlays, and unusual or infrequent items. Use of object classes should be limited to a minimum to reduce creation of complex procedures and statement categories; their use depends on the reporting needs of the local government.

The use of subobjects, usually represented as accounts, is left to local choice. Samples of subobject accounts are listed in Section 7.09, *Chart of Objects (Accounts) and Subobjects*.

Cost analyses, statistical comparisons, and other reporting requirements may make a further segregation of subobjects desirable. In this event, the subobject listed on the chart may be segregated into the desired subaccount. For example, Insurance might be set up in the accounts as:

- Insurance — Public Liability
- Insurance — Fire and Burglary
- Insurance — Other

Used in this manner, the chart of accounts allow local governments to prepare financial reports for informational, statistical, and other statutory purposes, such as the State Controller's Financial Transactions Report. Subobjects can be produced separately or merged, as needed, for reporting purposes.

A suggested chart of accounts is provided in the following section. The list of accounts in the following charts is not all-inclusive. Where appropriate, local governments may supplement these classifications with additional ones in light of local circumstances.

7.09 Chart of Objects (Accounts) and Subobjects

Accounts are numbered in sequence for illustrative and reference purposes only. For a full description of the accounts listed in this section, please see Chapter section 7.10, *Explanation of Objects and Subobjects*.

Chart of Objects and Subobjects

Salaries and Employee Benefits

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
1	Salaries and Wages	4	Workers' Compensation Insurance
2	Retirement	5	FICA/Medicare/OASDI
3	Employee Group Insurance	6	Other Benefits

Services and Supplies

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
10	Agricultural	21	Miscellaneous Expense
11	Clothing and Personal	22	Office Expense
12	Communications	23	Professional and Specialized Services
13	Food	24	Publications and Legal Notices
14	Household Expense	25	Rent — Equipment
15	Insurance	26	Rent — Buildings
16	Jury and Witness Expense	27	Minor Equipment
17	Maintenance — Equipment	28	Special Departmental Expense
18	Maintenance — Buildings and Improvements	29	Transportation and Travel
19	Medical, Dental, and Laboratory Supplies	30	Utilities
20	Memberships	N/A	N/A

Other Charges

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
40	Support and Care of Persons	52	Contributions to Non-District Governmental Agency
41	Bond Redemption	53	Interfund Expenditures
42	Retirement of Other Long-Term Debt	54	Debt Issuance Cost
43	Interest on Bonds	55	Lease Expenditures
44	Interest on Other Long-Term Debt	56	Interest on Leases
45	Interest on Notes and Warrants	57	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Expenditures
46	Judgments and Damages	58	Interest on Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Assets
47	Rights of Way	59	Subscription-Based Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Expenditures
48	Taxes and Assessments	60	Interest on Subscription-Based Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Subscription Assets
49	Depreciation	61	Amortization Expense – Leases (right to use nonfinancial asset)
50	Bad Debts	62	Amortization Expense — Subscription-Based Information Technology (SBITA) Subscription Asset
51	Income Allocation	N/A	N/A

Capital Assets

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
71	Land	75	Intangible Assets
72	Buildings and Improvements	76	Leases (right-to-use nonfinancial asset)
73	Equipment	77	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Asset (right-to-use nonfinancial asset — Operator)
74	Infrastructure	78	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA) Subscription Asset

Transfers-Out

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
90	Transfers-Out	N/A	N/A

Unusual or Infrequent Items

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
100	Infrequent and Unusual Items	N/A	N/A

Intrafund Transfers

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
110	Intrafund Transfers	N/A	N/A

Appropriation for Contingencies

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
120	Appropriations for Contingencies	N/A	N/A

Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Provided)

Code	Accounts	Code	Accounts
130	Noncapital Subsidy Expenses	131	Noncapital Subsidy Transfers Out

7.10 Explanation of Objects and Subobjects

The table in this section contains the account titles and the recommended use of each account. Use is indicated by an explanation, an example, or both. In some instances, the title alone is considered self-explanatory and indicative of use. Accounts are numbered in sequence for illustrative and reference purposes only.

Many of the items of expenditures shown in the preceding index are coded with more than one subobject. The proper classification for each of these items is dependent on its use. For example, an air filter pad purchased for use on a portable air conditioning unit should be posted to Maintenance — Equipment (Account No. 17); an air filter pad used in a built-in air conditioner should be posted to Maintenance — Buildings and Improvements (Account No. 18).

When an item is purchased in quantity and will be used for more than one purpose, the expenditure should be posted to the account that properly reflects the major purpose for which the item is to be used. For example, a cylinder of acetylene gas may be purchased primarily for use in maintaining buildings. Although some of the gas may be used in the maintenance of equipment, the entry amount of the expenditures should be charged to Maintenance — Buildings and Improvements (Account No. 18).

Food, clothing, and related items purchased for indigent persons or others for whom the county has assumed the burden of support and who are not housed in county facilities should be charged to Support and Care of Persons (Account No. 40), rather than the subobject indicating the purpose of the expenditure.

Many items are coded as both Services and Supplies and Capital Assets. The determination as to the proper account classification should be made by applying the capital asset policy.

Expenditures for items not included in this index should be posted to one of the subobject accounts such as Special Departmental Expense (Account No. 28) or Miscellaneous Expense (Account No. 21).

Examples are of two category types and are grouped as follows:

- Under Include in the charts are examples of the types of expenditures that should be posted to this account.
- Under Do Not Include are examples of the types of expenditures that should not be posted to this account. This category also notes the type of account to which they should be posted. Examples are illustrated on the following pages.

Explanation of Objects and Subobjects

Salaries and Employee Benefits

Code	Accounts — Salaries and Employee Benefits
1	Salaries and Wages The list below is not all-inclusive; it includes types of expenses/expenditures usually posted under this category: • Elected officials • Permanent employees • Extra help • Suggestion awards • Overtime • Premium pay • Compensation to prisoners and inmates for services rendered • Vacation and sick leave pay Following is a list of expenses/expenditures <u>not</u> posted under this category: • Uniform allowances — post these types of transactions to accounts such as “<u>Services and Supplies, Clothing and Personal Supplies.</u>” • Allowances for incidentals to prisoners and court wards — post these types of transaction to accounts such as “<u>Other Charges, Support and Care of Persons.</u>” <u>Note:</u> Clothing or uniforms are excluded from wages of an employee if they are: • Specifically required as a condition of employment, and • Are not worn or adaptable to general use as ordinary clothing. If the employer does not require <u>substantiation</u>, the allowance is taxable as wages and subject to withholding when paid. For more information on work clothes and uniform allowances, and reimbursements refer to the IRS Publication 5137 at https://www.irs.gov/pub/irs-pdf/p5137.pdf

Code	Accounts — Salaries and Employee Benefits
2	Retirement Includes the county's share of the expense of employee retirement. Include: • Investment-related costs • Administrative • Investment management • Custodial fees • Employer pension contribution • Adjustments to deferred outflows of resources made in the current accounting period Do Not Include: • Not recognized employer pension contribution; post to "<u>Deferred Outflows of Resources</u>." • Contributions that are outside the measurement date
3	Employee Group Insurance Includes the county's share of employee group insurance programs. Include: • Employer's share of health, dental, life and accident insurance • Employee share of unemployment insurance • Employer's share of State disability insurance
4	Workers' Compensation Insurance Includes the Workers' Compensation premiums paid by the county.
5	Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA)/Medicare/Old Age Survivors Disability Insurance (OASDI) Employer's share of O.A.S.D.I and FICA/Medicare.
6	Other Benefits Includes employee benefits not covered in the other subobjects.

Services and Supplies

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
10	Agricultural Include: • Agricultural disinfecting and exterminating services • Animal medicines and serums • Custom farming services • Ear tags • Fertilizer • Forage • Insecticides • Livestock registration • Nursery stock • Peat moss • Pest abatement supplies • Seed • Topsoil • Weed killer Do Not include: • Any of these used in building and grounds maintenance; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Buildings and Improvements.</u>”
11	Clothing and Personal Includes items for personal use, including safety appliances. Include: • Badges, chevrons • Belts • Buttons • Combs • Facial tissue • Gloves • Goggles, masks • Gowns • Helmets • Raincoats • Rubber boots • Safety clothing • Sewing supplies • Shoes • Slippers • Tobacco • Toilet articles • Uniforms • Uniform allowances • Yardage

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
12	Communications Include: • Telephone, telegraph, and teletype services • Radio and microwave services • Messenger services • Fax machines, pagers, and cell phones Do Not Include: • Radio repair services and supplies; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Maintenance — Equipment.</u>” • Rental of communication equipment; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Rent — Equipment.</u>”
13	Food Includes nutriments and beverages for human consumption, either (a) presently suitable for consumption or kitchen processing, or (b) not presently suitable, such as livestock and poultry, but intended for ultimate conversion and use as food by the purchasing budget unit. Include: • Candy and Confectionery • Cereals and related products • Cocoa and related products • Coffee substitute • Eggs and related products • Live animals, poultry, fish, meat, and related by-products • Feed for live animals, poultry and fish • Milk and related products • Oleomargarine • Soft drinks • Spices, salt • Sugar and related products • Tea • Vegetables and related products Do Not Include: • Draft, breeding, and dairy animals; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Equipment.</u>” • Dietary supplements; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Medical, Dental and Laboratory Supplies.</u>” • Spirituous, malt, or vinous liquors; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Medical, Dental and Laboratory Supplies.</u>” • Meals furnished to jurors; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Jury and Witness Expense.</u>” • Meals furnished to indigents; post to “<u>Other Charges — Support and Care of Persons.</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
14	Household Expense Include: • Kitchen and dining service: ○ Chinaware, cooking supplies, ○ Baking, meat cutting utensils and supplies ○ Glassware, napkins, tablecloths • Bedding: ○ Bedspreads, blankets, mattresses ○ Pillows, pillowcases, sheets • Laundry: ○ Clothes pins ○ Detergents, soaps, and washing compounds ○ Laundry bags, marking ink ○ Outside laundry, dry cleaning • Other: ○ Brooms, mops, wax and cleaners ○ Clothes lockers ○ Contractual maid and custodial services ○ Curtains, drapes, rugs (when not capitalized) ○ disinfectants, drinking water ○ Garbage cans, hot plates, small heaters ○ Refuse disposal, soap ○ Toilet tissue, towels, towel service Do Not Include: • Supplies issued to individuals for personal use; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Clothing and Personal.</u>”
15	Insurance Expense/Expenditures The list below is not all-inclusive; it includes types of expenses/expenditures usually posted under this category. Include: • Fire • Burglary • Collision • Public liability • Property damage • False arrest • Malpractice • Individual and blanket bonds • Forgery • Money and securities Do Not Include: • County share of employee group insurance; post to “<u>Salaries and Employee Benefits — Employee Group Insurance.</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
16	Jury and Witness Expense/Expenditures Include: • Fees and expenses of jurors, witnesses, and interpreters (criminal cases only). • Meals, transportation, and hotel accommodations for jurors. • Fees and expenses of coroners' juries Do Not Include: • Psychiatric expenses/expenditures; post to <u>"Services and Supplies — Professional and Specialized Services."</u>
17	Maintenance — Equipment Includes expenses/expenditures for keeping equipment, whether capitalized or not, in efficient operating condition. Include: • Contractual repairs, overhauls • Automotive supplies such as lubricating oil, light bulbs, spark plugs, antifreeze, grease, polish, brake fluids, seat covers, skid chains, batteries, tires and tubes, fan belts, filters • Gasoline, fuel for central garage vehicles • Communication and radio repair services and supplies • Repair parts • Service contracts for maintenance

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
18	Maintenance — Buildings and Improvements Includes expenditures for maintaining buildings and improvements. Include: • Awnings • Boiler compounds • Electrical and plumbing supplies and services • Fire extinguisher refills • Gardening expense • Heating and cooling system repairs • Light globes, fuses • Minor alterations • Nursery stock • Painting supplies and services • Replacement parts that do not result in a betterment • Gardening expense, including weed and pest control supplies for buildings and grounds Do Not Include: • Lawnmowers, hedgers, shears, ladders, etc.; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Minor Equipment.</u>” • Water, electricity, gas, etc.; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Utilities.</u>” • Road contractual services; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Professional and Specialized Services.</u>” • Road supplies; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Special Department Expense.</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
19	Medical, Dental, and Laboratory Supplies Includes all types of laboratory supplies. Include: • Alcohol • Animals, fish, insects for laboratory tests • Antiseptics • Antitoxins • Artificial limbs • Blood plasma • Crime laboratory supplies • Dentures • Dietary supplements • Drugs • Embalming supplies • Eyeglasses • Grinding Compounds • Hypodermic needles • Laboratory enamelware, glassware • Laboratory Scales • Medical and dental instruments • Medical gasses • Medicines • Medical soap • Narcotics, pharmaceuticals • Road materials testing supplies • Rubber gloves, sheets • Spirituous, malt, or vinous liquors • Splints • Syringes • X-ray film Do Not Include: • Any of the Objects and Subobjects given as part of the assistance program; post to <u>“Other Charges — Support and Care of Persons.”</u>
20	Memberships Includes Memberships in societies, associations of officials, trade associations, and other organizations that issue official publications.
21	Miscellaneous Expense Includes infrequent or minor expenditures, not limited in incidence to any particular department, which are not classified in any other subobject. Care should be exercised in that this account is not used for expenditures that may be properly posted to one of the other subjects. Include: • Cash shortages and unidentifiable inventory overages and shortages

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
22	Office Expense Includes expenses for office-type supplies and services. Include: • Accounting and report forms • Binders, docket books • Book binding and repair • Books, manuals • Bottled drinking water • Dictaphone supplies • Drafting paper • Envelopes, stamped envelopes • Filing supplies • Letterheads • Letter scales • Metered postage • Data Storage • Office machine ribbons • Paper • Paper clips • Parcel post • Pencils • Pens • Pencil sharpeners • P.O. box rental • Postcards • Photography supplies • Printing and binding • Punch cards, tabulating forms • Receipts, receipt books • Registered mail and special delivery • Reproductions and blueprints • Rubber stamps • Scissors • Scotch tape • Small staplers, dating and numbering machines • Stamps • Subscriptions for magazines, periodicals, clipping services • Wastebaskets Do Not Include: • Towel services; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Household Expense.</u>” • Film development supplies and expenses; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Special Departmental Expense.</u>” • Books and periodicals for circulating library use and their repair and bindings; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Special Departmental Expense.</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
23	Professional and Specialized Services Includes most professional and skilled services. In some cases, services of this type are excluded, being more properly included under subobject titles indicating the purpose of the expenditure. Any of the following incurred in connection with the acquisition of capital assets e.g., appraisals, architectural services, etc. are capitalized. Include: • Actuarial studies • Advertising and marketing • Aerial surveys • Ambulance service • Appraisals • Architectural services • Armored car service • Artists' fees • Auditing and accounting • Bounties • Burial services • Chemical analyses • Clerical services • Consultations • Data processing services • Engineering services • Fees paid to the humane society • Fiscal agents' fees • Lecture and musical services • Management, salary surveys • Materials testing • Medical and sobriety examinations • Medical, dental, and laboratory services • Data Storage services • Outside animal boarding expense • Outside defense counsel, legal services • Psychiatric services • Reporting and transcribing • Road construction and maintenance contracts • Technical identification services • Weighing and measuring services Do Not Include: • Messenger services; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Communications.</u>" • Radio technical services; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Communications.</u>" • Custodial services; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Household Expense.</u>" • Service contracts for equipment maintenance; post to "<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Equipment.</u>"

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
23	Professional and Specialized Services <i>(Continued)</i> • Service contracts for maintenance of buildings and improvements; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Building and Improvements.</u>” • Disinfecting and exterminating services; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Household Expense or Agricultural.</u>” • Time-lock inspection services; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Building and Improvements.</u>”
24	Publications and Legal Notices Includes expenses for the publication of legally required notices and reports. Include: • Tax-sale notices • Delinquent tax lists • Employment opportunities • Planning commission hearings • Public administrator’s semi-annual report • Transfer of unclaimed refundable taxes • Proceedings of board of supervisors • Budgets • Crop reports • Financial reports • Ordinances • Bond sale notices • Bids for purchases • Advertising impounded animals Do Not Include: • Printing and binding lists of registered voters, printing ballots; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Special Departmental Expense.</u>”
25	Rent — Equipment Includes rents and leases paid for the use of equipment and other articles. Include: • Alarm system (tied to police, fire, or alarm service company) • Rent of communication equipment • Rent of films, exhibits, models • Cable T.V. rental • Other rental equipment costs that do not contain any leasing components Do Not Include: • Rental cost for lease of vehicles (e.g., cars, trucks, etc.); post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Transportation and Travel.</u>” • Telephone service; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Communications.</u>” • Leases; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Leases (right to use nonfinancial asset).</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
26	Rent — Buildings Includes rents and leases paid for the use of land, structures, and improvements. Include: • Rent of polling places • Storage charges • Other building rental costs that do not contain any leasing components Do Not Include: • Leasehold improvements; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Buildings and Improvements.</u>” • Leases; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Leases (right to use nonfinancial asset).</u>”
27	Minor Equipment Includes minor equipment of insufficient life or value to require classification as a capital asset, and replacement parts of such tools and instruments. Include: • Carpentry, machine, and general-purpose tools: ○ Bits, calipers, chisels, cutters ○ Drills, files, flashlights, gauges ○ Hammers, handsaws ○ Ladders, lanterns, levels ○ Oil cans, paint brushes, picks ○ Reamers, screwdrivers, shovels ○ Tool-boxes, wheelbarrows, wrenches • Drafting, engineering, and surveying tools: ○ Curve sets, drawing instruments ○ Hand compasses, measuring tapes ○ Plumb bobs, sextants, slide rules • Gardening tools: ○ Garden hoses, lawnmowers ○ Pruning shears, rakes, sprayers • Other specialized tools and instruments: ○ Art and craft ○ Barbering, blacksmith, electrician ○ Metal working, plumbing, tailoring ○ Weighing and measuring Do Not Include: • Medical, dental, and laboratory instruments; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Medical, Dental, and Laboratory Supplies.</u>” • Safety devices, such as belts, goggles, helmets; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Clothing and Personal.</u>” • Supplies such as nails, bolts, oxygen, welding rod; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Equipment.</u>” If used in construction of capital assets by force account; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Equipment.</u>”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
28	Special Departmental Expense Includes comparatively specialized supplies and services, generally peculiar to one of a few departments, for which an account has not otherwise been provided. Include: • Ammunition • Athletic supplies • Books for circulating library use • Demonstration materials • Detective expense • Dog food • Disposal of animal carcasses • Educational training, including related expenses • Election officers • Fingerprinting supplies • Fireworks • Games and puzzles • Handcuffs • Hoses, nozzles • Photograph records • Pound suppliers • Printing and binding lists of registered votes • Printing ballots • Road materials • Service pins • Shipping supplies • Unclassified expenditures from district attorney's or sheriff's special funds

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
29	Transportation and Travel Includes the transportation of persons and things, except where other services furnished in conjunction with transportation comprise the major portion of the charge, or when the transportation is more appropriately included under subobject titles indicating purposes. Include: • Central garage services • Delivery services • Freight, express, and other transportation charges not chargeable to a commodity purchased • Gasoline or diesel fuel, except when purchased for central garage • Leased or hired vehicles • Reimbursement for private-car use • Reimbursement for: meals, lodging, conference expenses, bridge tolls, train fares, bus fares, air fares, any other authorized travel expense • Transportation of prisoners and court wards Do Not Include: • Ambulance service; post to “Services and Supplies — <u>Professional and Specialized Services</u>.” • Armored car service; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Professional and Specialized Services</u>.” • Packing Supplies; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Office Expense</u>.” • Transportation of indigents; post to “<u>Other Charges — Support and Care of Persons</u>.” • Purchases for central garage vehicles; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Equipment</u>.” • Gasoline, diesel fuel, etc. used for off-highway purposes by road department or central garage; post to “<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Equipment</u>.” • Natural gas, butane, fuel oil, etc. used for heating/cooling purposes; post to “<u>Services and Supplies — Utilities</u>.”

Code	Accounts — Services and Supplies
30	Utilities Include: • Coal, wood • Electricity • Heating and cooling supplies for buildings • Natural gas, butane, fuel oil • Sewage disposal • Street lighting on a local government entity's property • Water Do Not Include: • Refuse disposal; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Household Expense.</u>" • Telephone service; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Communications.</u>" • Gasoline, fuel for central garage vehicles; post to "<u>Services and Supplies: Maintenance — Equipment.</u>" • Fuel for department vehicles; post to "<u>Services and Supplies — Transportation and Travel.</u>"

Other Charges

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
40	Support and Care of Persons Includes cash and other necessities furnished to indigents or others for whom a local government entity has assumed burden of support. Include: • Allowances for incidentals to prisoners and court wards • Contract nursing and housekeeping services for welfare recipients • Groceries, clothing, and supplies for indigent persons • Meals and lodging for indigent persons • Medical and dental supplies furnished to public assistance recipients • Payment for care in foster homes and private institutions • Payment of rents and utilities of indigent persons • Public assistance payments • Reimbursement to other governmental agencies for care and transportation of prisoners • Reimbursement to the State for care of county prisoners in State institutions • Transportation of indigent persons • Maternity and adoption expense Do Not Include: • Support and care in county institutions; post to applicable subobjects
41	Bond Redemption Includes redemption of matured and called bonds.
42	Retirement of Other Long-Term Debt Includes liquidation of long-term debt principal other than bonds, including lease payments.

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
43	Interest on Bonds Includes interest and call premium payments on bonded debt.
44	Interest on Other Long-Term Debt Includes interest on long-term debt, other than bonds and leases.
45	Interest on Notes and Warrants Includes interest payments on short-term debt, such as tax anticipation notes and registered warrants.
46	Judgments and Damages Includes expenditures in settlement of claims against the special district for injury to persons and property. Do Not Include: • Damages paid in connection with rights of way acquisition; post to “<u>Other Charges — Rights-of-Way.</u>” • Damages paid in connection with land acquisition; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Land.</u>”
47	Rights of Way Includes amounts paid for the acquisition of easements where title is not acquired by the county, and for land acquired in fee title for road purposes.
48	Taxes and Assessments Includes taxes and assessments levied against the county by another governmental agency.
49	Depreciation Includes the recording of expiration in the service life of capital assets, other than wasting assets attributable to wear and tear, deterioration, action of the physical elements, inadequacy, and obsolescence.
50	Bad Debts Includes amounts incurred in the current year because of the failure to collect receivables. Do Not Include: • Hospital contractual allowances; post to a contra-revenue account.
51	Income Allocation Includes allocation of net earnings to Deferred Compensation Liability account (Deferred Compensation Fund only).

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
52	Contributions to Non-Special District Governmental Agency Includes contributions, grants, subventions, etc., to non-county governmental agencies. Include: • Grants to recreation, soil, conservation, air pollution control, and other types of districts • Grants to State agencies for fish and game propagation and predatory animal control • Contributions to cities for lifeguard services • Contributions to the U.S. Forest Service • Disproportionate share Do not Include: • Grants to other county agencies such as internal service, enterprise funds; post to <u>“Other Financing Uses — Transfers Out.”</u> • Contributions to non-governmental agencies such as museums and zoos, local celebrations and chambers of commerce, blood banks, PTA milk subsidies; post to <u>“Services and Supplies — Professional and Specialized Services.”</u>
53	Interfund Expenditure Include expenditures resulting from interfund transactions between governmental fund types. Include: • Communication • Data processing • Insurance • Maintenance • Professional and specialized services
54	Debt Issuance Cost Debt issuance cost, except any portion related to prepaid insurance costs, should be recognized as an expense in the period incurred.

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
55	Lease Expenditures Includes expenditures incurred in procuring the noncancelable right to use an underlying asset (leases) belonging to another government or non-governmental entity. For financial reporting purposes it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record lease transactions. Include: • Leases — Land • Leases — Building • Leases — Equipment • Leases — Infrastructure Do Not Include: • Leases — Short Term (lease contracts 12 months or less) • Equipment Rentals; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Rent — Equipment.</u>” • Building Rentals; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Rent — Buildings.</u>” • Interest paid on leases; post to “<u>Other Charges, Interest on Leases.</u>”
56	Interest on Leases Includes all costs pertaining to leases. For financial reporting purposes it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record lease interest costs. Include: • Interest on Leases — Land • Interest on Leases — Building • Interest on Leases — Equipment • Interest on Leases — Infrastructure Do Not Include: • Interest on bonds; post to “<u>Other Charges — Interest on Bonds.</u>” • Interest on long-term debt; post to “<u>Other Charges — Interest on Other Long-Term Debt.</u>” • Interest on notes and warrants; post to “<u>Other Charges — Interest on Notes and Warrants.</u>”
57	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Expenditures Includes expenditures incurred by the operator in obtaining (via contract) the control of the right to operate or use a nonfinancial asset (the underlying PPP asset) from a local government entity. An expenditure and other financing source should be reported in the period that the PPP asset is initially recognized and should be measured as provided in the <u>Long-Term Liabilities table</u> in section 7.04, <i>Chart of Accounts — Balance Sheet</i> (refer to Account #318). Subsequent governmental fund PPP payments should be accounted for consistent with the principles for debt service payments of long-term debt. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record PPP transactions.

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
58	Interest on Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Assets Includes all interest costs pertaining to PPPs. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record PPP interest costs.
59	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Expenditures Includes expenditures incurred in obtaining (via contract) the control of the right to use another party's (a SBITA vendor's) IT software, alone or in combination with tangible capital assets (the underlying IT assets). An expenditure and other financing source should be reported in the period that the subscription asset is initially recognized and should be measured as provided in the <u>Long-Term Liabilities table</u> in section 7.04, <i>Chart of Accounts — Balance Sheet</i> (refer to Account #317). Subsequent governmental fund subscription payments should be accounted for consistent with the principles for debt service payments of long-term debt. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record SBITA subscription asset transactions.
60	Interest on Subscription-Based Information Technology (SBITA) Subscription Assets Includes all interest costs pertaining to SBITAs. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record SBITA interest costs.
61	Amortization Expense – Leases (right to use nonfinancial asset) Includes the periodic expense charges that record the expiration of the estimated useful life of an <u>Intangible Right to Use (RTU) Lease Asset</u> . For financial reporting purposes it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record amortization expenses pertaining to RTU lease asset transactions. Since the implementation of GASB 87 counties are required to recognize and amortize RTU lease assets for qualified leases. Counties can also include amortization expenses pertaining to qualified lease assets in their respective Countywide Cost Allocation Plans (CCAP). California counties can refer to section 3340 of <i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> (Handbook) for more detailed information on this topic. The Handbook is accessible on the Countywide Cost Allocation Plans webpage on the SCO website at https://sco.ca.gov/ard_county_cost_allocation.html

Code	Accounts — Other Charges
62	Amortization Expense —Subscription-Based Information Technology (SBITA) Subscription Asset Includes the periodic expense charges that record the expiration of the estimated useful life of an Subscription Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA) type asset. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record amortization expenses pertaining to SBITA subscription asset transactions. Since the implementation of GASB 96 counties are required to recognize and amortize SBITA subscription assets. Counties can also include SBITA related amortization expenses in their respective Countywide Cost Allocation Plans (CCAP). California counties can refer to section 3340 <i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> (Handbook) for more detailed information on this topic. The Handbook is accessible on the Countywide Cost Allocation Plans webpage on the SCO website at https://sco.ca.gov/ard_county_cost_allocation.html

Capital Assets

Code	Accounts — Capital Assets
71	Land Includes expenditures for the acquisition of land; however, land acquired for infrastructure is optional. Include: • Appraisal, negotiation, title search, and surveying fees • Cost of obtaining consents and payment for condemnation costs • Filing costs • Clearing land for use • Cost of demolishing or relocating structures Do Not Include: • Purchase of right of way where title is not acquired by the county ; post to “<u>Other Charges – Rights of Way</u>.” • Land acquired in fee title for infrastructure purposes if not treated as a capital asset; post to “<u>Other Charges — Rights-of-Way</u>.”

Code	Accounts — Capital Assets
72	Buildings and Improvements Includes expenditures for the acquisition of structures and improvements. Include: • Architect fees • Costs of permits and licenses • Condemnation costs • Insurance during construction • Costs of fixtures attached to and forming a permanent part of structures • Major alterations or improvements of existing structures • Non-removable leasehold improvements • Landscaping • Pipelines • Wells • Pavement • Sewers • Drains • Fences • Dams
73	Equipment Includes expenditures for the acquisition of physical property of a permanent nature, other than land, buildings and improvements, and infrastructure. Include: • Freight or other carriage charges • Sales, use, and transportation taxes • Installation costs
74	Infrastructure Includes expenditures for land and structures for networks and subsystems not classified as buildings or building improvements. Include: • Roads • Bridges • Tunnels • Drainage systems • Water and sewer systems • Dams • Lighting systems • Sidewalks, walkways, etc.

Code	Accounts — Capital Assets
75	Intangible Assets Includes nonphysical assets that have a useful life of greater than one year Include: • Trademarks • Internet domain names • Noncompetition agreements • Order backlog • Licensing agreements • Broadcast rights • Trade secrets • Computer software • Literary works, etc. Do Not Include • Leases; post to “<u>Capital Assets — Lease.</u>”
76	Leases (Right To Use Nonfinancial Asset) Includes costs incurred in procuring the noncancelable right to use an underlying asset (leases) belonging to another government or non-governmental entity. For financial reporting purposes it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record lease transactions. Include: • Leases — Land • Leases — Building • Leases — Equipment • Leases — Infrastructure Do Not Include: • Leases — Short Term (lease contracts 12 months or less) • Equipment Rentals; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Rent — Equipment.</u>” • Building Rentals; post to “<u>Services and Supplies, Rent — Buildings.</u>” • Interest paid on leases; post to “<u>Other Charges — Interest on Leases.</u>”
77	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Asset (Right To Use Nonfinancial Asset — Operator) Includes costs incurred by the operator in obtaining (via contract) the control of the right to operate or use a nonfinancial asset (the underlying PPP asset) from a local government entity (e.g., infrastructure or other capital assets). Interest paid on PPP assets should be posted to the PPP interest account and not to the PPP asset account. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record PPP asset transactions.

Code	Accounts — Capital Assets
78	Subscription-Based Information Technology (SBITA) Subscription Asset A local government entity should measure subscription asset as the sum of the following (see bulleted list below) less any SBITA vendor incentives received from the SBITA at the commencement of subscription term: • The amount of initial measurement of subscription liability • Payments associated with SBITA contract made to the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term (if applicable) • Capitalizable initial implementation costs Interest paid on SBITA assets should be posted to the SBITA interest account and not to the SBITA asset account. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record SBITA subscription asset transactions.

Transfers Out

Code	Accounts — Transfers Out
90	Transfers Out Includes significant transactions or other events within the control of management that are either unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence.

Unusual or Infrequent Items

Code	Accounts — Special Items
100	Unusual or Infrequent Items Includes transactions or other events that are either unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence. Refer to section 7.15 <i>Unusual or Infrequent Items</i> for more details.

Intrafund Transfers

Code	Accounts — Intrafund Transfers
110	Intrafund Transfers Intrafund transfers are included as appropriate increases/decreases to revenues or expenditure accounts. These are optional transfers of costs between budget units in the same governmental type fund. The account is used to distribute central staff costs to operating departments for budgetary and internal operating statements purposes. In all cases: • the amounts should be supported by justifiable cost allocations or cost accounting calculations; and • the transfer may be shown as a single amount under (an increase for the receiving budget unit, a decrease for the servicing unit) or as a decrease of a single amount in expenditures for the servicing unit and an increase in each appropriate expenditure account of the receiving unit.

Appropriation for Contingencies

Code	Accounts — Appropriation For Contingencies
120	Appropriation for Contingencies A budgetary provision representing that portion of the financing requirements set aside to meet unforeseen expenditure requirements.

Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Provided)

Code	Accounts — Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Provided)
130	Noncapital Subsidy Expenses Resources provided to another party or fund (1) for which the other party or fund does not provide goods and services to the proprietary fund and (2) that are recoverable through the proprietary funds current or future pricing policies
131	Noncapital Subsidy Transfers Out All other transfers of noncapital subsidies to other parties that are not recorded under Account #130.

7.11 Expenditure/Expense Accounts by Function (Program)/Budget Unit

The minimum level for each function is provided on the following pages, along with examples of activity and budget units. Each budget unit should be classified, at a minimum, as to function and activity. The costs of combined statutory offices that engage in more than one activity should be allocated among the activities performed. In the absence of more refined allocation methods, an estimate may be used. With respect to other budget units that perform more than one activity, allocation is recommended and is required for reports of expenditures to the State Controller.

- **Budget Unit:** classification for the expenditure requirements of the budget into appropriately identified accounting or cost centers deemed necessary or desirable for control of the financial operation. Except as otherwise provided by law, such units may be devised at the discretion of the board of supervisors.

Combined statutory offices that engage in more than one of the expenditure activities and all other budget units that engage in more than one activity are required to allocate their appropriations and final total expenditures among the activities performed. Possible methods of arriving at reasonable estimates include:

- using cost accounting to calculate the allocation;
- allocating all expenses for a test period and using the resulting proportion as long as operating conditions are substantially unchanged. This method is suitable if seasonal and cyclical fluctuations are not significant;
- dividing salary and wage costs among the activities performed; dividing total appropriations in the same proportion as salaries and wages; or
- using the results of the cost allocation plan.

Numbers assigned to functions (programs) and activities are for reference purposes only.

Function (Program)/Budget Unit Classification Chart

Function: General

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Legislative and Administrative	• Board of Supervisors • Clerk of the Board • Administrative Officer • Annual Audit, if for Supervisors • Council of Governments
.02 Finance	• Auditor-Controller • Treasurer • Assessor • Tax Collector • Purchasing Agent • Central Collections
.03 Counsel	• County Counsel • District Attorney (Legal Advice)
.04 Personnel	• Personnel Department • Safety Committees and Internal Training • Civil Service Commission • Traffic Safety Commission
.05 Elections	• Registrar of Voters • County Clerk — Elections • Primary, General, and Special Elections • Election Expense — Supervisors • School Elections
.06 Communication	• Telephone and Radio Systems • Messenger and Delivery Departments
.07 Property Management	• Rents • Assessments and Taxes • Maintenance Departments • Custodial Services • Utilities • Property Management Departments
.08 Plant Acquisition	• Budget units accounting for acquisition of land, structures, and improvements
.09 Promotion	• County Chambers of Commerce • Fairs and Expositions • Advertising County Resources • Economic Development

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.10 Other General	• General Insurance and Surety Bonds • Workers' Compensation Insurance • Retirement and Social Security • Employee Group Insurance • Judgments and Damages • Surveyor and Engineer • Data Processing • Retirement Board • Central Services, Stores • Motor Vehicle Pool • Deferred Compensation • Urban Renewal Photographer • Microfilm Services

Function: Public Protection

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Judicial	• Courts • Grand Jury • Family Support • Juvenile Justice Commission • Court-Appointed Counsel • Law Library • District Attorney (prosecution) • Public Defender
.02 Police Protection	• Sheriff • Marshal
.03 Detention and Correction	• Jails • Rehabilitation Centers • Honor Farms • Juvenile Halls • Probation Department • State Correctional Schools • Delinquency Prevention
.04 Fire Protection	• Fire Marshal • Fire Department • Weed Abatement (other than noxious) • State Contracts for Fire Protection
.05 Flood Control and Soil and Water Conservation	• Administration and Engineering • Channel Construction and Maintenance • Levee Construction and Maintenance • Cloud Seeding
.06 Protection Inspection	• Agricultural Commissioner • Building Inspector • Livestock Inspector • Sealer of Weights and Measures

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.07 Other Protection	• County Clerk/Recorder • Public Administrator • Emergency Services (Civil Defense, Disaster Relief) • Medical Examiner (Coroner) • Public Guardian — Conservator • Local Agency Formation Commission • Environmental Protection Programs • Consumer Affairs • Fish and Game Propagation • Planning and Zoning • Pound • Predatory Animal Control • Cemeteries • Abandoned Vehicle Program • Crossing Guards

Function: Public Ways and Facilities

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Public Ways	• Road Construction and Maintenance (including ferries as part of a public road system) • Deep Water Channels • Street Lighting
.02 Transportation Terminals	• Airports • Harbors and Ports
.03 Transportation Systems	• Transit Systems — Bus, Rail
.04 Parking Facilities	• Public Garages • Metered Street Parking

Function: Health and Sanitation

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Health	• Health Officer • Health Department • Community Mental Health • Health Clinics • Air Pollution • Vital Statistics • Family Planning, Family Health • Alcohol and Drug Abuse Services • Environmental Health

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.02 Hospital Care	• County Hospital • T.B. Hospitals • State Institutions • Emergency Hospitals • Ambulance Service • Chronic Diseases • Care of the Mentally Ill • Medical Care Services • Hospital Clinics • Medically Indigent Adults
.03 California Children's Services	• Children's Systems of Care
.04 Sanitation	• Refuse Collection and Disposal

Function: Public Assistance

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Administration	• Social Services Department • Auditor — Welfare Division • Adoptions • Food Stamp Program • Homemaker Services

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.02 Aid Programs	• Refugee Cash Assistance • Calworks Program for Kids • In-Home Support Services
.03 General Relief	• Aid to Indigents • Indigent Burials and Cemetery Care
.04 Care of Court Wards	• Probation – Care of Juvenile Court Wards
.05 Veterans' Services	• Veterans' Service Officer
.06 Other Assistance	• Vocational Retaining • Day Care Centers • Aid to Victims of Crime and Violence • Federal Manpower Program • Community Development • Office on Aging • Commission on the Status of Women • Senior Citizens' Program

Function: Education

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 School Administration	• Board of Education • Superintendent of School • County Committee on School District Organization • Auditor — School Claims Division
.02 Library Services	• County Library
.03 Agricultural Education	• Agricultural Extension Service • Farm Advisor • 4-H Program • Home Economics
.04 Other Education	• Rehabilitation Center Schools

Function: Recreation and Cultural Services

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Recreation Facilities	• Recreation Department • Contributions to Other • Governmental Agencies (recreation) • Parks • Playgrounds • Swimming Pools • Aquatic Recreational Areas • Golf Courses • Riding Trails
.02 Cultural Services	• Museums • Monuments and Statues • Art Galleries • Botanical Gardens • Planetary • Zoos • Aquaria • Arboreta • Band and Orchestra Commissions
.03 Veterans Memorial Buildings	• Community Buildings
.04 Small Craft Harbors	• Beaches and Harbors

Function: Debt Service

Activity	Example of Budget Units
.01 Retirement of Long-Term Debt	• Other Debt Service • Retirement of Bond Fund • Family Law Center – Debt Service
.02 Interest on Long-Term debt	• Debt Service

Revenues

7.12 Revenue Classification

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.131 (Section 1800, paragraph .131), the most significant aspect of governmental fund accounting is that the operations measurement focus is on sources, uses, and balances of fund financial resources. In that context, the term revenues means increases in (sources of) fund financial resources other than through interfund transfers and debt issue proceeds and redemptions of demand bonds (refer to GASB Cod. Sec. D30 for additional information on demand bonds).

Revenue accounts therefore reflect the changes in the financial condition of a governmental fund that occurs during a specified time period, except for those resulting from transfers and general long-term debt issuance and issuance of special assessment bonds, refunding bonds, and certain demand bonds.

7.13 Program Revenues

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.143 (Section 1800, paragraph .143), program revenues are directly linked to the functions/programs or from parties outside the reporting government's taxpayers or citizenry, as a whole; they reduce the net cost of the function to be financed from the government's general revenues. The statement of activities should separately report three categories of program revenues:

- Charges for services
- Program-specific operating grants and contributions
- Program-specific capital grants and contributions

Charges for services may include a variety of program-related fees, such as garbage collection fees, museum admissions, ball field permits, and parking fines. Most grants and contributions include aid for specific functions and programs, such as educational aid, but may also include amounts provided by not-for-profit organizations and other nongovernmental entities. Grants and contributions for operating purposes and capital projects are identified separately. Multi-purpose grants, if program-specific, should be reported as program revenue. If not program-specific, they should be reported as general revenue.

To identify the function to which a program revenue pertains, use the following determining factor(s):

- Charges for services — It is the function that generates the revenue.
- Grants and contributions — It is the function to which the revenues are restricted.
- Other revenues — It is the function that generates the revenue.

Earnings on endowments or permanent fund investments should be reported as program revenues if restricted to a specific program, but otherwise should be reported separately in the same manner as general revenues.

7.14 General Revenues

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.144 (Section 1800, paragraph .144), all revenues are deemed to be general revenues unless they are required to be reported as program revenues. All taxes, even those that are levied for a specific purpose, are general revenues and should be reported by type of tax. Examples of these taxes include sales tax, property tax, franchise tax, and income tax.

Revenues such as interest, grants, contributions, or charges for service that are non-restrictive in nature do not qualify as program revenues and should be treated as general revenue. Examples include unrestricted aid from other governments and grants that are provided for general support and are not tied to particular program. Investment earnings (unrestricted) are typically reported as general revenues.

7.15 Unusual or Infrequent Items

GASB defines unusual or infrequent items as transactions and other events that are unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence. These items should be reported individually as the last presented flow(s) of resources prior to the net change in resource flows in the government-wide, governmental fund, and proprietary fund statements of resource flows.

An unusual or infrequent item might be the gain or loss on the sale of a capital asset for a local government that does not commonly sell capital assets. As stated above, local governments should report individually as the last presented flow(s) of resources in the financial statements. In the notes to financial statements, local governments should also disclose the program, function, or identifiable activity to which an unusual or infrequent item is related and whether the item is within the control of management.

The following are the criteria and definitions for unusual or infrequent items:

Unusual or infrequent items are events and transactions that are distinguished either by their unusual nature, the infrequency of their occurrence, or both. The following criteria identify when an event or transaction is either unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence:

- Unusual nature: the underlying event or transaction should possess a high degree of abnormality and be of a type clearly unrelated to, or only incidentally related to, the ordinary and typical activities of the government, taking into account the environment in which the government operates.
- Infrequency of occurrence: the underlying event or transaction should be of a type that would not reasonably be expected to recur in the foreseeable future, taking into account the environment in which the government operates.

Certain gains and losses should not be reported as unusual or infrequent items because they are usual in nature and have an expected recurrence due to routine and continuing operations. Some examples of these types of gains and losses include, but are not limited to:

- a) write-down/write-off of receivables, inventories, equipment leased to others, or intangible assets;
- b) gains or losses from exchange or translation of foreign currencies;
- c) other gains or losses from the sale or abandonment of capital assets used in operations;
- d) effects of a strike; or
- e) adjustments of accruals on long-term contracts.

In the rare situation where an event or transaction clearly meets the criteria for either unusual nature or infrequency of occurrence as discussed earlier in this section, the event or transaction would give rise to an unusual or infrequent gain or loss that includes one or more of the examples in the preceding list.

Gains or losses in these cases should be included in the unusual or infrequent item if they are a direct result of a major casualty (e.g., an earthquake) or a prohibition under a newly enacted law or regulation that clearly meets the criteria for one or both unusual nature or infrequency of occurrence as discussed earlier in this section. However, any portion of such losses that would have resulted from a valuation of assets on a going-concern basis should not be included in the unusual or infrequent item.

7.16 Operating vs. Nonoperating Revenues Expenses

The Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Net Position (proprietary funds) should distinguish between operating and nonoperating revenues and expenses as well as separately report noncapital subsidies. Operating revenues and expenses are revenues and expenses other than nonoperating revenues and expenses. Nonoperating revenues and expenses are (a) subsidies received and provided, (b) contributions to permanent and term endowments, (c) revenues and expenses related to financing, (d) resources from the disposal of capital assets and inventory, and (e) investment income and expenses.

If specific transactions constitute the proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations, those revenues and expense transactions should be classified as operating revenues or operating expenses even though such transactions would otherwise be classified as nonoperating in most proprietary fund financial statements.

7.17 Reporting Revenue

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.132 (Section 1800, paragraph .132), the primary classification for governmental fund revenues is by fund and source. Some major revenue source classifications include taxes, licenses and permits, intergovernmental revenues, charges for services, fines and forfeits, and miscellaneous. Governmental units often classify revenues by organizational units, which include departments, bureaus and divisions, depending on the organization structure. Proprietary fund revenues should be reported by major source.

Activity, function, and program codes are often better suited to source classifications in governmental accounting. However, reporting of revenues by object may serve other needs of the local government. Each local government should evaluate its own reporting needs when establishing its coding structure.

7.18 Chart of Accounts — Revenues

The following Revenue Chart of Accounts has been designed as a complete instrument for the accounting of the revenues of California counties. It provides all of the data necessary for preparation of the State Controller's Counties Financial Transactions Report. However, financial statement requirements and local situations or customs may require a further breakdown of certain revenues for local purposes. In this event, the accounts listed on the chart may need to be broken down into the necessary subaccounts for county uses. For example, Franchises might be set up in the chart of accounts as:

- Franchises — “X” Gas Company
- Franchises — “Y” Electric Company
- Franchises — “Z” Telephone Company

Used in this manner, the chart of accounts allows a county to accumulate all of the detail necessary to meet local needs, while still facilitating consolidation into the prescribed account form for State reporting purposes. It is recommended that interfund accounts and subaccounts be used to identify and control interfund revenue and expenditure transactions between governmental fund types. When preparing consolidated statements such as the State Controller's Counties Financial Transactions Report and financial statements in accordance with GAAP, adjustments will be necessary to remove the effects of these transactions. The use of interfund subobject accounts is acceptable and will aid in making the appropriate adjustment. For interfund revenues, either of the following methods is acceptable.

Account for interfund accounts within:

- 1) account numbers 118, 140, and 141 (Interfund Revenue, Sales and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues, and Transfers-In); or
- 2) a subaccount of an appropriate existing revenue account. If method (2) is used, the subaccount should be clearly identified as an interfund account.

For example, under account number 107, Road and Street Services, a subaccount 107, Road and Street Services — Interfund would be established for work performed by the road fund for the general fund. Accounts used in the following sample chart are numbered in sequence for reference purposes only. For a full description of the accounts listed in this section, please see Chapter section 7.19, *Explanation of Revenue Accounts*.

Revenue Chart of Accounts

Taxes

Number	Account – Taxes
1	Property Taxes — Current Secured
2	Property Taxes — Current Unsecured
3	Property Taxes — Prior Secured
4	Property Taxes — Prior Unsecured
5	Supplemental Property Taxes — Current
6	Supplemental Property Taxes — Prior
7	Residual Property Taxes
8	Pass-through Property Taxes
9	Property Tax In Lieu of Vehicle License Fee (VLF)
10	Sales and Use Taxes
11	Other Taxes
12	(Intentionally Left Blank)

Licenses, Permits, and Franchises

Number	Account – Licenses, Permits, and Franchises
20	Animal Licenses
21	Business Licenses
22	Construction Permits
23	Road Privileges and Permits
24	Zoning Permits Administration
25	Franchises
26	Other Licenses and Permits

Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties

Number	Account – Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties
30	Vehicle Code Fines
31	Other Court Fines
32	Forfeitures and Penalties
33	Penalties and Costs on Delinquent Taxes

Revenue From Investments and Property

Number	Account – Revenue From Investments and Property
40	Investment Income
41	(Intentionally Left Blank)
42	Rents and Concessions — including Service Concession Arrangements
43	Royalties
44	Lease Revenues
45	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Revenues

Intergovernmental Revenues

Number	Account – Intergovernmental Revenues
50	State — Aviation
51	State — Highway Users Tax
52	State — Motor Vehicle In Lieu Tax
53	(Intentionally left blank)
54	Other State — In Lieu Taxes
55	State — Public Assistance Administration
56	State — Public Assistance Programs
57	State — Health Administration
58	State — California Children Services
59	State — Cerebral Palsy
60	State — Mental Health
61	State — Tuberculosis Control
62	Other State — Health
63	State — Agriculture
64	State — Civil Defense
65	State — Construction
66	State — Corrections
67	State — County Fairs
68	State — Disaster Relief
69	State — Veterans Affairs
70	State — Homeowners Property Tax Relief
71	(Intentionally Left Blank)
72	State — Proposition 172 Public Safety Funds
73	State — Citizens Option for Public Safety (COPS)
74	State — Other
75	Federal — Public Assistance Administration
76	Federal — Public Assistance Programs
77	Federal — Health Administration
78	Federal — Construction
79	Federal — Disaster Relief
80	Federal — Forest Reserve Revenue
81	Federal — Grazing fees
82	Federal — In Lieu Taxes
83	Federal — Other
84	Other — In Lieu Revenues
85	Other — Governmental Agencies

Charges for Services

Number	Account – Charges for Services
90	Assessment and Tax Collection Fees
91	Special Assessments
92	Auditing and Accounting Fees
93	Communication Services
94	Election Services
95	Legal Services
96	Personnel Services

Number	Account – Charges for Services
97	Planning and Engineering Services
98	Purchasing Fees
99	Agricultural Services
100	Civil Process Services
101	Court Fees and Costs
102	Estate Fees
103	Commitment Fees
104	Humane Services
105	Law Enforcement Services
106	Recording Fees
107	Road and Street Services
108	Health Fees
109	Mental Health Services
110	California Children's Services
111	Sanitation Services
112	Adoption Fees
113	Institutional Care and Services
114	Educational Services
115	Library Services
116	Park and Recreation Services
117	Other
118	Interfund Revenue

Miscellaneous Revenues

Number	Account – Miscellaneous Revenues
120	(Intentionally Left Blank)
121	Other Sales
122	Tobacco Settlement
123	Miscellaneous

Other Financing Sources

Number	Account – Other Financing Sources
130	Sale of Capital Assets
131	Long-Term Debt Proceeds
132	Leases (Lessee)
133	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Asset (Operator)
134	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Subscription Asset
135	Other

Transfers

Number	Account – Transfers
140	Sales and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues
141	Transfers-In

Contributions, Unusual or Infrequent Items

Number	Account – Contributions, Unusual or Infrequent Items
150	Contributions
151	Unusual and Infrequent Items

Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Received)

Code	Accounts – Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Provided)
160	Noncapital Subsidy Revenues
161	Noncapital Subsidy Transfers In

7.19 Explanation of Revenue Accounts

Following are the account titles and the recommended use of each account. Use is indicated by either an explanation, example, or both. Where shown, the title alone is usually considered self-explanatory and indicative of use. Within the account listing there are two references:

- Under the reference Include are examples of the types of revenue that should be posted to this account.
- Under the reference Do Not Include are examples of the types of revenue that should not be posted to this account. This category also notes the type of account to which they should be posted.

Explanation of Revenue Accounts**Taxes**

Account Code	Account – Taxes
1	Property Taxes — Current Secured Includes all taxes apportioned as a result of levies made against the secured roll of the county for the current fiscal year.
2	Property Taxes — Current Unsecured Includes all taxes apportioned as a result of levies made against the unsecured roll of the county for the current fiscal year.
3	Property Taxes — Prior Secured Includes all taxes and interest apportioned as a result of levies made against the secured roll of the county in prior fiscal periods; also includes revenues from tax-defaulted land sales.
4	Property Taxes — Prior Unsecured Includes all taxes apportioned because of levies made against the unsecured rolls of the county in prior fiscal periods.
5	Supplemental Property Taxes — Current Includes all taxes apportioned because of supplemental levies made against the secured and unsecured property of the county for the current fiscal year.

Account Code	Account – Taxes
6	Supplemental Property Taxes — Prior Includes all taxes and interest apportioned as a result of supplemental levies made against the secured and unsecured property of the county in prior fiscal periods.
7	Residual Property Taxes Includes apportioned taxes, which exceed the enforceable obligations, pass-through payments and other costs associated with successor agencies of dissolved redevelopment agencies.
8	Pass-through Property Taxes Includes apportioned taxes as a result of pass-through agreements or statutory pass-through revenues associated with successor agencies of dissolved redevelopment agencies.
9	Property Tax In Lieu of Vehicle License Fee (VLF) Property tax revenue in lieu of vehicle license fees received from the Vehicle License Fee Property Tax Compensation Fund (VLF Compensation Fund) as allocated by statute.
10	Sales and Use Taxes Includes the net amount received from the levy of a sales and use tax under the Bradley-Burns Uniform Sales Tax Law. Include: Revenues received under the Transportation Act of 1971.
11	Other Taxes Includes county-levied taxes not included elsewhere. Include: - Raw material processing fees - Hotel (transient lodging) taxes - Property transfer taxes - Race horse taxes - Timber yield taxes - Aircraft taxes Do Not Include: Revenue from the State, federal government, or other agencies in lieu of taxes; post to the appropriate account under <u>“Intergovernmental Revenues”</u> .
12	(Intentionally Left Blank)

Licenses, Permits, and Franchises

Account Code	Account – Licenses, Permits, and Franchises
20	Animal Licenses Include: • Dog licenses Do Not Include: • Kennel licenses; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Business Licenses.</u>” Impounding fees, placement fees, boarding fees, vaccination fees, and sale of animal carcasses; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Humane Services.</u>”
21	Business Licenses Includes revenues from the licensing of business, occupations, and amusements. Include: • Taxicab licenses • Private investigator licenses • Second-Hand store licenses • Food market licenses • Carnival licenses • Food processing health permits • Milk and dairy health permits • Kennel licenses • Fire extinguisher serviceman permits • Motion picture operator permits • Pest Control Business registration • Other business licenses or permits issues primarily for regulation Do Not Include: • Services provided that are not primarily regulatory; post to the appropriate account under “<u>Charges for Services.</u>”
22	Construction Permits Include: • Building permits • Electrical permits • Plumbing permits • Sidewalk, curb, and gutter permits • Air pollution construction permits Do Not Include: • Plan or map checking services when not included above; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Planning and Engineering Services.</u>” • Road Excavation permits; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Road Privileges and Permits.</u>” • Permit for breaking curb and gutter; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Road Privileges and Permits.</u>” • Air pollution variance permits; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Other Licenses and Permits.</u>”

Account Code	Account – Licenses, Permits, and Franchises
23	Road Privileges and Permits Includes revenue from the issuance of permits for the special use or obstruction of county roads. Include: • Transportation permits for movement of usual loads on county roads • Excavation permits • Permits for mains laid • Road obstruction permits • Permits for breaking curb and gutter
24	Zoning Permits Administration Includes revenue from the issuance of permits related to property other than as provided in the zoning ordinance. Include: • Zone changes • Zone exceptions and special permits • Cemetery permits • Agricultural preserve application fees Do Not Include: • Subdivision fees; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Planning and Engineering Services.</u>”
25	Franchises Includes revenue from persons, firms, and corporations for the continuing use of property, usually involving the elements of regulation and monopoly. Include: • Bids for franchises awarded • Franchises based on gross receipts • Franchises based on number of miles of pipeline, electrical transmission line, street railway, etc. Do Not Include: • Permits for attaching privately owned pipelines to county bridges; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Other Licenses and Permits.</u>”

Account Code	Account – Licenses, Permits, and Franchises
26	Other Licenses and Permits Includes revenue from all licenses and permits not included elsewhere. Include: • Bicycle licenses • Gun permits • Fire permits • Marriage licenses • Air pollution variance permits • Oil well permits • Burial Permits • Other non-business licenses and permits that are primarily regulatory • Permits for attaching privately owner pipelines to bridges • Pleasure-riding permit fees • Mobile home use permit fees • Permit fees for explosives Do Not Include: • Air pollution construction permits; post to “<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Construction Permits.</u>” • Other license and permits where the payment is primarily rent or a charge for correct services; post to the appropriate account under “<u>Revenue from Use of Money and Property</u>” or “<u>Charges for Services.</u>”

Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties

Account Code	Account – Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties
30	Vehicle Code Fines Includes revenue from court fines and forfeiture of bail for violations of the State Vehicle Code. Include: • The county’s share of State Vehicle Code Fines, including the county’s share from arrests made in cities • Fines for “<u>driving under the influence</u>” (DUI) Do Not Include: • Violations of county traffic ordinances; post to “<u>Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties — Other Court Fines.</u>” • Fines, penalties and court costs imposed as a condition of probation; post to “<u>Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties — Forfeitures and Penalties.</u>”

Account Code	Account – Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties
31	Other Court Fines Includes revenue from court fines and forfeitures of bail for violations of other than the State Vehicle Code. Include: • Violations of county traffic ordinances • Violations for other county ordinances • Violations of the Fish and Game Code • Violations of any State law other than the Vehicle Code • Fines for possession of controlled substances • Littering fines • Unlawful burning fines • The county's share of fines, other than State Vehicle Code fines resulting from arrest by city officers • Fees for attending traffic school
32	Forfeitures and Penalties Includes all forfeitures and penalties other than those included under "<u>Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties — Penalties and Costs on Delinquent Taxes.</u>" Include: • Judgment and damages • Forfeitures of faithful performance bonds or deposits • Penalties and court costs imposed as a condition of probation • The sale of vehicles used in commission of a crime • Surcharge and penalty assessment on parking, non-parking, and criminal fines Do Not Include: • Penalties assessed for failure to secure business license; post to "<u>Licenses, Permits, and Franchises — Business Licenses.</u>" • The State share of penalty assessments.
33	Penalties and Costs on Delinquent Taxes Includes all amounts apportioned as a result of penalties and costs charged against property owners for tax delinquency exclusive of such amounts required to be apportioned as taxes. Include: • 10% penalties for late payment of first and second installments of secured taxes • 10% penalty for late payment of unsecured tax • \$10 charge on each item of real estate unpaid as of April 10th for publishing delinquent roll • \$15 fee for seizure and sale of unsecured personal property • 1.5% month redemption penalty on delinquent taxes charged monthly • Advertising of tax-defaulted land sales

Revenue From Investments and Property

Account Code	Account – Revenue From Investments and Property
40	Investment Income Investment earnings on bank deposits, other forms of investment, and equity interest. Include: • Interest • Dividends • Changes in the fair value of investments
41	(Intentionally Left Blank)
42	Rents and Concessions — including Service Concession Arrangements (SCAs) Includes revenue from the use of land, buildings, or equipment belonging to the county. Include: • County parking facilities • Parking meter collections • Vending machines • Public telephones • Pole attachment charges • Cafeteria • Airport space • Rents from employees living on institutional grounds • Revenue from county fairs, including off-season rentals • Concession Payments, other than for recreation purposes • Tenant farmers • Other rental income (including short-term rentals) that do not contain any leasing components • Service Concession Arrangements (SCAs) Do Not Include: • Rental of voting booths; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Election Services.</u>” • Concessions for county recreation facilities; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Park and Recreation Services.</u>” • Lease revenues; post to “<u>Revenue From Investments and Property — Lease Revenues.</u>”

Account Code	Account – Revenue From Investments and Property
43	Royalties Includes revenues from the use, operation, or development of property rights belonging to the county, other than public utility use. Include: • Oil and gas royalties • Revenue from rights for removal of oil, gas, and other natural resources from county property Do Not Include: • Sales of rock and gravel from county operated facilities; post to “<u>Miscellaneous Revenues — Other Sales.</u>”
44	Lease Revenues Includes revenues recognized by a local government entity (lessor) in a systematic and rational manner over the term of a lease arrangement. The list below is not all inclusive; it includes types of revenues usually posted under this category. Include: • A local government entity leases generators to another local government entity exclusively for power generating purposes under a 30 year lease agreement. • A local government entity leases land to another local government entity under a 10 year lease agreement. Do Not Include: • Short-term rental income; post to accounts such as “<u>Rents and Concessions-Including Service Concession Arrangements (SCAs).</u>”
45	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Revenues Includes revenues recognized by a local government entity (transferor) in a systematic and rational manner over the PPP term. The list below is not all inclusive; it includes types of revenues usually posted under this category. Include: • Installment payments • Fixed/variable payments • Amounts received under residual guarantees (that are not fixed in substance)

Intergovernmental Revenues

Note: State and federal revenues for construction of facilities are posted to the appropriate construction accounts, rather than to accounts indicating the purpose of the construction. For example, state revenue for the construction of mental facilities is posted to State Construction, not to State Mental Health.

Account Code	Account – Intergovernmental Revenues
50	State — Aviation
51	State — Highway Users Tax
52	State — Motor Vehicle In Lieu Tax
53	(Intentionally Left Blank)
54	Other State — In Lieu Taxes Includes any apportionments to the county of State in lieu taxes not included elsewhere. Include: Amounts received from the State from the rental of lands held for State highway purposes.
55	State — Public Assistance Administration Includes amounts received from the State as reimbursement for administrative costs of county welfare activities. Do Not Include: Assistance payments, as distinguished from administrative reimbursements; post to “<u>Intergovernmental Revenues — State Public Assistance Programs</u>.”
56	State — Public Assistance Programs Includes amounts received from the State for families with dependent children, adoptions, potentially self-supporting blind individuals, and for other direct assistance programs.
57	State — Health Administration Includes amounts received from the State for the administration of the county health program. Include: Payment for partial support of the county health department to provide an increased level of service.
58	State — California Children Services
59	State — Cerebral Palsy
60	State — Mental Health
61	State — Tuberculosis Control

Account Code	Account – Intergovernmental Revenues
62	Other State — Health Includes any State revenue for health purposes not included elsewhere. Include: • Tumor registry • Mosquito/gnat control • Medically Indigent Adult Program • AB 8 Health Subvention • COVID-19 grants or payments
63	State — Agriculture Include: • Partial reimbursement of the salary of the agricultural commissioner • The unclaimed agricultural gas tax refund
64	State — Civil Defense Do Not Include: • State revenues for disaster resulting from fire, flood, etc.; post to “<u>Intergovernmental Revenues: State — Disaster Relief.</u>”
65	State — Construction Include: • State revenue for constriction of hospitals, juvenile halls, and camps, etc. • State revenue for construction of civil defense facilities • State revenue for railroad crossings Do Not Include: • Amounts received for restoration of roads and other facilities damaged by disaster; post to “<u>Intergovernmental Revenues: State — Disaster Relief.</u>”
66	State — Corrections Include: • State revenue for the operation of juvenile halls and camps
67	State — County Fairs
68	State — Disaster Relief Includes amounts received from the State for emergency relief from disasters. Include: • Amounts received for restoration of damages roads and other facilities • Amounts (funds) received as a result of fires, earthquakes, COVID-19, etc.
69	State — Veterans Affairs
70	State — Homeowners Property Tax Relief Includes amounts received from the State to compensate the county for revenue lost because of the Homeowners Property Tax Exemption.
71	(Intentionally Left Blank)
72	State — Proposition 172 Public Safety Funds
73	State — Citizens Option for Public Safety (COPS)

Account Code	Account – Intergovernmental Revenues
74	State — Other Includes amounts received from the State for any purpose not included elsewhere. Include: • SB 90 reimbursements • Tax-defaulted land rentals • State revenues for juvenile hall school operation and special milk program (where the school is regarded as a general county activity); if the school is considered a separate school district, these amounts are school fund receipts • Cigarette taxes • State Subventions for county libraries • State Subventions based on recoveries from absent parents • Payments for tax loses because of open space assessments (Williamson Act) • Off-highway motor vehicle license fees • Cotton bale in lieu taxes
75	Federal — Public Assistance Administration Includes amounts received from the federal government as reimbursement for administrative costs of county welfare activities.
76	Federal — Public Assistance Programs Includes amounts (e.g., COVID-19 payments) received from the federal government for families with dependent children and other direct assistance programs.
77	Federal — Health Administration Includes amounts received from the federal government for administration of the county health program.
78	Federal — Construction
79	Federal — Disaster Relief Includes amounts received from the federal government for emergency relief from disaster (e.g., fires, earthquakes, COVID-19, etc.).
80	Federal — Forest Reserve Revenue Includes amounts received from the federal government as the county's share of revenues of national forest areas. Do Not Include: • Rental payments for grazing lands; post to "<u>Intergovernmental Revenues: Federal — Grazing Fees.</u>"
81	Federal — Grazing Fees Includes amounts received from the federal government as the county's share of revenues from the rental of grazing lands.
82	Federal — In Lieu Taxes Include: • Federal housing authorities

Account Code	Account – Intergovernmental Revenues
83	Federal — Other Includes all aid from the federal government not included elsewhere. Include: • Flood control land receipts • Funds for the purchase of surplus equipment for civil defense • Research grants • Subventions for maternal and child health, seasonal and farm workers, chronic illness and aging • Grants received from the California Council on Criminal Justice • Federal manpower program finds for which the county is responsible • Federal health grants (e.g., COVID-19 related grants) • Child support enforcement incentives
84	Other — In Lieu Revenues Includes amounts received from other agencies as payments in lieu of taxes and assessments. Include: • Payments from public housing authorities, other than federal authorities Do Not Include: • Payments by federal housing authorities; post to “Intergovernmental Revenues: Federal — In Lieu Taxes.”
85	Other — Governmental Agencies Includes amounts, other than in lieu revenues, received from other governmental agencies. Include: Revenues from redevelopment Successor Agencies that are from the following sources: • Excess Low and Moderate Income Housing Funds • Excess funds, other than housing funds • Sales of Capital Assets • Reserve balances

Charges for Services

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
90	Assessment and Tax Collection Fees Includes revenues from tax segregation and collection of taxes and special assessments of other governmental agencies. Include: • The sale of copies of assessment roll • The sale of indices • Tax Collectors' \$150 per parcel reimbursement for tax-defaulted land sales • The county's share of redemption fees • Document fees charged by assessor, tax collector, auditor • The supplemental property tax administrative fee (5%)
91	Special Assessments Include: • Levies against specified properties to defray all or part of a specific improvement or service benefiting these properties, whether or not collected on the tax roll
92	Auditing and Accounting Fees Include: • Special district audits • Accounting and systems services for other governmental agencies
93	Communication Services Include: • Services provided under contract to other governmental agencies • Telephone service provided to quasi-county agencies
94	Election Services Include: • Services provided to governmental agencies under contract • Charges for consolidating elections • Rental of voting booths Do Not Include: • Sales of voters' indices; post to "<u>Miscellaneous Revenue — Other Sales.</u>"
95	Legal Services Include: • Legal services provided in connection with the public administrator's duties • City prosecution services provided under contract • Legal services for other governmental agencies
96	Personnel Services Include: • Services provided under contract to other governmental agencies • Examination fees

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
97	Planning and Engineering Services Include: • Subdivision fees • Planning services provided to cities under contract • Engineering services provided to cities under contract • Legal advertising required by planning ordinance • Traffic surveys • The sale of plans and specifications • The sale of blueprints • Plan or map-checking fees when not an integral part of permits listed below Do Not Include: • Building permits, electrical permits, plumbing permits for constriction or alteration; post to <u>“Licenses and Permits — Construction Permits.”</u>
98	Purchasing Fees Includes revenue from commissions from the purchase of materials and supplies for other governmental agencies.
99	Agricultural Services Include: • Enforcement of the plan pest quarantine program for the State Controller's Office • Rodent abatement • Noxious weed abatement • Quarantine inspection fees • Standardization inspection fees for fruits, vegetables, milk, eggs, poultry, honey, aviaries, and nurseries
100	Civil Process Services Include: • Fees and mileage for service or executing notices, writs, levies of attachment, warrants or orders • Posting advertising or conducting sales of real or personal property • Subpoenaing witnesses • Summoning trial juries • Garnishment fees • Fees charged by the auditor for filing an abstract of judgment Do Not Include: • Advertising tax-defaulted land sales; post to <u>“Fines, Forfeitures, and Penalties — Penalties and Costs on Delinquent Taxes.”</u>

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
101	Court Fees and Costs Include: • Civil filing fees • Probate filing fees • Transcript fees • Fees for issuance of writs, orders, and certificates • Fees for preparing abstracts • Naturalization fees • Court reporter fees • Notary fees Do Not Include: • Witness and jury fees received from County employees; post to “<u>Miscellaneous Revenues — Miscellaneous.</u>” • Book fines and payments for lost books; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Library Services.</u>”
102	Estate Fees Include: • Statutory and extraordinary fees allowed to the public administrator for administering estates • Handling charges for deposits by the public administrator • Compensation for the public guardian from estates of wards Do Not Include: • Legal services provided by county counsel for the district attorney; post to “<u>Charges for Services: Legal Services — Penalties and Costs on Delinquent Taxes.</u>”
103	Commitment Fees Includes fees received for a commitment to originate or purchase a loan or group of loans and is recorded as a liability — if exercised, it is recognized as revenue in the period of exercise. If the commitment expires unexercised, the fees are recognized as revenue upon expiration of the commitment.
104	Humane Services Include: • Veterinarian services provided to city zoos • Placement fees • Boarding fees • Vaccination fees • Impounding fees • Sale of animal carcasses

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
105	Law Enforcement Services Include: • Services provided under contract to governmental agencies • Transporting prisoners Do Not Include: • Care of prisoner; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Institutional Care and Services.</u>”
106	Recording Fees Includes all recording and related fees. These fees are not limited to those collected by the clerk and the recorder. Include: • Recording services • Certified copies • Corporation fees • Fictitious firm name fees • Certified copies of birth and death certificates Do Not Include: • Document fees charged by assessor, tax collector, and auditor; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Tax Collection Fees.</u>”
107	Road and Street Services Include: • Street maintenance, construction, striping curb and gutter, and traffic signal work provided under contract to other governmental agencies • Street side tree services provided under contract to other governments agencies • Cooperative road projects with adjoining property owners • Payments for extraordinary maintenance of roads
108	Health Fees and Services Include: • Revenue from health services provided • Search of health records • Preparation of medical reports • Clinic fees, other than hospital • Vaccination charges Do Not Include: • Certified copies of birth and death certificates; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Recording Fees.</u>”
109	Mental Health Services Includes reimbursement for services provided under Mental Health program.

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
110	California Children’s Services Includes reimbursement for services provided under California Children’s program.
111	Sanitation Services Include: • Services provided under contract to other governmental agencies • Sale of sewage by-products • Service charge for use of mains and trunk lines • Refuse disposal fees • Sale of garbage • Sewer connection charges • Septic tank inspection and laboratory fees
112	Adoption Fees Include: • Reimbursement for board and care of adopted children
113	Institutional Care and Services Includes reimbursement for care in public and private institutions. Include: • In-patient hospital care • Out-patient hospital care • Sale of drugs and medical supplies • Reimbursement for care in private institutions and boarding homes • Rental of wheelchairs, crutches, iron lungs, etc. • Care of prisoners • Care of juvenile court wards • Board and care at juvenile halls • Work furlough program reimbursement • Reimbursement for care in State institutions • Ambulance fees • Emergency hospital services • Fees for medical reports • Interest on judgment for services provided by county hospital Do Not Include: • Health clinic fees; post to “Charges for Services — Health Fees.”

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
114	Educational Services Include: • Reimbursement of the cost of the U.S. Veterans Administration medical training program • Training nurses, peace officers, social workers, etc. • Other services provided under contract to other governmental agencies Do Not Include: • Library services; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Library Services.</u>” • Museum exhibit admission fees and lending service charges; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Park and Recreation Fees.</u>”
115	Library Services Include: • Book fines • Loss of damaged books • Reservation fees • Services provided under contract to other governmental agencies • Film or other special materials usage fees
116	Park and Recreation Services Includes revenue from the use of county recreational facilities. Include: • Boat usage fees • Park and recreation services to governmental agencies • Concessions for county recreation facilities • Golf and equipment usage fees • Swimming pool fees • Archery fees • Swimming pool charges to organizations • Arts and craft charges and sale of craft material • Lighting charges • Picnic area usage fees • Clubhouse usage fees • Use of small craft harbor facilities • Camping fees • Museum exhibit admission fees and lending service charges • Parking fees from recreational facilities • Reimbursement for lost or damaged recreational equipment • Other recreational fees Do Not Include: • Revenue from county fairs, including off-season rentals; post to “<u>Revenue from Investment and Property — Rents and Concessions.</u>”

Account Code	Account – Charges for Services
117	Other Includes revenue for services that are not included elsewhere. Include: • Reimbursement for burials • Fees for making payroll deductions • Aircraft landing fees and aircraft flight plan fees • Fees for registration of bonds • Embalming fees • Reimbursement of the cost of eradicating weeds or other hazardous conditions • Equipment maintenance services to governmental agencies • Meals and quarters (lodgings) for employees and others • Fees for certification of safety deposit box contents • Microfilming fees • Reimbursement from the State Department of Education for food transportation services
118	Interfund Revenue Includes revenues resulting from interfund transactions between governmental fund types. Include: • Auditing and accounting fees • Communication services • Data processing • Legal services • Personnel services • Planning and engineering services • Purchasing services • Road and street services

Note: Sales of records are posted to Miscellaneous Revenues — Other Sales, except in cases where the physical record sold is considered incidental to the service performed. In the latter case, sales are posted to the appropriate Services account as indicated.

Transcript, notary, legal advertising, and document fees follow the revenue source whenever they are incidental to a service for which an account has been established.

Other items may be subject to varying classification, depending on the circumstances (e.g., pest examination could be either a health or an agricultural service).

Miscellaneous Revenues

Note: The basis for segregating sales between Charges for Services and Miscellaneous Revenues corresponds to what is used by the State Board of Equalization in determining whether or not a sale is subject to sales tax.

Sales posted to Charges for Services are generally exempt, and sales posted to Miscellaneous Revenues are generally taxable unless specifically exempt, such as sales for resale, food products, sales in interstate commerce, etc.

Account Code	Account – Miscellaneous Revenues
120	(Intentionally Left Blank)
121	Other Sales Include: • Salvage • Surplus county supplies • Poison for pest extermination • Seeds • Books, pamphlets, postcards • Slides, tobacco, candy, etc., purchased for resale • Maps • Personal property sales by the Sheriff • Commissary sales • Fire prevention codes • Directories • Indices • Ordinances • Surveys • Reports produced by the county for resale • Rock and gravel • Items produces in vocational programs for the agenda and blind Do Not Include: • Certified copies and transcripts; post to the appropriate account under “<u>Charges for Services</u>.” • Copies of the assessment roll; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Assessment and Tax Collection Fees</u>.” • Meals for employees or others; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Other</u>.” • Art craft materials; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Park and Recreation Fees</u>.” • Animal carcasses; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Humane Services</u>.” • Sewage by-products; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Sanitation Services</u>.” • Garbage; post to “<u>Charges for Services — Sanitation Services</u>.”
122	Tobacco Settlement

Account Code	Account – Miscellaneous Revenues
123	Miscellaneous Includes monetary donations from private agencies, persons, or other sources. Include: • Prisoners' unclaimed money • Witness and jury fees received from county employees • Consultant fees received from county employees • Services by private physicians in county institutions • Contributions and donations • Insurance proceeds • Compensation insurance refunds • Contributions from trust funds • Unclaimed money in the county treasury (escheated taxes) • Money seized in slot machines or other devices for gambling • Cash overages • Cancelled warrants and checks

Other Financing Sources

Account Code	Account – Other Financing Sources
130	Sale of Capital Assets Include: • Land, buildings and improvements, equipment, infrastructure, and intangible assets, etc.
131	Long-Term Debt Proceeds Includes long-term obligations incurred to meet operating or capital requirements. Include: • Bond proceeds • Long-term notes • Other long terms obligations Do Not Include: • Short-term obligations • Obligations incurred to cover short-term cash requirements

Account Code	Account – Other Financing Sources
132	Leases (Lessee) Includes the recording of all lease transactions under the modified accrual basis of accounting by the lessee. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record lease transactions. Include: • Leases — Land • Leases — Building • Leases — Equipment • Leases — Infrastructure Do Not Include: Lease revenues (lessor); post to “Revenue <u>from Investments and Property, Lease Revenues.</u>”
133	Public-Private and Public-Public Partnership (PPP) Assets (Operator) Includes the recording of all PPP transactions under the modified accrual basis of accounting by the operator. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record PPP asset transactions.
134	Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA) Subscription Asset Includes the recording of all SBITA transactions under the modified accrual basis of accounting by the local government entity. For financial reporting purposes, it is recommended that local government entities maintain separate subaccounts to record SBITA subscription asset transactions.
135	Other Includes all other increases (not previously identified in the Other Financing Sources category) in fund balances of a governmental fund, other than revenues and inflows associated with future periods.

Transfers

Account Code	Account - Transfers
140	Sales and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues Sales and intra-entity transfers of future revenues should generally be reported as deferred inflows of resources. Governments that factor their receivables, should initially record the proceeds from the sale as a deferred inflow that is recognized over time.

Account Code	Account - Transfers
141	Transfers-In Includes transfers between funds (governmental, proprietary or fiduciary) for which no reimbursement is expected. It is recommended that interfund accounts or subaccounts be used to identify and control interfund activity. Having such activity identified separately will be useful when preparing consolidated financial reports that require interfund eliminations (e.g., the State Controller's <i>Counties Financial Transactions Report</i> and governmental GAAP compliant financial statements). Include: • Transfers of tax revenues from the general fund or a special revenue fund to the debt service fund • Operating subsidy transfers from the general fund or a special revenue fund to an enterprise or internal services fund • Transfers from the general fund to a special revenue fund or capital projects fund Do Not Include: • Interfund revenues (see Account 118)

Contributions, Unusual or Infrequent Items

Account Code	Account – Contributions, Unusual or Infrequent Items
150	Contributions Include: • Contributions to endowments from citizens or businesses
151	Unusual or Infrequent Items Includes revenues that are unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence. An example would include insurance money received due to storm damage to a local government entity facility, provided that storms are not a natural occurrence in the area where the facility is located.

Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Received)

Code	Accounts — Noncapital Subsidies (Resources Received)
160	Noncapital Subsidy Revenues Resources received from another party or fund (1) for which the proprietary fund does not provide goods and services to the other party or fund and (2) that directly or indirectly keep the proprietary fund's current or future fees and charges lower than they would be otherwise.
161	Noncapital Subsidy Transfers In All other transfers of noncapital subsidies received from other parties that are not recorded under Account #160.

Pension/OPEB Plan Accounts

7.20 Chart of Accounts and Explanation of Accounts

Statement of Fiduciary Net Position

Local government entities should design their chart of accounts to be consistent with their accounting needs. The following list of chart of accounts is not all-inclusive. Local government entities should supplement these classifications with additional account titles as needed.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
PENSION/OPEB PLAN ASSETS	Pension/OPEB plan assets should be subdivided into (a) the major categories of assets held (for example, cash and cash equivalents, receivables, investments, and assets used in pension plan operations) and (b) the principal components of the receivables and investments categories.
Cash & Cash Equivalents	Currency on hand, short-term, or highly liquid investments that are both (a) readily convertible to known amounts of cash, and (b) near enough to maturity that they present insignificant risk of changes in value.
Receivables	Pension/OPEB plan receivables are generally short term and consist of contributions due as of the end of the reporting period from employers, non-employer contributing entities and plan members, and interest and dividends on investments.
Contributions	Amounts recognized as receivables for contributions should include only those due pursuant to legal requirements. Contributions that are payable to the pension/OPEB plan more than one year after the end of the reporting period (for example, pursuant to installment contracts) should be recognized in full in the period the receivable arises. If a receivable is recognized at its discounted present value, interest should be accrued using the effective interest method, unless use of the straight-line method would not produce significantly different results.
Member Contributions	The amount charged each year to a member (including personal and stakeholder pensions) to cover the cost to the provider of investing and administering the member's plan.
Employer Contributions	Contributions an employer makes to his or her employee's employer-sponsored retirement plan that are not included in employer's salary expense.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Current Investments	These are securities, bonds, stock, or other assets held by a pension plan to generate income for the pension/OPEB plan.
Accrued Interest	Interest that has accumulated between the most recent payment and the sale of a bond or other fixed-income security.
Dividends	A distribution of a portion of a company's earnings on stocks or other investments.
Real Estate Mortgage Loans	The current portion a debt instrument, secured by the collateral of specified real estate property, that the borrower is obliged to pay back with a predetermined set of payments.
Hedge Funds	These are usually pooled investments held by a pension/OPEB plan to exceed anticipated market returns or hedge against unforeseen market changes to maximize return on investment.
Sales of Securities	The sale of a financial instrument that represents an ownership position in a publicly-traded corporation (stock), a creditor relationship with governmental body or with a corporation (bond), or rights to ownership as represented by an option.
Real Estate Income	Income from property bought or developed to earn income through renting, leasing, or price appreciation.
Miscellaneous	Receivables not specifically described above. In each case, these accounts are to be analyzed and managed according to the control procedures that are most applicable to the particular receivable.
Hedge Investments (at Fair Value)	Purchases and sales of investments should be recorded on a trade-date basis. Pension/OPEB plan investments, whether equity or debt securities, real estate, investment derivative instruments, or other investments (excluding allocated insurance contracts), should be reported at their fair value at the end of the pension plan's reporting period.
Short-Term Hedge Investments	Any investments that a company has made that will expire within one year, including time certificates of deposits, banker acceptances, and commercial and finance paper.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
<u>Global Debt Securities</u>	These are foreign financial assets (e.g., bonds and mortgage-backed securities) held by a pension plan as part of its pension plan investment portfolio.
U.S Government Securities	Include preferred stock that either is required to be redeemed by the issuing entity or is redeemable at the option of the investor, and a collateralized mortgage obligation or other instrument that is issued in equity form, but is accounted for as a non-equity instrument.
Domestic Corporate Bonds	A bond issued in a domestic market by a foreign entity, in the domestic market's currency.
Municipal Bonds	A debt security issued by a state, municipality, or local government entity to finance its capital expenditures.
International Bonds	Debt securities issued by foreign companies or governments and sold domestically.
<u>Global Equity Securities</u>	These are stocks both foreign and domestic held by a pension plan as part of its pension plan investment portfolio.
Domestic Stocks	The stocks of American companies traded on the various stock exchanges.
International Stocks	The stocks of companies based outside of the U.S.
<u>Securities Lending Collateral</u>	These are securities held as collateral. These securities are usually not traded in the stock exchange, exceptions apply. Examples include stocks, bonds, cash or any asset that can be readily converted to cash.
Private Equity	Equity securities and debt in operating companies that are not publicly traded on a stock exchange.
Real Estate Equity	The difference between the current market value of the property and the amount the owner still owes on the mortgage of real estate property such as land and buildings.
Other Investments	These are various investments held by a pension/OPEB plan; however they are reported in the financial statements in an aggregated form, as these investments are not significant/material enough to be listed separately in a Statement of Net Position.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Capital Assets (Net of Accumulated Depreciation)	These assets include land, building, equipment and other tangible or intangible assets (such as leases).
Equipment And Furniture	Tangible property of a more or less permanent nature, other than land or buildings and improvements thereon.
Accumulated Depreciation — Equipment and Furniture	A valuation account to record the accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of capital assets.
Buildings and Improvements	A capital asset account reflecting the acquisition cost of permanent structures owned or held and improvements thereon.
Accumulated Depreciation — Buildings and Improvements	A valuation account to record the accumulation of periodic credits made to record the expiration of the estimated service life of capital assets.
Land	A capital asset account that reflects the cost of land owned or held.
Other Assets	Those assets that cannot be reasonably categorized under the asset classification discussed above (e.g., long-term receivables).
DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES	Certain defined transactions that do not qualify for treatment as either assets or liabilities related to future periods.
PENSION PLAN LIABILITIES	Pension/OPEB plan liabilities generally consist of benefits due to plan members (including refunds of plan member contributions), and accrued investment and administrative expenses. Pension plan liabilities for benefits should be recognized when the benefits are currently due-and-payable in accordance with the benefit terms.
Net Pension Liability	Net pension/OPEB liability (NPL) is the difference between the actuarial present value of a projected benefits owed to employees (total pension liability) and a pension plans fiduciary net position. Usually net pension/OPEB liability is reported as a single figure in a local governments' financial statements. Pension plan assets and liabilities in this instance are managed by an outside agency such as CalPERS.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
<u>Other Liabilities</u>	Those liabilities that cannot be reasonably categorized under liability classifications discussed above.
Refunds Payable	These include refunds of contributions payable to plan members and other nonemployer(s) organizations who contribute into the pension/OPEB plan.
Claims Payable	These are claims that have matured and are due to be paid to plan members with current expendable resources.
Other Payables	Payables not specifically described above. In each case, these accounts are to be analyzed and managed according to a respective local government entity control procedures. These accounts are usually immaterial in nature and therefore not reported separately in the Fiduciary Statement of Net Position.
DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES	Certain transactions related to future periods that do not qualify for treatment as either assets or liabilities.

Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

Local government entities should design their chart of accounts to be consistent with their accounting needs. The following list of chart of accounts is not all-inclusive. Local government entities should supplement these classifications with additional account titles as needed.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
ADDITIONS	The additions section of the Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position should include separate display of the following, if applicable: (a) Contributions from employers; (b) Contributions from non-employer contributing entities (for example, state government contributions to a local government pension plan); (c) Contributions from plan members, including those transmitted by the employers; and (d) Net investment income, including separate display of: (1) investment income, and (2) investment expense, including investment management and custodial fees and all other significant investment-related costs.
<u>Contributions</u>	These are contributions that are made by the employee, employer, and other nonemployer entities into a special districts pension/OPEB plan.
Employer Contributions	Following are examples of employer related contributions into a pension/OPEB plan.
Safety	Employer contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits related to <u>safety</u> type employees.
Miscellaneous	Employer contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Employer contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Member Contributions	Following are examples of member related contributions into a pension/OPEB plan.
Safety	Member contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits (detail by safety members).

Sample Accounts for Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Miscellaneous	Member contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Member contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits that cannot be properly divided into and safety and miscellaneous members.
Other Contributions	Those contributions that cannot be reasonably categorized under liability classifications discussed above.
Safety	Contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits made by other contributors not including employer(s) or members.
Miscellaneous	Contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits made by other contributors not including employer(s) or members that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Contributions paid into the system to fund basic, cost-of-living, and other retirement benefits made by other contributors not including employer(s) or members that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Investments Income (Loss)	Contributions include (a) the net increase (decrease) in the fair value of pension plan investments, and (b) interest income, dividend income, and other income not included in (a). Components (a) and (b) of investment income may be separately displayed or combined and reported as one amount.
Securities Lending Income	Income from lending securities (e.g., bonds and stocks). Most common form of income from securities lending is interest income.
Interest Income	Monies earned on cash deposits, bonds, and other investments. Includes amortization of premiums and discounts on debt securities and interest income on leases.
Bonds	A debt investment in which an investor loans money to an entity (corporate or governmental) that borrows the funds for a defined period of time at a fixed interest rate.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Short-Term Investments	Investments that a company has made that will expire within one year.
Dividends Income	Earnings and distributions from stock.
Net Appreciation (Depreciation) in Fair Value of Investments	The sum of: 1. Realized gains and losses on investments both bought and sold during the year, measured as the difference between the proceeds of sale and the original cost; 2. Realized gains and losses on investments bought in prior years and sold during this year, measured as the difference between the proceeds of sale and the fair value of the investment at the beginning of the year; and 3. Unrealized gains and losses for the year on investments held at year-end, measured as the difference between fair value of the investment at year-end, and either the original cost (if purchased during the year) or the fair value of the investment at the beginning of the year (if purchased in a prior year).
Other Investment Income	Investment income that cannot be reasonably categorized under the investment income classification discussed above.
(Investment Expenses)	Investment-related costs should be reported as investment expense if they are separable from (a) investment income, and (b) the administrative expense of the pension plan.
(Cost of Lending Securities)	Costs incurred when entering into a securities lending contract. Examples include legal fees, brokerage fees, borrower rebate and management fees. <u>Note:</u> the revenues and costs associated with securities lending should be shown separately.
Other Income	Those revenues that cannot be reasonably categorized under classifications previously discussed.
DEDUCTIONS	The deductions section of the Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position should separately display, at a minimum, (a) benefit payments to plan members (including refunds of plan member contributions) and (b) total administrative expense.
Benefit Payments	
Service Retirement	Pension, annuity, cost-of-living, and lump sum payments due to service retirement.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Safety	Pension and annuity payments due to service retirement. Includes survivor continuance benefits (detail by safety members).
Miscellaneous	Pension and annuity payments due to service retirement. Includes survivor continuance benefits that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Pension and annuity payments due to service retirement. Includes survivor continuance benefits that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Disability	Payments including cost-of-living allowances to members retired due to total and permanent disability, or payments due to partial and temporary disability.
Safety	Payments to members retired due to total and permanent disability, or payments due to partial and temporary disability (detail by safety members).
Miscellaneous	Payments including cost-of-living allowances to members retired due to total and permanent disability, or payments due to partial and temporary disability that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Payments including cost-of-living allowances to members retired due to total and permanent disability, or payments due to partial and temporary disability that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Other Benefit Payments	Those benefit payments that cannot be reasonably categorized under the benefit payments classification previously discussed.
Safety	Payments made to <u>safety</u> type members from employer contributions prior to normal or early retirement age, death benefits, life insurance premium payments, and other ancillary benefit payments.
Miscellaneous	Payments made to miscellaneous members from employer contributions prior to normal or early retirement age, death benefits, life insurance premium payments, and other ancillary benefit payments.
Combined	Payments made to members from employer contributions prior to normal or early retirement age, death benefits, life insurance premium payments, and other ancillary benefit payments that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Member Refunds	These are refunds of excess contributions made to the employee's or nonemployer contributing entities.

Sample Accounts for Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	Explanation of Account
Safety	A refund of contributions, including interest, to a member upon separation from service, or to the beneficiary upon the member's death (detail by safety members).
Miscellaneous	A refund of contributions, including interest, to a member upon separation from service, or to the beneficiary upon the member's death that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	A refund of contributions, including interest, to a member upon separation from service, or to the beneficiary upon the member's death (detail by general and safety members) that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Member Withdrawals	These are withdrawals made by plan members.
Safety	Report member withdrawals (detail by safety members).
Miscellaneous	Report member withdrawals that are not qualified as safety.
Combined	Member withdrawals that cannot be properly divided into safety and miscellaneous members.
Administration Expenses	A fee charged by an insurer or other authorized agency to cover expenses related to record keeping and/or other administrative costs.
General	Administrative and management cost pertaining to the retirement system.
Professional Services	Investment counseling fees, actuarial services, audit services, and other professional charges.
Actuarial Services Fee	Fee for actuarial services including the analysis of rates of disability, morbidity, mortality, retirement, survivorship and other contingencies.
Custodian Services Fee	Fees to a financial institution that holds customers' securities for safekeeping so as to minimize the risk of their theft or loss.
Investment Counselor Fee	As defined by the Investment Advisors Act of 1940, any person or group that makes investment recommendations or conducts securities analysis in return for a fee, whether through direct management of client assets or via written publications.
Other Expenses	Those expenses that cannot be reasonably categorized under classifications discussed above.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 8: The Reporting Entity

Chapter Contents

Introduction 197

Financial Reporting Entity Overview 197

8.01 Financial Reporting Entity Concept..... 197

8.02 Financial Reporting Entity Structure 197

8.03 Financial Accountability 199

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 8: The Reporting Entity

Introduction

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.102 (Section 2100, paragraph .102), “accountability is the cornerstone of all financial reporting in government.” It is the paramount objective of governmental financial reporting from which all other financial reporting objectives flow. An accountability perspective should provide the basis for defining the financial reporting entity.

In keeping consistent with the accountability perspective, financial reporting information should be useful for economic, social, and political decisions. To meet this objective, financial reports should contain information beneficial for:

- comparing actual financial results with the legally adopted budget;
- assessing financial condition and the results of operations;
- assisting in determining compliance with finance-related laws, rules and regulations; and
- assisting in evaluating efficiency and effectiveness.

The organizational structure of governments are becoming increasingly complex as the demand for services from their constituents continues to grow. Unfortunately, the demands placed upon the local government may outpace their ability to provide these services in a traditional governmental environment.

For this reason and others, many local governments are starting to create separate organizations to provide these services. Whatever the reason, public accountability demands that the financial data of these separate organizations be incorporated in the primary governments financial statements, where applicable.

Financial Reporting Entity Overview

8.01 Financial Reporting Entity Concept

The concept underlying the definition of the financial reporting entity is that elected officials are accountable to their constituents for their actions. Financial reporting by a local government should report the elected officials’ accountability for those organizations.

Financial statements of the reporting entity should allow users to differentiate between the primary government, its component units, and other relationships, such as joint power authorities. This is done by providing information about their relationships with the primary government.

8.02 Financial Reporting Entity Structure

The financial reporting entity consists of the primary government and organizations for which the primary government is financially accountable. The reporting entity’s government-wide financial statements should present information about the reporting government as a whole and use separate rows/columns to distinguish between the total primary government and its discretely presented component units.

The financial statements of the reporting entity should allow users to distinguish between the primary government and its component units by communicating information about the component units and their relationships with the primary government rather than creating perception that the primary government and its component units are one legal entity. Local government entities should present separately a statement of activities and statement of net position for each major component unit provided it does not reduce the readability of these financial statements. If readability is impacted, combining statements of major component units should be included in the local government entity's basic financial statements after the fund financial statements.

The fund financial statements should display the primary reporting entity's governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary funds (including its blended component units), reporting major funds individually and nonmajor funds in the aggregate. The fiduciary component units should be reported only in the statements of fiduciary net position and changes in fiduciary net position should be reported with the primary government's fiduciary funds.

Primary Government Definition

As noted in GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.112 – .113 (Section 2100, paragraphs .112 – .113) a primary government has a separately elected governing body, is a legally separate entity, and is fiscally independent of other state and local governments. In the financial reports, the primary government should include all funds, organizations, institutions, agencies, departments, and offices that are part of its direct fiscal responsibility.

Component Unit Definition

Component units are legally separate organizations and, while legally separate from the primary government, are included on the financial statements of the primary government because the primary government is financially accountable for them and excluding them from the primary governments' financial statements would be misleading. Therefore, they are required to be reported on the financial statements of the primary government. A component unit may be reported as either blended or discretely presented on the financial statements.

For more information on financial requirements reporting of component units, refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.144 – .146 (Section 2100, paragraphs .144 – .146) and GASB Statement No. 103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements*.

Determining Fiscal Independence or Dependence—Special Purpose Governments

A special-purpose government (e.g., special district) is said to be fiscally independent if it has the authority to do all of the following without substantive approval of the primary government:

- Determine its budget without another government's having the authority to approve and modify that budget.
- Levy taxes or set rates or charges without the approval of another government.
- Issue bonded debt without approval by another government.

A special-purpose government is said to be fiscally dependent if the primary government that oversees the special-purpose government holds one or more of the authoritative powers previously discussed in this section.

It should be noted that a special-purpose government might still be fiscally dependent on a primary government regardless of whether it receives financial assistance from the primary government. Fiscal dependency does not necessarily imply that a financial benefit or a burden relationship exists.

Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.115 – .117 (Section 2100, paragraphs .115 – .117) for more information on fiscal independence and fiscal dependence as it pertains to special-purpose governments.

8.03 Financial Accountability

Financial accountability is the relationship where a legally separate organization is included in the reporting statements of another government entity. The circumstances that outline a primary government's financial accountability for a legally separate organization are stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.120 (Section 2100, paragraph .120) as follows:

- a) The primary government is financially accountable if it appoints a voting majority of the organization's governing body and (1) it is able to impose its will on that organization or (2) there is a potential for the organization to provide specific financial benefits to, or impose specific financial burdens on, the primary government.
- b) The primary government is financially accountable if an organization is fiscally dependent on and there is a potential for the organization to provide specific financial benefits to, or impose specific financial burdens on, the primary government regardless of whether the organization has (1) a separately elected governing board, (2) a governing board appointed by a higher level of government, or (3) a jointly appointed board.
- c) The primary government is financially accountable for a legally separate organization if the primary government's holding of a majority equity interest in that organization does not meet the definition of an investment.

There may be instances where a primary government may treat an organization as a component unit even though the organization does not meet the specifics of the financial accountability criteria identified earlier in this section. This is done to prevent the primary government's financial statements from being misleading to the end user. This determination should be based on the nature and significance of the organizations relationship with the primary government.

Appointment of a Voting Majority

A primary government that appoints a simple majority of an organization's governing board usually has a voting majority. However, if any financial decisions require approval of more than a simple majority, the primary government is not accountable for the organization.

In determining if accountability exists, a primary government's appointment authority should be substantive. The appointment authority of a primary government is not substantive if the number of candidates is severely limited by the nominating process (e.g., a primary government is required to select three appointees from a group of only five candidates).

A primary government's appointment authority would not be substantive in situations where the primary government's responsibility is limited to the confirming appointments made by individuals or groups other than the primary government's officials or appointees.

The same legal provisions that outline the procedures for the appointment of an organization's officials, generally provides for continuing appointment authority. In cases where such authority is not specified, the basis for ongoing accountability is provided via the ability of a primary government to unilaterally disband the organization. As long as a primary government makes continuing appointments, it is accountable for an organization.

In certain circumstances component units do not always have a governing board. In such an event, the primary government is considered to be financially accountable for a component unit if the primary government performs the duties that a typical governing body of a component unit would perform — thus, the primary government is seen to be appointing a voting majority to the governing board of its component unit.

However, this does not apply to component units that are:

- a defined contribution pension plan
- a defined contribution OPEB plan
- any other employee benefit plan (e.g., Section 457 plans)

Imposition of Will

A primary government is considered to be financially accountable for an organization if it appoints a voting majority of an organization's officials and has the ability to impose its will on the organization. There are certain conditions that indicate the primary government's ability to affect the day-to-day operations of an organization. Such conditions indicate a government's ability to impose its will on an organization.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.126 (Section 2100, paragraph .126):

A primary government has the ability to impose its will on an organization if it can significantly influence the programs, projects, activities, or level of services performed or provided by the organization.

The existence of any one of the following conditions clearly indicates that a primary government has the ability to impose its will on an organization:

- a) The ability to remove appointed members of the organization's governing board at will.
- b) The ability to modify or approve the budget of the organization.
- c) The ability to modify or approve rate or fee changes affecting revenues, such as water usage rate increases.
- d) The ability to veto, overrule, or modify the decisions (other than those in b and c) of the organization's governing body.
- e) The ability to appoint, hire, reassign, or dismiss those persons responsible for the day-to-day operations (management) of the organization.

Other conditions may also indicate that a primary government has the ability to impose its will on an organization. In determining whether imposition of will exists, a distinction should be made between substantive approvals and ministerial (or compliance) approvals, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.116 – .117 (Section 2100, paragraphs .116 – .117).

Some examples of approvals that may be considered to be ministerial or compliance oriented in nature rather than substantive include a requirement for:

- a) A state agency to approve a local government entity's debt after review for compliance with certain limitations (e.g., debt margin calculation based on a percentage of assessed valuation).
- b) A state agency (e.g., a department of education) to review a local government entity's budget in evaluating qualifications for state funding.
- c) A county government official (e.g., a county clerk) to approve tax rates and levy amount after review for compliance with limitations related to tax rates and levies.

Financial Benefit or Burden on a Primary Government

An organization can provide a financial benefit to or impose a financial burden on a primary government in a variety of ways. This includes appointing the majority of the board members of an organization and having the ability to impose its will on an organization (as mentioned in the preceding sections).

In addition, if the primary government appoints a voting majority of another organization's governing board, which in-turn leads to this organization either providing a financial benefit or imposing financial burden on the primary government, the primary government is deemed to be financial accountable for this organization.

An organization has a financial benefit or burden relationship with the primary government if any one of the following conditions exist:

- The primary government is legally entitled to or can otherwise access the organization's resources.
- The primary government is legally obligated or has otherwise assumed the obligation to finance deficits of, or provide financial support to, the organization.
- The primary government is obligated in some manner for the debt of the organization.
- The primary government is legally obligated or has otherwise assumed the obligation to make contributions to an organization that is a defined benefit pension plan or defined benefit OPEB plan administered through a trust, exceptions apply.

Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.127 – .133 (Section 2100, paragraphs .127 – .133) for more information concerning the financial benefits to or burdens on primary governments.

Financial Accountability Arising from Fiscal Dependency

A primary government may be financially accountable for a fiscally dependent government regardless of whether the fiscally dependent government has a separately elected governing board, a board appointed by another government, or a jointly appointed board. A fiscally dependent government that has the potential to provide a financial benefit to, or to impose a financial burden on, a primary government would be reported as part of that primary government's financial reporting entity.

For more information about financial accountability arising from fiscal dependency, refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2100.134 – .137 (Section 2100, paragraphs .134 – .137).

Majority Equity Interests

An equity interest is a financial interest in a legally separate organization by another government. The equity interest may be shown by stock ownership of the organization or by an explicit and measurable claim to the net resources of the organization.

If the primary government's holding of a majority equity interest in a separate legal organization does not meet the definition of an investment, then the primary government is financially accountable for the separate organization and should report it as a component unit.

Potential for Dual Inclusion

In some instances, the financial accountability criteria (see preceding sections) indicate that an organization (e.g., dependent special district) is a component unit of a particular primary government. However, that organization (e.g., dependent special district) may also be fiscally dependent on and have a financial benefit or burden relationship with another state or local government. In these situations, this particular organization may qualify for inclusion in more than one reporting entity. However, the organization in question should only be included as a component unit of one reporting entity. It is the responsibility of the reporting entities to determine which of them should report the organization as a component unit.

Chapter 9: Reporting Capital Assets

Chapter Contents

Introduction	205
Capital Asset Accounting	205
9.01 Capital Assets	205
9.02 Capital Assets System	209
9.03 Treatment of Costs Subsequent to Acquisition	210
Capital Asset Valuations	211
9.04 Valuation Basis	211
9.05 Transfers to Proprietary Funds	215
Inventory and Records	216
9.06 Accounting for Inventories	216
9.07 Records	216
Construction and Work-in-Progress	219
9.08 Construction by Force Account	219
9.09 Construction in Progress	219
9.10 Separate Disclosure of Certain Capital Assets	219
9.11 Certain Assets Held for Sale	220
Examples	221
E9.12 Capital Assets Note Disclosure	221
E9.13 Examples of Classification and Posting	224

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 9: Reporting Capital Assets

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview as to how capital assets should be reported in governmental funds, proprietary funds, and fiduciary funds.

Capital Asset Accounting

9.01 Capital Assets

A clear distinction should be made between general capital assets and capital assets of proprietary and fiduciary funds. While the capital assets of proprietary funds should be reported in both the government-wide and fund financial statements, the capital assets of fiduciary funds (including fiduciary component units) should be reported only in the statement of fiduciary net position. All other capital assets of the governmental unit are general capital assets and should not be reported as assets in governmental funds, but instead should be reported in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position.

Capital assets should be reported at historical cost, including capitalized interest and ancillary charges necessary to place the asset into its intended location and condition for use. Donated capital assets should be reported at their acquisition value plus any ancillary charges, if applicable. Interest cost incurred before the end of a construction period should not be capitalized as part of the assets historical cost.

A local government may establish a capitalization policy to determine which assets are to be treated as capital assets (including general capital assets). Local governmental agencies may have additional specific guidelines for capitalization thresholds. For example, according to 2 C.F.R. § 200.1, recipients and sub-recipients of federal awards must capitalize capital asserts costing \$10,000 or more. It is the responsibility of each local government to ensure that they are in compliance with any applicable requirements.

When it comes to grouped assets, GASB recommends that capitalization policies adopted by local governments include many considerations such as finding an appropriate balance between ensuring that all significant capital assets, collectively, are capitalized and minimizing the cost of recordkeeping for capital assets. A local government entity should capitalize assets whose individual acquisition costs are less than the threshold for an individual asset if those assets in the aggregate are significant. Computers, classroom furniture, and library books are examples of asset types that may not meet a capitalization policy on an individual basis, yet could be significant collectively. For example, if a local government entity has a \$150,000 aggregate amount for 100 computers costing \$1,500 each, the amount is significant and the local government entity should capitalize the computers. Expensing assets is acceptable provided the financial statements are not materially misstated.

Local governments usually exercise conscientious physical and accounting controls over cash; however, with capital assets in which cash has been invested, controls are frequently inadequate or lacking.

Accounting controls over capital assets (including general capital assets) are recommended in order to:

- safeguard a sizeable investment;
- fix responsibility for the custody of equipment;
- assist in the formulation of acquisition and retirement policies through accumulation of data regarding prices, sources of supply, and useful life;
- provide data for financial reporting;
- provide record support and to account for reimbursement or depreciation under grants and proprietary service programs; and
- provide information for insurance purposes.

The term capital assets includes land, improvements to land, easements, buildings, building improvements, vehicles, machinery, equipment, works of art and historical treasures, infrastructure, and all other tangible or intangible assets that are used in operations and have useful lives beyond a single reporting period. Infrastructure assets are long-lived capital assets that are normally stationary in nature and can be preserved for a significantly greater number of years than most capital assets. Some examples include roads, bridges, tunnels, drainage systems, water/sewer systems, dams, lighting systems, and buildings (only if part of an ancillary network of infrastructure assets).

General Capital Assets

General capital assets are capital assets of the government that are not specifically related to activities reported in proprietary or fiduciary funds. They are associated with, and generally arise from, governmental activities. As general capital assets usually arise from the expenditure of governmental fund financial resources, they should not be reported as assets in governmental funds, but should be reported in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position.

Purchases of general capital assets are typically charged as expenditures, commonly known as capital outlays, in the fund from which they were purchased and are capitalized at cost in the capital assets accounting system. In addition to outright purchases, the capital assets accounting system may include general assets acquired by the following methods:

- Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPP): An arrangement where a local government entity (transferor) conveys the control of the right to use its nonfinancial asset to an operator (government or nongovernmental entity) to provide public services.
- Subscription Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA): Contract that conveys the right to use another entity's IT Software or in combination with tangible IT Assets.
- Lease: Contract that conveys control of the right to use another entity's nonfinancial asset that does not meet the criteria of a PPP or SBITA.
- Construction: Recorded at the related governmental fund expenditures.
- Eminent Domain: Recorded the amount awarded to property owners.
- Donated Assets: Recorded at the acquisition value plus ancillary charges.

General capital assets acquired by tax or special assessment foreclosure, which are to be resold in the near future, are accounted for in the governmental fund to which the taxes or assessments are owed. Reporting infrastructure as individual capital assets is optional (e.g., roads, bridges, curbs and gutters, streets and sidewalks, drainage systems, lighting systems and similar assets that are immovable and of value only to the governmental unit).

Upon disposition, the gain or loss on sale should be reported as nonoperating revenue or as nonoperating expenses, respectively. A gain or loss is measured by the difference between book value (i.e., cost less accumulated depreciation) and the proceeds received from the sale, salvage, or insurance claims.

Land

Land includes the investment in real estate other than:

- buildings and improvements; and
- land acquired for street and road purposes.

Land — including any acreage, parcel, or plot associated with infrastructure — should be reported at cost, estimated cost, or estimated fair value at the date of acquisition. Any time that a determination is made that all or part of any land acquired for street or road purposes is no longer needed for those purposes, that portion shall be capitalized as a capital asset. Usually, land is not depreciated because it has an indefinite life.

Buildings and Improvements

Buildings and improvements are physical property of a permanent (non-moveable) nature; examples include buildings, structural attachments or fixtures, storage tanks, reservoirs and parking areas. Sidewalks, trees, and drives in connection with other structures or parks should also be capitalized.

In practice buildings and improvements, with a monetary value established by the fiscal officer or governing body of the local government, should be capitalized. If a local government exercises the option to capitalize selected items of lesser value, it should be done on a consistent basis. Items such as parking meters and portable traffic signals are considered equipment and should be reported as such.

Fixtures are defined as permanent attachments to buildings that are not intended to be removed and that function as part of the building, such as boilers, lighting fixtures, or plumbing.

Equipment

Equipment includes moveable personal property of a relatively permanent nature and of significant value, such as furniture, machines, tools, vehicles.

- Relatively permanent is generally defined as a useful life of one year and longer.
- Significant value is generally defined in a capitalization policy, which is established by the fiscal officer or the governing body of the local government entity. The cost test may be applied in some instances to aggregates of units of similar type or purpose, such as blocks of folding chairs, shelving, and filing drawers, rather than to the unit itself.

The cost of equipment includes:

- purchase price or construction costs less any discounts;
- freight or other carriage charges;
- sales, use or transportation taxes; and
- installation costs.

In establishing the capital asset accounting system, information on equipment may be obtained from departmental inventories on file, insurance carrier, and from special physical inventories (including physical inventory audit).

Intangible Assets

As described in GASB Cod. Sec. 1400.127 (Section 1400, paragraph .127), intangible assets are assets that lack physical substance, are nonfinancial in nature (not in a monetary form), and have an initial useful life extending beyond a single reporting period. Examples include easements, water rights, rights to use another entity's computer software/IT Assets (SBITA), copyrights, patents, intellectual property, leases, public-private and public-public partnerships (PPPs) and availability payment arrangements (APAs), goodwill and other intangible property necessary or valuable in the conduct of operations. For more information on leases, PPPs/APAs, and SBITAs refer to the following:

- PPPs/APAs: Chapter 15, *Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships and Availability Payment Arrangements*.
- Leases: Chapter 26, *Leases* (intangible assets that do not meet the criteria of PPPs/APAs and SBITAs).
- SBITAs: Chapter 27, *Subscription Based Information Technology Arrangements*.

An intangible asset should be considered to have an indefinite useful life if there are no legal, contractual, regulatory, technological, or other factors that limit the useful life of the asset. A permanent right-of-way easement is an example of an intangible asset that should be considered to have an indefinite useful life. Intangible assets with indefinite useful lives should not be amortized.

Easements are land or any interest in land acquired for the purpose of public or private rights-of-use and passage (including persons, vehicles, and heavy equipment). Easement rights also include erecting, laying, placing, and maintaining drains, ditches, pipes, and transmission lines or wires for the conveyance, transmission, or transportation of water and electric power or for any other purpose necessary for the construction, operation, and maintenance of the project or undertaking. Permanent easements are not depreciated because they have an indefinite useful life.

Internally Generated Intangible Assets

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1400.127 – .139 (Section 1400, paragraphs .127 – .139), specific conditions should be present in order to recognize internally generated intangibles (e.g., computer software developed by a local government entity).

Capitalization of costs begins after all of the following criteria are met:

- Determination of the specific objective of the project (work effort) and the nature of the service capacity that is expected to be provided by the intangible asset upon completion;
- Demonstration of the technical or technological feasibility that the completed project (work effort) will provide its expected service capacity; and
- Demonstration of the current intention, ability, and presence of effort to complete or continue (as in the case of a multi-year project or work effort) development of the intangible asset.

Only costs incurred subsequent to meeting the preceding criteria should be capitalized. Costs incurred prior to meeting those criteria should be expensed. Also, note that in the above definition the term service capacity refers to either internally generated computer software or acquired software that requires more than a minimal incremental effort to achieve expected service capacity.

Specific Amortization Issues

The useful life of an intangible asset that arises from contractual (e.g., leases) or other legal rights should not exceed the period to which the service capacity of the assets is limited by contractual or legal provisions. For example if a local government entity got the rights to use a building for 10 years and the remaining useful life of the building (physical asset) is 25 years — the local government entity can only amortize the building for 10 years. Renewal periods maybe considered when determining the useful life of intangible assets.

Intangible assets with no legal, contractual, regulatory, technological, or other factors limiting their useful life should be considered to have an indefinite useful life and should not be amortized. As an example, a permanent right-of-way easement would be considered to have an indefinite useful life. For more information on specific amortization issues local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1400.140 – .141 (Section 1400, paragraphs .140 – .141).

9.02 Capital Assets System

General capital assets, as distinguished from proprietary fund assets (including those acquired from the resources of a particular fund), are accounted for in a capital asset accounting system. General capital assets are associated with and generally arise from governmental activities. The asset accounts in this group include all aforementioned capital assets (land, buildings and improvement, equipment, infrastructure, intangible assets, etc.) used in operations with useful lives beyond a single reporting period.

The equity of the local government in these assets is shown in a number of investment accounts, set up according to the source of the outlay. The list below is not all-inclusive.

- Investment in Capital Assets — General Fund;
- Investment in Capital Assets — Special Revenue Fund;
- Investment in Capital Assets — General Obligation Bonds;
- Investment in Capital Assets — Accumulative Capital Outlay Fund; or
- Investment in Capital Assets — Donations

These accounts are posted simultaneously with, but independently of, the related transactions recorded in the operating funds. Several investment accounts could be combined into one amount on a balance sheet or statement of net position, if a condensed presentation is desired.

9.03 Treatment of Costs Subsequent to Acquisition

Expenditures on general capital assets that are incurred after their original acquisition are defined and recorded as one of the following:

- Maintenance: generally regarded as expenditures that neither materially add to the value of the property nor appreciably prolong its life, but merely keep it in an ordinarily efficient operating condition (typically not capitalized) or
- Capitalized Expenditures: generally regarded as expenditures that materially add to the value of the asset or appreciably extend its life. The cost of capitalized expenditures should be added to the book value of the asset where the original cost of a component being improved can be specifically identified. The remaining book value should be written off and the new cost capitalized. Capitalized expenditures are on occasion referred to as betterments.

The decision as to whether expenditures should be capitalized should be made by an evaluation of engineering, physical, or other relevant factors apart from cost. Following are examples of factors that should be considered when capitalizing an asset:

- Additions: generally treated as new separate units, or extensions of existing units, and are considered to be general capital assets (or capital assets). The test of significance/materiality should be applied, as with betterments.
- Alterations: generally treated as changes in the physical structure or arrangement of general capital assets, the cost of which does not qualify as an increase in general capital assets under the foregoing definitions of betterments and additions. Alterations should not be capitalized.

With respect to structures and improvements, a significant betterment is generally one that results in an improvement of at least \$5,000. Different types of assets may require different minimum capitalization thresholds as predetermined by the local governments.

Capital Asset Valuations

9.04 Valuation Basis

As a general rule capital assets should be reported at historical cost, including ancillary charges necessary to place the asset into its intended location and condition for use.

The cost of a capital asset includes not only its purchase price or construction cost, but also the costs necessary to place the asset in its intended location and condition for use. These costs include freight and transportation charges, site preparation expenditures, professional fees, and legal claims directly attributable to asset acquisition.

Occasionally, a local government will acquire a capital asset for which the historical cost information may not be available. In such cases, the local government may use either of the following approaches to estimate the historical cost of capital assets:

- Standard Costing: The cost that other governments may have paid for a similar asset; or
- Normal Costing: The cost to acquire the normal asset today and then using a price index to adjust the cost of the asset to the amount the asset would have cost in the year the asset was actually acquired.

Land Cost

The cost of land includes all expenditures in connection with its acquisition including any land preparation costs that will have an indefinite useful life. Following is a list (not all-inclusive) of such expenditures.

- Purchase price
- Appraisal and negotiation fees
- Title search fees and Surveying Fees
- Cost of contents
- Relocation costs
- Condemnation costs
- Clearing land for use
- Demolishing or removing structures
- Filing costs and Legal Fees
- Escrow costs related to acquisition (this does not include taxes, interest or insurance)

Any receipts from the sales of items located on the property should be credited against the land cost. In establishing the capital asset accounting system, the assessor may be able to provide information about the location and value of land owned if the local government itself does not have adequate records.

Structure and Improvement Costs

The cost of structures and improvements includes all expenditures in connection with their acquisitions. Following is a list (not all-inclusive) of such expenditures.

- Purchase price of construction cost
- Fixtures attached to the structure
- Architects' fees
- Accident or injury costs
- Payment of damages
- Insurance during construction
- Cost of permits and licenses
- Legal and escrow costs related to acquisition (this does not include taxes, interest or insurance)

The cost should be reduced for:

- sale of salvage from materials charged against the construction;
- discounts, allowance, and rebates secured; or
- amounts recovered through surrender of liability and casualty insurance.

Rentals of property during the construction period should be credited to revenue unless otherwise restricted. Interest costs incurred before the end of a construction period should not be capitalized as part of the asset's historical cost. In establishing the capital asset accounting system, the assessor and the insurance carrier may be able to provide information about the structures and improvements owned if the local government itself does not have adequate records.

Equipment Replacement Reserve (Designation)

Government Code section 25262 allows county governments to establish an equipment replacement reserve. It states the following:

The county budget may contain a provision for an equipment replacement reserve within a fund. The amount in this reserve shall be identified with the class of fixed assets, and may accumulate from year to year, but at no time shall it exceed the estimated replacement cost of the items of fixed assets for which it has been accumulated. The particular amounts in the reserve shall be made available for expenditure in the year that the items are replaced or removed from service without replacement. The estimated replacement cost of the fixed assets shall be adjusted each year.

Legislation determines whether component units or governments other than the county are authorized to maintain a designated equipment reserve. For example, a community services district, pursuant to Government Code section 61112, may establish a designated reserve for capital outlays. The methodology used to determine the replacement cost, or inflationary factor, may vary depending on the class of equipment, availability of information (indices), or other market factors.

Example:

- A. The following illustrative case assumes the availability of accurate replacement cost information and a capital asset system that is capable of depreciating by class, using the straight-line method and historical cost.
1. The Motor Pool Internal Service Fund wishes to establish an Equipment Replacement Reserve (Designation) based on replacement cost beginning with fiscal year 20X5-X6. The straight-line depreciation based on historical cost for the year is \$50,000, while replacement cost for the same vehicles equals \$62,000. The equipment rental rates used to bill the various departments would be based on the \$62,000; the actual depreciation expense would be \$50,000, in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).
 2. The total revenue raised by the rental rates based on replacement cost for FY 20X5-X6 would be \$147,600.

A new entry to establish the Equipment Replacement Reserve (Designation) based on replacement cost would be as follows:

Motor Pool Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Net Position – Unrestricted	DR: \$12,000	
Equipment Replacement Reserve		CR: \$12,000

- B. The case assumed required accurate replacement information and a sophisticated capital asset system. This capability will not exist in all counties; as a result, other methods of estimating replacement cost may be used. The case offered below assumes the availability of an industry-wide inflationary index for vehicles:
1. Once again, the Motor Pool Internal Service Fund wishes to establish an Equipment Replacement Reserve. On July 1, 20X5, the index that the fund uses to determine inflationary trends shows that, during the preceding year, the cost of new vehicles increased 3%. This increase will be applied to the historical cost of the fleet of vehicles on hand (\$510,000 x 3%) to determine the additional revenue (\$15,300) that needs to be raised to establish the Equipment Replacement Reserve (Designation). Rental rates for the coming year would be adjusted to achieve the total income requirement of \$150,900.
 2. The remainder of the entries will be essentially the same as those contained in the prior example, except that the net effect of each will be higher by \$3,300 due to the increase in revenue over that achieved by the other method.

Motor Pool Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Net Position – Unrestricted	DR: \$15,300	
Equipment Replacement Reserve		CR: \$15,300

C. The entries regarding the purchase of equipment during the following fiscal year would be as follows, assuming the existence of an Equipment Replacement Reserve:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Equipment	DR: \$8,200	
Accumulated Depreciation	DR: \$6,500	
Equipment Replacement Reserve	DR: \$1,250	
Net Position – Unrestricted	DR: \$7,750	
Net Position – Net Investment in Capital Assets		CR: \$7,750
Equipment		CR: \$7,800
Cash		CR: \$400
Cash Restricted for Vehicle Replacement		CR: \$6,500
Net Position – Unrestricted		CR: \$1,250

Note: The cases used to illustrate the uses of an Equipment Replacement Reserve (Designation) reflect the accounting and reporting of designations and not reserves.

Donated Assets

Donated capital assets should be reported at their acquisition value plus any ancillary charges, if applicable. Surplus property purchases at nominal prices far below actual value are, in part, donations and should be so valued.

Disposition of Capital Assets

General capital assets may be sold, abandoned, or traded in for new assets. Regardless of the manner of disposition or the amount of the proceeds, the asset should be removed from the capital assets accounting system at its recorded value. The local government records any disposition proceeds in the revenue accounts or any costs related to the disposition in the expenditure accounts.

Depreciation (Depletion)

Capital assets should be depreciated over their estimated useful lives, unless they are inexhaustible, are intangible with indefinite useful lives, or are infrastructure assets that are part of a network reported using the modified approach which meets the criteria set forth in GASB Cod. Sec. 1400.105 – .107 (Section 1400, paragraphs .105 – .107). Local governments may use any established depreciation method. Depreciation may be based on the estimated useful life of a class of assets, a network of assets, a subsystem of a network, or individual assets.

Depreciation of capital assets should not be reported in governmental funds, but should be tracked in the Capital Asset Accounting System for a record of depreciation added to the government-wide statements. Depreciation of capital assets purchased in a proprietary fund are required to be directly recorded in the accounts of that fund. As capital assets of governmental funds are treated as expenditures and not capitalized, depreciation is not recorded the governmental funds. When recorded in the capital assets accounting system, the depreciation entry should increase the accumulated depreciation accounts and decrease the Investment in General Capital Assets account(s).

Useful Life of Assets

In general, the best way for a local government to determine the useful life of any capital asset is through its own experiences with similar assets. If that information is not available, then local governments may refer to the following for general guidance:

- General guidelines obtained from professional or industry organizations (such as AICPA);
- Information for comparable assets of other governments; or
- Internal information.

Local governments should also consider an asset's present condition and how long it is expected to meet service needs/demands, along with the following factors:

- Quality: differences in materials, workmanship, etc.;
- Application: how the asset is currently being used, frequency of use, etc.; or
- Environment: physical climate, regulatory requirements, etc.

Interest Cost Incurred before the End of a Construction Period

When preparing financial statements using economic resources focus, interest cost incurred before the end of the construction period should be expensed in the period incurred instead of being capitalized. Under the current financial resources measurement focus, the interest cost would be treated as an expenditure.

9.05 Transfers to Proprietary Funds

Capital assets used by proprietary funds are considered to belong to those funds, rather than being accounted for in the capital asset account system. This circumstance requires that transactions involving governmental capital assets and proprietary funds be regarded as taking place between independent financial entities and will require an adjustment in the capital asset account system of the governmental funds.

Accounting for such capital asset transfers should reflect the actual terms of the transactions. Capital assets may be donated or sold to internal service or enterprise funds. If donated, no entries are required in the accounts of governmental funds that had originally purchased the assets because the donated assets are not accounted for as assets of the original fund. If sold, the original governmental fund may:

- receive cash (accounted for as revenue in governmental funds);
- acquire a receivable which will be collected from future earnings of the fund purchasing the assets; or
- acquire a permanent investment that may be recovered only upon liquidation of the fund that purchased the assets. In any event, the assets should be removed from the capital assets account system.

Conversely, if governmental funds purchase proprietary fund capital assets, the purchase price should be recorded as an expenditure, just as though bought from an outside vendor. The asset should be recorded in the general capital asset accounting system.

Inventory and Records

9.06 Accounting for Inventories

Consumption Method

In the consumption method of inventory accounting, expenditures are recorded when materials and supplies are used. GASB requires using this method when reporting inventories in the government-wide financial statements as it is consistent with economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting.

Purchases Method

Using the purchases method of accounting, purchases are recorded as expenditures when acquired, regardless of when they are used. As stated above, the GASB requires the use of the consumption method when accounting for inventories in governmental funds. If a local government uses the purchases method to account for inventories in its governmental funds, and the consumption method produces different results when preparing the government-wide financial statements, the difference should be included as part of the reconciliations of the governmental funds to governmental entities.

Unavailable Revenues

When an asset is recorded in the governmental fund financial statements but the revenue is unavailable, the government should report the unavailable revenue as a deferred inflow of resources until such time as the revenue becomes available.

9.07 Records

Physical Inventory

To ensure that the system is functioning as intended, complete physical inventories of capital assets should be taken at intervals prescribed by law or as prescribed by the local governing body.

The physical inventory will be easier if the property accounting officer provides a current list, in numerical order, of the equipment charged to departments with space for checking each item present, notation of exceptions, and certification.

Additionally, the property accounting officer, in the interest of internal control, should check physical inventories of departments or item groups at random, reporting any deficiencies to the department head as promptly as possible.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 140 (Section 140) for more information pertaining to the general principles applicable to pricing of inventories of business type activities and proprietary funds

Shortages and Overages

An investigation of any shortages or overages should be made in cooperation with the department involved. Frequently, such a condition is due to an accounting lag in recording acquisitions, transfers, and dispositions.

Shortages may exist because of the accounting lag, or because of pilferage. Any shortage still unexplained after a reasonable effort to determine the cause should be reported to the legislative body for appropriate action.

Identification of Equipment

Records of capital assets should be carefully maintained to ensure that there is an accurate government-wide representation of these financial resources and their location, whether or not they are expended from governmental funds.

Two main reasons exist for affixing a sequence number to as many items as is possible and practical:

- Ease of identification: It is quicker to identify equipment by number than to search for obscurely placed serial numbers or to match physical characteristics to a word description. This is particularly true when dealing with many items of similar, but not quite identical, appearance; and
- Maintaining Inventory: A department physical inventory may be taken rapidly if a listing of items in sequence number order is available. Any item seen may be quickly located on the list and checked off. Otherwise, the inventory should be taken in the order listed, or the entire listing should be searched to locate the item or to adjust the accounting records accordingly.

Some items for which a sequence number may not be practical include:

- equipment habitually coated with dirt and grease;
- certain medical and laboratory instruments; and
- unique items, readily identifiable.

Judgment should be exercised as to which equipment is best left unnumbered. It is possible that no single method of numbering will prove adequate, and several may be necessary depending on the surface, composition, and usage of the item. Some examples of the commonly used devices are (list is not all-inclusive):

- metal tags with adhesive on the back;
- metal tags affixed with rivets or nails;
- decals;
- stenciled numbers; or
- die-stamped numbers.

Standardization regarding the location for affixing tags to capital assets is desirable.

Individual Records

An individual record of each unit of accountability should be maintained. Information recorded should include:

- Date acquired;
- Department charged with the item (including purchase authorization documents);
- The sequence number assigned (e.g., property system ID/serial number, etc.);
- An abbreviated word description;
- Cost or estimated cost, and salvage value;
- Method by which acquired (e.g., lease, outright purchase, donation, etc.);
- Fund from which purchased;
- Vendors' name if purchased;
- Date and method of retirement;
- Posting reference (including payment voucher number);
- Physical location; and
- Depreciation records (where applicable).

Optional data might include a value for insurance purposes, estimated life, and equipment class code.

Descriptive information concerning capital asset additions is best taken from purchase invoices and contracts, even though there is sometimes an undue lag between physical possession of the property and the receipt of these documents.

In local governments where a purchasing agent exists and is assigned the responsibility for handling surplus property sales, equipment abandonments, and interdepartmental transfers of equipment, close cooperation with the purchasing agent will facilitate the functioning of the property accounting system.

In local governments where a purchasing agent does not exist and the individual department head controls the purchase, movement and disposition of assets; procedures and report forms should be designed to give the property accounting officer prompt notice of any change in the composition or physical location of the assets.

Subsidiary Records

For control purposes, it is convenient to group detail records by the department or location, in the case of equipment. Records filed by department constitute a subsidiary ledger to the capital assets accounting system control account called Equipment.

Similarly, individual records for land, buildings and improvements may be grouped by the location to constitute subsidiary ledgers to the other control accounts. Larger local governments with thousands of assets may wish to install intermediate control records to facilitate the various departments and locations.

Construction and Work-in-Progress

9.08 Construction by Force Account

Capital assets constructed by local governments are recorded in the same manner as those acquired by purchase or construction contract. Costs are initially charged to the accounts of the cost center performing the construction and are then transferred to the project. These costs include direct labor, materials, equipment usage, and overhead. Overhead is limited to those items — such as workers' compensation and employee group insurance premiums, retirement, sick leave, and vacation allowances — that can be distributed based on direct labor. Administrative overhead outside of the cost center may be capitalized when clearly related to the construction.

9.09 Construction in Progress

At the close of the fiscal period, the recorded expenditures for general capital assets being constructed but not yet completed should be recognized in the capital assets accounting system. This is accomplished by charging the Construction in Progress account and crediting the appropriate Investment in Capital Assets account. If the project is not completed by the end of the following period, these accounts are adjusted later to reflect any additional expenditures.

Depreciation expense is not recognized for Construction in Progress until a Capital Asset is substantially ready to be placed into service. Upon completion, the proper asset account, usually the Buildings and Improvements account, is charged with the total of the completed construction. The Construction in Progress account is then credited with previously recorded costs, and the Investment in Capital Assets account adjusted for any difference.

9.10 Separate Disclosure of Certain Capital Assets

According to GASB Statement No. 104 the following capital assets and related amortization should be disclosed separately:

- Lease assets reported by major class of underlying asset as outlined in GASB Statement No.87, as amended.
- Intangible right-to-use assets recognized by an operator in accordance by major class of underlying public-public partnership asset as outlined in GASB Statement No.94, as amended.
- Subscription assets reported accordance with GASB Statement No. 96, as amended.
- Intangible assets other those listed above by major class of asset.

Note: Intangible assets that represent the right-to-use type of underlying asset should not be disclosed in the same major class as any owned assets of that type.

9.11 Certain Assets Held for Sale

A capital asset is considered to be held for sale if it meets the following criteria:

- a) The government has decided to sell the asset; and
- b) It is probable that the sale will be finalized within one year of the financial statement date.

Factors to consider if the sale of the capital asset will occur within one year of the financial statement date (not all inclusive):

- a) Whether the asset is available for sale in its present condition
- b) Whether an active program to locate a buyer has been initiated—may include the capital asset being put out for a bid
- c) Market conditions for selling the type of asset
- d) Regulatory approvals needed to sell the asset

Note: A local government entity should evaluate whether a capital asset qualifies as a capital asset held for sale each reporting period.

GASB Statement No.104 requires capital assets held for sale to be reported in the following manner:

- Report the capital asset held for sale within the appropriate major class of capital asset.
- Disclose capital assets held for sale in notes to financial statements, with separate disclosure of historical cost and accumulated depreciation (or amortization), by major class of asset.
- Disclose the carrying amount of debt for which capital assets held for sale are pledged as collateral, for each major class of asset.
- The disclosure of capital assets held for sale should be made for both governmental activities and business-type activities.

Examples

E9.12 Capital Assets Note Disclosure

GASB Statement No. 34, *Basic Financial Statements — and Management’s Discussion and Analysis — for State and Local Governments*, as amended, requires that information about changes in capital assets used in governmental activities and business-type activities be disclosed. The capital assets note contains four columns of information. The first column presents the original cost, accumulated depreciation, and net amounts as of the start of the year. Unless an adjustment has been made, these are likely the amounts that were reported in the previous year’s financial report. The right-hand column presents the same information. The totals in the right-hand column are the same as those shown in the balance sheet or statement of net position.

The two middle columns explain how the capital asset amounts changed from the previous year to the current year. One column shows additions, construction, or donation, as well as the depreciation reported for the year. The other column reports information about assets that have been sold or otherwise disposed of. If a capital asset suffers an impairment — meaning it cannot be used to provide services or its usefulness is greatly diminished because of physical damage, obsolescence, or some other reason — then the writing down of the asset is shown in the retirement column. For more information on reporting capital assets refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1400 (Section 1400) for more details.

Additionally, GASB Statement No. 103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements*, requires Management’s Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) section to include explanations that are most relevant to the information presented each year regarding significant capital asset activity during the year, including certain intangible assets. The description should avoid “boilerplate” style discussion. Instead it should include a discussion of significant additions and disposals of capital assets and changes to commitments made for the acquisition of capital assets. Additionally, the description should address any significant policy changes and economic factors relevant to the capital asset activity that occurred during the year.

Disclosure of Information about Capital Assets — Governmental Activities

Capital asset balances and activity for the year ended December 31, 20X1, was as follows:

	Balance Beginning of Year	Additions	Deletions	Balance End of Year
Governmental Activities				
Capital Assets (Not Depreciated/Amortized)				
Land	\$ 50,067,172.00	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 50,067,172.00
Construction In Progress	22,974,097.00	12,357,720.00	25,461,699.00	9,870,118.00
Total Capital Assets (Not Depreciated/Amortized)	73,041,269.00	12,357,720.00	25,461,699.00	59,937,290.00
Capital Assets (Depreciated/Amortized)				
Buildings	191,856,915.00	24,057,089.00	-	215,914,004.00
Machinery/Equipment/Vehicles	33,208,145.00	3,376,386.00	935,135.00	35,649,396.00
Right to use Lease Assets	-	-	-	-
Building		35,017.00		35,017.00
Vehicles		25,000.00		25,000.00
Right to use IT Software		71,128.00	-	71,128.00
Infrastructure	206,411,089.00	1,415,056.00	-	207,826,145.00
Total Capital Assets (Depreciated/Amortized)	431,476,149.00	28,979,676.00	935,135.00	459,520,690.00
Less Accumulated Depreciation/Amortization for:				
Buildings	(78,425,803.00)	(4,767,749.00)	-	(83,193,552.00)
Machinery/Equipment/Vehicles	(21,468,057.00)	(2,138,804.00)	(925,961.00)	(22,680,900.00)
Right to use Lease Assets	-	-	-	-
Building		(4,200.00)		(4,200.00)
Vehicles		(2,226.00)		(2,226.00)
Right to use IT Software	-	(7,537.00)	-	(7,537.00)
Infrastructure	(120,858,864.00)	(5,353,077.00)	-	(126,211,941.00)
Total Accumulated Depreciation/Amortization	(220,752,724.00)	(12,273,593.00)	(925,961.00)	(232,100,356.00)
Total Capital Assets Depreciated/Amortized (Net)	210,723,425.00	16,706,083.00	9,174.00	227,420,334.00
Total Governmental Activities Capital Assets	\$ 283,764,694.00	\$ 29,063,803.00	\$ 25,470,873.00	\$ 287,357,624.00

Disclosure of Information about Capital Assets — Governmental Activities (Continued)

Depreciation/Amortization expenses were charged to functions/programs of the governmental activities of the primary government as follows:

General Government	\$	192,046.00
Public Safety		1,377,351.00
Highways and Streets		6,889,370.00
Sanitation		2,411,196.00
Culture and Recreation		1,030,161.00
Internal Service Funds		373,469.00
Total Depreciation/Amortization	\$	<u>12,273,593.00</u>

Disclosure of Information about Capital Assets — Business Activities

	Balance Beginning of Year	Additions	Deletions	Balance End of Year
<u>Business-Type Activities</u>				
Capital Assets (Not Depreciated/Amortized)				
Land	\$ 1,911,400.00	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,911,400.00
Construction In Progress	6,726,334.00	787,698.00	2,150,249.00	5,363,783.00
Total Capital Assets (Not Depreciated/Amortized)	8,637,734.00	787,698.00	2,150,249.00	7,275,183.00
Capital Assets (Depreciated/Amortized)				
Buildings	10,763,192.00	2,150,249.00	-	12,913,441.00
Machinery/Equipment/Vehicles	10,873,602.00	1,218,982.00	935,135.00	11,157,449.00
Right to use Toll Road	-	5,000,000.00	-	5,000,000.00
Water Distribution System	35,422,287.00	-	-	35,422,287.00
Total Capital Assets (Depreciated/Amortized)	57,059,081.00	8,369,231.00	935,135.00	64,493,177.00
Less Accumulated Depreciation/Amortization for:				
Buildings	(4,911,910.00)	(467,517.00)	-	(5,379,427.00)
Machinery/Equipment/Vehicles	(7,679,744.00)	(512,035.00)	(629,424.00)	(7,562,355.00)
Right to use Toll Road	-	(100,000.00)	-	(100,000.00)
Water Distribution System	(13,286,582.00)	(733,977.00)	-	(14,020,559.00)
Total Accumulated Depreciation/Amortization	(25,878,236.00)	(1,813,529.00)	(629,424.00)	(27,062,341.00)
Total Capital Assets Depreciated/Amortized (Net)	31,180,845.00	6,555,702.00	305,711.00	37,430,836.00
Total Business-Type Activities Capital Assets	\$ 39,818,579.00	\$ 7,343,400.00	\$ 2,455,960.00	\$ 44,706,019.00

E9.13 Examples of Classification and Posting

For simplicity, it is assumed that all transactions are cash and are financed through the General Fund unless otherwise stated.

Capital Asset Purchase:

A printer is purchased for \$5,000 for the clerk.

Application of Policy: The asset is capitalized in the amount of the expenditure.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditure – Printer	DR: \$5,000	
Cash		CR: \$5,000

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Equipment - Printer	DR: \$5,000	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$5,000

Distinction between Capital Asset and Maintenance Expenditures

The following illustrative examples (not all-inclusive) demonstrate common types of transactions for capital asset and maintenance expenditures.

For the purposes of the following example, it is assumed that the local government has a capitalization policy of capitalizing general capital assets costing \$5,000 or more.

Capital Asset vs. Maintenance Expenditure:

Example 1:

Repairs were made to bleachers (seats) costing \$200 in the Parks and Recreations Building.

Application of Policy: Repairs are considered maintenance and is not capitalized.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$200	
Cash		CR: \$200

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 2:

100 bleachers purchased at a cost of \$5,000 were added to the inventory of bleachers.

Application of Policy: This is an addition to the existing capitalized bleachers. These items are capitalized according to the local government's capitalization policy.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

Expenditures	DR: \$5,000	
Cash		CR: \$5,000

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Equipment	DR: \$5,000	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$5,000

Example 3:

A new radiator is installed in a five-year old auto for the Administrator at a cost of \$145.

Application of Policy: This is ordinary maintenance and therefore not capitalized.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

Expenditures	DR: \$145	
Cash		CR: \$145

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 4:

Maintenance was performed on the hospital heating system, costing \$500.

Application of Policy: Maintenance expenditures are not capitalized.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

Expenditures	DR: \$500	
Cash		CR: \$500

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 5:

A new five-ton cooling system costing \$7,500 is installed in the hospital, replacing an existing three-ton system, which originally cost \$5,000.

Application of Policy: The expenditure can be capitalized – capitalize the new item and write off the item replaced.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$7,500	
Cash		CR: \$7,500
Capital Assets Accounting System:		
Buildings and Improvements	DR: \$7,500	
Investments in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$7,500
Investments in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$5,000	
Buildings and Improvement		CR: \$5,000

Example 6:

\$1,750 is expended on the installation of new partitions in the hospital lobby to provide additional office space.

Application of Policy: The addition is less than \$5,000 and is accordingly charged to maintenance.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$1,750	
Cash		CR: \$1,750

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 7:

A new building is painted at a cost of \$11,000.

Application of Policy: Painting as part of the initial construction cost is regarded as capital outlay. Subsequent repair is maintenance according to local government's capitalization policy.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$11,000	
Cash		CR: \$11,000

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Building and Improvements	DR: \$11,000	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$11,000

Example 8:

An administration building was constructed with an unpainted exterior. After 15 years, the building is painted at a cost of \$15,000.

Application of Policy: Although a theoretical case exists for classification as an addition, it is considered preferable to regard this as an expenditure of maintaining the original exterior of the building.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$15,000	
Cash		CR: \$15,000

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 9:

A shop building is completely shingled, costing \$1,700.

Application of Policy: The replacement is in-kind and is accordingly classified as maintenance.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$1,700	
Cash		CR: \$1,700

Capital Assets Accounting System:

No entry needed

Example 10:

The shingles in the above roof are replaced with shake shingles at a cost of \$6,800.

Application of Policy: The amount of the betterment is greater than \$5,000 as established by the auditor. Capitalize the new item and write off the \$1,100 remaining book value of the old roof.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$6,800	
Cash		CR: \$6,800

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Building and Improvements	DR: \$6,800	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$6,800
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$1,100	
Building and Improvement		CR: \$1,100

The following illustrative examples (not all-inclusive) demonstrate common types of expenditure transactions related to general capital assets. For the purposes of the following examples, it is assumed that the local government has a capitalization policy of capitalizing general capital assets costing \$2,000 or more. All entries are recorded in the general fund, unless otherwise stated.

Purchase of a Capital Asset with a Trade-in for a Governmental Fund Type:

Method A:

A laptop is purchased for the assessor for \$2,675. The vendor allows \$125 for an old laptop, which originally cost \$1,250.

Application of Policy: The new asset is recorded at cost. The old asset is removed at its recorded value. The trade-in value is recognized as revenue.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$2,675	
Cash		CR: \$2,550
Other Financing Sources – Proceeds from General Capital Asset Trade-in		CR: \$125

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Equipment	DR: \$2,675	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$2,675
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$1,250	
Equipment		CR: \$1,250

Method B:

A laptop is purchased for the assessor for \$2,675. The vendor allows \$125 for an old laptop, which originally cost \$1,250.

Application of Policy: Record the purchase of the laptop net of the trade-in allowance. Note that the trade-in value is recognized only in the capital assets accounting system.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$2,550	
Cash		CR: \$2,550

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Equipment	DR: \$2,675	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$2,675
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$1,250	
Equipment		CR: \$1,250

Purchase of a Capital Asset with a Trade-in:

The Parks Department was allowed \$1,000 on an old pick-up truck toward the purchase of a new one. The old truck originally cost \$3,000 and the price of the new truck is \$6,200 before any trade-in allowance.

Application of Policy: Same as with preceding example (here using Method A).

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
General Ledger:		
Expenditures	DR: \$6,200	
Cash		CR: \$5,200
Revenue		CR: \$1,000

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Equipment	DR: \$6,200	
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund		CR: \$6,200
Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$3,000	
Equipment		CR: \$3,000

Sale of a Capital Asset

The Public Works Department sells a truck originally costing \$3,500 for \$600.

Application of Policy: Assets sold must be removed from the capital assets accounting system at their recorded value, regardless of selling price.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

Cash	DR: \$600	
Revenue		CR: \$600

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Investment in Capital Assets – General Fund	DR: \$3,500	
Equipment		CR: \$3,500

Construction in Progress

At June 30, \$30,000 has been expended on a capital projects fund toward construction of a new health building.

Application of Policy: The amount of the expenditure at the close of the fiscal year is recorded in the Capital Assets Accounting System.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

No Entry Needed

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Construction in Progress	DR: \$30,000	
Investment in Capital Assets from Cap Proj. Fund – Gen. Oblig. Bonds		CR: \$30,000

Development in Progress: Internally Generated Intangible Asset – Public Works Software:

At June 30, \$125,000 has been expended in a special revenue fund toward development of software being internally generated for Public Works.

Application of Policy: The amount of the expenditure at the close of the fiscal year is recorded in the Capital Assets Accounting System.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

General Ledger:

No Entry Needed

Capital Assets Accounting System:

Software Development in Progress	DR: \$125,000	
Investment in Capital Assets from Spec. Rev. Fund – Gen. Oblig. Bonds		CR: \$125,000

Chapter 10: Reporting Liabilities

Chapter Contents

Introduction 235

Overview of Liabilities 235

10.01 Fund Liabilities 235

10.02 Current Liabilities 235

10.03 Long-Term Liabilities 237

10.04 Special Liability Items 238

10.05 Disclosures of Debt Obligations 241

10.06 Pollution Remediation Obligations 241

10.07 Asset Retirement Obligations 243

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 10: Reporting Liabilities

Introduction

Liabilities are present obligations to sacrifice resources that the government has little or no discretion to avoid. An obligation is a social, legal, or moral requirement, such as a duty, contract, or promise that compels one to follow or avoid a particular course of action. A major compelling factor of an obligation is that the obligation is legally enforceable. The event creating the liability should have taken place and be external to the government. Additionally, governmental liabilities should be maintained in sufficient detail in the debt accounting records to provide ample information for financial reporting and disclosure requirements.

A clear distinction should be made between fund long-term liabilities and general long-term liabilities. Any long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid from proprietary funds should be reported in the proprietary fund statement of net position and in the government-wide statement of net position.

Long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid from fiduciary funds (including fiduciary component units) should be reported in the statement of fiduciary net position. All other unmatured general long-term liabilities of the governmental unit should not be reported as liabilities in governmental funds, but should instead be reported in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position.

Overview of Liabilities

10.01 Fund Liabilities

Bonds, notes, and other long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid from proprietary funds and fiduciary funds should be included in the accounts of such funds, as they are specific fund liabilities, even though the full faith and credit of the governmental unit may be pledged as further assurance that the liabilities will be paid. Liabilities such as these may constitute a mortgage or lien on specific fund properties or receivables.

As stated earlier, long-term liabilities directly related to and expected to be paid from either proprietary funds or fiduciary funds should be reported in their respective fund financial statements. Any liabilities arising from interfund activities do not constitute general long-term liabilities and therefore should be reported in governmental funds.

10.02 Current Liabilities

Current liabilities describe obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources or the creation of other current liabilities. The classification is intended to include obligations for items that have entered the current operating cycle, such as payables incurred to acquire materials and supplies for use in providing services, collections received in advance of the performance of services, or other short-term debts (e.g., accruals for wages, salaries, commissions, rentals, and/or royalties) arising from operations directly related to the operating cycle required to be expended within one year.

Also intended for inclusion are other liabilities whose regular and ordinary liquidation is expected to occur within one year, such as:

- short-term debts from capital asset acquisition;
- serial maturities of long-term obligations;
- amounts required to be expended within one year under sinking fund provisions;
- certain obligations arising from the collection or acceptance of cash or other assets for the account of third parties; or
- obligations that, by their terms, are due on demand or will be due on demand within one year from the date of the financial statements., even though liquidation may not be expected within that period.

Governmental fund liabilities and expenditures for debt service on general long-term debt, including lease liabilities (due within current reporting period), public-private and public-public partnership liabilities (PPP) (due within current reporting period), and subscription-based information technology arrangement liabilities (SBITA) (due within current reporting period), generally should be recognized when due — that is, to the extent that portions of the debt mature during the reporting period. As previously discussed in this section, current liabilities are also intended to include obligations that are due on demand or will be due on demand within one year from the date of the financial statements.

The current liabilities classification is also intended to include long-term obligations that are or will be callable by the creditor because of:

- the debtor's violation of a provision of the debt agreement at the date of the financial statements makes the obligation callable; or
- the violation, if not cured within a specified grace period, will make the obligation callable.

Such callable obligations should be classified as current liabilities unless one of the following conditions is met:

- The creditor has waived or subsequently lost the right to demand repayment for more than one year from the date of the financial statements.
- For long-term obligations containing a grace period within which the debtor may cure the violation, it is probable that the violation will be cured within that period, thus preventing the obligation from becoming callable.

It should be noted that short-term obligations that are expected to be refinanced on a long-term basis should be classified in accordance with the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.108 – .115 (Section 1500, paragraphs .108 – .115). This includes the callable obligations previously discussed in this chapter section.

10.03 Long-Term Liabilities

Long-Term Liabilities describe obligations that are not expected to be liquidated with available resources. These obligations are scheduled to mature beyond one year from the date of the government's financial statements. Long-term liabilities are grouped into two main classifications: fund liabilities and general long-term liabilities.

Fund Liabilities includes bonds, notes, and other long-term liabilities that are directly related to and expected to be paid from the proprietary and fiduciary funds should be included in the accounts of such funds.

General Long-Term Liabilities includes all other unmatured long-term indebtedness of the government which is not to be reported as liabilities in governmental funds. These liabilities should be reported only in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.103 – .104 (Section 1500, paragraphs .103 – .104) for more details. General long-term liabilities also includes certain special types of special assessment debt. Both general long-term liabilities and special assessment debt are discussed in more detail in GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.119 – .120 (Section 1500, paragraph .119 – .120).

The accounting standards that are used to determine which long-term liabilities should be presented in a local governments' financial statements and how they should be presented vary depending on whether a liability is presented in governmental funds, proprietary funds, fiduciary funds, or the government-wide financial statements.

Types of obligations found in this category include, but are not limited to:

- Noncurrent liabilities on leases, employee benefits, pensions, etc.
- Noncurrent Notes Payable
- Unmatured Principal on General Obligation and Revenue Bonds

As defined in GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.103 (Section 1500, paragraph .103):

General long-term debt is the unmatured principal of bonds, warrants, notes, special assessment debt for which the government is obligated in some manner, or other forms of noncurrent or long-term general obligation debt that is not a specific liability of any proprietary fund or fiduciary fund.

The general long-term debt of a government is secured by the local government's general credit or its revenue raising powers. Similar to capital assets, general long-term debt does not require the consumption of governmental fund resources within one fiscal year.

10.04 Special Liability Items

Conduit Debt Obligations

For accounting and reporting purposes, a conduit debt obligation is a debt instrument issued by a local government entity (the issuer) that is for the benefit of a third party primarily liable for the repayment of a debt instrument (third party obligor).

Conduit debt obligations have all of the following characteristics:

- There are at least three parties: an issuer/a third-party obligor/debtholder or debt trustee.
- The issuer and third-party obligor should not be part of the same financial reporting entity.
- The debt obligation is not a parity bond of the issuer, nor is it cross-collateralized with the debt of the issuer.
- The third-party obligor or its agent, not the issuer, ultimately receives the debt proceeds.
- The third-party obligor (not the issuer) is primarily responsible for all debt service payments.

The conduit debt financial statement note disclosure should include a general description of the issuer's conduit debt obligations, general description of the issuer's limited, voluntary, and additional commitments, as well as the aggregate outstanding principal amount of all conduit debt obligations that share the same type of commitment at the end of the reporting period.

If an issuer recognizes a liability because of the commitments (limited, voluntary or additional) made associated with a conduit debt obligation, the issuer should disclose the following:

- A brief description of the timing of recognition of the liability information about the changes in the recognized liability, including:
 - Beginning-of-period balances
 - Increases, including initial recognition and adjustments increasing estimates
 - Decreases, including payments made and adjustments decreasing estimates
 - End-of-period balances
- Cumulative amounts of payments that have been made on the recognized liability at the reporting date, if any.
- Amounts expected to be recovered from those payments, if any.

For more information on conduit debt obligations, refer to GASB Cod. Sec. C65 (Section C65) and Chapter 17, *Demand Bonds and Debt Obligations* of this manual.

General Obligation and Revenue Bonds

General obligation bonds represent bonded indebtedness of the local government to which repayment is secured by general revenues and supported by the full faith and credit of the local government in the form of its taxing ability. General obligation bonds normally require voter approval and are typically repaid with property or other taxes levied for such a purpose. Revenue bonds can be payable solely from a particular source of revenue, such as those generated from the related project, or from other pledged revenues other than property taxes. Examples of these revenues include, but are not limited to, utility revenues, hospital revenues and other business type activity.

Anticipation Notes

Anticipation notes are short-term securities issued with the expectation that a local government will receive resources in the near future and that these resources will be used to retire the liability.

Tax anticipation notes are often issued as part of a cash management strategy that recognizes that certain taxes (such as property taxes) will not be collected evenly over the fiscal year. Bond anticipation notes may be issued with the understanding that as soon as the proceeds from the issuance of specific long-term bonds are received, the bond anticipation notes will be extinguished.

Accounting for Debt Proceeds, Issuance Costs, Premiums and Discounts

Debt proceeds, issuance costs, premiums and discounts should be reported as other financing sources in the governmental fund financial statements. Issuance costs are expenses in the period incurred, while bond premiums and discounts are amortized over the life of the debt.

Bond Premium/Discount

The bond premium/discount is the excess/deficiency of the proceeds collected over/under the face value of the bonds issued, exclusive of any accrued interest collected.

As governmental funds use the modified accrual basis of accounting, the proceeds of debt issuance are recorded in governmental funds (e.g., capital project fund) as other financing sources, not as revenues. The debt issuance costs, other than prepaid insurance, are reported as an expenditure in the period incurred, while the unmatured bond premium or discount as amortized is reported in the government-wide financial statements.

Long-term debt issuance proceeds of proprietary funds and trust funds should be accounted for as fund liabilities in the fund financial statements with the unmatured bond premium or discount amortized over the life of the debt. When bond proceeds are invested prior to their use, the earnings are applied toward debt service, unless some other disposition was prescribed in the bond indenture or the proposition approved by the electorate.

Example:

Bonds are issued for capital projects with a face value of \$100,000 and were sold at a premium for \$105,000 and with accrued interest of \$2,000. It is assumed that a Debt Service Fund will make the principal and interest payments over the life of the debt and there is no legal requirement that mandates how the premium is to be treated. The governing body has decided to make the premium available to the Debt Service Fund.

Capital Projects Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$100,000	
Other Financing Source – Bond Proceeds		CR: \$100,000

Debt Service Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,000	
Other Financing Source – Bond Proceeds		CR: \$5,000

Debt Service Fund (Continued)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expenditure	DR: \$2,000	
Accrued Interest Payable		CR: \$2,000

Discounts should be accounted for using the net method. Under this method, the discount is recognized in the year of debt issuance by recording only the net proceeds (face value less discount). As with premiums, discounts should not be amortized.

Example:

Bonds are issued for capital projects with a face value of \$100,000 and were sold at a discount for \$98,000.

Capital Projects Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$98,000	
Other Financing Source – Bond Proceeds		CR: \$98,000

10.05 Disclosures of Debt Obligations

Debt is defined in GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.129 (Section 1500, paragraph .129) as:

A liability that arises from a contractual obligation to pay cash (or other assets that may be used in lieu of cash) in one or more payments to settle an amount that is fixed at the date the contractual obligation is established.

For this purpose, debt does not include leases, except for contracts reported as a financed purchase of the underlying asset, an operator's liability for installment payments related to a PPP, subscription liabilities from a SBITA, or accounts payable.

Local governments should separately disclose details regarding direct borrowings and direct placements of debt from other debt in the notes to the financial statements. The details should include the terms for variable rate debt and the principal and interest requirements up to the time of the debt maturity, shown annually for the first five years and in five-year increments thereafter. The local governments should also separately disclose, in a summary format, information regarding direct borrowings and direct placements of debt from other debt pertaining to their unused lines of credit, assets pledged as collateral, and the terms related to significant events such as default, termination, and acceleration clauses.

For more information on how local government's debt obligations should be reported in the Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A), refer to Chapter 11, *Financial Reports*.

10.06 Pollution Remediation Obligations

Pollution remediation obligations are obligations to address current or potentially detrimental effects of existing pollution by participating in pollution remediation activities such as site assessments and cleanups. External government oversight and enforcement related activities, as well as the operation and maintenance of the remediation effort are also considered to be pollution remediation obligations.

Pollution remediation outlays include all direct outlays attributable to pollution remediation activities, as well as potentially including estimated indirect outlays. Once any of the following five obligating events occurs, a government is required to estimate the components of expected pollution remediation outlays and determine whether outlays for those components should be accrued as a liability or, if appropriate, capitalized when goods and services are acquired. The five obligating events are as follows:

- The government is compelled to take pollution remediation action because of an imminent endangerment.
- The government violates a pollution prevention-related permit or license.
- The government is named, or evidence that indicates that it will be named, by a regulator as a responsible or potentially responsible party for remediation, or as a government responsible for sharing costs.

- The government is named, or evidence indicates that it will be named, in a lawsuit to compel participation in pollution remediation.
- The government commences or legally obligates itself to commence, cleanup activities or monitoring or operation and maintenance of the remediation effort.

Most pollution remediation outlays do not qualify for capitalization and generally will result in the recognition of an expense when the liability is recognized. The recognition and measurement of pollution remediation liabilities incorporates the following interrelated features:

- Obligating Events. Once an obligating event occurs, a government should determine whether one or more components of a pollution remediation obligation are recognizable as a liability.
- Components and Benchmarks. Components of a liability (e.g., legal services, site investigation, or required post-remediation monitoring) should be recognized as they become reasonably estimable.
- Measurement, including the Expected Cash Flow Technique. Measurement is based on the current value of outlays expected to be incurred. The components of the liability should be measured using the expected cash flow technique, which measures the liability as the sum of probability-weighted amounts in a range of possible estimated amounts — the estimated mean or average.

Pollution remediation outlays should only be capitalized in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements when goods and services are acquired, if acquired for any of the following four circumstances (otherwise they should be expensed):

- To prepare property in anticipation of a sale.
- To prepare property for use when the property was acquired with known or suspected pollution that was expected to be remediated.
- To perform pollution remediation that restores a pollution-caused decline in service utility that was recognized as an asset impairment.
- To acquire property, plant, and equipment that have a future alternative use — these assets should only be capitalized to the extent that the estimated service utility will exist after the pollution remediation activities uses have ceased.

Additional information concerning the financial reporting for pollution remediation obligations can be found in GASB Cod. Sec. P40 (Section P40).

10.07 Asset Retirement Obligations

An asset retirement obligation is a legally enforceable liability associated with the retirement of a tangible capital asset (permanent removal from service). The retirement of a tangible capital asset encompasses its sale, abandonment, recycling, or disposal in some other manner, but does not encompass the temporary idling of a tangible capital asset.

A local government entity that has legal obligations to perform future asset retirement activities related to its tangible capital assets should recognize a liability when the liability is incurred and reasonably estimable. Incurrence of the liability typically requires the occurrence of both an internal and external obligating event resulting from normal operations. An obligating event refers to an event whose occurrence determines the timing of the recognition of the asset retirement obligation.

Determination of the types of activities to be included in asset retirement obligations should be based on any relevant legal requirements, such as laws, regulations, contracts, or court judgments. Once the relevant activities have been identified, the asset retirement obligations are to be based on the best estimate of the current value of the outlays expected to be incurred.

Subsequent to the initial measurement of the asset retirement obligation, a local government entity should at least annually adjust the current value of its obligations to compensate for the effects of inflation or deflation. In addition, a local government entity should at least annually evaluate relevant factors to determine whether the effect of one or more of these factors will increase or decrease the estimated outlays associated with the asset retirement obligation. Examples of these factors include (but are not limited to) the following: changes in technology, changes in legal or regulatory requirements, and changes in the type of equipment, facilities, or services used to meet the retirement obligations.

Local government entities should disclose information about the nature of their asset retirement obligations. Specifically, government financial statements should include the methods and assumptions used to estimate liabilities, and the estimated remaining useful life of the associated tangible capital assets. If a local government entity has incurred an asset retirement obligation, but is unable to reasonably estimate the obligation, the government should disclose the inability to estimate the obligation in their financial statements.

Please refer to GASB Cod. Sec. A10 (Section A10) for more information regarding asset retirement obligations.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 11: Financial Reports

Chapter Contents

Introduction	249
Basic Financial Reporting (Nature and Purpose)	249
11.01 The Annual Comprehensive Financial Report	250
Introductory Section of the ACFR	252
11.02 Table of Contents	252
Financial Section of the ACFR	252
11.03 Independent Auditor's Report	252
11.04 Management's Discussion and Analysis	252
11.05 Basic Financial Statements	255
Statistical Section of the ACFR	270
Adjusting Entries, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections	271
11.06 Adjusting Entries	271
11.07 Accounting Changes and Error Corrections	272
11.08 Accounting and Financial Reporting for Accounting Changes and Error Corrections	274
11.09 Risks Related to Certain Concentrations or Constraints	278
11.10 Budgetary Comparisons	279
11.11 Interim and Annual Financial Reports	283

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 11: Financial Reports

Introduction

As a steward of public monies, every governmental entity should prepare and publish financial statements as a matter of public record. Financial Statements provide information about operations cash flows, assets, and liabilities that account for the government's management and use of funds. Pursuant to Government Code section 25253, a county is required to prepare financial statements. Special Districts on the other hand should refer to the statute that created them. For example, a public utility district is required to prepare financial statements based on Public Utilities Code Section 16604. In addition, some special districts whose affairs are under the supervision of a county board of supervisors may also be required to prepare financial statements based on Government Code Section 25253.

While internal accounting is generally focused on the collection and analysis of a government's day-to-day financial data, financial reporting serves as a link between that local government's financial information and the local government's governing bodies, investors, creditors, and taxpayers. The financial statements provide the data in a summarized form that can be compared to similar entities and evaluated against the goals of the community.

Financial reporting according to Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) improves the usability and transparency of a local government's financial information. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) has generated GAAP standards for comprehensive reporting in order to improve the consistency of reporting and allowing improved comparability of statements across governmental and non-governmental entities.

Basic Financial Reporting (Nature and Purpose)

Accounts in the financial statements are generally listed in the order of their relative liquidity. Liquidity refers to how easily an asset can be converted into cash. Cash is the most liquid asset; therefore, cash is listed first in the asset section of the financial statements. Some investments that are close to their maturity (three months from the date of issue) may also be considered cash equivalents. Other investments, such as certificates of deposit and bonds, have more distant maturities or cannot be converted to cash or sold as readily. Accounts receivable amounts may take longer to liquidate than some investments.

Each local government entity should determine the liquidity of their assets based on its own experience. A local government entity may collect accounts receivable for water service within a short time period, but a local government entity that provides pipeline or infrastructure likely experiences much longer delays in collecting its accounts receivable.

In addition to listing accounts in order of their individual liquidity, financial statements also group assets and liabilities according to whether their liquidity is current or noncurrent. Current assets and liabilities can generally be liquidated within a single fiscal year. Cash, receivables, and payables are usually current in liquidity with a life of one year or less. Capital assets, revenue bonds, long-term leases, and pollution remediation obligations are usually noncurrent.

The accounts included in the financial statements are also grouped by their account types: assets, deferred outflows, liabilities, deferred inflows, and net position. Deferred inflows and outflows are, by their nature, not liquid in the current fiscal year and therefore do not need to be further broken down. Deferred inflows and outflows help the users of the financial statements assess inter-period equity.

Interperiod equity refers to the degree to which a government entity raises sufficient resources in a fiscal year to cover its costs, as opposed to consuming future resources by deferring payments to future years. By waiting to report inflows and outflows as revenues and expenses, respectively, until the years in which they are related, financial statements make it easier to assess whether a government entity is operating within their means from year to year.

Net position is the residual of all other elements presented in a statement of financial position. The net position section of the Statement of Net Position should include the following components:

- Net investment in capital assets;
- Restricted net position (should distinguish between major categories of restrictions); and
- Unrestricted net position.

11.01 The Annual Comprehensive Financial Report

An Annual Comprehensive Financial Report (ACFR) is a set of U.S. government financial statements comprising the financial report of a state, municipality, or other governmental entity that complies with the accounting requirements promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. An ACFR provides financial, economic, and demographic information that can be used when analyzing financial statements of a local government.

Government Code section 53891(a) requires local governments to use data from their audited financial statements, if available, to prepare the Financial Transactions Report (FTR) for submission to the State Controller. The audited financial statements should be prepared in accordance with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).

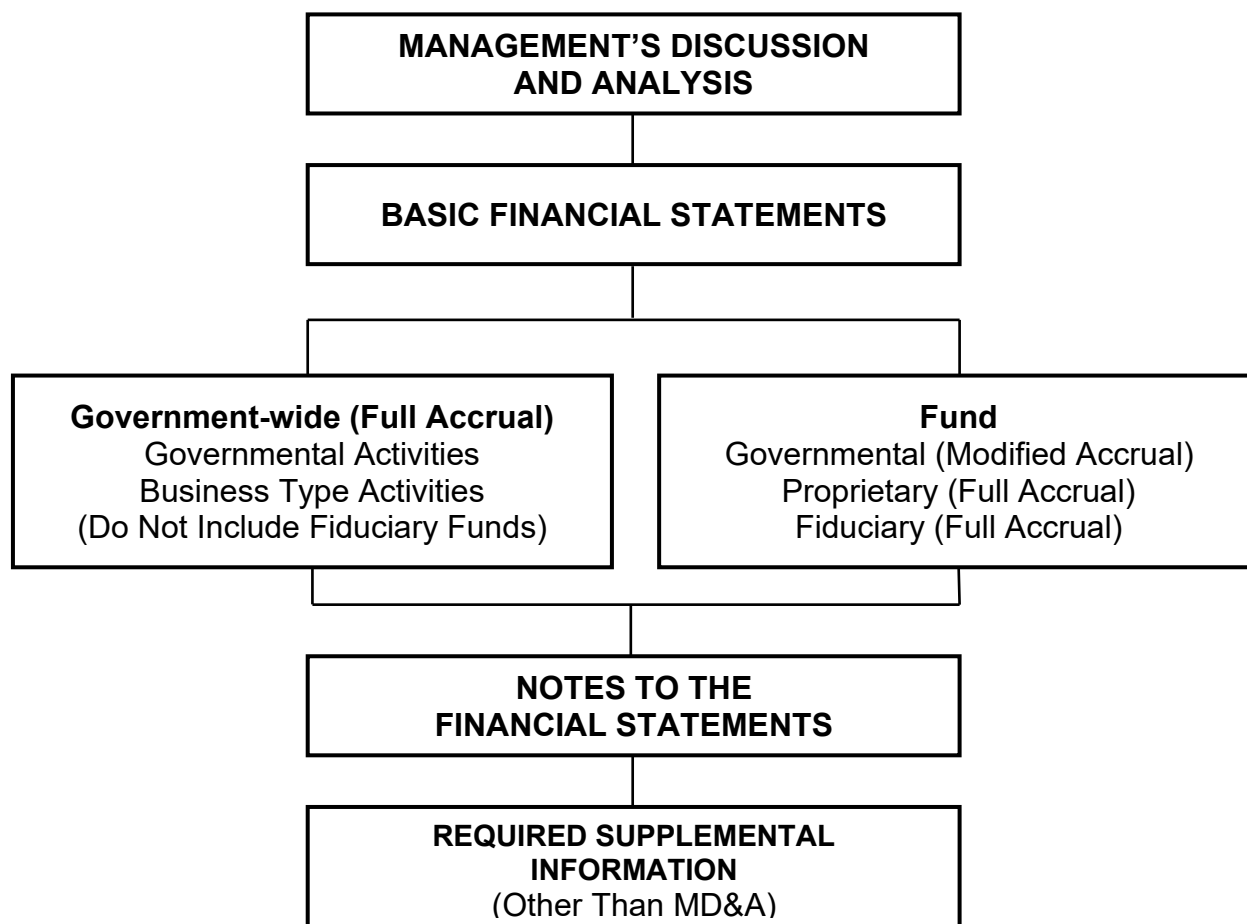
The outline and minimum content of the ACFR should include the following sections:

- Introductory Section
- Financial Section
 - Independent Auditor's Report
 - Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A)
 - Basic Financial Statements
 - Required Supplementary Information (RSI)
 - Combining Financial Statements (non-major funds)
 - Individual Fund Statements and related Schedules
- Statistical Section

While GAAP does not require all elements of the ACFR, it does require the following minimum components for proper financial reporting:

- Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A)
- Basic Financial Statements
 - Government-wide Financial Statements
 - Fund Financial Statements
 - Notes to Financial Statements
- Required Supplementary Information (other than MD&A).

Description of Financial Statements



Introductory Section of the ACFR

The introductory section of an ACFR is unaudited Supplementary Information. It is provided voluntarily by the reporting government entity.

The introductory section includes:

- Table of Contents;
- Letter of Transmittal; and
- Other material deemed appropriate by management, such as:
 - Certificate of Achievement for Excellence in Financial Reporting
 - List of principal officials
 - Organization chart
 - Audit committee letter

Local governments should not duplicate material in the Letter of Transmittal that is also being covered in the MD&A section.

11.02 Table of Contents

A table of contents section is not required, but it is recommended. If a table of contents section is included, it should provide a clear separation of the ACFR sections to ensure clarity for the end user. An example of a table of contents page can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Financial Section of the ACFR

11.03 Independent Auditor's Report

An independent auditor's report is considered an essential tool when reporting financial information to users, particularly in business. As many third-party users require financial information to be certified by an independent external auditor, government entities rely on auditor reports to certify their information in order to attract investors, obtain loans, and improve public trust. An example of an independent auditor's report can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

11.04 Management's Discussion and Analysis

The management's discussion and analysis (MD&A) section is required supplementary information that precedes the financial statements. The intention of the MD&A section is to provide an objective and easy-to-understand short and long-term analysis of a reporting entity's financial activities based on currently known facts, decisions, or conditions.

The discussions in the MD&A section must be limited to the following five sections: Overview of the Financial Statements, Financial Summary, Detailed Analyses, Significant Capital Asset and Long-Term Financing Activity, and Currently Known Facts, Decisions, or Conditions. The detailed analyses should include explanations of the changes in the balances and results of operations rather than simply presenting the amounts or percentage changes.

MD&A should avoid “boilerplate” type discussions and unnecessary duplications but include discussions that contain the most relevant information focused on the primary government. Additionally, information included in the MD&A should distinguish between that of the primary government and its discretely presented component units.

The following sub-sections (below) provide general guidelines as to what information may be presented in the MD&A. The MD&A is an opportunity for financial managers to effectively report the most relevant information; however, the MD&A should be confined to the topics identified in the list above. An example of a MD&A can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Overview of the Financial Statements

This section of the MD&A contains a brief discussion of the reporting entity’s basic financial statements and the relationships of the statements to each other. The focus should be on the significant differences in the types of information provided by the financial statements.

Financial Summary

This section of the MD&A should present information derived from the government-wide financial statements in a condensed form, comparing current and prior fiscal year for both governmental and business-type activities.

If applicable, a local government entity should include the following elements to support their analysis of financial position and results of operations:

- Total assets (distinguishing between capital and other assets)
- Total deferred outflows of resources
- Total liabilities (distinguish between long-term liabilities and other liabilities)
- Total deferred inflows of resources
- Total net position (distinguishing among net investment in capital assets, restricted net position, and unrestricted net position)
- Program revenues (by major source)
- General revenues (by major source)
- Total revenues
- Program expenses (by function, at a minimum)
- Total expenses
- Excess (deficiency) before contributions to term and permanent endowments or permanent fund principal, transfers, and unusual or infrequent items
- Contributions to term and permanent endowments or permanent fund principal
- Transfers
- Unusual or infrequent items
- Beginning net position
- Change in net position
- Ending net position

Detailed Analysis

Primary Government's Financial Position and Results of Operations

This section of the MD&A provides an analysis of the entity's financial position and results of operations. There should be a summary of significant changes to both governmental and business-type activities as well as an analysis of significant capital asset and long-term financing activity. The analysis should explain the reasons for changes from prior year and include the magnitude of those changes. Since not all users may be from the local government's geographical area, the analysis should include facts, decisions, or conditions that the user may not be aware. Additionally, the analysis should include discussions of things such as significant policy changes and important economic factors that significantly affected operating results.

Analysis of Fund Balances

This section should include an analysis of the fund balance or net position and results of operations as well as a summary of significant changes to each major fund. Any significant capital asset and long-term financing activity should be included as applicable without unnecessary duplication. The analysis should include an explanation for the reason(s) for the changes from prior year and indicate the magnitude of the changes. The analysis should also include facts, decisions, or conditions that may be unknown to the user and address any restrictions, commitments, and assignments that would significantly affect the availability of the fund resources for future use.

Significant Capital Asset and Long-Term Financing Activity

Description of Significant Capital Asset Activity

This section should provide a description of significant capital asset activity that occurred during the year, including certain intangible assets. The description should include:

- A discussion of significant additions and disposals.
- Changes to commitments made for the acquisition of capital assets.
- Any relevant significant policy changes and economic factors affecting the capital asset activity.
- Reference to any analysis provided under the "Detailed Analysis" section of the MD&A if applicable.

Description of Significant Long-Term Financing Activity

This section should provide a description of long-term financing activity during the year including debt, leases, public-private and public-public partnerships and subscription-based information technology arrangements. The description should include the following five items:

- Discussion of agreements entered into
- Changes in credit ratings
- Changes to debt limitations that may affect the financing of planned facilities or services
- Any relevant significant policy changes and economic factors affecting long-term financing activity

- Reference to any analysis provided under the “Detailed Analysis” section of the MD&A if applicable.

An example of a significant change would be changes in reporting requirements in response to new GASB Pronouncements. Additional debt policy and performance information that would be useful to the reader, provided in summary form, would be as follows:

- Debt service coverage
- Debt-funded capital spending amounts and percentages
- Use of variable debt instruments
- Amount of authorized debt

Currently Known Facts, Decisions, or Conditions

This section should include a description of any currently known facts, decisions, or conditions that are expected to have a significant effect on the local government’s entity’s financial position or expected to result in significant differences for future periods. Some examples include (not all inclusive):

- Economic and demographic trends
- Relevant factors used to develop the following year’s budget that will provide an indication as to how results of operations may change in the subsequent year—examples include:
 - changes in total amounts available for appropriation
 - changes in revenues
 - changes in planned spending
- Expected changes in budgetary net position or fund balance
- Various actions taken by the a local government entity in relation to postemployment benefit liabilities, capital asset improvement plans, lessee liabilities, operator liabilities in PPP arrangements, SBITA liabilities, and other long-term financings
- Actions taken by other parties that will affect the local government in a subsequent period

As mentioned the examples above are not all inclusive. Any additional types of currently known facts, decisions or conditions that are expected to have a significant effect on the financial results of a local government entity should be provided in the MD&A.

11.05 Basic Financial Statements

Basic financial statements are presented in the Financial Section of the ACFR after the MD&A section. The basic financial statements included in the this section of the ACFR consists of:

- Government-wide Financial Statements
- Fund Financial Statements
- Notes to Financial Statements

Government-wide Financial Statements

Government-wide financial statements refer to statements that summarize all of the fund financial statements and provide the primary government's net position as a whole. This representation allows the activity of the primary government to be assessed against both governmental and non-governmental financial statements.

Local governments should prepare an ACFR covering all funds and the activities for which it is financially accountable, including those of component units. The financial statements of the reporting entity should allow users to distinguish between the primary government and its component units by communicating information about the component units and their relationships with the primary government rather than creating the perception that the primary government and all of its component units are one legal entity.

To accomplish this goal, the reporting entity's government-wide financial statements should display information about the reporting government as a whole, using separate rows and columns to distinguish between the total primary government and its discretely presented component units. Additionally, per GASB Statement No.103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements*, major component units should be reported separately in a local government entity's statement of net position and activities provided the separate reporting of component units does not impact the readability of the financial statements. If readability is impacted, then combining statements of major component units should be included in the basic financial statements after the fund financial statements.

The reporting entity's fund financial statements should present the primary government's governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary funds (including its blended component units, which are, in substance, part of the primary government), reporting major funds individually and nonmajor funds in the aggregate. Fiduciary funds (including fiduciary component units) should be reported only in the statements of fiduciary net position and changes in fiduciary net position with the primary government's fiduciary funds.

The government-wide financial statements that should be reported in the ACFR are the:

- Statement of Net Position
- Statement of Activities

The focus of the government-wide financial statements should be on the government entity itself. When reporting its government-wide financial statements, the government entity should:

- exclude fiduciary activities (including fiduciary component units);
- separately display information related to discretely presented component units;
- separately display governmental activities and business-type activities;
- measure and report all assets (financial and capital), deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, deferred inflows of resources, revenues, expenses, gains, and losses using the economic resources measurement focus and the full accrual basis of accounting; and
- exclude separate displays of funds — the display should be in the aggregate.

Government-wide financial statements are prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. The use of these methods will require adjustments of the totals brought forward from the fund financial statements to reflect the full accrual basis.

Capital assets of proprietary funds should be reported in the government-wide financial statements. The statement of net position should report all assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, deferred inflows of resources and net position. The operations of the government entity in the statement of activities should be presented in a format that reports the net (expense) revenue (sometimes referred to as the net cost method) of its individual functions.

A reporting entity should provide a summary reconciliation between the government-wide financial statements and fund financial statements. Typically, this reconciliation is located at the bottom of the fund financial statements or in an accompanying schedule.

Depreciation/amortization expense for capital assets that can be specifically identified with a function should be included in its direct expenses, whereas depreciation expense for general infrastructure assets should not be allocated to the various functions. Instead, it should be reported as a direct expense of the function that the reporting government normally associates with capital outlays for infrastructure assets or as a separate line in the statement of activities as a general government expense.

Interest on general long-term liabilities should be considered an indirect expense except in those limited instances when borrowing is essential to the creation or continuing existence of a program and it would be misleading to exclude the interest from direct expenses of that program. However, most interest on general long-term liabilities does not qualify as a direct expense and should be reported on a separate line in the statement of activities that clearly indicates that it excludes direct interest expenses (if any) reported in other functions.

Eliminations and Reclassifications

Eliminations should be made in the Statement of Net Position to minimize the grossing-up effect on assets and liabilities within the governmental and business-type activities columns of the primary government. The result should be that amounts reported in the funds as interfund receivables and payables, or as deferred inflows/outflows of resources resulting from the intra-entity transactions should be eliminated in the governmental and business-type activities.

Similarly, eliminations should also be made in the Statement of Activities to remove the doubling-up effect of internal service fund activity. The effect of comparable internal events that are, in effect, allocations of overhead expenses from one function to another or within the same function, should also be eliminated. This is so that the allocated expenses are reported only the function to which they were allocated.

There are several types of internal or interfund activities that should be considered for elimination or reclassification. These activities include internal service fund (ISF) activities, interfund activities similar to ISF charges, interfund services provided and used, allocations of overhead expenses, and transfers.

Unusual or Infrequent Items

Inflows and outflows pertaining to each unusual or infrequent item should be presented separately and not be netted on the following financial statements:

- Statement of Activities (Government-wide Financial Statements)
- Statement of Changes in Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance (Governmental Fund Financial Statements)
- Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Net Position (Proprietary Fund Financial Statements)

In addition, local government entities in their respective notes to financial statements should disclose the following:

- the program function, activity, or identifiable activity to which an unusual and infrequent item is related to (if applicable); and
- whether the unusual and infrequent item is within the control of management.

Fund Financial Statements — Governmental Funds

The financial statements reported in the ACFR for governmental funds are:

- Balance Sheet
- Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances

The focus of governmental fund financial fund statements is on major funds. Government entities should present the financial information of each major fund in a separate column in the fund financial statements. Nonmajor funds should be aggregated and reported in a single column.

Refer to the following table to determine whether a governmental fund meets the criteria for being reported as a major fund in the fund financial statements. Any of the elements in the following list should meet the criteria in both columns in order to be reported as a major fund. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2200.158 – .159 (Section 2200, paragraph .158 – .159) for more detailed information.

Governmental Funds

Financial Statement Element	Percentage of Total for Governmental Funds	Percentage of Total for both Governmental and Enterprise Funds
Assets and deferred outflows	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Liabilities and deferred inflows	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Revenues	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Expenditures / Expenses	≥ 10%	≥ 5%

Reporting entities should note that the general fund (or its equivalent) should always be reported as a major fund. If a fund does not meet the criteria of being a major fund (nonmajor fund), but has been deemed important to the users of the financial statements; the reporting entity may report a nonmajor fund as a major fund in the financial statements.

Each major fund should report the following items separately on the balance sheet and nonmajor funds should aggregate their totals of the following items on the balance sheet:

- Assets
- Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources
- Liabilities
- Fund balance

For governmental funds, the Balance Sheet should be prepared using the current financial resource measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting.

The Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance should report information on inflows and outflows of financial resources. Similar to the balance sheet, this financial statement should be prepared using the current financial resource measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting.

An example of a balance sheet and a statement of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balance can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Fund Financial Statements — Proprietary Funds

Government entities should prepare three basic financial statements:

- Statement of Net Position or Balance Sheet
- Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position
- Statement of Cash Flows

Similar to governmental funds, the focus of proprietary fund financial statements is also on major funds. Government entities should present financial information of each major fund in a separate column in the fund financial statements. Nonmajor funds should be aggregated and reported in a single column.

Refer to the following table to determine whether a proprietary fund meets the criteria for being reported as a major fund in the financial statements. Any of the elements listed should meet the criteria in both columns in order to be reported as a major fund. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2200.158 – .159 (Section 2200, paragraphs .158 – .159) for more detailed information.

Enterprise Fund

Financial Statement Element	Percentage of Total for Enterprise Funds	Percentage of Total for both Governmental and Enterprise Funds
Assets and deferred outflows	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Liabilities and deferred inflows	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Revenues	≥ 10%	≥ 5%
Expenditures / Expenses	≥ 10%	≥ 5%

If a proprietary fund does not meet the criteria of being a major fund (nonmajor fund), but has been deemed important to the users of the financial statements; the reporting entity may report a nonmajor fund as a major fund in the financial statements.

Major fund reporting requirements do not apply to internal service funds. The combined totals for all internal service funds should be reported in separate columns on the face of the proprietary fund financial statements to the right of the total enterprise funds column. Proprietary fund financial statements are prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and the full accrual basis of accounting.

The required financial statements for proprietary funds are:

- **Statement of Net Position:** This financial statement should be presented in a classified format that distinguishes between current and long-term assets and liabilities. Assets and liabilities should not be offset, except where a right of offset exists. Amounts required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources should be reported in a separate section in a statement of financial position following the assets section. Similarly, amounts that are required to be reported as deferred inflows of resources should be reported in a separate section following the liabilities section. Totals for deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources may be added to the totals for assets and liabilities respectively, in order to provide subtotals.
- **Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position:** When preparing this financial statement, reporting government entities should ensure that revenues are reported by major source. This financial statement should also differentiate between operating and nonoperating revenues and expenses. Subtotals for operating income and noncapital subsidies should be presented before other nonoperating revenues and expenses. Nonoperating revenues and expenses should be reported before unusual or infrequent items on this financial statement. Revenues from capital contributions and additions to the principal of permanent and term endowments, unusual or infrequent items, and transfers should be displayed separately, after the nonoperating revenues and expenses information as illustrated in paragraph 12 of GASB Statement 103, *Financial Reporting Model Improvements*.

- **Statement of Cash Flows:** Local government entities should present a statement of cash flows for proprietary funds in accordance with the provisions outlined in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450 (Section 2450). The statement of cash flows classifies cash receipts and payments according to whether they stem from operating, noncapital financing, capital and related financing, or investing activities. In reporting cash flows from operating activities (including a reconciliation of operating cash flows to operating income), the direct method is required to be used. Under the direct method, governmental enterprises should report gross cash receipts and gross cash payments by major classes such as cash receipts from customers, cash payments to employees for services, cash payments to suppliers for goods and services, etc. Refer to Chapter section 12.11, *Direct Method Presentation*, for more detailed information concerning the direct method.

Statement of Net Position or Balance Sheet

The statement of net position displays the resources of a government entity at a given point in time (usually the last day of the fiscal year). It provides an overview of the assets and liabilities, netted against one another. The government entity has two options when presenting the statement of net position — it may use either a net position format (preferred), or a balance sheet format (required for governmental funds). An example of the net position format can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*. It is important to note that net position represents the resources remaining after they have been offset by existing liabilities.

Deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources identify resource impacts that do not yet affect the current fiscal period, but are part of the long-term financial picture.

Government entities often present this information in comparative financial statements, which include information for both the current fiscal year and the preceding fiscal year or years. This comparison of financial data is usually accomplished by presenting multiple columns, one for each year, on a single page.

The term comparative financial statements reveals the statements' primary purpose, which is putting a government entity's financial information in a comparative context. In a comparative statement, a reader may see where a government entity stands financially and how that financial standing compares with where it was in the prior year.

The statement of net position is prepared in a classified format, which categorizes the assets and liabilities as current and long-term and provides separate subtotals for each. This format is helpful for certain kinds of analyses. For example, if an interested party wanted to assess a government entity's short-term financial needs, the classified format would help them to focus only on the government entity's most immediately available resources.

Balance Sheet Format vs. Statement of Net Position Format

The statement of net position format for fiduciary and proprietary funds uses the economic resources measurement focus and the full accrual basis of accounting. In contrast the balance sheet format for governmental funds is presented using the current resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting.

Government entities should follow these general reporting formats:

Proprietary and Fiduciary Funds:

- Statement of Net Position format for fiduciary and proprietary fund statements (Preferred):
 $(\text{Assets} + \text{Deferred Outflows}) - (\text{Liabilities} + \text{Deferred Inflows}) = \text{Net Position}$
- Balance Sheet format for fiduciary and proprietary fund statements:
 $\text{Assets} + \text{Deferred Outflows} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Deferred Inflows} + \text{Net Position}$

Governmental Funds:

- Balance Sheet format for governmental fund statements:
 $\text{Assets} + \text{Deferred Outflows} = \text{Liabilities} + \text{Deferred Inflows} + \text{Fund Balance}$

The information for the Balance Sheet or Statement of Net Position should be taken from the government entity's general ledger. The governmental fund balance should be identified as nonspendable, restricted, committed, assigned, or unassigned amounts. Notes to the financial statements may be referenced by number or letter. The statement should have a proper heading, date, and should contain a note directing the reader to the accompanying notes to the financial statements. The notes to financial statements would include non-recognized events (material) that did not exist at the financial statement date but arose subsequent to that date.

Net Position

The difference between all other elements presented in a statement of financial position is net position and should be displayed in three components:

- Net Investment In Capital Assets;
- Restricted (distinguishing between major categories of restrictions); and
- Unrestricted.

Net Investment in Capital Assets

The net investment in capital assets component of net position consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation/amortization reduced by the outstanding balances of bonds, mortgages, notes, or other borrowings that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets.

It should be calculated as follows:

$$\text{NI} = \text{CAB} - \text{AD} - \text{OB}$$

NI: Net Investment in Capital Assets

CAB: Capital Asset Balance (including restricted capital assets)

AD: Accumulated Depreciation/Amortization (if capital assets are not reported net)

OB: Outstanding Balances (bonds, mortgages, notes, other capital, related to debt that is attributed to acquisitions, construction, or improvement of assets)

Deferred outflows and inflows of resources that are attributable to acquisition, construction, improved assets, or related debt should also be included in the net investment in capital assets calculation. However if at the end of the reporting period, there are significant unspent related debt proceeds or deferred inflows of resources, the portion of the debt or deferred inflows of resources attributable to the unspent amount should not be included in the calculation of net investment in capital assets. Instead, that portion of the debt or deferred inflow of resources should be reported in the same net position component (restricted or unrestricted) as the unspent amount.

All capital assets should be considered in the computation of net investment in capital assets, regardless of any restrictions. When debt is issued to refund existing capital-related debt, the newly issued debt should be used in the computation of net investment in capital assets. If there are significant unspent related debt proceeds or deferred inflows of resources at the end of the reporting period, the unspent amount should not be used in calculating net investment in capital assets. Instead, the unspent proceeds should be included in the same net position component (restricted or unrestricted) as the unspent amount.

If a government entity issues debt to finance the capital assets of another government entity, this debt is not capital-related and should not reduce the net investment in capital assets component of the government entity issuing the debt.

If capital assets are not reported, the debt issuance should be reported in the restricted or unrestricted component of the net position, as applicable. If the amount is significant, the government entity should disclose details in the notes to the financial statements.

Restricted Net Position

The restricted component of net position consists of restricted assets reduced by liabilities and deferred inflows of resources related to those assets. The following are examples of assets required to be reported in the Restricted Net Position account:

- Assets that are restricted for use other than current operations;
- Assets that are restricted for the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets; and
- Assets that are restricted for sinking funds or for the liquidation of long-term debts.

Net position should be reported as restricted when constraints placed on net position are either:

- Externally imposed by creditors, grantors, contributions, or regulations;
- Imposed constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Enabling legislation refers to a law that gives a government entity the ability to levy taxes or otherwise raise revenues and may require the government entity to use these resources for particular purposes. The government entity has to distinguish such external constraints between major categories of restrictions. Details about internal commitments, however, are unrestricted components of net position and should not be displayed on the face of the statements. These restrictions are separately maintained in the management's plan for the use of resources and are not equivalent to enabling legislation. Restricted component(s) of net position should be reduced by liabilities and deferred outflows of resources related to those assets that have already been posted.

These components should be reported as restricted when constraints are placed on their use. Examples include categories such as Restricted for Capital Projects and Restricted for Debt Service, etc.

No category of restricted component of net position can be negative. If related liabilities exceed those amounts, no balance should be reported. The negative amount should be reported as a reduction of the unrestricted component of the net position.

The types of situations requiring restricted assets or liabilities can vary. Examples of accounts that are restricted assets and liabilities are as follows:

- Restricted Cash for Street Improvements (State gas tax apportionments/revenues for street and road improvements pursuant to California Streets and Highways Code);
- Restricted Cash for Debt Service (cash from property taxes legally restricted for debt service payments on capital related general obligation bond);
- Restricted Cash for Bond Issue Capital Replacement (cash aside for capital asset replacement restricted by local ordinance);
- Accounts Payable from Restricted Assets — Bond Issue Capital Projects (represents the balance to be paid from the unspent proceeds of the general obligation bond (Restricted Cash for Debt Service); or
- Accounts Payable from Restricted Assets — Capital Assets (represents the balance to be paid from cash restricted for capital replacement (Accounts Payable from Restricted Assets — Bond Issue Capital Projects).

Following is an example of how restricted net position should be calculated:

Restricted Assets	Account	Subtotals/Totals
Restricted Cash for Streets Improvements	\$ 500,000	
Restricted Cash for Debt Service	\$ 800,000	
Restricted Cash for Bond Issue Capital Projects	\$ 1,200,000	
Restricted Investments for Museum	\$ 1,000,000	
Subtotal – Restricted Assets		\$ 3,500,000
Less Restricted Liabilities		
Accounts Payable from Restricted Assets – Streets	\$ 200,000	
Accrued Interest Payable on Bonds	\$ 300,000	
General Obligation Bonds Payable	\$ 1,200,000	
Subtotal – Restricted Liabilities		\$ 1,700,000
Restricted Net Position		\$ 1,800,000

The \$1,800,000 of restricted net position should be displayed on the face of the statement of net position in the following manner by category of restriction:

Restricted Net Position	Amount
Restricted for street improvements	\$ 300,000
Restricted Debt Service	\$ 500,000
Restricted for permanent endowment – museum	\$ 1,000,000

Unrestricted Net Position

The unrestricted component of net position is the net amount of the assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources that are not included in the determination of the other two components of net position. There are no specific criteria for determining when a component of the net position is unrestricted. If the component does not meet the criteria of Net Investment in Capital Assets or Restricted, it should be reported as Unrestricted.

Assignments and commitments that fall under the unrestricted component of net position should not be reported on the face of the statement, but the details can be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

Statement of Activities and Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Net Position

The Statement of Activities presents the operations of the government in a format that reports the net (expense) revenue of its individual functions. Net (expense) revenue is sometimes referred to as the net cost of a function or program and represents the total expenses of the function or program less its program revenues. The format allows the reader to visualize the degree to which a program or function is self-financing rather than a burden borne by taxpayers.

The Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position is the operating statement for proprietary funds. It tracks a government entity's annual operating revenues and expenses, as well as any other transaction that enhances or reduces its net position. Revenues are reported by major source rather than by function. Revenues and expenses should be displayed as operating and nonoperating revenues and expenses.

A detailed discussion of revenue and expenses, as well as other transactions that influence net position, is covered in Chapter 7, *Classification and Terminology*. An example of this financial statement can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Fund Financial Statements — Fiduciary Funds

Required financial statements for fiduciary fund financial statements are as follows:

- Statement of Fiduciary Net Position
- Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

Fiduciary fund financial statements should contain information for all fiduciary funds of the primary government, including fiduciary component units.

The following fund types should be reported in separate columns in the fiduciary fund financial statements:

- Pension (and other post-employment benefit) trust funds
- Investment trust funds
- Private-purpose trusts
- Custodial funds

Statement of Fiduciary Net Position

The Statement of Fiduciary Net Position should include information on the assets, liabilities, deferred inflows/outflows of resources, and the fiduciary net position of each fiduciary fund type, similar to the Statement of Net Position prepared for proprietary funds. Amounts required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources should be reported in a statement of financial position in a separate section following the assets section. Similarly, amounts required to be reported as deferred inflows of resources should be reported in a separate section following the liabilities section. Totals for deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources may be added to the totals for assets and liabilities respectively, in order to provide subtotals.

Investments are reported based on their fair value as of the period end. The three components of net position (net investment in capital assets, restricted, and unrestricted) are not required to be presented in the statement of fiduciary net position.

Financial statement preparers of a government entity can use either the net position or balance sheet format to display the statement of fiduciary net position. The net position method is recommended by GASB.

The detailed display requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. P20 – P24 (Sections P20 – P24) and codification sections GASB Cod. Sec. P50 – P54 (Sections P50 – P54), as applicable, apply to pension and OPEB plans provided to employees of local government entities that are administered through a trust or equivalent arrangements.

The detailed display requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5 (Section Pe5) and GASB Cod. Sec. Po50 (Section Po50) apply to the financial statements of stand-alone pension plans that are administered through trusts that meet the criteria in GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5.101 (Section Pe5, paragraph .101) and other postemployment benefit plans that are administered through trusts that meet the criteria in GASB Cod. Sec. Po50.101 (Section Po50, paragraph .101), respectively. GASB Cod. Sec. I50, Investments, provides detailed guidance for investment trust funds.

Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

The Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position is used to report the additions and deductions to the net position in each fiduciary fund. Additions include transactions such as employer contributions, plan member contributions, gifts, and bequests. Deductions include payments and refunds to plan members, administrative expenses, distributions to shareholders, and payments of taxes to other governments.

Additions should be disaggregated by source including, if applicable, separate displays of:

- Investment earnings;
- Investment costs (including investment management fees, custodial fees, and other significant investment-related costs); and
- Net investment earnings (investment earnings less investment costs).

Investment-related costs should be reported as investment costs if they are separable from investment earnings and administrative costs. The statement of changes in fiduciary net position should disaggregate deductions by type and, if applicable, should separately display administrative costs.

A government may report a single aggregated total for additions and a single aggregated total for deductions of custodial funds in which resources, upon receipt, are normally expected to be held for three months or less. The descriptions of the aggregated totals of additions and deductions should indicate the nature of the resource flows. An example of a description of the nature of a custodial fund addition is property taxes collected for other governments.

A government that reports a defined benefit pension plan or defined benefit OPEB plan in a fiduciary fund should report changes in the fund's net position in accordance with the detailed display requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. P20 – P24 (Sections P20 – P24) and GASB Cod. Sec. P50 – P54 (Sections P50 – P54), as applicable. For stand-alone defined and OPEB plans local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5 (Section Pe5) or GASB Cod. Sec. Po50 (Section Po50), as applicable.

An example of a statement of fiduciary net position and a statement of changes in fiduciary net position can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*. Additional information on pensions and OPEB can also be found in Chapter 22, *Retirement Systems*.

Notes to the Financial Statements

Note disclosures provide additional information that is essential for a fair presentation of a local government's financial position. This information is not displayed on the face of the financial statements. The focus of the notes should be on the activities (governmental and business-type) of a local government. The notes should also support the information provided in the government-wide and fund financial statements. Examples of note disclosures can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Notes to the financial statements essential to fair presentation in the basic financial statements include the following list (not all-inclusive) of disclosure items:

- Summary of significant accounting policies
- Cash Deposits with Financial Institutions and investments
- Receivables
- Capital assets
- Payables
- Long-term liabilities
- Net position

- Pensions and OPEB plans
- Risk management (includes risk disclosures based on certain concentrations or constraints)
- Known environmental matters
- Significant contingent liabilities
- Required disclosures on leasing arrangements/public-private and public-public partnerships and availability payment arrangements/subscription based information technology arrangements
- Commitments and contingencies (including significant transactions between discretely presented component units and with the primary government and donor restricted endowments)
- Independent auditors report on internal controls

If applicable, additional note disclosures should be made. Examples of such additional disclosures (not all-inclusive) include:

- Significant risks
- Property taxes
- Segment information for enterprise funds
- Condensed financial statements for major discretely presented component units
- Budget basis of accounting and budget-to-GAAP reporting differences not otherwise reconciled
- Short-term debt instructions and liquidity
- Transactions with related organizations
- The nature of the primary government's accountability for related organizations
- Joint agreements and jointly-governed organizations
- Debt refunding
- Interfund eliminations in fund financial statements not apparent from headings
- Pension and OPEB plans
- Bond, tax, or revenue anticipation notes excluded from fund or current liabilities
- Nature and amount of inconsistencies in financial statements caused by transactions between component units having different fiscal year-ends or changes in component unit fiscal year-ends
- Special assessment debt
- Reverse repurchase agreements and dollar reverse repurchase agreements
- Securities lending transactions
- Demand bonds
- Landfill closure and post closure activities
- On-behalf payments for fringe benefits and salaries
- Involvement in conduit debt obligations

- External investment pools reported as investment trust funds
- The amount of interest expense included in direct expenses
- Nature of individual elements of a particular reconciling item, if obscured in the aggregate
- Discounts and allowances that reduce gross revenues, when not reported on the face of the financial statements
- Disaggregation of receivable and payable balances
- Impairment losses, idle impaired capital assets, and insurance recoveries, when not otherwise apparent from the face of the financial statements
- Termination benefits
- Future revenues that are pledged or sold
- Derivative instruments
- Conditions and events giving rise to substantial doubt about the local government's ability to continue as a going concern
- Bankruptcy proceedings
- Stabilization arrangements and minimum fund balance policies
- Lending and mortgage banking activities
- Regulated business type activities
- Changes in Accounting Principle/Error Corrections/change to or within the financial reporting entity.
- Public-Public Partnerships and Subscription Based Information Technology

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2300.120 (Section 2300, paragraph .120):

Information about long-term liabilities should include both long-term debt (such as bonds, notes, and loans) and other long-term liabilities (such as compensated absences, leases payable, and claims and judgments). Information presented about long-term liabilities should include:

- a) beginning- and end-of-year balances (regardless of whether prior-year data are presented on the face of the government-wide financial statements);
- b) increases and decreases (separately presented);
- c) the portions of each item that are due within one year of the statement date; and
- d) which governmental funds typically have been used to liquidate other long-term liabilities (such as compensated absences and pension liabilities) in prior years.

Local governments should also provide details in the notes to the financial statements about short-term debt activity during the year, even if no short-term debt is outstanding at year-end. For this purpose, GASB defines debt as:

A liability that arises from a contractual obligation to pay cash (or other assets that may be used in lieu of cash) in one or more payments to settle an amount that is fixed at the date the contractual obligation is established.

For purposes of disclosure in the financial statements, short-term debt does not include leases, except for contracts reported as a financed purchase of the underlying asset, or accounts payable.

A local government should separate information in debt disclosures regarding direct borrowings and direct placements of debt from other debt. Short-term debt results from borrowings characterized by anticipation notes, use of lines of credit, and similar loans.

Details should include:

- a) a schedule of changes in short-term debt; disclosing beginning and end-of-year balances, increases, and decreases; and
- b) the purpose for which the short-term debt was issued.

Materiality

The test of materiality may be applied to transactions, classifications, and recommended procedures to determine if the result would be a possible distortion of the financial conditions and operations. The notes to financial statements should not be cluttered with immaterial and unnecessary disclosures.

Required Supplementary Information Other Than MD&A

Accounting standards require that the following data be provided as required supplementary information (RSI) in the ACFR but not part of the basic financial statements, and be presented immediately following the notes:

- Schedules and statistical data
- Budgetary comparisons schedules
- Pension and OPEB information
- Combining statements and individual fund statements and schedules
- Information about the modified approach for reporting infrastructure assets

An example of a RSI schedule can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Combining Statements and Individual Fund Statements and Schedule

Combined and individual fund financial statements are required to be presented in the financial section of the ACFR. Required schedules that support the fund financial statements are presented in this section.

An example of a combining balance sheet and a combining statement of changes in net position for a retirement trust fund can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Statistical Section of the ACFR

The statistical section of the ACFR contains tables of trends in financial, economic, and demographic data. This data should be presented as factual; the narratives on these trends should be introduced in the MD&A.

A typical schedule would present information for several periods of time (often 10 years or more). It should be noted that the information presented in the statistical section is unaudited.

The schedules in the statistical section can be collated into five groups:

- Financial trends
- Revenue capacity
- Debt capacity
- Demographic and economic information
- Operating information

For those governments that are engaged only in business-type or only in business-type and fiduciary activities, revenues by major source for their business-type activities, distinguishing between operating, noncapital subsidy, and other nonoperating revenues and expenses should be presented in the statistical section of separately issued financial reports.

Adjusting Entries, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections

11.06 Adjusting Entries

Adjusting entries are those that are necessary to bring the balance of an account to the correct amount at a given date. They are made prior to closing the books. The number of such entries usually increases in proportion to the degree to which the accrual basis of accounting is used, particularly if the daily accounting has been performed on a cash basis. Adjusting entries include entries recording accounts and taxes receivable, physical inventories, and accounts payable as of the date of closing.

When the prior period adjustments are recorded, their effect on the change in net position should be disclosed in the notes to financial statements. When financial statements are presented for single periods, the disclosure of prior period adjustments should indicate the effects on the beginning balances of net position of the immediately preceding period. When the financial statements are for multiple periods, the disclosure should include the effects of the prior period adjustments on the periods being impacted.

Closing Entries

Closing entries transfer the balances in the operating accounts to the fund balance or net position. After closing, only the balance sheet or statement of net position accounts have balances. The use of budgetary control accounts in the general ledger does not affect the actual revenues and expenditures recognized during the accounting period.

Reversing Entries

Adjusting entries can have the effect of recording certain revenues and expenditures before they would have been normally entered in the books. An example would be if revenue that has not yet been physically received is recognized in the current period. That adjusting entry would need to be reversed at the beginning of the new period in order to avoid duplication of the entry and the potential overstatement of revenues. Amounts already recorded in an adjustment as part of the operations of the prior period are thereby automatically excluded from the current totals.

11.07 Accounting Changes and Error Corrections

Accounting changes are (a) changes in accounting principles, (b) changes in accounting estimates, and (c) changes to or within the financial reporting entity. On the other hand, an error correction is the correction of an error or multiple errors in previously issued financial statements.

The initial adoption of U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (also referred to as U.S. GAAP) is an adoption of a new financial reporting framework whereby a government asserts for the first time that its basic financial statements are prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. The first-time adoption of U.S. GAAP as a financial reporting framework is neither an accounting change nor an error correction.

Change in Accounting Principle

Once adopted, an accounting principle should be applied consistently to account for and report transactions and other events of a similar type, except for changes in accounting principle results from either:

- a) A change from one generally accepted accounting principle to another generally accepted accounting principle that is justified on the basis that the newly adopted accounting principle is preferable to the accounting principle applied before the change. The qualitative characteristics of financial reporting — understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability — should be the basis for determining whether a new accounting principle would be preferable.
- b) The implementation of new authoritative accounting or financial reporting pronouncements.

A change in accounting principle is the application of an accounting principle to transactions or other events of a similar type that is different from the accounting principle previously applied to those transactions or other events. Therefore, the initial adoption and application of an accounting principle to transactions or other events that (a) are clearly different in substance from those previously occurring, (b) are occurring for the first time, or (c) were previously insignificant in their effect is not a change in accounting principle.

A change from (1) applying an accounting principle that is not generally accepted to transactions or other events that previously were significant to (2) applying a generally accepted accounting principle to those transactions or other events is an error correction.

Change in Accounting Estimate

Accounting estimates are amounts subject to measurement uncertainty that are recognized or disclosed in the basic financial statements. Accounting estimates are outputs determined based on inputs such as data, assumptions, and measurement methodologies. A change in an accounting estimate results from changes to the inputs of that estimate. Changes to inputs result from a change in circumstance, new information, or more experience.

A change in an accounting estimate that results from a change in the measurement methodology that is used to determine that estimate should be justified on the basis that the newly adopted methodology is preferable to the measurement methodology used before the change, exceptions apply.

The qualitative characteristics of financial reporting (understandability, reliability, relevance, timeliness, consistency, and comparability) should be the basis for determining whether a new measurement methodology would be preferable. An example of change in measurement methodology would be changing the method in which assets are depreciated.

Change to or within the Financial Reporting Entity

Changes to or within the financial reporting entity result from one of the following:

- a) The addition or removal of a fund that results from the movement of continuing operations within the primary government, including its blended component units.
- b) A change in the fund's presentation as major or nonmajor.
- c) Except as described in the following paragraph, the addition of a component unit to the financial reporting entity or removal of a component unit from the financial reporting entity.
- d) A change in the presentation (blended or discretely presented) of a component unit.

Acquisitions, mergers, or transfers of operations that result in the addition or removal of a discretely presented component unit and component units reported pursuant to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 2250.128 (Section 2250, paragraph .128) should not be considered a change to or within a financial reporting entity as described in the preceding paragraph, exceptions apply.

Transactions or other events that could be classified as either a change in accounting principle (as described in the first bullet point under the preceding subsection entitled, *Change in Accounting Principle*) or a change to or within the financial reporting entity should be considered a change to or within the financial reporting entity.

Correction of an Error on Previously Issued Financial Statements

An error results from mathematical mistakes, mistakes in the application of accounting principles, or oversight or misuse of facts that existed at the time the financial statements were issued about conditions that existed as of the financial statement date. Facts that existed at the time the financial statements were issued are those facts that could reasonably be expected to have been obtained and taken into account at that time about conditions that existed as of the financial statement date.

A change from (a) applying an accounting principle that is not generally accepted to transactions or other events that previously were significant to (b) applying a generally accepted accounting principle to those transactions or other events is an error correction.

11.08 Accounting and Financial Reporting for Accounting Changes and Error Corrections

Change in Accounting Principle

For financial statements that present a single period, a change in accounting principle should be reported retroactively by restating beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, for the cumulative effect, if any, of the change to the newly adopted accounting principle on prior periods. For comparative financial statements, a change in accounting principle should be reported retroactively by restating financial statements for all prior periods presented, if practicable.

The cumulative effect, if any, of the change to the newly adopted accounting principle on periods prior to those presented should be reported as a restatement of beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, of the earliest period presented. Each individual prior period presented should be restated to reflect the period-specific effects of applying the newly adopted accounting principle.

If restatement of all prior periods presented is not practicable, the cumulative effect, if any, of applying the newly adopted accounting principle should be reported as a restatement of beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, of the earliest period for which it is practicable to apply the newly adopted accounting principle.

A local government entity should disclose the following in the notes to financial statements for each change in accounting principle:

- The nature of the change in accounting principle, including (1) identification of the financial statement line items (excluding totals and subtotals) affected by the application of the new accounting principle and (2) for the implementation of a new pronouncement, identification of the pronouncement that was implemented.
- Except for the implementation of a new pronouncement, the reason for the change in accounting principle, including an explanation of why the newly adopted accounting principle is preferable.
- For comparative financial statements, if prior periods presented are not restated because it is not practicable to do so, the reason why the restatement is not practicable.

In addition, the effects on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements, as outlined in the following subsection, *Other Financial Reporting Requirements*.

Change in Accounting Estimate

A change in accounting estimate (as described in Section 11.07, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections*) should be reported prospectively by recognizing the change in accounting estimate in the reporting period in which the change occurs.

A local government entity should disclose the following in the notes to financial statements in each circumstance in which a change to an input (data, assumptions, or measurement methodologies) has a significant effect on accounting estimate:

- a) The nature of the change in accounting estimate, including identification of the financial statement line items (excluding totals and subtotals) affected.
- b) If the change in accounting estimate results from a change in measurement methodology, the reason for the change in measurement methodology, including an explanation of why the new measurement methodology is preferable.

Note: If the change in measurement methodology is required by GASB, then the explanation of why a new method is preferable is not required.

Change to or within the Financial Reporting Entity

A change to or within the financial reporting entity should be reported by adjusting beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, for the effect of the change as if the change occurred as of the beginning of the reporting period.

A local government entity should disclose in the notes to financial statements the nature of and reason for each change to or within the financial reporting entity, exceptions apply. In addition, the effects on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, should be disclosed in the notes to financial statements — as outlined in the following subsection, *Other Financial Reporting Requirements*.

Correction of an Error on Previously Issued Financial Statements

For financial statements that present a single period, an error correction should be reported retroactively by restating beginning net position, fund balance, and fund net position, as applicable, for the cumulative effect of the error correction on prior periods.

For comparative financial statements, an correction of an error in previously issued financial statements should be reported retroactively by restating financial statements for all prior periods presented.

The cumulative effect of the error correction on periods prior to those presented should be reported as a restatement of beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, of the earliest period presented. Each individual prior period presented should be restated to reflect the period-specific effects of correcting the error.

A local government entity should disclose the following in the notes to financial statements for each error correction:

- a) The nature of the error and its correction, including the periods affected by the error and identification of the financial statement line items (excluding totals and subtotals) affected by the correction in prior periods.
- b) The effect of the error correction on the change in net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, of the prior period for both single period financial statements (had the error not occurred) and comparative financial statements.

In addition, the effects on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements — as outlined in the following subsection, *Other Financial Reporting Requirements*.

Reclassification in the Financial Statements Resulting from a Change in Accounting Principle or an Error Correction

For a change in accounting principle that does not have an effect on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position but that results in a reclassification in the financial statements, the disclosure requirements identified in the preceding subsection (within this section), *Change in Accounting Principle*, should be included in the notes to financial statements.

For comparative financial statements, amounts should be reclassified in all prior periods presented, if practicable. If amounts are not reclassified in prior periods presented because it is not practicable to do so, the reason why it is not practicable should also be disclosed.

For an error correction that does not have an effect on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position but that results in a reclassification in the financial statements, the nature of the error and its correction, including the periods affected by the error and identification of the financial statement line items (excluding totals and subtotals) affected by the correction should be included in the notes to the financial statements. For comparative financial statements, amounts should be reclassified in all prior periods presented.

Other Financial Reporting Requirements

The aggregate amount of adjustments to and restatements of beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, should be displayed for each reporting unit.

A local government entity should disclose in the notes to financial statements the effects on beginning net position, fund balance, or fund net position, as applicable, of the earliest period adjusted or restated for the following that occurred during the period:

- a) Each change in accounting principle (including the implementation of new pronouncements that result in restatement),
- b) Each change to or within the financial reporting entity, and
- c) Each error correction.

Those effects should be disclosed in a tabular format that reconciles beginning balances as previously reported to beginning balances as adjusted or restated for each reporting unit. If the local government entity has separately displayed in the financial statements the effects of each accounting change or error correction by reporting unit, those effects do not need to be repeated in the notes to financial statements.

The note disclosures required by GASB Statement No. 100, *Accounting Changes and Error Corrections — an amendment of GASB Statement No. 62*, should correspond to the reporting units of a local government entity, exceptions apply. Information that is the same for more than one reporting unit should be combined in a manner that avoids unnecessary duplication.

The required note disclosures should be made in the reporting period in which the accounting change occurs or in the reporting period in which the error is discovered and corrected. If a note disclosure is included in interim financial statements, that disclosure should also be included in the related annual financial statements. For comparative financial statements, if the prior periods presented were restated in the period in which the accounting change occurred or the error was discovered and corrected, subsequent annual financial statements do not need to repeat the disclosures.

Required Supplementary Information and Supplementary Information

The following should be reported as required supplementary information (RSI) and supplementary information (SI) as it pertains to a change in accounting principle and change to or within the financial reporting entity:

- For prior reporting periods that are presented in the basic financial statements, information for those prior periods that is presented in RSI [including management's discussion and analysis (MD&A)] or SI should be consistent with the manner in which the information for those periods is presented in the basic financial statements.
- For prior reporting periods that are earlier than those presented in the basic financial statements, information for those prior periods that is presented in RSI (including MD&A) or SI should not be restated for a change in accounting principles or a change to or within the financial reporting entity.
- If prior-period information presented in RSI (including MD&A) or SI is not consistent with current-period information as a result of a change in accounting principle or a change to or within the financial reporting entity, an explanation of why the information is not consistent should be provided in RSI (including MD&A) or SI as applicable. In MD&A, that explanation should include a reference to the related note disclosure in the basic financial statements.

The following should be reported as required supplementary information (RSI) and supplementary information (SI) as it pertains to an error correction:

- For reporting periods that are presented in the basic financial statements, information for those periods that is presented in RSI (including MD&A) or SI should be restated. If the error affects periods earlier than those presented in the basic financial statements, all affected information should be corrected by restating the information for those prior periods in RSI (including MD&A) or SI, if practicable.
- Information presented in RSI (including MD&A) or SI that is affected by an error should be identified as restated or not restated, as appropriate, and an explanation about the nature of the error should be provided in RSI (including MD&A) or SI, as applicable. In addition, if it is not practicable to restate information in RSI or SI, an explanation of why it is not practicable to restate should be provided in RSI (including MD&A) or SI, as applicable.

For more information on accounting changes and error corrections please refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2250 (Section 2250).

11.09 Risks Related to Certain Concentrations or Constraints

Certain concentrations and constraints may affect a local government entity's ability to acquire resources or control spending.

According to GASB a "concentration" is a lack of diversity related to an aspect of significant inflow or outflow of resources. Examples of concentration's include (not all-inclusive):

- Employers
- Industries
- Inflows of resources
- Workforce covered by collective bargaining agreements
- Providers of financial resources
- Suppliers of material, labor, or services.

According to GASB a "constraint" is a limitation that is imposed by an external party or by formal action of a government's highest decision-making authority. Examples of constraints include (not all-inclusive):

- Limitations on raising revenue
- Limitations on spending
- Limitations on the incurrence of debt
- Mandated spending

A government should disclose in the notes to financial statements the information pertaining to concentrations and constraints if the criteria in GASB Cod. Sec. 2250.163 (Section 2250, paragraph .163) are met. The disclosures should include:

- The concentration or constraint.
- Each event associated with the concentration or constraint that could cause a substantial impact if the event had occurred or had begun to occur prior to the issuance of the financial statements.
- Actions taken by the government prior to the issuance of the financial statements to mitigate the risk.

11.10 Budgetary Comparisons

Local governments should prepare a budgetary comparison for the general fund and each major special revenue fund for which it legally adopts an annual budget. If the local government legally adopts a budget for any of its other funds, it may present a budgetary comparison for those funds in its financial report, however these are not generally required.

Original Budget

The original budget is the first complete appropriated budget. The amounts in the original budget column of a ledger come from the budget originally adopted for the year including automatic carryovers of appropriations as authorized by law.

The original budget numbers may also reflect legally authorized adjustments made to the adopted budget subsequent to adoption but prior to the beginning of the fiscal year. Examples include adjustments to reserves, transfers, allocations, and supplemental appropriations.

Final Budget

The final budget is the original budget adjusted by all reserves, transfers, allocations, supplemental appropriations, and other legally authorized legislative and executive changes applicable to the fiscal year, whenever signed into law or otherwise legally authorized.

Budgets are revised over the course of a year to take into account external factors, such as timing changes regarding the assumptions made or changes in policy, such as a decision to reduce staffing due to expected tax shortfalls. The final budget reflects the sum of all legal adjustments made to the budget by the government since the start of the fiscal year until the appropriation is closed.

Required Budgetary Comparison Schedules or Reports

Budgetary comparisons should be presented as RSI for the general fund and each major special revenue fund that has a legally adopted budget. Reports should contain separate columns for variances between original and final budget amounts and final and actual results. Any significant variances in these comparisons requires an explanation in the notes to the RSI. Budgetary comparison reports contain actual amounts of outflows and inflows alongside the corresponding budgetary amounts.

If the local government is unable to present comparisons for the general fund and each major special revenue fund due to reporting perspectives, then comparisons should be based on the perspective of its legally approved and adopted budget. These comparisons should be included as schedules in the Required Supplementary Information section (RSI). Where legal compliance may not be in conformity with GAAP, additional schedules or a separate legal-basis report may become necessary.

For information on the required budget schedules applicable to California counties and dependent special districts, refer to the California State Controller's Office (SCO), *County Budget Guide*, which can be found on the SCO website for local government publications at https://sco.ca.gov/lgpsd_local_government_policy_publications.html.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 11: Financial Reports

The following table is an illustrative example of a budgetary comparison schedule for a local government's general fund.

**EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE FOR THE GENERAL FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20XX
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20XX**

	Budgeted Amounts		Variance with Original Budget over (under) Final Budget	Actual Amounts Budgetary (and GAAP) Basis	Variance with Final Budget over (under) Actual Amounts
	Original	Final			
Budgetary Revenues:					
Property Taxes	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	-	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Other Taxes	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Fees and Fines	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Licenses and Permits	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental Charges for Services	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Charges for Services	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX		XX,XXX,XXX
Interest	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Budgetary Revenue	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Budgetary Expenditures:					
General Administration	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Public Safety	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XX,XXX,XXX
Public Works	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX
Engineering Services	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Health and Sanitation	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Cemetery	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Culture and Recreation	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX,XXX
Education	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Total Budgetary Expenditures	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XX,XXX,XXX
Budgetary Excess Revenues/(Loss)	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Budgetary Other Financing Sources					
Transfers In	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Transfers Out	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)
Total Budgetary Other Financing Sources	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Flood Damage					
Grant Revenues	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Cleanup	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)
Total Unusual or Infrequent Items	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)
Net Change in Fund Balance	(XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Budgetary Fund Balances - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Budgetary Fund Balances - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

11.11 Interim and Annual Financial Reports

Appropriate interim financial statements and other pertinent reports should be prepared during the fiscal period to facilitate management control and legislative oversight of governmental fund financial operations, and for external reporting purposes where necessary or desired. These reports are essential to revenue and expenditure control processes and to expedite timely planning and budgetary revisions.

Interim financial reports are typically prepared for periods under one year and are most frequently for internal use. These reports typically reflect the current financial position of a local government entity and are prepared on a budgetary basis. While interim financial reporting is not a necessity, it does serve as a good tool to monitor and control finances and operations.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 12: Cash Flows Statements

Chapter Contents

Introduction 287

Cash Flows Overview 287

12.01 Purpose and Focus.....287

12.02 Cash Flow Reporting 288

Cash Flow Activities.....288

12.03 Cash Flows from Operating Activities 288

12.04 Deriving Cash Flows from Operating Activities 290

12.05 Cash Flows from Noncapital Financing Activities 292

12.06 Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities 293

12.07 Cash Flows from Investing Activities 294

12.08 In-Substance Defeasance of Debt.....294

12.09 Classification of Cash Flows 295

12.10 Cash Flows Transactions.....296

Cash Flow Statement Content.....297

12.11 Direct Method Presentation 297

12.12 Presentation of a Cash Flows Statement.....297

12.13 Reconciliation 299

12.14 Noncash Investing, Capital, and Financing Transactions 300

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 12: Cash Flows Statements

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview of the accounting and reporting standards for reporting cash flows of proprietary funds and for those local government entities engaged in business-type activities. Business-type activities are financed in whole or in part by fees charged to external users for goods or services, and are generally reported in enterprise funds.

Cash Flows Overview

12.01 Purpose and Focus

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.104 (Section 2450, paragraph .104):

The primary purpose of a statement of cash flows is to provide relevant information about the cash receipts and cash payments of an entity during a period. When used with related disclosures and information in the other financial statements, the information a statement of cash flows provides should help financial report users assess:

- a) an entity's ability to generate future net cash flows;
- b) its ability to meet its obligations as they come due;
- c) its needs for external financing;
- d) the reasons for differences between operating income and associated cash receipts and payments, and;
- e) the effects on the entity's financial position of both its cash and noncash investing, capital, and financing transactions during the period.

The statement of cash flows should explain the change in cash and cash equivalents during the applicable period, regardless of any restrictions on their use. The cash flow statement should use descriptive terms such as cash or cash and cash equivalents rather than the term funds, which has several different meanings within governmental accounting. The total amounts of cash and cash equivalents at both the beginning and end of the applicable period that are displayed in the statement of cash flows should be easily traceable to similarly titled line items or subtotals displayed in the statements of financial position as of those dates.

Cash equivalents are defined as short-term, highly liquid investments that are:

- readily convertible to known amounts of cash; and
- they are so near their maturity that they present insignificant risk of changes in value because of changes in interest rates.

Generally, only investments with original maturities of three months or less meet the definition of cash equivalents.

Some items normally considered to be cash equivalents include treasury bills, commercial paper, certificates of deposit, money market funds, and cash management pools. Details of transactions for cash purchases and sales of those types of investments are usually part of the local government entity's cash management activities and should not be reported in a statement of cash flows.

It should be noted that not all investments that qualify are required to be treated as cash equivalents. Local government entities should establish and disclose policies concerning which short-term, highly liquid investments (must satisfy the definition of cash equivalents discussed earlier in this section) will be treated as cash equivalents. Any change in that policy is considered a change in accounting principle if the change is justified on the basis that the new principle is preferable. A change in accounting principle will require a restatement of financial statements (including comparative financial statements) for all prior periods presented.

12.02 Cash Flow Reporting

A statement of cash flows should report cash receipts and cash payments and classify them as cash flows resulting from:

- operating activities;
- noncapital financing activities;
- capital and related financing activities; or
- investing activities.

The statement of cash flows for the applicable period should report the net amount of cash provided or used in each of these four categories. Additionally, the net effect of these flows on cash and cash equivalents during the applicable period should be reported in a manner that reconciles the account balances for beginning and ending cash and cash equivalents.

For the purposes of the statement of cash flows, cash should include not only amounts reported in the account on the face of the statement of net position, but also any cash included in restricted accounts. The total amounts of cash and cash equivalents at both the beginning and end of the applicable period displayed in the statement of cash flows should be easily traceable to similarly titled line items or subtotals displayed in the statements of financial position as of those dates.

Cash Flow Activities

12.03 Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Cash flows from operating activities generally result from providing services and producing and delivering goods. They include all transactions and other events not defined as capital and related financing, noncapital financing, or investing activities. Operating activity cash flows are generally the cash effects of transactions and other events that factor into determining operating income.

Local governments reporting cash flows from operating activities should report major classes of gross cash receipts and gross cash payments, including their arithmetic sum — which represents the net cash flow from operating activities (also known as the Direct Method).

At minimum local governments should separately report the following seven classes of operating cash receipts and payments:

- 1) Cash receipts from customers;
- 2) Cash receipts from interfund services provided;
- 3) Other operating cash receipts (if any);
- 4) Cash payments to employees for services;
- 5) Cash payments to other suppliers of goods and services;
- 6) Cash payments for interfund services used, including payments in lieu of taxes that are payments for, and reasonably equivalent in value to, services provided; and
- 7) Other operating cash payments (if any).

Local governments are encouraged to provide further details of their operating cash receipts and payments, if such details are considered useful.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.114 (Section 2450, paragraph .114), cash inflows from operating activities include:

- Cash inflows from sales of goods or services, including receipts from collection of accounts receivable and both short-term and long-term notes receivable from customers arising from those sales.
- Cash receipts from interfund services provided.
- Cash receipts from grants for specific activities considered to be operating activities of the grantor government (grant arrangement of this type is essentially the same as a contract for services).
- Cash receipts from interfund reimbursements.
- All other cash receipts that do not result from transactions defined as capital and related financing, noncapital financing, or investing activities.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.115 (Section 2450, paragraph .115), cash outflows for operating activities include:

- Cash payments made to acquire materials for providing services and manufacturing goods for resale, including principal payments on accounts payable and both short- and long-term notes payable to suppliers for those materials or goods.
- Cash payments to other suppliers for other goods or services.
- Cash payments to employees for services.
- Cash payments for grants to other governments or organizations for specific activities that are considered to be operating activities of the grantor government.
- Cash payments for taxes, duties, fines, and other fees or penalties.
- Cash payments for interfund services used, including payments in lieu of taxes that are payments for, and reasonably equivalent in value to, services provided.

- All other cash payments that do not result from transactions defined as capital and related financing, noncapital financing, or investing activities.

Additionally, cash flows from operating activities include transactions of certain loan programs. Although loan activities are usually classified as investing activities, certain loan programs are not intended to be investments; instead, they are undertaken to fulfill a governmental responsibility. These program loans are made and collected as part of a governmental program. For example, student loans or low-income housing mortgages are the operating activities of the governmental enterprise and therefore should be classified as operating activities.

All loans made and collected (including interest) should be considered operating cash outflows and inflows, respectively. If bonds are issued to finance the loan program, any proceeds and the subsequent debt service payments (principal and interest) should be classified as noncapital financing activities.

12.04 Deriving Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Authoritative sources of accounting standards require cash flows from operating activities to be presented by major categories of receipts and payments.

Example:

Assume that the enterprise fund for a local government reports the following statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position:

Operating Revenues:

Charges to Customers	\$740	
Total Operating Revenues		\$740

Operating Expenses:

Salaries and Benefits	\$600	
Supplies and Materials	\$90	
Repairs and Maintenance	\$400	
Utilities	\$12	
Depreciation Expense	\$467	
Other Operating Expenses	\$140	
Total Operating Expenses		\$1,709

Operating Income / (Loss) (\$969)

Depreciation expense does not affect the cash account; therefore, it can be set aside for purposes of deriving cash flows, leaving three major categories of receipts and payments that need to be approximated. They are:

- Cash received from customers;
- Cash paid to employees; and
- Cash paid to suppliers.

Chapter 12: Cash Flows Statements

Deriving the approximate amount of cash flows from customers:

Customers:

Inflows:

Receivable (beginning of period)	\$155	
Revenues of Period	\$740	
Subtotal Inflows		\$895

Netted Against:

Receivables (end of period)		(\$200)

Net Cash Inflow		\$695

Deriving the approximate amount of cash flows from employees:

Employees:

Outflows:

Payable (beginning of period)	\$25	
Expenses of Period	\$600	
Subtotal Outflows		\$625

Netted Against:

Payables (end of period)		(\$28)

Net Cash Outflow		\$597

Deriving the approximate amount of cash flows from suppliers:

Suppliers:

Outflows:

Payable (beginning of period)	\$93	
Expenses of Period	\$1,242	
Subtotal Outflows		\$1,335

Netted Against:

Payables (end of period)		(\$109)

Net Cash Outflow		\$1,226

Based on these approximations, cash flows from operating activities could be reported as follows:

Cash Received from Customers	\$695
Cash Paid to Employees	(\$597)
Cash Paid to Suppliers	(\$1,226)
Net Cash Used in Operating Activities	(\$1,145)

12.05 Cash Flows from Noncapital Financing Activities

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.118 (Section 2450, paragraph .118), noncapital financing activities includes the borrowing of money for purposes other than to acquire, construct, or improve capital assets and repaying those amounts borrowed, including interest. Noncapital financing activities include the proceeds from all borrowings (e.g., revenue anticipation notes) not clearly attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets, regardless of the form of the borrowing. Also recorded in this category are certain other interfund and intergovernmental receipts and payments.

Proceeds from all borrowings that are traceable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets should be reported under the Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities category in the cash flow statements.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.119 (Section 2450, paragraph .119), cash inflows from noncapital financing activities include:

- Proceeds from issuing bonds, notes and other short or long-term borrowing not clearly attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets.
- Cash receipts from grants or subsidies. The exceptions are:
 - Those specifically restricted for capital purposes; and
 - Those for specific activities that are considered to be operating activities of the grantor government.
- Cash received from other funds. The exceptions are:
 - Those amounts that are clearly attributable to acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets;
 - Interfund services provided; and
 - Interfund reimbursements.
- Cash received from property and other taxes collected for the governmental enterprise and not specifically restricted for capital purposes.

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.120 (Section 2450, paragraph .120), cash outflows for noncapital financing activities include:

- Repayments of amounts borrowed for purposes other than acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets.
- Interest payments to lenders and other creditors on amounts borrowed or credit extended for purposes other than acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets.
- Cash paid as grants or subsidies to other governments or organizations, except those for specific activities that are considered to be operating activities of the grantor government.
- Cash paid to other funds, except for interfund services used.

12.06 Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities

Capital and related financing activities, as stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.121 (Section 2450, paragraph .121), include:

- Acquiring and disposing of capital assets used in providing services or producing goods;
- Borrowing money for acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets and repaying the amounts borrowed (including interest); and
- Paying for capital assets obtained from vendors on credit.

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.122 (Section 2450, paragraph .122), cash inflows from capital and related financing activities include:

- Proceeds from issuing or refunding bonds, mortgages, notes, and other short-term or long-term borrowing clearly attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets.
- Receipts from capital grants awarded to the governmental enterprise.
- Receipts from contributions made by other funds, other governments, and other organizations or individuals for the specific purpose of defraying the cost of acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets.
- Receipts from sales of capital assets; also, proceeds from insurance on capital assets that are stolen or destroyed.
- Receipts from special assessments or property and other taxes levied specifically to finance the construction, acquisition, or improvement of capital assets.

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.123 (Section 2450, paragraph .123), cash outflows for capital and related financing activities include:

- Payments to acquire, construct, or improve capital assets.
- Repayments or refundings of amounts borrowed specifically to acquire, construct, or improve capital assets.
- Other principal payments to vendors who have extended credit to the governmental enterprise directly for purposes of acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets.
- Cash payments to lenders and other creditors for interest directly related to acquiring, constructing or improving capital assets.

12.07 Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Investing activities include making and collecting loans (except for program loans) and acquiring and disposing of debt or equity instruments.

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.125 (Section 2450, paragraph .125), cash inflows from investing activities include:

- Receipts from collections of loans (except program loans) made by the governmental enterprise and sales of other entities debt instruments (other than cash equivalents) that were purchased by the governmental enterprise.
- Receipts from sales of equity instruments and from returns of investment in those instruments;
- Interest and dividends received as returns on loans (except program loans), debt instruments of other entities, equity securities, and cash management or investment pools.
- Withdrawals from investment pools that the governmental enterprise is not using as demand accounts.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.126 (Section 2450, paragraph .126), cash outflows for investing activities include:

- Disbursements for loans (except program loans) made by the governmental enterprise and payments to acquire debt instruments of other entities (other than cash equivalents).
- Payments to acquire equity instruments.
- Deposits into investment pools that the governmental enterprise is not using as demand accounts.

12.08 In-Substance Defeasance of Debt

The outflow of assets to a trustee or fiscal agent to defease the debt should be presented in the cash flows statements in the same category as the debt service payments on the old debt to the extent that the amount does not exceed the existing debt.

12.09 Classification of Cash Flows

Classification of Cash Flows	Cash Inflows	Cash Outflows
Cash Flows from Operating Activities	• Cash sales of goods and services • Collections of receivables related to sales of goods and services • Collection of principal and interest on program loans. • Collection of customer deposits	• Payment to vendors • Payment to employees • Payment of benefits on behalf of employees • Liquidation of liabilities related to the provision of goods and services • Payments of taxes, duties, fines, fees, and penalties. • Return of customer deposits • Program loans
Cash flows from noncapital financing activities	• Debt proceeds other than from capital debt (including debt used to finance program loans) • Grants available for operating purposes • Transfers available for operating purposes • Taxes available for operating purposes	• Debt service on debt used for other than capital or related purposes • Grants to other (including capital grants) • Transfers to other funds (including transfers for capital or related purposes)
Cash flows from capital and related activities	• Capital debt proceeds • Capital grant proceeds • Capital contributions • Transfers received for capital acquisition • Proceeds of the disposition of capital assets • Proceeds of capital type special assessments • Taxes restricted for capital purposes or capital related debt services	• Debt service on capital related debt • Payments related to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of capital assets
Cash flows from investing activities	• Loan collections (except for program loans) • Sales of investments • Interest received (except on program loans) • Increases in fair value of investments subject to fair value reporting and classified as cash equivalents	• Loans made to others (except for program loans) • Purchase of investments • Decrease in fair value of investments subject to fair value reporting and classified as cash equivalents

12.10 Cash Flows Transactions

Transaction	Effect on Operating Income	Effect on Cash Flows	Adjustments	Elements of Reconciliation Start: Operating Income
Sale on credit (i.e., creation of accounts receivables)	Increase	None	Subtract to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net increases in receivables (or add net decrease in receivables)
Collection of receivables	None	Increase	Add to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net increases in receivables (or add net decrease in receivables)
Incurrence of payables and other operating liabilities	Decrease	None	Add to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net decrease in liabilities (or add net increase in liabilities)
Liquidation of payables and other operating liabilities	None	Decrease	Subtract to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net decrease in liabilities (or add net increase in liabilities)
Purchase of inventories	None	Decrease	Subtract to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net increase in inventories (or add net decrease in inventories)
Consumption of inventories	Decrease	None	Add to arrive at net cash flows	Subtract net increase in inventories (or add net decrease in inventories)
Depreciation expense	Decrease	None	Add to arrive at net cash flows	Add back depreciation expense and amortization expense
Amortization expense	Decrease	None	Add to arrive at net cash flows	Add back depreciation expense and amortization expense
N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Finish: Net cash flows from operating activities

Cash Flow Statement Content

12.11 Direct Method Presentation

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. 2450.129 (Section 2450, paragraph .129), local governments should use the direct method of presenting cash flows from operating activities (including reconciliation of operating cash flows to operating income) when preparing their cash flow statements.

In reporting cash flows from operating activities, governmental enterprises should report major classes of gross cash receipts and gross cash payments, including the net cash flow from operating activities (total receipts less total payments). At a minimum, governmental enterprises should separately report these classes of operating cash receipts and payments as follows:

- Cash receipts from customers.
- Cash receipts from interfund services provided.
- Other operating cash receipts (if any).
- Cash payments to employees for services.
- Cash payments to other suppliers of goods or services.
- Cash payments for interfund services used, including payments in lieu of taxes that are payments for, and reasonably equivalent in value to, services provided.
- Other operating cash payments (if any).

12.12 Presentation of a Cash Flows Statement

A statement of cash flows for the period should report net cash provided or used in the four categories as discussed in in the preceding sections of this chapter. The statement of cash flows should also show the net effect of those flows on cash and cash equivalents during the period in a manner that reconciles beginning and ending cash and cash equivalents.

The following example of the statement of cash flows is for illustrative purposes only.

**Example – Local Government
Statement of Cash Flows
for the year ended 20X1**

Cash flows from operating activities:

Cash receipts from customers	\$912,000
Cash paid to suppliers for goods and services	(450,000)
Cash paid to employees for services	(300,575)
Claims paid	(50,000)
Other operating revenues	25,075
Interest received	10,000

Net cash provided by operating activities **\$146,500**

Cash flows from noncapital financing activities:

Net borrowings (repayments) under revolving loan arrangement	(\$20,000)
Interest paid on revolving loan	(1,500)
Operating grants received	100,000
Operating transfers-out to other funds	(75,000)

Net cash provided by noncapital financing activities **\$3,500**

Cash flows from capital and related financing activities:

Proceeds from sale of revenue bonds	\$250,000
Acquisition and construction capital assets	(350,000)
Principal paid on revenue bond maturities and equipment contracts	(75,000)
Interest paid on revenue bonds and equipment contracts	(33,500)
Proceeds from sale of equipment	10,000
Capital contributed by subdividers	60,000

Net cash used for capital and related financing activities **(\$138,500)**

Cash flows from investing activities:

Purchase of investment securities	(\$125,000)
Proceeds from sale and maturities of investment securities	75,000
Interest and dividends on investments	9,000

Net cash used in investing activities **(\$41,000)**

Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents **(\$29,500)**

Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year **\$175,600**

Cash and cash equivalents at end of year **\$146,100**

12.13 Reconciliation

The amount reported as cash flows from operating activities in the statement of cash flows will differ from the amounts reported as operating income in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position. Local governments should provide a reconciliation of operating income to net cash flow from operating activities in an accompanying schedule. The reconciliation should provide information about the net effects of operating transactions and other events that affect operating income and operating cash flows in different periods.

The reconciliation should be presented on either the statement of cash flows, an accompanying statement, or presented in the notes to the financial statements. The intent of the reconciliation is to explain the difference between the accrual-based results of operations of a government entity and its annual cash flows. Not all revenues and expenses involve cash. Depreciation, for example, is a noncash expense; the listed value of capital assets, rather than cash, is reduced on the statement of net position. There are other expenses that similarly do not involve cash changing hands.

The reconciliation should separately report all major classes of reconciling items. At a minimum, changes during the period in receivables pertaining to operating activities, in inventory, and in payables pertaining to operating activities should be separately reported. Governmental enterprises are encouraged to provide further details of those categories if the details maybe useful.

The reconciliation schedule may be presented on the same page as the statement of cash flows, if space permits, or in an accompanying schedule as previously mentioned.

Example of Reconciliation of Net Income to Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities

Operating Income	\$2,665,000

Adjustments to reconcile operating income to net cash provided by operating activities:

Depreciation and amortization	\$125,000
Provision for uncollectible accounts	15,000

Changes in assets and liabilities:

Increase in accounts receivable	(155,000)
Increase in deferred outflows	(50,000)
Decrease in inventories	32,000
Decrease in prepaid expenses	34,000
Increase in accounts payable	90,000
Increase in Net Pension Liability	(16,000)
Increase in deferred revenue	10,000
Increase in deferred inflows	40,000
Total adjustments	\$125,000

Net Cash provided by operating activities	\$2,790,000

Example of Reconciliation to the Statement of Net Position

Example:

Assume that the local government reports cash of \$150 and restricted assets of \$25, which includes \$6 of cash. The preparer of the financial statement could meet the requirement of traceability in one of the following four ways:

- Report the portion of restricted assets that represents cash and cash equivalents as a separate line item on the statement of net position:

Cash	\$150
<u>Restricted Assets:</u>	
Cash	\$6
Investments	\$19

- Report the amount of cash and cash equivalents included as part of restricted assets parenthetically on the statement of net position:

Cash	\$150
Restricted Assets (Including \$6 Cash)	\$25

- Report the amount of cash and cash equivalents included as part of restricted assets parenthetically on the statement of cash flows:

Ending Cash (Including \$6 included in Restricted Assets)	\$156

- Provide a reconciliation on the face of the statement of cash flows:

Ending Cash — Statement of Cash Flows	\$156
Less: Amounts Reported in Restricted Assets	\$6
Ending Cash — Statement of Net Position	\$150

12.14 Noncash Investing, Capital, and Financing Transactions

Information about all investing, capital, and financing activities of a local government during a period that affect recognized assets or liabilities but do not result in cash receipts or cash payments in the period should be reported in a separate schedule. This information should clearly describe the cash and noncash aspects of transactions involving similar items.

An example of a noncash transaction would be a local government purchasing a building by incurring a mortgage to the seller. Some transactions are part cash and part noncash; only the cash portion should be reported in the statement of cash flows. The schedule may be presented on the same page as the statement of cash flows, if space permits, or in a separate schedule.

Chapter 13: Component Unit Presentation and Disclosure

Chapter Contents

Introduction 303

Component Units 303

13.01 Discretely Presented Component Units 303

13.02 Blended Component Units 303

13.03 Disclosure Requirements.....304

13.04 Major Component Unit Information 305

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 13: Component Unit Presentation and Disclosure

Introduction

Component units are separate legal organizations for which elected officials of the primary government are financially accountable. In addition, component units can be other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the primary government are such that exclusion would cause the reporting entity's financial statements to be misleading.

Component units may take other forms, such as a public benefit corporation or public authority, a public employee retirement system, or a governmental utility. This chapter will briefly discuss how component units should be reported in the primary governments' financial statements.

Component Units

13.01 Discretely Presented Component Units

The finances of most component units are shown separately from those of its primary government. These separately shown entities are known as discretely presented component units. Discrete presentation entails reporting component unit financial data in columns and rows separate from the financial data of the primary government. The data should be reported using economic resources measurement focus and accrual basis of accounting. Fiduciary component units should be reported in fiduciary fund financial statements while all other discretely presented component units should be presented in the government-wide financial statements. The financial statements provide only an overview of discretely presented component units and the relationship should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

13.02 Blended Component Units

Blended component units are so intertwined with those of their primary government that the financial information of a blended component unit is usually combined with that of the primary government. They should be reported as part of the primary government in both the fund financial statements and government-wide financial statements.

The reason a unit may be blended, rather than discretely presented, is that its governing body is substantially the same as that of the primary government or management of the primary government has operational responsibility for the blended component unit.

A component unit should be included in the reporting entity's (primary government's) financial statements using the blended method in any of the following four circumstances:

- The component unit has substantively the same governing body and there is a financial benefit or burden relationship between the primary government and the component unit, or management of the primary government has operation responsibility for the component unit.
- The component unit provides services entirely, or almost entirely, to the primary government or otherwise exclusively, or almost exclusively, benefits the primary government even though it does not provide services directly to it.
- The component unit's total outstanding debt (including leases) is expected to be repaid entirely or almost entirely with the resources of the primary government.
- The component unit is organized as a not-for-profit corporation in which the primary government is the sole corporate member (as identified in the component unit's articles of incorporation or bylaws) and the component unit is included in the financial reporting entity.

13.03 Disclosure Requirements

When reporting fiduciary activities in the fund financial statements of a primary government, a fiduciary component unit should include the combined information of its own component units that are fiduciary components. The combined information should be aggregated with the primary government's fiduciary funds. For more information on how a component unit may be engaged in a fiduciary activity, refer to Chapter 5, *Fund Accounting*.

A government may own or acquire a majority equity interest in a separate legal organization. If the acquisition does not meet the definition of an investment and results in the primary government being financially accountable for this organization, the primary government should report this organization as a component unit.

However, if the acquisition of majority equity interest does qualify as an investment, the primary government should report acquisition as an investment in its financial statements. If a component unit is blended, the primary government should eliminate the equity interest in the blending process when preparing its financial statements. If the financial statements are prepared using current financial resources measurement, the equity interest reported should be adjusted accordingly.

Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 2600 (Section 2600) for more information on component unit presentation and disclosure requirements.

13.04 Major Component Unit Information

Except for fiduciary component units, certain information on each major component unit should be reported in the primary government's financial statements. To determine whether an entity qualifies as a major component unit, the following factors should be considered:

- the services provided by the component unit to the citizenry of the primary government are such that separate reporting as a major component unit is considered essential to financial statement users;
- there are significant transactions between the component unit and the primary government;
or
- there is a significant financial benefit or burden relationship between the component unit and the primary government.

Local Governments should present each major component unit separately in their statements of net position and activities if that does not reduce the readability of the statements. If separate presentation reduces readability of the statements, combining statements of major component units should be included in the basic financial statements after the fund financial statements.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SPECIFIC ACCOUNTING ITEMS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 14: Contracts and Agreements

Chapter Contents

Introduction 311

Nonexchange and On-Behalf Type Transactions 311

14.01 Nonexchange Transactions 311

14.02 On Behalf Payments for Fringe Benefits and Salaries 315

Derivatives, Hedges, and Joint Power Authorities 315

14.03 Derivative Instruments 315

14.04 Hedge Accounting 319

14.05 Joint Power Agreements.....324

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 14: Contracts and Agreements

Introduction

Local government entities are now engaging in complex contractual transactions to raise revenues to fund their operations. While not all-inclusive, this chapter will provide an overview of the accounting and reporting requirements for local governmental entities engaging in these types of contractual transactions.

Nonexchange and On-Behalf Type Transactions

14.01 Nonexchange Transactions

Nonexchange transactions are transactions in which one entity either provides or receives value (benefit), such as cash, goods, or services, to another party without directly receiving or providing equal value in exchange. Examples include imposed taxes, fines, assessments, mandated programs, and grants.

In contrast, exchange transactions are those transactions between a local government and another entity where the local government acquires assets or services, or satisfies liabilities by surrendering other assets or services or incurring other obligations. Simply put, they are transactions between parties in which each party receives benefits of essentially equal value. Examples include buying a product at fair market value, or receiving fair pay for services performed.

Nonexchange transactions are often controlled by either legislation or contractual requirements or both, and these factors are essential in determining when revenues, expenses, or expenditures from nonexchange transactions should be recognized. For example, a local government should recognize tax revenues when the related exchange transaction has occurred, as defined by the enabling legislation. Alternatively, the local government could recognize nonexchange revenues when it has an enforceable legal claim to receive the revenues. The enforceable legal claim is generally based on the local government's legislative authority to impose and collect the tax.

When both parties in a nonexchange transaction are governmental entities, recognition generally should be symmetrical. This means that if one party recognizes a liability, it generally also requires the other government to recognize an asset. Similar symmetrical recognition should be applied by both governmental entities when recording expenses/expenditures and revenues.

GASB Cod. Sec. N50.104 (Section N50, paragraph .104) has grouped nonexchange transactions of governments into four classes, based on their principle characteristics. The four classes are:

- Derived tax revenues;
- Imposed nonexchange revenues;
- Government-mandated nonexchange transactions; and
- Voluntary nonexchange transactions.

Government-mandated and voluntary nonexchange transactions frequently establish eligibility requirements that should be met. Eligibility requirements are conditions that can be established by either enabling legislation or by the provider. These requirements must be met before a transaction (other than the provision of cash or other assets in advance) can occur. When it is probable that the recipient will not be able to commit to eligibility requirements or comply with restrictions placed on it, then as a condition of receiving resources, the recipient will be required to return all or part of the resources already received if the eligibility requirements or purpose restrictions have been violated.

Derived Tax Revenues

Derived tax revenues result from assessments imposed by a government on exchange transactions. Examples include corporate income tax, retail sales tax on goods and services, and personal income tax. The principal characteristics of derived tax revenue transactions are:

- The assessing government imposes the provision of resources on the entity that acquires the income, goods, or services; and
- The government's assessment is on an exchange transaction (e.g., an exchange of motor fuel for the market price of the fuel, or an exchange of services for a fair wage or salary).

Assets from derived tax revenue transactions should be recognized in the period when the underlying exchange transaction on which the tax is imposed occurs or when the resources are received, whichever occurs first. Revenues should be recognized (net of estimated refunds and uncollectable amounts), in the same period that the assets are recognized, provided that the underlying exchange transaction has occurred. Once the taxable transaction has occurred, the assessing government has an enforceable legal claim to the tax resources.

Resources received in advance should be reported as liabilities until the period of the exchange. In general, derived tax revenues do not have time requirements. However, if time requirements are applicable, asset and revenue recognition should be consistent with the requirements for imposed nonexchange revenue transactions.

Enabling legislation sometimes requires a particular source of derived tax revenues to be used for a specific purpose or purposes. For example, suppose a local government levies a special tax to be used for maintenance of airports within its boundaries. If the resources related to the enforceable legal claim are available to the local government, then under the modified accrual basis of accounting, the local government should record revenue.

Imposed Nonexchange Revenues

Imposed nonexchange revenues result from government assessments on nongovernmental entities (including individuals), other than assessments on exchange transactions. An example of an imposed nonexchange transaction would be a special tax imposed by a local government to fund its operations, such as a fee imposed on a water bill for upgrading water distribution services within the local government's boundaries. Imposed nonexchange revenues can include property (ad valorem) taxes, fines and penalties, and property forfeitures (e.g., property seizures and escheats). The government's imposed assessment is on a nonexchange transaction, such as property ownership or a violation of a law or regulation that is not an exchange transaction.

Enabling legislation may sometimes place purpose restrictions on the use of the resources. In addition to purpose restrictions, the local government may specify the time requirements when the resources are to be used, which may not be the same time period that payment is due or within which a lien can be filed.

Local government entities should recognize assets from imposed nonexchange revenue transactions in the period when an enforceable legal claim to the assets arises or when the resources are received, whichever occurs first. In the case of property (ad valorem) taxes, the date when an enforceable legal claim to taxable property arises is generally specified in the enabling legislation. This date is usually referred to as the lien date (or assessment date) even though a lien is not formally placed on the property at that date.

Revenues from property taxes should be recognized, net of estimated refunds and uncollectable amounts, in the period for which the assessments are levied, even if the enforceable legal claim or payment due date occurs in a different period. All other imposed nonexchange revenues should be recognized in the same period that the assets are recognized unless the enabling legislation includes time requirements.

If the enabling legislation does include time requirements, then revenues should be recognized in the period when the resources are required to be used or when use is first permitted. Deferred inflows of resources related to imposed nonexchange revenue transactions should be reported when resources are received or reported as a receivable before the period when (a) property taxes are levied or (b) the period when the resources are either required to be used or when use is first permitted for all other imposed nonexchange revenues in which the enabling legislation includes time requirements.

Government-Mandated Nonexchange Transactions

Government-mandated nonexchange transactions occur when a government (including the federal government) at one level provides resources to a government at another level and requires the recipient to use the resources for a specific purpose or purposes established in enabling legislation. The provider's enabling legislation establishes the purpose restrictions and also may establish time requirements. An example would be a local government receiving state funds to perform state-mandated conservation measures within its boundaries.

The principal characteristics of these transactions are:

- a provider government (including the federal government) mandates that a recipient government either perform or oversee another entity perform a particular program; and
- fulfillment of certain requirements (other than the provision of cash or other assets in advance) is essential for the transaction to occur.

When all eligibility requirements (including time requirements) are met, providers should recognize liabilities (or a decrease in assets) and expenses from government-mandated nonexchange transactions. Recipients should recognize receivables (or a decrease in liabilities) and revenues (net of estimated uncollectible amounts).

Resources transferred before the eligibility requirements (excluding time requirements) are met, should be recorded as assets by the provider and liabilities by the recipient. If the resources are received or recognized as a receivable before the time requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements have been met, they should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources by the provider and a deferred inflow of resources by the recipient. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. N50 (Section N50) for more details.

Voluntary Nonexchange Transactions

Voluntary nonexchange transactions result from legislative or contractual agreements, other than exchanges, entered into willingly by two or more parties (governmental or nongovernmental). A typical example would be a local government receiving a grant or private donations. The characteristics of voluntary nonexchange transactions are:

- they are not imposed on the provider or the recipient; and
- fulfillment of eligibility requirements (other than the provision of cash or other assets in advance) is essential for the transaction to occur.

When all eligibility requirements (including time requirements) are met, providers should recognize liabilities (or a decrease in assets) and expenses from voluntary nonexchange transactions. Recipients should recognize receivables (or a decrease in liabilities) and revenues (net of estimated uncollectible amounts).

Resources transferred before the eligibility requirements (excluding time requirements) are met, should be recorded as assets by the provider and liabilities by the recipient. If the resources are received or recognized as a receivable before the time requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements have been met, they should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources by the provider and a deferred inflow of resources by the recipient. Refer to GASB Cod. Sec. N50 (Section N50) for more details.

14.02 On-Behalf Payments for Fringe Benefits and Salaries

On-behalf payments for fringe benefits and salaries are direct payments made by one entity (the paying entity or paying government) to a third-party recipient for the employees of another legally separate entity (the employer entity or employer government).

On-behalf payments include pension plan contributions, employee health and life insurance premiums, and salary supplements or stipends. Additionally, on-behalf payments include payments made by governmental entities on behalf of nongovernmental entities, and vice versa. They may also be made for volunteers, such as state government pension contributions for volunteer firefighters who work with a local government fire department.

Local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. N50.129 – .139 (Section N50, paragraphs .129 – .139) for more information concerning the accounting and reporting requirements for on-behalf payments for fringe benefits and salaries.

Derivatives, Hedges, and Joint Power Authorities

14.03 Derivative Instruments

According to GASB Cod. Sec. D40.103 (Section D40, paragraph .103):

A derivative instrument is a financial instrument or other contract that has all of the following characteristics:

- Settlement factors. It has (1) one or more reference rates and (2) one or more notional amounts or payment provisions or both. Those terms determine the amount of the settlement or settlements and, in some cases, whether or not a settlement is required.
- Leverage. It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors.
- Net Settlement. Its terms require or permit net settlement, it can readily be settled net by a means outside the contract, or it provides for delivery of an asset that puts the recipient in a position not substantially different from net settlement.

Settlement Factors

Settlement factors relevant to the definition of a derivative instrument (as described in the preceding list) include the reference rate, notional amount, and payment provisions.

Pursuant to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. D40.105 (Section D40, paragraph .105), the reference rate is a specified interest rate, security price, commodity price, foreign exchange rate, index of prices or rates, or other variable, including the occurrence or nonoccurrence of a specified event (e.g., a scheduled payment under a contract).

The reference rate may also be a price or rate of an asset or liability (but not the asset or liability itself) and may be any variable that has any observable changes (or otherwise objectively verifiable) such as:

- a security price or security price index;
- a commodity price or commodity price index;
- an interest rate or interest rate index;
- a credit rating or credit index;
- an exchange rate or exchange rate index;
- an insurance index or catastrophe loss index; or
- a climatic or geological condition (e.g., temperature, earthquake severity, or rainfall), another physical variable, or a related index.

The notional amount is the number of currency units, shares, bushels, pounds, or other units specified in the derivative instrument. Both the notional amount and reference rate are key factors of a derivative instrument's settlement payment. Other factors, such as the change in a reference rate over time, may also enter the calculation of a settlement payment. Lastly, a payment provision may specify a payment to be made if the reference rate performs in a certain way (e.g., the three-month average of fuel prices at a certain pricing point exceeds a particular price).

Leverage

According to GASB Cod. Sec. D40.107 – .108 (Section D40, paragraphs .107 – .108):

Leverage is attained by either a small or no initial net investment that allows the derivative instrument to have changing cash flows (or fair values) that replicate an instrument that normally requires a much larger investment.

Derivative instruments do not require initial net investments that are equal to the notional amounts (or the notional amounts plus a premium or minus a discount) or that are determined by applying the notional amount to the reference rate. In fact, many derivative instruments do not require any initial net investment at all.

Some derivative instruments may require an initial net investment as compensation for the time value of an option or for terms that are more or less favorable than market conditions. Some derivative instruments may require a mutual exchange of assets (currencies, etc.) at inception. If this is the case, then the net investment is the difference between the fair values of the assets exchanged.

Net Settlement

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. D40.109 (Section D40, paragraph .109):

A financial instrument (or other contract) meets the characteristic of a net settlement if its settlement provisions meet one of the following criteria:

- Neither party is required to deliver an asset that is associated with the reference rate and that has a principal amount, stated amount, face value, number of shares, or other denomination equal to the notional amount (or the notional amount plus a premium or minus a discount) of the financial instrument.
- One of the parties is required to deliver an asset of the type described in the first bullet of this list, but there is a market mechanism that facilitates net settlement (e.g., a futures exchange that offers a ready opportunity to enter into an offsetting contract).
- One of the parties is required to deliver an asset of the type described in the first bullet of this list, but that asset is readily convertible to cash or is itself a derivative instrument (e.g., a forward contract that requires delivery of a bond).

Some construction or purchase contracts may include nonperformance penalty provisions. A penalty payment for nonperformance (fixed or variable) that is dependent on the failure of the counterparty to comply with a contract term does not meet the net settlement characteristic.

Common Examples of Derivative Instruments

Investments in derivatives are based on a local government's internal investment policies. The six most common examples of derivatives for governmental entities are as follows:

- 1) Interest Rate Swaps: contracts or agreements that have a variable payment based on the price of an underlying interest rate or index.
- 2) Interest Rate Locks: contracts that allow one party to fix an interest rate for a specified period of time. This instrument is typically used when a governmental entity is worried about increases in interest rates before long-term bonds can be sold to finance a project.
- 3) Futures Contracts: exchange-traded securities to buy or sell a security, commodity, foreign currency, or other financial instrument at a certain future date for a specific price. A futures contract obligates a buyer to purchase the commodity or financial instrument and a seller to sell it, unless an offsetting contract is entered into to offset one's obligation. The resources or obligations acquired through these contracts are usually terminated by entering into offsetting contracts.
- 4) Commodity Swaps: contracts that have a variable payment based on the price or index of an underlying commodity.

- 5) Forward Contracts: contractual agreements to buy or sell a security, commodity, foreign currency, or other financial instrument, at a certain future date for a specific price. An example of a forward contract would be an agreement with a supplier to purchase a quantity of heating oil at a certain future time, for a certain price, and a certain quantity. Forward contracts are not securities and are not exchange-traded. Some forward contracts, rather than taking or making delivery of a commodity or financial instrument, may be settled by a cash payment that is equal to the fair value of the contract.
- 6) Options (e.g., calls, puts, collars, floors, or swaps): contracts or securities that give their holders the right but not the obligation to buy or sell a financial instrument or commodity at a certain price for a certain period of time.

Derivative instruments that do not meet the definition of an investment derivative instrument or the definition of a hedging derivative instrument are considered to be other derivative instruments. For example, a derivative instrument that was intended to be a hedge but does not meet the hedge effectiveness criteria is neither an investment derivative instrument nor a hedging derivative instrument.

It should be noted that some financial arrangements are not considered derivative instruments for accounting and financial reporting purposes, such as:

- Derivative instruments that are normal purchase and sales contracts
- Insurance contracts
- Certain financial guarantee contracts
- Certain contracts that are not exchange traded
- Loan Commitments

Recognition and Measurement of Derivative Instruments

Derivative instruments should be reported on the statement of net position. The classification of the type of derivative instrument depends on whether they represent assets or liabilities. Additionally derivative instruments should be measured at fair value, except for the measurement of fully benefit-responsive synthetic guaranteed investment contracts (SGICs). Fair value should be determined consistent with the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 3100 (Section 3100).

Changes in fair values of derivative instruments should be reported as follows:

- a) Changes in fair value of investment derivative instruments should be reported within the investment revenue classification on the resource flows statement.
- b) Changes in fair values of hedging derivative instruments should be recognized through the application of hedge accounting, which is discussed in section 14.04, Hedge Accounting. Under hedge accounting, the changes in fair values of hedging derivative instruments should be reported as either deferred inflows or deferred outflows in the statement of net position.
- c) Changes in fair values of other derivative instruments should be reported on the resource flows statement separately from the investment revenue classification.

If a derivative fails to effectively hedge, then the change in fair value of the derivative instrument is reported immediately as investment income or loss in the financial statements. GASB provides the following methods to evaluate hedge effectiveness:

- Consistent Critical Terms Method
- Quantitative Methods:
 - Synthetic Instrument Method
 - Dollar Offset Method
 - Regression Analysis Method

Other quantitative methods based on established principles of financial economic theory are also allowed. For more information concerning the accounting and reporting requirements of derivative instruments, refer to the guidance in GASB Cod. Sec. D40 (Section D40).

14.04 Hedge Accounting

Hedge accounting should be applied at the beginning of the period that a hedging derivative instrument is established and continue to be applied until a termination event occurs.

Termination events are described in more detail in the subsection titled, *Termination of Hedge Accounting*, later in this section.

Hedging Derivative Instruments

There are a number of assets, liabilities, and expected transactions that leave a local government vulnerable to the risk of adverse changes in cash flows and fair values. One method that governments use to reduce identified financial risk is called hedging (e.g., to counter increases in interest costs, to offset price increases when acquiring commodities, or to protect against fair value losses).

The use of hedging instruments in hedging relationships is designed to decrease identified risks by offsetting changes in cash flows or fair values of the related items. To establish a hedging derivative instrument, both of the following criteria must be met:

- a) The derivative instrument is associated with a hedgeable item (term is discussed in the following subsection titled, *Hedgeable Items*). Association is established by consideration of the facts and circumstances of the derivative instrument, including whether:
 1. The notional amount of the derivative instrument is consistent with the principal amount or quantity of the hedgeable item.
 2. The derivative instrument will be reported in the same fund (if applicable) as the hedgeable item.
 3. The term or time period of the derivative instrument is consistent with the term or time period of the hedgeable item.
- b) The potential hedging derivative instrument (i.e., a hedging derivative instrument associated with a hedgeable item, but has yet to be determined effective in significantly reducing the identified financial risk) is effective in significantly reducing the identified financial risk. Effectiveness is determined to have been established if the changes in cash flows or fair values of the potential hedging derivative instrument substantially offset the changes in cash flows or fair values of the hedgeable item.

Hedgeable Items

Hedgeable items expose a local government to identified financial risks that can be expressed in terms of exposure to adverse changes in cash flows or fair values. Assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value (e.g., investments in many debt securities) do not qualify as hedgeable items. Hedgeable items can be all or a specific portion of:

- a single asset or liability (e.g., an entire bond issue or a specific portion of a bond issue);
- groups of similar assets or liabilities (if similar assets or liabilities are aggregated and hedged as a group, then all individual assets or liabilities in the group are required to be exposed to the same financial risk that is being hedged); or
- an expected transaction.

An expected transaction is a transaction whose occurrence is probable and exposes a local government to the risk of adverse changes in cash flows or fair values and may also be a firm commitment (e.g. a binding agreement).

Note: Assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value — such as investments in many debt securities — do not qualify as hedgeable items.

Hedges of Expected Transactions

In order for an expected transaction to be a hedgeable item, the occurrence of the expected transaction should be probable and supported by observable facts including, but not limited to, the:

- frequency, volume, and amount of past transactions;
- financial, operation, and legal ability of the local government to perform the transaction (e.g., whether the voters have approved a bond issue or tax levy);
- extent of loss or disruption to a government's activities that could result if the transaction does not occur; or
- government's budget or other planning documents.

Should an expected transaction be based on an interbank offered rate (IBOR), the local government should assume that the probability of the occurrence of the expected transaction is not affected by the sustainability or replacement of the IBOR. If it is the case that the expected transaction is a hedgeable item, the evaluation of effectiveness should consider the probable terms of the expected transaction compared to the terms of the potential hedging derivative instrument (i.e., a hedging derivative instrument associated with a hedgeable item, but has yet to be determined effective in significantly reducing the identified financial risk).

Hedges of Intra-Entity Transactions

Transactions or expected transactions between a primary government and a discretely presented component unit can also be a hedgeable item. However, a transaction wholly within a primary government cannot be a hedgeable item. An example would be a commitment by a city's electric utility (an enterprise fund of the city) to sell electricity to the city's general fund governmental operations.

Termination of Hedge Accounting

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. D40.118 (Section D40, paragraph .118), the application of hedge accounting should cease upon the occurrence of one of the following termination events:

- a. The hedging derivative instrument is no longer effective.
- b. The likelihood that a hedged expected transaction will occur is no longer probable.
- c. The hedged asset or liability (e.g., a hedged bond) is sold or retired but not reported as a current refunding or advanced refunding resulting in a defeasance of debt.
- d. The hedging derivative instrument is terminated unless an effective hedging relationship continues as provided in one of the following examples:
 - 1) An effective hedging relationship continues when all of the following criteria are met:
 - a) Collectability of swap payments is considered to be probable.
 - b) The swap counterparty of the interest rate swap or commodity swap, or the swap counterparty's credit support provider, is replaced with an assignment or in-substance assignment.

- c) The government enters into the assignment or in-substance assignment in response to the swap counterparty, or the swap counterparty's credit support provider, either committing or experiencing an act of default or a termination event as both are described in the swap agreement.
- 2) An effective hedging relationship continues when the reference rate of the original hedging derivative instrument's variable payment is an interbank offered rate (IBOR), or an IBOR multiplied by a coefficient or adjusted by addition or subtraction of a constant, if all of the following criteria are met:
- a) The hedging derivative instrument is amended or replaced to change the reference rate of the hedging derivative instrument's variable payment or to add or change fallback provisions related to the reference rate of the variable payment.
 - b) The reference rate of the amended or replacement hedging derivative instrument's variable payment essentially equates the reference rate of the original hedging derivative instrument's variable payment by one or both of the following methods:
 - i. The replacement rate is multiplied by a coefficient or adjusted by addition or subtraction of a constant; the amount of the coefficient or constant is limited to what is necessary to essentially equate the replacement rate and the original rate.
 - ii. An up-front payment is made between the parties; the amount of the payment is limited to what is necessary to essentially equate the replacement rate and the original rate.
 - c) If the replacement of the reference rate is effectuated by ending the original hedging derivative instrument and entering into a replacement hedging derivative instrument, those transactions occur on the same date.
 - d) The terms that affect changes in fair values and cash flows in the original and amended or replacement hedging derivative instruments are identical, except for the term changes that may be necessary for the replacement of the reference rate.
- 3) A hedging derivative instrument may be amended or replaced to change the reference rate of the variable payment from an IBOR to a Secured Overnight Financing Rate (SOFR) in two steps. First, by amending or replacing a hedging derivative instrument to change an IBOR to a new rate other than a SOFR. Second, by subsequently amending or replacing the amended or replacement hedging derivative instrument to change that new rate to a SOFR. In the second step of such a transition, an effective hedging relationship continues when all of the following criteria are met:
- a) The reference rate of the original hedging derivative instrument's variable payment replaced an IBOR, or an IBOR multiplied by a coefficient or adjusted by addition or subtraction of a constant, in the previous amendment or replacement.

- b) The reference rate of the amended or replacement hedging derivative instrument's variable payment is a SOFR, or a SOFR multiplied by a coefficient or adjusted by addition or subtraction of a constant.
- c) All of the criteria in d(2)(a) – d(2)(d) as discussed in the preceding bullet are met.
- e. The hedged debt is defeased as a result of a current refunding, an advanced refunding, or the use of cash and other monetary assets acquired with only existing resources resulting in an in-substance defeasance.
- f. The hedged expected transaction occurs, such as the purchase of an energy commodity or the sale of bonds.

If a termination event as described in the preceding paragraphs occurs, the balance of the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be reported on the resource flows statement separately from the investment revenue classification and should be captioned increase (decrease) upon hedge termination. If reported separately within investment revenue, the removal of the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be captioned increase (decrease) upon hedge termination. Once the termination event has occurred, hedge accounting should not be reapplied to that hedging relationship. A derivative instrument from a terminated hedge, however, may be employed as a hedging derivative instrument in a new hedge (exceptions apply).

It should be noted that an amendment of a hedged item to replace the reference rate with another reference rate (that is adjusted, as necessary, so the replacement rate and original rate are equal) by either changing the reference rate or adding or changing fallback provisions related to the reference rate, is not a termination event.

If the termination event is the defeasance of the hedged debt, whether through a current refunding, an advance refunding, or the placement of cash and other monetary assets acquired with only existing resources in an irrevocable trust, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be included in the net carrying amount of the old debt for purposes of calculating the difference between that amount and the reacquisition price of the old debt.

This method should be applied regardless of whether the hedging derivative instrument is terminated (exceptions apply). The calculation of the difference between the cash flows required to service the old debt and the cash flows required to service the new debt and complete the refunding and the economic gain or loss resulting from the transaction, should include the effects of a hedging derivative instrument.

If the termination event is the occurrence of the hedged expected transaction, the disposition of the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources depends on whether the hedged expected transaction results in a financial instrument or a commodity. Should the expected transaction result in a financial instrument, the accounting treatment of the financial instrument will be dependent on whether the government is reexposed to the hedged risk.

- If the government is reexposed to the hedged risk, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be recognized on the resource flows statement separately from the investment revenue classification.
- If the government is not reexposed to the hedged risk, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be reported on the resource flows statement consistent with the hedged item. The decision as to whether a termination event reexposes a government to a hedged risk should be based on specific facts and circumstances. For example, if an interest rate lock is terminated shortly before fixed-rate bonds are issued, the local government should consider whether during that interim period, the government's exposure to interest rate risk was significant. If the interim time period or the reexposure to the identified financial risk is significant, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be removed by recognizing that amount in the resource flows statement.

If the expected transaction results in a commodity, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources should be removed by reporting the balance as an adjustment to the actual transaction. As an example, if the expected transaction is a hedge of market risk associated with the purchase of electricity and the purchase occurs, the deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources related to the hedging derivative instrument should be removed by reporting the amount as an adjustment to the cost of energy.

14.05 Joint Power Agreements

The provisions of the Joint Exercise of Powers Act (Gov. Code, §6500 et seq.) provides the guidance that local governments should follow concerning Joint Power Agreements (JPAs).

Chapter 15: PPPs and APAs

Chapter Contents

Introduction	327
PPP Foundational Guidance	327
15.01 PPP Definition, Scope, and Applicability	327
15.02 PPP Term	328
PPP Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities	329
15.03 PPP Transferor	329
15.04 PPP Operator	335
PPP Exceptions and Special Circumstances	339
15.05 PPP Arrangements with Multiple Components	339
15.06 PPP Modifications and Terminations	340
APA Foundational Guidance	343
15.07 APA Definition, Scope, and Applicability	343
APA Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities	344
15.08 Accounting and Financial Reporting for APAs	344
15.09 APAs with Multiple Components	344
15.10 Example – Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPPs)	346
15.11 Example – Availability Payment Arrangements (APAs)	353

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 15: PPPs and APAs

Introduction

Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPPs), along with Availability Payment Arrangements (APAs), encompass a wide assortment of arrangements between a government and another party that are engaged in supplying services to a government's citizenry. Guidelines concerning the accounting and reporting requirements for these type of arrangements have been incorporated into GASB Codification Sections A90, *Availability Payment Arrangements* and P90, *Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships*.

The main objective of GASB Codification Sections A90 and P90 is to improve comparability of financial statements between governments that enter into PPPs and APAs. Implementation of the provisions in GASB Codification Sections A90 and P90 should also improve the consistency, relevance, reliability, and the general understanding of information concerning PPPs and APAs.

PPP Foundational Guidance

15.01 PPP Definition, Scope, and Applicability

The requirements of GASB Codification Section P90 are applicable to the financial statements of all state and local governments concerning the accounting and financial reporting of Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPPs).

As defined in GASB Cod. Sec. P90.102 (Section P90, paragraph .102), a PPP is:

An arrangement in which a government (the transferor) contracts with an operator (may be a governmental or nongovernmental entity) to provide public services by conveying control of the right to operate or use a nonfinancial asset, such as infrastructure or other capital asset (the underlying PPP asset), for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

There are some instances where PPPs are actually service concession arrangements (SCAs). An SCA is a PPP arrangement between a transferor and an operator in which all four of the following conditions are met:

- a. Transferor conveys to the operator the right and related obligation to provide public services through the use and operation of an underlying PPP asset in exchange for significant consideration (e.g., an up-front payment, installment payments, a new facility, or improvements to an existing facility).
- b. Operator collects and is compensated by fees from third parties (excludes custodial arrangements where an operator accepts payments from third parties and remits them to the transferor for an established fee).
- c. Transferor determines or has the ability to modify or approve which services the operator is required to provide, to whom the operator is required to provide the services, and the prices or rates that can be charged for the services.

- d. Transferor is entitled to significant residual interest in the service utility of the underlying PPP asset at the end of the arrangement.

If a government entity has a PPP that meets the definition of a lease as defined in GASB Cod. Sec. L20.102 (Section L20, paragraph .102), it should apply the applicable accounting and financial reporting guidance for a lease, if all of the following criteria are met:

- a) existing assets of the transferor are the only underlying PPP assets;
- b) improvements are not required to be made by the operator to those existing assets as part of the PPP arrangement; and
- c) the PPP does not meet the definition of a SCA as outlined in the preceding paragraph.

15.02 PPP Term

The PPP term is the period during which an operator has a noncancelable right to use an underlying PPP asset (known as the noncancelable period), plus the following periods, if applicable:

- a) Periods covered by an operator's option to extend the PPP if it is reasonably certain, the operator will exercise that option.
- b) Periods covered by an operator's option to terminate the PPP if it is reasonably certain, the operator will not exercise that option.
- c) Periods covered by a transferor's option to extend the PPP if it is reasonably certain, the transferor will exercise that option.
- d) Periods covered by a transferor's option to terminate the PPP if it is reasonably certain, the transferor will not exercise that option.

The option to terminate a PPP is an unconditional right that exists within the contract. Any provision that gives the transferor or operator the right to terminate the PPP only in certain circumstances or upon the occurrence of certain events (e.g., the action or inaction of the other party to the contract), should not be considered an option to terminate the PPP for purposes of determining the PPP term.

Periods during which both the operator and the transferor have an option to terminate the PPP without permission from the other party (or if both parties have to agree to an extension) are cancellable periods and are excluded from the PPP term. A fiscal funding or cancellation clause should be taken into consideration when calculating the PPP term.

At the beginning of the PPP term, the transferor and operator should assess all factors relevant to the likelihood that either party will exercise options identified in the first paragraph of this chapter section, and whether these factors are contract based, underlying asset based, market based, or government specific. The assessment will often require consideration of a combination of these interrelated factors.

Examples of factors to consider include (but are not limited to) the following:

- A significant economic incentive (e.g., contractual terms and conditions for the optional periods that are favorable compared with current market rates).
- A significant economic disincentive such as costs to terminate the PPP and sign a new PPP arrangement (e.g., negotiation costs, relocation costs, abandonment of significant underlying PPP asset improvements, or a substantial cancellation penalty).
- The history of exercising options to extend or terminate.
- The extent to which the underlying PPP asset is essential to the provisions of government services.

The transferor and operator should reassess the PPP term only if one or more of the following events occur:

- The transferor or the operator decides to exercise an option even though it was previously determined that it was reasonably certain that the transferor or the operator would not exercise that option.
- The transferor or the operator decides not to exercise an option even though it was previously determined that it was reasonably certain that the transferor or the operator would exercise that option.
- An event specified in the PPP arrangement that requires an extension or termination of the PPP takes place.

PPP Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities

15.03 PPP Transferor

If an underlying PPP asset is an existing asset of the transferor at the beginning of the PPP term, the transferor should continue to recognize the underlying PPP asset, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Underlying PPP Asset*, which follows later in this chapter. The transferor should also recognize:

- A receivable for installment payments (if any) to be received in relation to the PPP, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Receivable for Installment Payments*, which follows later in this chapter; and
- A deferred inflow of resources, as discussed in the subsection titled, *PPP Deferred Inflow of Resources - Transferor*, which follows later in this chapter.

Additionally, the transferor should recognize:

- An asset for improvements (if any) made by the operator to an existing underlying PPP asset of the transferor, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Underlying PPP Asset*, which follows later in this chapter; and
- A deferred inflow of resources when the improvements are placed into service, as discussed in the subsection titled, *PPP Deferred Inflow of Resources — Transferor*, which follows later in this chapter.

If an underlying PPP asset is a new asset purchased or constructed by the operator and the PPP meets the definition of a Service Concession Arrangement (SCA), the transferor should recognize:

- an asset for the purchased or constructed underlying PPP asset when the underlying PPP asset is placed into service, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Underlying PPP Asset*, which follows later in this chapter;
- at the beginning of the PPP term, a receivable for installment payments (if any) to be received in relation to the PPP, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Receivable for Installment Payments*, which follows later in this chapter; and
- at the beginning of the PPP term, a deferred inflow of resources, as discussed in the subsection titled, *PPP Deferred Inflow of Resources — Transferor*, which follows later in this chapter.

Conversely, if an underlying PPP asset is a new asset purchased or constructed by the operator and the PPP does not meet the definition of a SCA when the underlying PPP asset is placed into service, the transferor should recognize:

- a receivable for the underlying PPP asset purchased or constructed to be received from the operator, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Receivable for the Underlying PPP Asset*, which follows later in this chapter;
- a receivable for installment payments (if any) to be received in relation to the PPP, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Receivable for Installment Payments*, which follows later in this chapter; and
- a deferred inflow of resources, as discussed in the subsection titled, *PPP Deferred Inflow of Resources — Transferor*, which follows later in this chapter.

Initial Direct Costs

Any initial direct costs incurred by the transferor should be reported as outflows of resources (e.g., expenses) for the period. An example of indirect costs would be those costs incurred to originate a PPP that directly result from, and are essential to that PPP and would not have been incurred had the PPP transaction not occurred.

Another example would be any costs directly related to specific activities completed by the transferor for that PPP (e.g., evaluating and recording guarantees, collateral, and other security arrangements).

Underlying PPP Asset

Underlying PPP assets include:

- the existing assets of a transferor; or
- those assets that are newly purchased or constructed by the operator.
- existing assets of a transferor that are to be improved by the operator

If an underlying PPP asset is an existing asset of the transferor, the transferor should continue to measure the underlying PPP asset at its carrying value as of the beginning of the PPP term. However, should the underlying PPP asset be a new asset purchased or constructed by the operator, the transferor should initially measure the underlying PPP asset at acquisition value when the asset is placed into service.

The transferor should apply all other accounting and financial reporting requirements relevant to an underlying PPP asset, including depreciation and impairment. However, if the operator is required by the PPP arrangement to return the underlying PPP asset in its original condition, the transferor should not depreciate the asset during the PPP term.

Improvements to an Underlying PPP Asset

Any improvements made by the operator to an underlying PPP asset should be measured by the transferor at acquisition value when the improvements are placed into service. As discussed in the preceding subsection, the transferor should apply all other accounting and financial reporting requirements relevant to the improvements made to the underlying PPP asset, including depreciation and impairment.

Receivable for Installment Payments

Initially, a transferor should measure the receivable for installment payments at the present value of PPP payments expected to be received during the PPP term, less any provision for estimated uncollectible amounts. If required by a PPP arrangement, the measurement of the receivable for installment payments should include the following four items:

- Fixed payments.
- Variable payments that depend on an index or a rate (e.g., the Consumer Price Index or a market interest rate), initially measured using the index or rate as of the beginning of the PPP term.
- Variable payments that are fixed in substance.

- Residual value guarantee payments that are fixed in substance.

Variable payments (including payments related to revenue sharing arrangements) that are based on future performance of the operator, usage of the underlying PPP asset or variable factors (other than an index or rate), should not be included in the measurement of the receivable for installment payments. Instead, those variable payments should be recognized as inflows of resources (e.g., revenue) in the period to which those payments are applicable. The exception would be if any component of those variable payments is fixed in substance. If so, those components should be included in the measurement of the receivable for installment payments.

For those amounts that will be received under residual value guarantees (not fixed in substance) should be recognized as a receivable for installment payments and an inflow of resources if:

- a guarantee payment is required (as agreed to by the transferor and the operator); and
- the amount can be reasonably estimated.

Any amounts that will be received for a PPP termination penalty should be recognized as a receivable for installment payments and an inflow of resources (e.g., revenue) when that option is exercised. Future PPP payments to be received should be discounted using the interest rate the transferor charges the operator (may be the interest rate implicit in the PPP).

In subsequent financial reporting periods, a transferor should calculate the amortization of the discount on the receivable for installment payments. That amount should be reported as an inflow of resources (e.g., interest revenue) for the period. Any PPP payments received should be allocated to the accrued interest receivable and to the receivable for installment payments, in that order.

The transferor should remeasure the receivable for installment payments at subsequent financial reporting dates if one or more of the following changes have occurred at or before those financial reporting dates:

- There is a change in the PPP term.
- There is a change in the interest rate the transferor charges the operator.
- A contingency is resolved such that those payments now meet the criteria for measuring the receivable for installment payments (e.g., an event occurs causing variable payments that were contingent on the performance or use of the underlying PPP asset to become fixed payments for the remainder of the PPP term).

If a receivable for installment payments is remeasured for any of the changes listed in the preceding paragraph, the receivable should also be adjusted for any change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments, if that change in the index or rate is expected to significantly affect the amount of the receivable for installment payments since the previous measurement. A receivable for installment payments should not be remeasured solely for a change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments.

The discount rate should also be updated by the transferor as part of the remeasurement if one or both of the following changes have occurred and the changes individually or taken together are expected to significantly affect the amount of the receivable for installment payments:

- There is a change in the PPP term.
- There is a change in the interest rate the transferor charges the operator.

Should the discount rate be updated based on the provisions in the preceding list, then the receivable for installment payments should be remeasured using the revised discount rate.

Receivable for the Underlying PPP Asset

The transferor should measure a receivable for the underlying PPP asset based on the operator's estimated carrying value of the underlying PPP asset as of the expected date of ownership transfer from the operator. That receivable should be remeasured if there is a change in the PPP term and the change is expected to significantly affect the amount of the operator's estimated carrying value of the underlying PPP asset as of the expected date of ownership transfer. If there is a PPP modification or a PPP termination, as discussed in section 15.06, *PPP Modifications and Terminations*, the receivable for the underlying PPP asset should be remeasured.

PPP Deferred Inflow of Resources — Transferor

A transferor should initially measure the deferred inflow of resources related to a PPP arrangement as the sum of the following five assets when the related assets are recognized:

- The amount of the initial measurement of the receivable for installation payment, as discussed earlier in this chapter in the subsection titled, *Receivable for Installment Payments*.
- PPP payments received from the operator at or before the beginning of the PPP term, if applicable (e.g., an up-front payment related with a PPP).
- The amount of the initial measurement for the underlying PPP asset, as discussed earlier in this chapter in the subsection titled, *Underlying PPP Asset*.
- The amount of the initial measurement for improvements to the underlying PPP asset, as discussed earlier in this chapter in the subsection titled, *Improvements to an Underlying PPP Asset*.
- The amount of the initial measurement of the receivable for the underlying PPP asset, as discussed earlier in this chapter in the subsection titled, *Receivable for the Underlying PPP Asset*.

The transferor should subsequently recognize the deferred inflow of resources as inflows of resources (e.g., revenue) in a systematic and rational manner over the PPP term. Generally, the deferred inflow of resources should be adjusted by the same amount as any change resulting from the remeasurement of the receivable for installment payments or the remeasurement of the receivable for the underlying PPP asset, if applicable.

For financial statements that are prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus, a transferor should recognize a receivable for installment payments and a deferred inflow of resources to account for a PPP arrangement. The transferor should measure the deferred inflow of resources at the initial value of the receivable for installment payments, plus the amount of any payments received at or before the beginning of the PPP term (e.g., an up-front payment associated with a PPP).

Subsequently, a transferor should recognize the deferred inflow of resources as inflows of resources (e.g., revenue), if available, in a systematic and rational manner over the PPP term.

PPP Notes to Financial Statements — Transferor

The following elements should be disclosed by the transferor concerning its PPP activities (may be grouped for disclosure purposes):

- a. A general description of its PPP arrangements (should include the status of projects during the constructions period, if applicable, and the basis, terms, and conditions on which any variable payments not included in the measurement of the receivable for installment payments are determined).
- b. The nature and amounts of assets and deferred inflows of resources related to PPPs that are recognized in the financial statements.
- c. The discount rate or rates applied to the measurement of the receivable for installation payments (if any).
- d. The amount of inflows of resources recognized in the reporting period for variable and other payments not previously included in the measurement of the receivable for installment payments (includes inflows of resources related to residual value guarantees and termination penalties).
- e. The nature and extent of rights retained by the transferor or granted to the operator in accordance with the PPP arrangements.

Provisions for guarantees and commitments may be included in some PPP arrangements. In these instances, for each period in which a guarantee or commitment exists, disclosures should be made. The disclosures should include (at minimum) identification, duration, and significant contract terms.

15.04 PPP Operator

If an underlying PPP asset is an existing asset of a transferor at the beginning of the PPP term, then an operator should recognize:

- A liability for installment payments (if any) to be made in relation to the PPP.
- An intangible right-to-use asset.

When the underlying PPP asset is a new asset purchased or constructed by an operator and the PPP meets the definition of a service concession arrangement (SCA), at the beginning of the PPP term, the operator should recognize:

- A liability for installment payments (if any) to be made in relation to the PPP, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Liability for Installment Payments*, which follows later in this chapter.
- A right-to-use asset, as discussed in the subsection titled, *Right-To-Use Asset*, which follows later in this chapter.

If an underlying PPP asset is a new asset purchased or constructed by an operator and the PPP does not meet the definition of an SCA, the operator should recognize the underlying PPP asset until transfer of ownership to the transferor, if applicable. The operator should continue to apply other accounting and financial reporting requirements relevant to the underlying PPP asset including depreciation and impairment.

Once the underlying PPP asset is placed into service, the operator should recognize:

- A liability for the underlying PPP asset to be transferred to the transferor (if applicable).
- A liability for installment payments (if any) to be made in relation to the PPP.
- A deferred outflow of resources for the underlying PPP asset to be transferred to the transferor (if any).

Liability for Installment Payments

Initially, an operator should measure the liability for installment payments at the present value of PPP payments expected to be made during the PPP term. If required by a PPP arrangement, the measurement of the liability for installment payments should include the following six items:

- Fixed payments.
- Variable payments that depend on an index or a rate (e.g., the Consumer Price Index or a market interest rate), initially measured using the index or rate as of the beginning of the PPP term.
- Variable payments that are fixed in substance.
- Amounts that are reasonably certain of being required to be paid by the operator under residual value guarantees.
- Payments for penalties for terminating the PPP, if the PPP term reflects the operator exercising an option to terminate the PPP or a fiscal funding or cancellation clause.

- Any other payments to the transferor associated with the PPP that are reasonably certain of being required based on an assessment of all relevant factors.

Variable payments (including payments related to revenue sharing arrangements) that are based on future performance of the operator, usage of the underlying PPP asset, or variable factors (other than an index or rate), should not be included in the measurement of the liability for installment payments. Instead, those variable payments should be recognized as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) in the period to which the obligation for those payments is applicable. The exception would be if any component of those variable payments is fixed in substance. If so, those components should be included in the measurement of the liability for installment payments.

Future PPP payments should be discounted using the interest rate the transferor charges the operator (may be the interest rate implicit in the PPP). If the interest rate cannot be readily determined by the operator, then the operator's estimated incremental borrowing rate (an estimate of the interest rate that would be charged for borrowing the PPP installment payment amounts during the PPP term) should be used.

In subsequent financial reporting periods, an operator should calculate the amortization of the discount on the liability for installment payments. That amount should be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., interest expense) for the period. Any PPP payments made should first be allocated to the accrued interest liability and then to the liability for installment payments, in that order.

The operator should remeasure the liability for installment payments at subsequent financial reporting dates if one or more of the following five changes have occurred at or before those financial reporting dates, based on the most recent PPP arrangement prior to the changes, and the changes taken individually or together are expected to significantly affect the amount of the liability since the previous measurement.

The five changes are as follows:

- a) There is a change in the PPP term.
- b) An assessment of all relevant factors indicates that the likelihood of a residual value guarantee being paid has changed from reasonably certain to not reasonably certain, or vice versa.
- c) There is a change in the estimated amounts for payments already included in the measurement of the liability for PPP payments (exceptions apply).
- d) There is a change in the interest rate the transferor charges the operator (if used as the initial discount rate).
- e) A contingency, upon which some or all of the variable payments that will be made over the remainder of the PPP term are based, is resolved such that those payments now meet the criteria for measuring the liability for installment payments (e.g., an event occurs causing variable payments that were contingent on the performance or use of the underlying PPP asset to become fixed payments for the remainder of the PPP term).

If a liability for installment payments is remeasured for any of the changes listed in the preceding paragraph, the liability should also be adjusted for any change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments, if that change in the index or rate is expected to significantly affect the amount of the liability since the previous measurement. A liability for installment payments should not be remeasured solely for a change in an index rate or a rate used to determine variable payments.

The discount rate should also be updated by the operator as part of the remeasurement if there is a change in the PPP term and that change is expected to significantly affect the amount of the liability for installment payments. A liability for installment payments should not be remeasured, nor should the discount rate be reassessed, solely for a change in an operator's incremental borrowing rate.

Should the discount rate need to be updated based on the provisions in the preceding paragraph, then the discount rate should be based on the revised interest rate the transferor charges the operator at the time the discount rate is updated. If that interest rate cannot be readily determined, then the operator's estimated incremental borrowing rate at the time the discount rate is updated should be used.

Right-To-Use Asset

When the underlying PPP asset is placed into service, the operator should initially measure the right-to-use asset as the sum of the following five items:

- a. The amount of the initial measurement of the liability for installment payments, if applicable.
- b. PPP payments made to the transferor at or before the beginning of the PPP term, if applicable (e.g., an up-front payment related to a PPP arrangement).
- c. The cost of the purchased or constructed underlying PPP asset, if the PPP meets the definition of a service concession arrangement (SCA).
- d. The cost of improvements to an existing underlying PPP asset.
- e. Initial direct costs that are ancillary charges necessary to be place the right-to-use asset into service.

Initial direct costs that would be considered debt issuance costs should be recognized as outflows of resources (e.g., expenses) in the period in which they are incurred. A right-to-use asset should be amortized in a systematic and rational manner over the either the PPP term or the useful life of the underlying PPP asset, whichever is shorter. The amortization of the right-to-use asset should be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., amortization expense), which may be combined with depreciation expense related to other capital assets for financial reporting purposes.

The right-to-use asset usually should be adjusted by the same amount as the corresponding liability for installment payments when that liability is remeasured. However, if that change reduces the carrying value of the operator's right-to-use asset to zero, any remaining amount should be reported in the resource flows statement (e.g., a gain).

It should be noted that a change in the manner or duration of use of the right-to-use asset could be caused by the presence of impairment indicators. Such a change in the manner or duration of use of the right-to-use asset may indicate that the service utility of the underlying PPP asset is impaired.

The length of time during which the operator cannot use the underlying PPP asset (or is limited to using it in a different manner) should be compared to its previously expected manner and duration of use to determine if there is a significant decline in service utility of the right-to-use asset. If the underlying PPP asset is impaired, the amount reported for the right-to-use asset should be reduced first for any change in the corresponding liability. Any remaining amount should be recognized as an impairment.

Liability for the Underlying PPP Asset

If the operator is required to transfer the underlying PPP asset to the transferor during or at the end of the PPP term, the operator should measure the liability based on the estimated carrying value of the underlying PPP asset as of the expected date of the ownership transfer to the transferor. That liability should be remeasured if there is a change in the PPP term and the change is expected to significantly affect the amount of the estimated carrying value of the underlying PPP asset as of the date of ownership transfer. If there is a PPP modification or a PPP termination, as discussed in section 15.06, *PPP Modifications and Terminations*, the liability for the underlying PPP asset should be remeasured.

PPP Deferred Outflow of Resources — Operator

If the operator is required to transfer the underlying PPP asset to the transferor during or at the end of the PPP term, the operator should recognize a deferred outflow of resources equal to the estimated carrying value of the underlying PPP asset as of the expected date of the ownership transfer. The operator should then recognize the deferred outflow of resources as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) in a systematic and rational manner over the remaining PPP term.

The deferred outflow of resources should be adjusted by the same amount as any change resulting from the remeasurement of the liability for the underlying PPP asset. However, if that change reduces the deferred outflow of resources to zero, any remaining amount should be reported in the resource flows statement.

Financial Statements Prepared Using the Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus

If a PPP is expected to be paid from general government resources, the PPP should be accounted for and reported on a basis consistent with governmental fund accounting principles. An expenditure and other financing source should be reported in the period the PPP is initially recognized. The expenditure and other financing source should be measured as discussed earlier in this chapter in the subsection titled, *Liability for Installment Payments*. Subsequent governmental fund PPP payments should be accounted for consistent with the principles for debt service payments of long-term debt.

PPP Notes to Financial Statements — Operator

The following seven elements should be disclosed by the operator concerning its PPP activities (may be grouped for disclosure purposes):

- 1) A general description of its PPP arrangements (should include the status of projects during the constructions period, if applicable, and the basis, terms, and conditions on which any variable payments not included in the measurement of the liability for installment payments are determined).
- 2) The nature and amounts of assets, liabilities, and deferred outflows of resources related to PPPs that are recognized in the financial statements.
- 3) The discount rate or rates applied to the measurement of the liability for installment payments (if any).
- 4) Principal and interest requirements to maturity (presented separately) for the liability for installment payments for each of the five subsequent fiscal years and in five-year increments thereafter.
- 5) The amount of outflows of resources recognized in the reporting period for variable payments not previously included in the measurement of the liability for installment payments.
- 6) The nature and extent of rights granted to the operator or retained by the transferor in accordance with the PPP arrangements.
- 7) The components of any loss associated with an impairment (the impairment loss and any related change in the liability).

For disclosure purposes, an operator's liability for installment payments is not considered debt that is subject to the disclosure requirements of GASB Codification Section 1500, *Reporting Liabilities* or GASB Codification Section 2300, *Notes to Financial Statements*.

Provisions for guarantees and commitments may be included in some PPP arrangements. In these instances, for each period in which a guarantee or commitment exists, disclosures should be made. The disclosures should include (at minimum) identification, duration, and significant contract terms.

PPP Exceptions and Special Circumstances

15.05 PPP Arrangements with Multiple Components

A transferor or an operator may enter into PPP arrangements that contain multiple components, such as a contract that contains both a PPP component and a non-PPP component, or a PPP that contains multiple underlying PPP assets. If a transferor or an operator enters into an arrangement that contains both a PPP component (e.g., the right to operate a facility) and a non-PPP component (e.g., maintenance services for the facility), the transferor or the operator should account for the PPP and non-PPP components as separate arrangements (exceptions apply).

If a PPP arrangement involves multiple underlying PPP assets and those assets have different PPP terms, the transferor and the operator should account for each underlying PPP asset as a separate PPP component. Additionally, the operator should account for each underlying PPP asset as a separate PPP component if the underlying PPP assets are in different major classes of asset (exceptions apply).

To allocate the contract price to the different components, a transferor or an operator should first use any prices for individual components that are included in the contract, as long as the price allocation does not appear to be unreasonable based on the terms of the contract and professional judgment, maximizing the use of observable information (e.g., using readily available observable stand-alone prices). Stand-alone prices are those that would be paid or received if the same or similar assets were acquired individually or if the same or similar non-PPP components (e.g., maintenance services) were contracted individually. Some contracts provide discounts for including multiple PPPs or PPP and non-PPP components together in one contract. Those discounts may be taken into account when determining whether individual component prices do not appear to be unreasonable.

Should a contract not include prices for individual components, or if any of those prices appear to be unreasonable as discussed in the preceding paragraph, a transferor or an operator should use professional judgment to determine their best estimate for allocating the contract price to those components. If it is not practicable to determine a best estimate for price allocation for some or all components in the contract, a transferor or an operator should account for those components as a single PPP arrangement.

If multiple components are accounted for as a single PPP arrangement as discussed in the preceding paragraph, the accounting for that PPP should be based on the primary PPP component within that specific PPP arrangement. As an example, the primary PPP component's term should be used for the PPP if the components have different terms.

15.06 PPP Modifications and Terminations

The provisions of a PPP arrangement may be amended while the arrangement is in effect. Amendments are used to modify the provisions of the PPP arrangement. Examples of amendments to PPP arrangements include, but are not limited to, changing the price of the arrangement, lengthening or shortening the PPP term, adding or removing an underlying PPP asset, and changing the index or rate upon which variable payments depend.

An amendment should be considered a PPP modification unless the operator's right to use the underlying PPP asset decreases (e.g., the PPP term is shortened or the number of underlying assets is reduced), in which case the amendment should be considered a partial or full PPP termination. By contrast, exercising an existing option, such as an option to extend or terminate the PPP arrangement, is subject to the guidance for remeasurement.

If variable payments of a PPP arrangement depend on an interbank offered rate (IBOR), an amendment of the PPP solely to replace the IBOR with another rate by either changing the rate or adding or changing fallback provisions related to the rate, is not a modification to the PPP arrangement.

A transferor and an operator should account for an amendment during the reporting period resulting in a modification to a PPP arrangement as a separate PPP (i.e., separate from the most recent PPP arrangement before the modification) if both of the following conditions are present:

- The PPP modification gives the operator an additional underlying PPP asset by adding one or more underlying PPP assets that were not included in the original PPP arrangement.
- The increase in PPP payments for the additional underlying PPP asset does not appear to be unreasonable based on the terms of the amended PPP arrangement and professional judgment, maximizing the use of observable information (e.g., using readily available observable stand-alone prices).

PPP Modifications — Transferor

Unless a modification is reported as a separate PPP arrangement as discussed in the preceding paragraph, a transferor should account for a PPP modification by remeasuring the receivable for installment payments (if any) and the receivable for the underlying PPP asset, if applicable. The deferred inflow of resources should be adjusted by the difference between the remeasured receivables and the receivables immediately before the PPP modification. However, to the extent that the change relates to payments for the current period, the change should be recognized as an inflow of resources (e.g., revenue) or an outflow of resources (e.g., expense) for the current period.

If prior to the PPP term expiring, a change to the provisions of a PPP results from a debt refunding by either the transferor in which the perceived economic advantages of the refunding are passed through to the operator or the perceived economic advantages are retained by the operator, the transferor should adjust the receivable for installment payments to the present value of the future PPP payments (if any) based on the interest rate applicable to the revised PPP arrangement. The transferor should also adjust the deferred inflow of resources. The adjustment to the deferred inflow of resources should be recognized as an inflow of resources or an outflow of resources (e.g., gain or loss) over either the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt, whichever is shorter.

PPP Modifications — Operator

Unless a modification is reported as a separate PPP arrangement, an operator should account for a PPP modification by remeasuring the liability for installment payments (if any) and the liability for the underlying PPP asset, if applicable. The right-to-use asset should be adjusted by the difference between the remeasured liability for installment payments and the liability for installment payments immediately before the PPP modification.

However, if the change reduces the carrying value of the right-to-use asset to zero, any remaining amount should be reported in the resource flows statement (e.g., a gain). A deferred outflow of resources should be adjusted by the difference between the liability for the underlying PPP asset and the liability for the underlying PPP asset immediately before the PPP modification.

If prior to the PPP term expiring, a change to the provisions of a PPP results from a debt refunding by either the transferor (including an advance refunding) in which the perceived economic advantages of the refunding are passed through to the operator or the perceived economic advantages are retained by the operator, the change should be accounted for as follows:

- If a change to the provisions of a PPP results from a debt refunding by the transferor or the operator (including an advance refunding that results in a defeasance of debt), the operator should adjust the liability for installment payments to the present value of the future PPP payments under the revised PPP using the effective interest rate applicable to the revised PPP arrangement. The resulting difference should be reported as either a deferred outflow of resources or a deferred inflow of resources. The deferred outflow of resources or the deferred inflow of resources should be recognized as an adjustment to the outflow of resources (e.g., an increase or decrease to interest expense) in a systematic and rational manner over either the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt, whichever is shorter.
- If the provisions of a PPP are changed in connection with an advance refunding by the transferor that results in a defeasance of debt and the operator is obligated to reimburse the transferor for any refunded debt costs that have been or will be incurred (e.g., an unamortized discount or call premium), the operator should recognize those costs in a systematic and rational manner over either the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt, whichever is shorter.

PPP Terminations — Transferor

A transferor generally should account for the partial or full PPP termination by recognizing a gain or loss for the sum of the following four items (if applicable):

- a. The reduction in the carrying value of any deferred inflow of resources related to receivables for installment payments for the reduction in the carrying value of the receivable for installment payments, any termination penalties paid to the operator, and amounts paid to the operator to purchase the underlying PPP asset.
- b. The reduction in the carrying value of any deferred inflow of resources related to the PPP payments received from the operator at or before the commencement of the PPP term but not to less than zero for termination penalties paid to the operator and amounts paid to the operator to purchase the underlying PPP asset.
- c. The reduction in the carrying value of any deferred inflow of resources related to the initial measurement of the underlying PPP asset or improvements to the underlying PPP asset but not to less than zero for termination penalties paid to the operator and amounts paid to the operator to purchase the underlying PPP asset.

- d. The reduction in the carrying value of any deferred inflow of resources related to the receivable for the receivable for the underlying PPP asset but not to less than zero for the reduction in carrying value of the receivable for the underlying PPP asset, any termination penalties paid to the operator, and amounts paid to the operator to purchase the underlying PPP asset.

PPP Terminations — Operator

An operator generally should account for the partial or full PPP termination by recognizing a gain or loss for the sum of the following (if applicable):

- a. The reduction of the carrying values of the right-to-use asset related to the liability for installment payments and the liability for installment payments.
- b. The reduction of the carrying value of the right-to-use asset related to PPP payments made to the transferor at or before the commencement of the PPP term, but not to less than zero, for the carrying value of the liability for the underlying PPP asset, any termination penalties received from the transferor, and amounts received from the transferor to acquire the underlying PPP asset.
- c. The reduction of the carrying value of the right-to-use asset related to the cost of a purchased or constructed underlying PPP asset or the cost of improvements to an existing underlying PPP asset, but not to less than zero, for termination penalties received from the transferor.
- d. The reduction of the carrying value of the right-to-use asset related to initial direct costs that are ancillary charges necessary to place the right-to-use asset into service.

APA Foundational Guidance

15.07 APA Definition, Scope, and Applicability

The requirements of GASB Codification Section A90 are applicable to the financial statements of all state and local governments concerning the accounting and financial reporting of Availability Payment Arrangements (APAs).

As defined in GASB Cod. Sec. A90.102 (Section A90, paragraph .102), an APA is:

An arrangement in which a government compensates an operator for activities that may include designing, constructing, financing, maintaining, or operating an underlying nonfinancial asset for a of period time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

The payments by the government should be based entirely on the underlying asset's availability for use rather than on tolls, fees, or comparable revenues or other measures of demand. The underlying asset's availability for use may be based on specific criteria such as the physical condition of the asset, construction milestones, or the achievement of certain availability measures. In an APA, a government procures a capital asset or service, rather than receiving compensation to allow another entity to provide public services.

An APA has some similarities to a PPP that includes a variable payment provision, however, in contrast to a PPP, the other party to an APA is receiving compensation from the government based entirely on the availability to perform as opposed to the actual performance of a public service.

APA Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities

15.08 Accounting and Financial Reporting for APAs

Availability Payment Arrangements (APAs) may contain multiple components. If an APA contains multiple components, each component should be recognized as a separate arrangement, if applicable.

Components of an APA that are related to the design, construction, or financing of a nonfinancial asset in which ownership of the asset transfers to the government by the end of the contract should be reported as a financed purchase by the government of the underlying nonfinancial asset.

Components of an APA that are related to providing services for the operation or maintenance of a nonfinancial asset should be accounted for as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) by the government in the period to which the payments relate.

15.09 APAs with Multiple Components

If a government entity enters into an APA that contains both a component related to the design, construction, or financing of a nonfinancial asset and a component related to providing services for the operation or maintenance of a nonfinancial asset, the government should account for those components as separate contracts (exceptions apply).

If an APA involves multiple underlying nonfinancial assets and those assets have different terms, a government should account for each nonfinancial asset as a separate component. Additionally, the government should account for each nonfinancial asset as a separate component if the assets are in different major classes of asset (exceptions apply).

In order to allocate a contract price to different components, a government should first use any prices for individual components that are included in the contract, as long as the price allocation does not seem unreasonable based on the terms of the contract and professional judgement, maximizing the use of observable information (e.g., using readily available observable stand-alone prices). Stand-alone prices are those that would be paid or received if the same or similar nonfinancial assets were acquired individually or if the same or similar services for the operation or maintenance of the nonfinancial assets were contracted individually.

Some contracts provide discounts for including multiple assets or asset and service components together in one contract. Those discounts may be considered when making a determination as to whether or not the individual component prices appear to be unreasonable. As an example, if the individual component prices were each discounted by the same percentage as normal market prices, then the discount included in those component prices would not appear to be unreasonable.

If a contract does not include prices for individual components, or if any of those prices appear to be unreasonable as discussed in the two preceding paragraphs, a government should use professional judgment to determine its best estimate for allocating the contract price to those components, maximizing the use of observable information. If it is not practicable to determine a best estimate for price allocation for some or all components in the contract, a government should account for those components as a single contract. If multiple components are accounted for as a single contract as previously discussed in this paragraph, the accounting for that APA should be based on the primary component of the contract.

15.10 Example – Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPPs)

The following example is for illustrative purposes only and is not intended to modify or limit the requirements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. Existing standards may require disclosures in addition to those illustrated. Local government entities should carefully consider their own unique circumstances in determining the most appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.

Initial Assumptions

Existing underlying PPP asset owned by Transferor

Service Concession Arrangement (SCA) Start Date	January 1, 20X1
SCA Term	25 Years
SCA Annual installment payments by Operator	\$150,000
Discount Rate	3%

Underlying PPP Asset

Acquisition Value	\$550,000
Accumulated Depreciation	<u>(\$50,000)</u>
Book Value of Building	\$500,000
Years of Expected Useful Life	50 Years
Annual straight-line depreciation is \$10,000 (\$500,000/50 Years)	

Calculations

The value of the PPP receivable and PPP liability is calculated to be \$2,540,331 after determining the present value of the annual installment payments using the following criteria (applied the present value formula/function in excel):

- Discount Rate (R) = 3% per year
- Number of Periods/Payments (NPer) = 24 (25 annual payments - 1st year payment is up-front)
- Annual Payment (Pmt) = \$150,000
- Future Value (FV) = 0
- Type = 1 (1 for payments made at beginning of period; 0 for payments made at end of period)

After the first payment (up-front payment) is made by the operator, the value of the PPP receivable and PPP liability will be as shown:

\$2,540,331	PPP Receivable
<u>150,000</u>	Up-front payment (Payments made on the 1 st day of the month)
\$2,690,331	

Journal Entries – Modified Accrual Basis (Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

Andromeda County (Transferor)**FYE 20X1**

January 1, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
PPP Receivable	DR: \$2,540,331	
Cash	DR: \$150,000	
Deferred Inflow of Resources		CR: \$2,690,331
(To record the inception of PPP with the City of Ares and receipt of first annual payment.)		

June 30, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$107,613	
PPP Revenue		CR: \$107,613
(To record amortization of deferred inflow of resources associated with installment and prepayments.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

FYE 20X2

January 1, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$150,000	
PPP Receivable		CR: \$73,790
Interest Income		CR: \$76,210
(To record receipt of second annual installment payment from the City of Ares.)		

June 30, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$107,613	
PPP Revenue		CR: \$107,613
(To record amortization of deferred inflow of resources associated with installment and prepayments.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

City of Ares (Operator)**FYE 20X1**

January 1, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Capital Outlay - PPP	DR: \$2,690,331	
Other Financing Source – PPP		CR: \$2,540,331
Cash		CR: \$150,000
(To record the inception of PPP with Andromeda County and first annual installment payment.)		

FYE 20X2

January 1, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Debt Service – PPP Principal Payment	DR: \$73,790	
Debt Service – PPP Interest	\$76,210	
Cash		CR: \$150,000
(To record annual PPP payment made to Andromeda County.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

Journal Entries - Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

Andromeda County (Transferor)**FYE 20X1**

January 1, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
PPP Receivable	DR: \$2,540,331	
Cash	DR: \$50,000	
Deferred Inflow of Resources		CR: \$2,690,331
(To record the inception of PPP with the City of Ares and receipt of first annual payment.)		

June 30, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$107,613	
PPP Revenue		CR: \$107,613
(To record amortization of deferred inflow of resources associated with installment and prepayments.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation Expense	DR: \$10,000	
Accumulated Depreciation - Building		CR: \$10,000
(To record depreciation of building.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Receivable	DR: \$38,105	
Interest Income		CR: \$38,105
(To record six months of interest receivable on SCA.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

FYE 20X2

January 1, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$150,000	
PPP Receivable		CR: \$73,790
Interest Receivable		CR: \$38,105
Interest Income		CR: \$38,105
(To record receipt of annual installment from the City of Ares.)		

Andromeda County (Transferor) - Continued

June 30, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$107,613	
PPP Revenue		CR: \$107,613
(To record amortization of deferred inflow of resources associated with SCA.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation Expense	DR: \$10,000	
Accumulated Depreciation - Building		CR: \$10,000
(To record depreciation of building.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Receivable	DR: \$36,998	
Interest Income		CR: \$36,998
(To record six months of interest receivable on SCA.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

City of Ares (Operator)**FYE 20X1**

January 1, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
PPP Asset	DR: \$2,690,331	
PPP Liability		CR: \$2,540,331
Cash		CR: \$150,000
(To record the inception of PPP with the City of Ares and receipt of first annual payment.)		

December 31, 20X1

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization Expense - PPP Asset	DR: \$107,614	
Accumulated Amortization – PPP Asset		CR: \$107,614
(To record amortization of PPP asset.)		

City of Ares (Operator) - Continued

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expense	DR: \$76,210	
Interest Payable		CR: \$76,210
(To accrue interest payable on PPP.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

FYE 20X2

January 1, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Payable	DR: \$76,210	
PPP Liability	DR: \$73,790	
Cash		CR: \$150,000
(To record payment of principal and interest on PPP liability.)		

December 31, 20X2

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization Expense – PPP Asset	DR: \$107,613	
Accumulated Amortization – PPP Asset		CR: \$107,613
(To record amortization of PPP asset.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expense	DR: \$73,996	
Interest Payable		CR: \$73,996
(To accrue interest payable on PPP.)		

Note: Refer to the Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule that follows the Transferor (Andromeda County) and Operator (City of Ares) journal entries.

Amortization of PPP Receivable/Liability Schedule

Date	Annual Payment	Discount Rate	Principal	Remaining Balance	Installment and Prepayments
	\$ 3,750,000	3%			\$ 2,690,331
Life (Yrs.):					25
01/01/20X1	150,000	-	150,000	2,540,331	107,613
01/01/20X2	150,000	76,210	73,790	2,466,541	107,613
01/01/20X3	150,000	73,996	76,004	2,390,537	107,613
01/01/20X4	150,000	71,716	78,284	2,312,254	107,613
01/01/20X5	150,000	69,368	80,632	2,231,621	107,613
01/01/20X6	150,000	66,949	83,051	2,148,570	107,613
01/01/20X7	150,000	64,457	85,543	2,063,027	107,613
01/01/20X8	150,000	61,891	88,109	1,974,918	107,613
01/01/20X9	150,000	59,248	90,752	1,884,165	107,613
01/01/2X10	150,000	56,525	93,475	1,790,690	107,613
01/01/2X11	150,000	53,721	96,279	1,694,411	107,613
01/01/2X12	150,000	50,832	99,168	1,595,243	107,613
01/01/2X13	150,000	47,857	102,143	1,493,101	107,613
01/01/2X14	150,000	44,793	105,207	1,387,894	107,613
01/01/2X15	150,000	41,637	108,363	1,279,530	107,613
01/01/2X16	150,000	38,386	111,614	1,167,916	107,613
01/01/2X17	150,000	35,037	114,963	1,052,954	107,613
01/01/2X18	150,000	31,589	118,411	934,542	107,613
01/01/2X19	150,000	28,036	121,964	812,579	107,613
01/01/2X20	150,000	24,377	125,623	686,956	107,613
01/01/2X21	150,000	20,609	129,391	557,565	107,613
01/01/2X22	150,000	16,727	133,273	424,292	107,613
01/01/2X23	150,000	12,729	137,271	287,020	107,613
01/01/2X24	150,000	8,611	141,389	145,631	107,613
01/01/2X25	150,000	4,369	145,631	(0)	107,613

15.11 Example – Availability Payment Arrangements (APAs)

The following example is for illustrative purposes only and is not intended to modify or limit the requirements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. Existing standards may require disclosures in addition to those illustrated. Local government entities should carefully consider their own unique circumstances in determining the most appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.

Initial Assumptions

- APA with financed purchase and Operation & Maintenance components
- Start Date July 1, 20X1
- Term 20 Years
- End Date June 30, 2X21
- Monthly Availability Payment \$500,000
- Estimated Annual Operating and Maintenance Cost \$1,000,000
- Estimated Cost of Facility (Ice Rink) \$30,000,000
- Annual Capital Outlay by Operator (20X2 –20X4) \$10,000,000
- Interest Rate 10.25876069%
- Estimated In-Service Date July 1, 20X4
- Estimated Years of Payments (20X4 Construction) 17
- Estimated Useful Life 25 Years
- Annual straight-line depreciation is \$1.2 million (\$30 million/25 years)

Calculations

The value of the estimated annual installment payment to be made by Centaurus County is calculated to be \$3.8 million as shown:

\$6,000,000	Annualized payments (\$500,000 per month)
(1,200,000)	Estimated company overhead/profit (20%)
<u>(1,000,000)</u>	Estimated annual operating costs
\$3,800,000	Estimated annual installment payments

Journal Entries – Modified Accrual Basis (Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

Centaurus County**FYE 20X2 – FYE 20X4**

There are no journal entries during this time period as the ice rink facility is under construction.

FYE 20X5

July 1, 20X4

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Capital Outlay – Ice Rink Facility	DR: \$30,000,000	
Other Financing Source – APA		CR: \$30,000,000
(To record the financed purchase of the ice rink facility when it is placed into service.)		

July 1, 20X4 – June 30, 20X5 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Debt Service – APA Interest	DR: \$3,077,628	
Debt Service – APA Principal Payment	722,372	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for the financed purchase of facility)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

FYE 20X6

July 1, 20X5 – June 30, 20X6 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Debt Service – APA Interest	DR: \$3,003,522	
Debt Service – APA Principal Payment	DR: \$796,478	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for the financed purchase of facility)		

Centaurus County – Modified Accrual Basis - Continued

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

FYE 20X7 – FYE 2X20

The journal entries for FYE 20X7 through FYE 2X20 would follow the same pattern as FYE 20X6.

FYE 2X21

July 1, 2X20 – June 30, 2X21 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Debt Service – APA Interest	DR: \$3,446,438	
Debt Service – APA Principal Payment	DR: \$353,562	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for the financed purchase of facility)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

Journal Entries - Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

Centaurus County**FYE 20X2 – FYE 20X4**

There are no journal entries during this time period as the ice rink facility is under construction.

FYE 20X5

July 1, 20X4

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Ice Rink Facility	DR: \$30,000,000	
APA Liability		CR: \$30,000,000
(To record the financed purchase of the ice rink facility when it is placed into service)		

July 1, 20X4 – June 30, 20X5 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expense	DR: \$3,077,628	
APA Liability	DR: \$722,372	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record <u>monthly</u> payment of principal and interest on APA liability)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expense – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility)		

June 30, 20X5

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation Expense	DR: \$1,200,000	
Accumulated Depreciation – Ice Rink Facility		CR: \$1,200,000
(To record <u>annual</u> depreciation for FYE 20X5)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

Centaurus County – Full Accrual Basis - Continued

July 1, 20X5 – June 30, 20X6 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expense	DR: \$3,003,522	
APA Liability	DR: \$796,478	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record <u>monthly</u> payment of principal and interest on APA liability)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expense – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000

FYE 20X6

To record sum of monthly payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility.

June 30, 20X6

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation Expense	DR: \$1,200,000	
Accumulated Depreciation – Ice Rink Facility		CR: \$1,200,000
(To record <u>annual</u> depreciation for FYE 20X6)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

FYE 20X7 – FYE 2X20

The journal entries for FYE 20X7 through FYE 2X20 would follow the same pattern as FYE 20X6.

FYE 2X21

July 1, 2X20 – June 30, 2X21 (12 months of payments)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Interest Expense	DR: \$3,446,438	
APA Liability	DR: \$353,562	
Cash		CR: \$3,800,00
(To record <u>monthly</u> payment of principal and interest on APA liability)		

Centaurus County – Full Accrual Basis - Continued

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expense – Facility Operations/Maintenance	DR: \$2,200,000	
Cash		CR: \$2,200,000
(To record sum of <u>monthly</u> payments to ice rink facility operator for operation/maintenance of facility)		

June 30, 2X21

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation Expense	DR: \$1,200,000	
Accumulated Depreciation – Ice Rink Facility		CR: \$1,200,000
(To record <u>annual</u> depreciation for FYE 2X21)		

Note: Refer to the APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components table and APA Liability Debt Service Schedule that follows the Centaurus County journal entries.

Note: For FYE 20X2, FYE 20X3, and FYE 20X4 there is no activity as the ice rink facility is under construction and is not yet in service.

APA Allocation Between Financed Purchase & Operation/Maintenance Components

APA Liability Debt Service Schedule

FYE	Annualized Installment Payments	Company Overhead & Profit	Annual Operating Cost	Capital Asset Purchase Component		Interest @	Principal Payment	Outstanding Balance
	\$ 6,000,000	20%	\$ 1,000,000	\$ 3,800,000		10.25876069%		
06/30/20X4								\$ 30,000,000
06/30/20X5	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		3,077,628	722,372	29,277,628
06/30/20X6	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		3,003,522	796,478	28,481,150
06/30/20X7	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,921,813	878,187	27,602,963
06/30/20X8	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,831,722	968,278	26,634,685
06/30/20X9	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,732,389	1,067,611	25,567,074
06/30/2X10	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,622,865	1,177,135	24,389,939
06/30/2X11	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,502,105	1,297,895	23,092,044
06/30/2X12	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,368,958	1,431,042	21,661,002
06/30/2X13	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,222,150	1,577,850	20,083,152
06/30/2X14	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		2,060,283	1,739,717	18,343,435
06/30/2X15	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		1,881,809	1,918,191	16,425,244
06/30/2X16	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		1,685,026	2,114,974	14,310,270
06/30/2X17	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		1,468,056	2,331,944	11,978,326
06/30/2X18	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		1,228,828	2,571,172	9,407,154
06/30/2X19	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		965,057	2,834,943	6,572,211
06/30/2X20	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		674,227	3,125,773	3,446,438
06/30/2X21	6,000,000	1,200,000	1,000,000	3,800,000		353,562	3,446,438	(0)

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 16: Investments and Lending

Chapter Contents

Introduction 363

Investments 363

16.01 Fundamentals for Investments.....363

16.02 Investment Valuation and Disclosure.....364

16.03 Reverse Repurchase Agreement.....365

Securities Lending 366

16.04 Securities Lending Transactions.....366

16.05 Pooled Interest Allocation 367

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 16: Investments and Lending

Introduction

This chapter will provide an overview of the accounting and reporting requirements for investments and securities lending.

Investments

16.01 Fundamentals for Investments

Investments are securities and other assets held by a local government entity for the purpose of income and profit and have a present service capacity based solely on its ability to generate cash or be sold to generate cash.

Investments should generally be reported on the balance sheet at fair value. Exceptions include, but are not limited to: 2a7-like external investment pools, investments in non-participating investment contracts (reported at cost), and certain short-term money market investments (reported at amortized cost).

Investment income includes interest (at stated rates), dividends, and the change in the fair value of investments. Components of the change in fair value computation include amortization of premiums and discounts, gains and losses on the sale of investments, and changes in the fair value of items held at the balance sheet maturity date.

Examples of investments that should be measured at fair value include:

- Common stock (not measured according to equity method);
- Money market investments (not cost based);
- External investment pools that are not 2a7-like external investment pools;
- Life settlement contracts;
- Open-end mutual funds;
- Land and other real estate held as investments;
- Investment derivative instruments; and
- Majority equity interest in separate organization held by:
 - a special purpose government engaged only in fiduciary activities
 - a fiduciary fund
 - an endowment (permanent or term) or permanent fund

Investments can also be measured using the equity method. Under this method, the investments are recorded at cost and the carrying amount of the investment is adjusted accordingly to reflect earnings, losses, and changes in the investee's share of capital. An asset that was originally reported by a local government entity as a capital asset, but later held for sale should not be reclassified as an investment.

Examples of type of investments types that should be excluded from using the equity method for valuation purposes include:

- Common stock held by:
 - Government external investment pools;
 - Pension or other postemployment benefit plans;
 - Internal Revenue Code Section 457 deferred compensation plans; or
 - Endowments (including permanent and term endowments) or permanent funds.
- Investments in certain entities that calculate the net asset value per share (or its equivalent); and
- Equity interest ownership in joint ventures.

All investment income, including changes in fair value of investments should be recognized as revenue in the financial statements except for those investments held pursuant to irrevocable split-interest agreements.

16.02 Investment Valuation and Disclosure

If it is impractical to obtain investment valuation information from the plan administrator as of the local government's balance sheet date, then the most recent report of the administrator should be used, adjusted for interim contributions and withdrawals.

Local governments that report IRC Section 457 plans should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. D25.101 (Section D25, paragraph .101) for more details concerning the valuation of plan assets if not using their actuarial or plan administrator information. All other plan investments should be reported at fair value.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 3100.102 (Section 3100, paragraph .102) fair value is defined as:

The price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants and measurement date.

Fair value is associated with what the market would potentially pay for a particular commodity, thus the focus on what the seller would receive upon the sale of goods and services. Fair value is sometimes referred to as the exit price (i.e., the price a local government entity would receive for selling assets or pay to dispose liabilities).

Local government entities may use any of the following valuation approaches to measure the fair value of their investments:

- Market Approach: relies on market data involving similar assets and liabilities, including quoted prices, as inputs, they include the use of the market multiples and matrix pricing techniques.
- Cost Approach: estimates the amount a seller of an asset would receive by using information about what a buyer of that asset would have to pay to acquire a comparable asset and adjusting for obsolescence as appropriate.

- Income Approach: uses market conditions to identify expectations about future cash, revenue, or expense flows and converts them into a single current cost measure.

Disclosures concerning the valuation and reporting of the investment assets should cover the techniques employed for the fair value measurement, changes from prior techniques, restrictions in the investments, and investment strategies. The disclosures of component units should be separately stated from the disclosures of the primary government.

Local governments may refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 3100 (Section 3100) and GASB Cod. Sec. I50 (Section I50) for more information on investment valuations and reporting.

16.03 Reverse Repurchase Agreement

A Reverse Repurchase Agreement is an agreement in which a broker-dealer or financial institution (buyer-lender) transfers cash to a governmental entity (seller-borrower); the entity transfers securities to the broker-dealer or financial institution and promises to repay the cash plus interest in exchange for the same securities.

The assets and liabilities arising from reverse repurchase agreements and fixed coupon reverse repurchase agreement should not be netted on the balance sheet. These should be reported under the caption Obligations Under Reverse Repurchase Agreements and the underlying securities should be reported as Investments in the financial statements. Interest costs of reverse repurchase agreements are reported as interest expense/expenditures. The associated interest costs should not be netted with interest earned on any related investments.

If the local government pools money from several funds for investment purposes and the pool (rather than the individual funds) has reverse repurchase agreements, it should report the assets and liabilities arising from the agreements in the balance sheets of the funds that have the risk of loss on those assets. In many cases, this will involve a pro-rata allocation to the various funds based on their equity in the pool. Similarly, the income and costs arising from pooled reverse repurchase agreements should be reported in the operating statements of the funds and activities. If the income from reverse repurchase agreements involving pool securities that represent equity associated with one fund become the assets of another fund because of legal or contractual provisions, the reporting treatment should be based on the specific language of those provisions (exceptions apply).

For additional information on accounting and financial reporting requirements for securities lending transactions, local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. I55 (Section I55).

Securities Lending

16.04 Securities Lending Transactions

Securities Lending Transactions are transfers of securities to broker-dealers and other entities for collateral — that may be cash, securities, or letters of credit — with a simultaneous agreement to return the collateral for the same securities in the future.

Significant items of note concerning these type of transactions are as follows:

- Costs of securities lending transactions, such as borrower rebates (interest costs) and agent fees should be reported as expenditures or expenses in the operating statements. These costs should not be netted with interest revenue or income from the investment of cash collateral, any other related investments, or loan premiums or fees.
- Cash received as collateral on securities lending transactions and investments made with this cash should reported as assets.
- Invested collateral and investments made with that cash should be measured at fair value, some exceptions may apply.
- Securities received as collateral should be reported as assets if the local government has the ability to pledge or sell them without a borrower default.
- Liabilities resulting from these lending transactions should be reported in the balance sheet.
- Securities lent to broker-dealers and other entities should be reported as assets in the balance sheet.
- Securities lending transactions collateralized by letters of credit or by securities that the local government does not have the ability to pledge or sell unless the borrower defaults should not be reported as assets and liabilities in the balance sheet.

If a local government pools money from several funds for investment purposes and the pool (rather than the individual funds) has securities lending transactions, it should report the assets and liabilities arising from the securities lending transactions in the balance sheets of the funds that have the risk of loss on the collateral assets. In many cases, this will involve a pro-rata allocation to the various funds based on their equity in the pool.

Similarly, the income and costs arising from pooled securities lending transactions should be reported in the operating statements of the funds and activities. If the income from the lending pool securities that represent equity owned by one fund becomes the assets of another fund due to legal or contractual provisions, the reporting treatment should be based on the specific language of those provisions (exceptions apply).

For additional information on accounting and financial reporting requirements for securities lending transactions, local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. 160 (Section 160).

16.05 Pooled Interest Allocation

Pooled funds are funds in which aggregations of multiple investors leveraging economies of scale to allow for lower trading costs per dollar. The investments are done as one giant portfolio comprising of a pool of investors. According to Government Code Section 27130, all local agencies including school districts should participate in reviewing the policies that guide the investment of these funds.

California legislature finds and declares that the pooling of deposits is in the interest of the public and creation of county treasury oversight committees will promote the public interest by involving better management, enhanced security, stability, and predictability of investment balances. The board of supervisors in each county or city and county may establish a county treasury oversight committee consisting of 3 to 11 members in consultation with the county treasurer.

If a county establishes a county treasury oversight committee pursuant to Government Code section 27130 et seq., the county treasurer shall annually prepare an investment policy that is to be reviewed and monitored by the oversight committee. In addition, Government Code section 27134 requires that the oversight committee conduct audits to ensure that the county treasury is compliant with the established investment policy.

Any local agency, public agency, public entity, or public official that has funds in the county treasury pool and that seeks to withdraw funds for the purpose of investing or depositing those funds outside the pool, shall first submit the request for withdrawal to the county treasurer before withdrawing funds from the county treasury pool. The county treasurer shall evaluate each proposed withdrawal for consistency with established criteria and also to ensure there are no adverse effects on the interests of other depositors in the county treasury pool.

For further information regarding the county treasury oversight committee and deposit of funds refer to Government Code section 27130 et seq. and Government Code section 53630 et seq. respectively. For those local agencies that do not pool money in deposits of investments with other local agencies, other than local agencies that have the same governing body, refer to Government Code section 53601 for further information.

Government Code section 53647 provides that interest earned on a local agency's deposits shall be paid quarterly to the general fund of the agency unless otherwise directed by law. Alternatively, if directed by the governing body of the local agency, interest shall be paid to the fund containing the principle upon which the interest accrued.

For more information regarding pooled investments and pooled interest allocations please refer to *Local Agency Investment Guidelines* on the California State Treasurer's website at <https://www.treasurer.ca.gov/cdiac/laig/guideline.pdf>.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 17: Demand Bonds and Debt Obligations

Chapter Contents

Introduction 371

Demand Bonds 371

17.01 Demand Bonds 371

Certificates of Participation (COPs) and Conduit Debt Obligations 373

17.02 Certificates of Participation (COPs) 373

17.03 Conduit Debt Obligations 373

Debt Issuance and Refundings 377

17.04 Extinguishment of Debt and Debt Issuance Costs 377

17.05 Debt Refundings 377

17.06 In-Substance Defeasance of Debt 378

17.07 Financial Guarantees 379

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 17: Demand Bonds and Debt Obligations

Introduction

This chapter will provide an overview of the accounting and reporting requirements for demand bonds and conduit debt obligations.

Demand Bonds

17.01 Demand Bonds

Demand bonds are long-term debt issuances with demand (put) provisions that require the issuer or its agent to redeem the bonds within a certain period of time (usually 1 to 30 days) upon receiving notice from the bondholder. The issuer or its agent is required to redeem the bonds at a price equal to the principal plus accrued interest. Demand bonds may have variable interest rates that may be adjusted daily, weekly or monthly. Bonds can have a maturity period up to 30 years or longer. Local governments issue demand bonds so that they can take advantage of lower interest rates available to them in the short-term bond market.

To ensure the ability to redeem the bonds, issuers of demand bonds frequently enter into short-term standby liquidity agreements and long-term arm's-length financing take out agreements (agreements with an unrelated third party, with each acting in his or her own self-interest). Details of demand bond arrangements are required in the note disclosures. Take out agreements occur when a bond issuer makes arrangements with a financial institution to convert their bonds into a loan (generally known as installment loans) which are then payable over a specified period of time.

The demand provisions are exercised at the balance sheet date or statement of net position date or within one year from the date of that statement. Demand bonds should be reported by state and local governmental entities as general long-term liabilities (and reported only in the government-wide statement of net position) or excluded from current liabilities of proprietary funds if all of the following conditions (listed below) are met. If all of the following conditions are not met, the demand bonds should be reported as liabilities in governmental funds, or, in the case of proprietary funds, as current liabilities.

The four conditions that must all be met for demand bonds to be excluded from current liabilities of proprietary funds are as follows:

- a. Before the financial statements are issued, the issuer has entered into an arms-length financing (take out) agreement to convert bonds "put" but not resold into some other form of long-term obligation.
- b. The take out agreement does not expire within one year from the date of the issuer's balance sheet or statement of net position.

- c. The take out agreement is not cancelable by the lender or the prospective lender during that year, and obligations incurred under the take out agreement are not callable by the lender during that year.
- d. The lender or the prospective lender or investor is expected to be financially capable of honoring the take out agreement.

With regard to part “c” (refer to the preceding bulleted list in this section), if the take out agreement is cancelable or callable because of violations that can be objectively determined by both parties and no violations have occurred prior to issuance of the financial statements, then the demand bonds should be classified as general long-term liabilities (and reported in the government-wide statement of net position) or as long-term debt of proprietary funds. If violations have occurred and a waiver has been obtained before issuance of the financial statements, the bonds should be reported in the same manner. Otherwise, the demand bonds should be classified as liabilities in governmental funds or, in the case of proprietary funds, as current liabilities.

If the take out agreement is cancelable or callable because of violations that cannot be objectively determined by both parties, then the agreement does not provide sufficient assurance of long-term financing capabilities and the bonds should be classified as liabilities in governmental funds, or in the case of proprietary funds, as current liabilities.

If the conditions previously listed under “a” – “d” above are not met at the time a demand bond is issued (or prior issuance of the financial statements for that year), then the liability for demand bonds should be recorded as a liability in the fund used to record the proceeds of the bond issue. Typically, this could either be debt service funds or capital projects funds.

In addition to other debt disclosure requirements required by GASB [see GASB Cod. Sec. 2300 (Section 2300) for more details], local governments should include pertinent information in their notes to financial statements in regard to their respective demand bond programs regardless of when the demand provisions are exercisable. This includes:

- Terms of any letters of credit or other standby liquidity arrangements outstanding;
- Commitment fees incurred in obtaining letters of credit;
- Descriptions of take out agreements, including:
 - Expiration date of the take out agreement
 - Commitment fees incurred pertaining to the take out agreement
 - Terms of new obligations under the take out agreement

The notes should also include debt service requirements if the take out agreement is exercised. The disclosures should also separate information concerning direct borrowings and direct placements of debt from other debt. If a take out agreement has been exercised converting the bonds to an installment loan, the installment loans pertaining to the take out agreement should be reported as general long-term debt by local government entities. The payment schedule under the installment loan should be included as part of the schedule of debt service requirements to maturity as required by GASB Cod. Sec. 2300 (Section 2300).

Certificates of Participation (COPs) and Conduit Debt Obligations

17.02 Certificates of Participation (COPs)

A certificate of participation (COP) is a form of long-term asset transfer obligation that is securitized by future lease payments by the local government, rather than by the full faith or credit of the local government. The lease payments arise by virtue of a sale-leaseback arrangement, which is an integral part of the financing. COPs are a form of conduit debt obligation requiring disclosure in the notes to the financial statements.

In a COP program, a trustee is typically appointed to issue the securities that represent a percentage interest in the right to receive payments from the local government under the lease-purchase contract. Investors that participate in the program are given a certificate that entitles each investor to a share, or participation, in the revenue generated from the lease-purchase of the property or equipment to which the COP is tied. The lease and lease payments are passed through the lessor to the trustee, who oversees the distribution of the payment to the certificate holders on a pro-rata basis.

COPs do not require voter approval and also can be issued more quickly than referendum bonds. In addition, COP financing is more complex and generally resembles bond financing. An underwriter of the COP's will be required, as will various fiscal agents. An official statement providing disclosure to investors must be approved by the local government and, in most cases, the local government must contract to make continuing disclosures to SEC Rule 15c2-12 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

COPs are also used as credit instruments by banks to raise funds from other banks in order to ease liquidity. Short-term funds are raised by issuing participation certificates, which involve sharing credit assets with other banks. The rate at which these certificates can be issued will be negotiable, depending on the interest rate scenario.

17.03 Conduit Debt Obligations

Conduit debt obligations are debt instruments issued by a local governmental entity (the issuer) that is for the benefit of a third party that is primarily liable for the repayment of the debt instrument (the third party obligor). A conduit debt obligation has all of the following characteristics:

- a. There are at least three parties involved: an issuer, a third-party obligor, and a debt holder or a debt trustee (there may be more than one third-party obligor, debt holder, or debt trustee).
- b. The issuer and the third-party obligor are not within the same financial reporting entity.
- c. The debt obligation is not a parity bond of the issuer, nor is it cross-collateralized with other debt of the issuer.
- d. The third-party obligor or its agent, not the issuer, ultimately receives the proceeds from the debt issuance.
- e. The third-party obligor, not the issuer, is primarily obligated for the payment of all amounts associated with the debt obligation (debt service payments).

Limited, Additional, and Voluntary Commitments Extended by Issuers Associated with Conduit Debt Obligations

An issuer may extend limited, additional, or voluntary commitments to assist the third party obligor with their conduit debt obligations. Under the limited commitment scenario, the issuer commits at minimum to maintain the issue's tax-exempt status and may facilitate payments from the third party obligor to the debt holder directly or through an agent. The issuer assumes no responsibility for making debt service payments.

Under an additional commitment, the issuer agrees to support debt service payments only in the event the third-party obligor is, or will be, unable to do so. Examples of additional commitments by an issuer include, but are not limited to, the following types:

- a. Extending a moral obligation pledge
- b. Extending an appropriation pledge
- c. Extending a financial guarantee
- d. Pledging its own property, revenue, or other assets as security

Under a voluntary commitment, the issuer decides to make a debt service payment (or request an appropriation for a debt service payment) on a voluntary basis in the event that the third-party obligor is, or will be, unable to do so.

Note: An issuer should not recognize a conduit debt as a liability unless the issuer has made a commitment (Limited, Additional or Voluntary) to pay the debt, exceptions apply.

Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements Prepared Using the Economic Resources Measurement Focus

The issuer must use certain qualitative factors to assess whether it is more than likely that the issuer will support one or more debt service payments. If the qualitative factors indicate that it is more likely than not that the issuer will support one or more debt service payments, then the issuer should recognize a liability associated with an additional commitment to support debt service payments and an expense in financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus. Qualitative factors used to determine whether it is more likely than not that an issuer will support one or more debt service payments include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a third-party obligor initiating the process of entering into bankruptcy or financial reorganization
- a third-party obligor breaching a conduit debt contract in relation to the conduit debt obligation
- a third-party obligor experiencing significant financial difficulty
- termination of the project that was to be the source of funding for debt service payments
- litigation that would negatively affect the project
- the issuer's concern that its access to capital markets could be affected by a third-party obligor's default on an outstanding conduit debt obligation

- the issuer's history of fulfilling its additional commitments to support debt service payments for other conduit debt obligations, including voluntarily supporting debt service payments
- the issuer's ability or willingness to support debt service payments

An issuer who has extended a voluntary commitment should recognize a liability associated with the voluntary commitment to support debt service payments and an expense in financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus, if an analysis of the qualitative factors referenced in the preceding list indicate that it is more likely than not that the issuer will support one or more debt service payments for a conduit debt obligation.

The amount recognized for the liability and expense should be calculated as the discounted present value of the best estimate of the future outflows (i.e., payments to support debt service) expected to be incurred. If a best estimate of future outflows expected to be incurred does not exist but a range of estimated future outflows can be established (in which no amount within the range is a better estimate than any other amount), the discounted present value of the minimum amount in that range should be recognized.

Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements Prepared Using the Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus

An issuer of conduit debt should recognize a fund liability and an expenditure (to the extent that the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources) if the qualitative factors discussed in the preceding subsection indicate that:

- it is more likely than not that the issuer will support debt service payments related to an additional commitment; or
- it is more likely than not that the issuer will support one or more debt service payments through a voluntary commitment.

Usually a fund liability is expected to be liquidated (using expendable available financial resources) when any payments to support a conduit debt obligation is due and payable.

Arrangements Associated with Conduit Debt Obligations

An issuer of conduit debt obligations may enter into arrangements (often characterized as leases) that are associated with conduit debt obligations. These arrangements have all of the following attributes:

- The construction or acquisition of the capital asset is financed with the proceeds from the conduit debt obligation.
- The issuer retains the title to the capital asset from the beginning of the arrangement.
- The payments from the third-party obligor are to cover the debt service payments.
- The payment schedule of the arrangement coincides with the debt service repayment schedule.

Some arrangements may meet the definition of a service concession arrangement (SCA). An SCA is a public-private or public-public partnership (PPP) arrangement (refer to Chapter 15.01, *PPP Definition, Scope, and Applicability* for more information) between a transferor and an operator in which all of the following criteria are met:

- The transferor conveys to the operator the right and related obligation to provide public services through the use and operation of an underlying PPP asset in exchange for significant consideration (e.g., up-front payment, installment payments, a new facility, or improvements to an existing facility).
- The operator collects and is compensated by fees from third parties.
- The transferor determines or has the ability to modify or approve which services the operator is required to provide, to whom the operator is required to provide the services, and the prices or rates that can be charged for the services.
- The transferor is entitled to significant residual interest in the service utility of the underlying PPP asset at the end of the arrangement.

If the arrangement does not meet the definition of a service concession agreement (SCA) as described in the preceding list, the issuer should not report the arrangement as a lease even though it may be referred to as a lease.

Notes to Financial Statements

Note disclosures pertaining to conduit debt should include general descriptions of the issuer's conduit debt obligations, limited commitments, voluntary commitments, and additional commitments, including the (1) legal authority and limits for extending commitments, (2) length of time of the commitments, and (3) arrangements for recovering payments from third-party obligors. Additionally, note disclosures should also include the aggregate outstanding principal amount of all conduit debt obligations that share the same type of commitments at the end of the reporting period.

If the issuer recognizes a liability, as a result of making commitments to assist the third party obligor, the following information should be disclosed in the financial statements:

- a brief description of the timing of recognition and measurement of liability;
- cumulative amount of payments made towards the reduction of liabilities and;
- any amounts expected to be recovered from those payments.

Debt Issuance and Refundings

17.04 Extinguishment of Debt and Debt Issuance Costs

A debtor should consider debt to be extinguished for accounting and reporting purposes in the following circumstances:

- a) The debtor pays the creditor and is relieved of all of its obligations with respect to the debt, provided the debt was extinguished using the debtors own resources and not from other debt proceeds.
- b) The debtor is legally released from being the primary obligor under the debt (judicially or by the creditor) and it is probable that no future payments from the debtor is required.

A difference between reacquisition price and the net carrying amount of the extinguished debt should be recognized in the financial statements as a gain or loss and be identified as a separate item. Gains and losses arising from such transactions should be recognized in the period that the debt is extinguished and not be amortized to future periods.

Debt issuance costs, except any portion related to prepaid insurance costs, should be recognized as an expense in the period incurred. Prepaid insurance costs should be reported as an asset and recognized as an expense in a systematic and rational manner over the duration of the related debt.

17.05 Debt Refundings

Refundings of debt involves the issuance of new debt whose proceeds are used to repay previously issued (i.e., old) debt. The new debt proceeds may be used to repay the old debt immediately (a current refunding), or the proceeds from the new debt proceeds may be placed with an escrow agent to repay the debt at a future time (an advance refunding).

Most advance refundings result in defeasance of debt, which can be either legal or in-substance. A legal defeasance occurs when the debt is legally satisfied based on provisions in the debt instrument even though it is not actually paid. An in-substance defeasance occurs when the debt is considered defeased for accounting and financial reporting purposes, even though a legal defeasance has not occurred. Defeased debt is no longer reported as a liability on the face of the financial statements; only the new debt is reported as a liability.

Advance and current refundings of governmental fund debt reported in the debt accounting records are accounted for as follows:

- The receipt of proceeds of the new debt should be reported in the Other Financing Source — Refunding Bonds account.
- Payments (advance refundings only) to the escrow agent from the new debt should be reported in the Other Financing Use — Payment to Refunded Bond Escrow Agent account. Payments to the escrow agent made from other resources of the entity should be reported as debt service expenditures.
- The debt accounting records should be adjusted for the increase or decrease for debt.

- Appropriate allocations should be made in the government-wide and proprietary or fiduciary financial statements when one large refunding issue is used to refund debt of various fund classifications.

All governmental entities that defease debt through an advance refunding should also provide a general description of the transaction in the notes to the financial statements. Disclosures should include (a) the difference between the cash flows required to service the old debt and the cash flows required to service the new debt and complete the refunding, and (b) the economic gain or loss that arises from the transaction, as defined by GASB Cod. Sec. D20.114 (Section D20, paragraph .114).

For current refundings and advance refundings resulting from a defeasance of debt reported by proprietary funds, the difference between the reacquisition price and net carrying amount of old debt should be reported as a deferred outflow of resource or a deferred inflow of resources and recognized as a component of interest expense in a systematic and rational manner over the remaining life of the old debt or the life of new the debt, whichever is shorter.

17.06 In-Substance Defeasance of Debt

According to GASB Cod. Sec. D20.106 (Section D20, paragraph .106), debt is considered to be defeased in substance for accounting and financial reporting purposes, if the debtor (local government entity) irrevocably places cash or other assets in an essentially risk-free trust (e.g., with an escrow agent) to be used solely for satisfying scheduled payments of both interest and principal of the defeased debt, and the possibility that the local government entity will be required to make future payments on that debt is remote.

In circumstances where the local government entity is only using existing resources to place cash and monetary assets in a trust to defease a debt, proceeds from debt refunding do not qualify as existing resources. To be considered risk-free, the monetary assets are generally limited to obligations guaranteed by the U.S government. This deposit should provide sufficient cash flows in order to guarantee timely payment of the defeasance of debt's principal and interest as scheduled.

When a local government entity has an in-substance defeasance of debt (places cash and other monetary assets acquired with only existing resources with an escrow agent in a trust), the debt should no longer be reported as a liability in the financial statements using the economic resources measurement focus. Any difference between the reacquisition price and net carrying amount of the debt, including deferred inflows and outflows of resources from prior refundings, should be reported separately as a gain or loss in the period of the in-substance defeasance. Any remaining prepaid insurance related to the extinguished debt — legal or in-substance defeasance — should be included when calculating the net carrying amount of the debt. For financial statements using the current financial resources measurement focus, payments to the escrow agent from existing resources should be reported as debt service expenditures.

Local government entities that defease debt using only existing resources should provide a general description of the transaction in the notes to financial statements in the period of the defeasance.

Examples of a general description may include:

- the amount of debt;
- the amount of cash and monetary assets acquired with existing resources placed with the escrow agent;
- reasons for the defeasance; and
- cash flows required to service the defeased debt.

For more information on disclosure requirements related to in-substance defeasance of debt, refer to GASB Cod. Sec. D20.124 – .128 (Section D20, paragraphs .124 – .128).

17.07 Financial Guarantees

A financial guarantee is an agreement to indemnify a third party, should the issuer of the guaranteed obligation not fulfil its requirements under the obligation. A financial guarantee should have at least three legally separate parties:

- The issuer of the obligation being guaranteed;
- Those entitled to payment pursuant to the obligation; and
- The guarantor.

A component unit can be a party to a financial guarantee involving the primary government.

Exchange or Exchange-Like and Nonexchange Financial Guarantees

Financial guarantee issued by the government could either be an exchange or exchange-like financial guarantee or a nonexchange financial guarantee. An exchange or exchange-like financial guarantee is a guarantee of an obligation of a legally separate entity or individual, including a blended or discretely presented component unit, that requires the guarantor to indemnify a third-party obligation holder under specified conditions, in an exchange or exchange-like transaction. In exchange and exchange-like transactions the parties involved give up and receive essentially equal values. Distinguishing exchange and exchange-like transactions comes down to matter of degree where in an exchange-like transaction the values exchanged may not be quite equal or the direct benefits may not be exclusively for the parties to the transaction. A nonexchange financial guarantee is a guarantee of an obligation of a legally separate entity or individual, including a blended or discretely presented component unit, which requires the guarantor to indemnify a third-party obligation holder under specified conditions. In a nonexchange transaction, a government (including the federal government, as a provider) either gives value (benefit) to another party without directly receiving equal value in exchange or receives value (benefit) from another party without directly giving equal value in exchange.

Recognition and Measurement of Nonexchange Financial Guarantees

A government that has extended a nonexchange financial guarantee should consider qualitative factors in assessing the likelihood that the government will be required to make a payment in relation to the guarantee. A government could extend nonexchange financial guarantees to individuals or groups.

When qualitative factors and historical data indicate that it is more likely than not that a government will be required to make a payment related to the nonexchange financial guarantees it extended for liabilities of other entities or individuals, the government should recognize the following:

- Liability and an expense in financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus; or
- Liability and expenditure in financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus, to the extent the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Examples of qualitative factors include bankruptcy, financial reorganization, breach of contract and significant financial difficulty.

Notes to Financial Statements

For exchange and exchange-like financial guarantees, as well as nonexchange financial guarantees, if the cumulative amount disclosed as paid by the government related to a guarantee does not equal the total amounts actually paid on the guarantee because the cumulative amount was determined prospectively at transition, the government should disclose the dates over which the cumulative amount was determined.

A government that extends nonexchange financial guarantees should disclose the following information, by type of guarantee, for all nonexchange financial guarantees, regardless of the likelihood of a payment being required:

- a. A description of the nonexchange financial guarantee, identifying:
 - (1) The legal authority and limits for extending the guarantees and types of obligations guaranteed.
 - (2) The relationship of the government to the issuer or issuers of the obligations that are guaranteed.
 - (3) The length of time of the guarantees.
 - (4) Arrangements for recovering payments from the issuer of the obligations that are guaranteed.
- b. The total amount of guarantees extended that are outstanding at the reporting date.

A government that recognizes a nonexchange financial guarantee liability or has made payments during the reporting period on nonexchange financial guarantees extended should disclose the following information:

- a. A brief description of the timing of recognition and measurement of the liabilities and information about the changes in recognized guarantee liabilities, including the following:
 - (1) Beginning-of-period balances;
 - (2) Increases, including initial recognition and adjustments increasing estimates;
 - (3) Guarantee payments made and adjustments decreasing estimates; and
 - (4) End-of-period balances
- b. Cumulative amounts of indemnification payments that have been made on guarantees extended that are outstanding at the reporting date
- c. Amounts expected to be recovered from indemnification payments that have been made through the reporting date.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 18: Taxes

Chapter Contents

Introduction	385
Governing Statutes	385
18.01 Legal Definitions and Authority	385
Property Taxes	386
18.02 Property Taxes Overview	386
18.03 Assembly Bill 8 (AB 8) Allocation	387
18.04 Redevelopment Agencies	388
18.05 Supplemental Property Taxes.....	389
18.06 Unitary	389
18.07 Pipeline Rights of Way.....	390
18.08 Qualified Railroad Property.....	390
18.09 Homeowners Property Tax Exemption Reimbursement	390
18.10 Property Tax In Lieu of Motor Vehicle License Fee (VLF Swap)	391
18.11 Parcel Taxes.....	393
Sales and Use Taxes.....	393
18.12 Sales and Use Tax	393
18.13 State Public Safety Sales Tax.....	394
Other Taxes.....	394
18.14 Gas Tax	394
18.15 Motor Vehicle License Fee	394
18.16 Business License Tax.....	395
18.17 Transient Occupancy Tax or Hotel Bed Tax	395
18.18 Aircraft Tax	395
18.19 Other In Lieu Taxes	396
Code Reference Charts and Common Taxing Authorities	397
18.20 Common Taxing Authorities.....	397
18.21 Examples of Property Tax Codes	398
18.22 Chart of Tax Apportionment Codes	399
18.23 Special District Tax Codes.....	401

Accounting for Taxes	405
18.24 Accounting for Tax Receipts	405
18.25 Accounting for Property Taxes.....	406
18.26 Advance Collections	417
18.27 Disputed Taxes.....	418
18.28 Alternate Treatment of Tax Apportionment.....	419

Chapter 18: Taxes

Introduction

Local government entities provide a variety of services to their constituents within their specific boundaries. Taxes are an important revenue source and allow governments to provide services such as police, emergency, public health care, and criminal justice services. The purpose of this chapter is to provide an overview of the tax revenues received by local governments.

The legal authority of local taxation is highly complex and, therefore, we recommend that government entities consult with their internal legal counsel and relevant regulatory authorities regarding the interpretation of the law. The tax revenues covered in this chapter are not all-inclusive; local government entities should refer to the legislative provisions that govern them to determine the type of taxes (general or special) they can levy.

Governing Statutes

18.01 Legal Definitions and Authority

As mentioned above, taxes are an important source of revenue for local governments. According to Section 1 of Article XIII C of the California Constitution, tax means “any levy, charge or exaction of any kind imposed by a local government,” exceptions apply.

Taxes that generate revenue for local governments include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Property Taxes
- Sales Taxes
- Use Taxes
- Payroll Taxes
- Excise Taxes

According to Article XIII C of the California Constitution, the following do not qualify as taxes:

- A charge imposed for a specific benefit conferred or privilege granted directly to the payor that is not provided to those not charged, and which does not exceed the reasonable costs to the local government of conferring the benefit or granting the privilege.
- A charge imposed for a specific government service or product provided directly to the payor that is not provided to those not charged, and which does not exceed the reasonable costs to the local government of providing the service or product.
- A charge imposed for the reasonable regulatory costs to a local government for issuing licenses and permits, performing investigations, inspections, and audits, enforcing agricultural marketing orders, and the administrative enforcement and adjudication thereof.
- A charge imposed for entrance to or use of local government property, or the purchase, rental, or lease of local government property.

- A fine, penalty, or other monetary charge imposed by the judicial branch of government or a local government, as a result of a violation of law.
- A charge imposed as a condition of property development.
- Assessments and property-related fees imposed in accordance with the provisions of Article XIII D of the California Constitution.

According to Government Code section 53721, taxes fall into one of two categories: general taxes or special taxes. General taxes are imposed for general governmental purposes and special taxes are imposed for specific purposes.

According to Government Code section 53723, general taxes require a majority-vote of approval by the taxpayers, whereas Government Code section 53722 requires two-thirds approval by the voters to levy a special tax. Section 2(a) of Article XIII C of the California Constitution prohibits special districts from levying general taxes.

Government Code section 50075 et seq. allows local government entities to levy special taxes. Special taxes are non-ad valorem in nature as they are not based on assessed values of a property. Refer to section 18.23, *Special District Tax Codes*, concerning the types of special taxes that could possibly be levied by special districts.

While the focus of this chapter is tax revenues, it is important to note that apart from taxes, local governments have other forms of revenues. These revenues include services charges, fees, benefit assessments, bond issues, and grants received from the state and federal governments.

Property Taxes

18.02 Property Taxes Overview

Counties, cities, and special districts (typically nonenterprise special districts) are recipients of property tax revenues. For most local government entities, property taxes are a major source of revenue. Property taxes are ad valorem in nature as they are based on the assessed value of a property. Revenue and Taxation Code section 2202 defines ad valorem property taxation as a source of revenue derived from applying a property tax rate to the assessed value of the property.”

According to Section 1 of Article XIII of the California Constitution, all property is taxable unless otherwise provided by California’s constitution or the laws of the United States. According to Section 2 of Article XIII of the California Constitution, property taxes are imposed on the following types of property:

- Real property — examples include land and buildings; and
- Tangible personal property (movable property) — examples include boats, aircraft and business equipment.

Property values are accounted for on property tax rolls (i.e., lists) maintained primarily by the county assessor. Entries on the tax rolls include the parcel numbers, assessee name, and value. The various types of rolls are (see Appendix B for definition of the rolls listed below):

- Secured
- Unsecured
- State assessed
- Supplemental
- Redemption
- Delinquent unsecured

The Revenue and Taxation Code section prescribes distribution formulas and methods for the different types of property tax levies. According to Section 1(a) of Article XIII A of the California Constitution, the maximum amount of any ad valorem tax on real property shall not exceed one percent (1%) of the full cash value of such property (refer to Section 1(b) of Article XIII A of the California State Constitution for the exceptions to this limitation). Special taxes, assessments, fees and charges, are distributed directly to jurisdictions within the counties.

18.03 Assembly Bill 8 (AB 8) Allocation

The apportionment of property tax revenues to jurisdictions is comprised of an ad valorem rate for voter-approved debt and the countywide 1% levy by tax rate area (TRA). The amounts are totaled countywide for each debt fund and the 1% levy. The 1% portion is distributed to jurisdictions by percentage factors computed pursuant to the formulas contained in section 95, et seq., of the Revenue and Taxation Code section (commonly referred to as AB 8).

Prior to the passage of Proposition 13 (which added Article XIII A to the California Constitution) in June 1978, tax rates were annually computed, adopted, and levied for the general operations and general obligation bonds of schools, cities, counties, and special districts. The individual rates were combined by TRA and the total rate computed for each TRA was used to compute individual tax bills.

With the enactment of Proposition 13, individual jurisdictions were precluded from levying a rate for operations and a countywide maximum rate of 1% was levied for all jurisdictions. The enabling legislation contained a one-year property tax distribution method that ensured that each jurisdiction that levied a rate in FY 1977-78 would receive a share of the maximum rate levied. The basis for this one-year formula for cities, counties, and special districts was the average percentage of all property taxes received in the three fiscal years prior to the FY 1978-79. The pro rata distribution for schools was based only on the FY 1977-78 property tax revenues received.

Due to the shortcomings of the FY 1977-78 formula, the Legislature enacted both Assembly Bill 8 (AB 8) and Assembly Bill 1019 in 1979; these bills introduced a new formula for the distribution of property tax revenues.

The key feature of AB 8 was the creation of a property tax base for each jurisdiction that would increase in proportion to the growth in assessed values. The base also includes adjustments for the FY 1978-79 block grant or bailout amounts received by counties, cities, and special districts.

In general, each jurisdiction receives the amount it received in the prior year plus its share of any growth in property tax within its boundaries.

The property tax revenue base for cities, counties, and special districts was comprised of:

- The property tax revenue received in FY 1978-79; and
- Adjusted State bailout amounts.

Annually each city, county, special district, and school fund is allocated an amount equal to the amount it received in the prior fiscal year plus a proportionate share of the change in property tax revenues arising from the change in assessed valuation in the TRAs it occupies, and has an allocation factor computed for it. The computations are based on the equalized roll valuation.

Provisions were also made for local districts to negotiate the exchange of property tax revenues as a result of annexations, the formation of new districts, or the incorporation of cities. A resolution by the county board of supervisors is generally required in all cases.

In FY 1992-93 and FY 1993-94, the State Legislature shifted property taxes from local agencies to schools, using newly created Educational Revenue Augmentation Fund (ERAF), in effect reversing the FY 1978-79 bailouts. Counties incorporated these shifts into the AB 8 process using one of two allowable methods:

- A TRA level model, under which each ERAF was allocated base tax and an increment factor for each TRA, or
- A jurisdictional model, which instead added an annual shift calculation and adjustment to the AB 8 apportionment amounts to each affected jurisdiction.

For more information on property tax allocations, local governments should refer to Revenue and Taxation Code section 96 et seq.

18.04 Redevelopment Agencies

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code section 34161 et seq., redevelopment agencies were dissolved and their functions were transferred to successor agencies. Health and Safety Code section 34182 et seq., also transferred property tax revenues that would have gone to redevelopment agencies to pay for debts and obligations incurred by the redevelopment agencies. Once the debts and other obligations of former redevelopment agencies have been settled, the property tax revenue that would have gone to their successor agencies will be distributed to schools, cities, counties and special districts.

For more information on property taxes, local governments should refer to Revenue and Taxation Code section 50 et seq., and the California State Board of Equalization (BOE) website, at <http://www.boe.ca.gov>. Property tax legislative references are also covered in section 18.21, *Examples of Property Tax Codes*.

18.05 Supplemental Property Taxes

Supplemental property taxation is governed by Revenue and Taxation Code section 75 et seq. A supplemental tax is the result of a reassessment of real property when there is a change of ownership or completion of new construction, as long as the real property does not qualify for reassessment exclusion. This supplemental reassessment procedure became effective for FY 1983-84 forward.

Supplemental taxes can be either secured or unsecured. They can also be initially secured assessments changed to unsecured if a change of ownership occurs before the bill or refund from a previous supplemental assessment is mailed.

As supplemental taxes are an extended form of secured and unsecured taxes, many of the procedures are similar. This section concentrates on the unique aspects of supplemental taxes.

Supplemental reassessments can result in either an increase or a decrease in taxable value. Usually an increase will produce a bill and a decrease will produce a negative assessment, commonly referred to as a supplemental refund. If supplemental refunds are not made within 90 days of enrollment of the negative assessment on the supplemental tax roll, and the resulting tax from which the supplemental refund is paid in full, then according to the provisions of Revenue and Taxation Code section 5151, interest is computed. Supplemental refunds are made from taxes collected on the supplemental roll.

Supplemental taxes are on a continuous roll. They are processed throughout the fiscal year and initiated when a transfer of ownership occurs or new construction is completed. The date of that transfer or completion is called the supplemental event. Taxes are calculated by using the supplemental event and prorating the amount due based on the number of full months remaining through the end of the fiscal year.

18.06 Unitary

The information discussed in this chapter section is concerning State assessed properties classified as unitary. Revenue and Taxation Code section 100 et seq., provides the method by which unitary properties are billed and apportioned. For these purposes, there are three types of unitary property:

- Unitary Property: A group of properties that operate as a unit as part of the primary function of the assessee;
- Operating Nonunitary: A group of properties that operate as a unit but is not a part of the primary function of the assessee; and
- Nonoperating Nonunitary: Properties that do not operate as a unit and are not part of the primary function of the assessee.

The State Board of Equalization (BOE) assesses and reports to the counties the values of all unitary properties. Counties are then responsible for billing, collecting and apportioning the taxes associated with those values. Nonoperating nonunitary values are reported as one combined value in each TRA.

These values are then billed and apportioned in a manner similar to all other secured taxes, but have a separate apportionment factor. Unitary and operating nonunitary values for each unitary property are reported as one combined value in each county and are subject to these guidelines.

Unitary and operating nonunitary values are reported by BOE in TRA 000-001, which is a BOE designated TRA established to report these values. This TRA includes one value for each assessee. As unitary and operating nonunitary values are reported as a single countywide value for each assessee, they cannot be associated with a particular tax rate. It is, therefore, necessary to develop a special unitary tax rate. This tax rate consists of the 1% ad valorem tax rate and a unitary debt service ad valorem tax rate.

For detailed information concerning the computation of the one percent unitary tax rate and the appropriate allocations, refer to BOE's State Assessment Manual located on the BOE website at <http://www.boe.ca.gov>.

18.07 Pipeline Rights of Way

The information discussed in this section is concerning State assessed properties classified as pipeline rights-of-way.

Revenue and Taxation Code sections 100.01 and 401.8 outline the manner in which counties will assess intercounty pipeline rights-of-way. Sacramento Municipal Utilities District (SMUD) has an exception for a Pacific Gas & Electric (PG&E) pipeline that runs through 20 counties. Counties are responsible for billing, collecting, and apportioning the taxes associated with those values.

Taxing at the 1% general tax rate and debt service rates are the same as unitary, but have separate apportionment factors. Billing and collection activities are the same as unitary. The TRA used for pipeline rights-of-way is TRA 000-511.

18.08 Qualified Railroad Property

The information discussed in this section is concerning State assessed properties classified as qualified railroad property.

Revenue and Taxation Code section 100.11 outlines the manner in which qualified railroad property will be assessed. Counties are responsible for billing, collecting, and apportioning the taxes associated with those values. Taxing at the 1% general tax rate and debt service rates are the same as unitary, but have separate apportionment factors. Billing and collection activities are the same as unitary. The TRA used for railroad property is TRA 000-002.

18.09 Homeowners Property Tax Exemption Reimbursement

Pursuant to the provisions of Revenue and Taxation Code section 218, a homeowner who resides principally on his/her property as of January 1st is entitled to a maximum of \$7,000 value reduction. The lost tax revenues resulting from granting the exemption to the homeowner is reimbursed by the State to the applicable taxing entities.

The claim for reimbursement includes the following:

1. (A) Current secured and unsecured homeowners exempted value times total tax rate by TRA.
(B) Supplemental roll homeowners exempted value times the tax rate, times prorated dates (if applicable) by TRA.
2. For any prior-year homeowner adjustment that has not previously been claimed, take the exempted value times the rate by TRA. This must be reported by the appropriate year of loss.

Once the amount by TRA has been determined, it is applied against the TRA allocation percentage. This will provide an amount relative to 1%, to be applied against current-year AB 8 factors, and the amount for all debt service funds. A summary showing total amount by fund type (schools, special districts, cities and counties) must be sent with the claim.

Payment is received from the State on or before the following dates and must be distributed within ten days:

Date	%
November 30th	15%
December 31st	35%
April 30th	35%
May 31st	15%

18.10 Property Tax In Lieu of Motor Vehicle License Fee (VLF Swap)

Enacted in FY 2004-05, Revenue and Taxation Code section 97.70 permanently provides additional property tax revenues to local government entities in lieu of the discretionary Motor Vehicle License Fee (VLF) revenue these entities previously received. This is commonly referred to as the VLF Swap. This was done so that local governments would be compensated for the loss of VLF revenue.

The Vehicle License Fee Adjustment Amount (VLF adjustment), as defined in Revenue and Taxation Code section 97.70(c)(1), will be funded by means of a reduction to the Educational Revenue Augmentation Fund (ERAF) amount available for allocation to all school districts and community college districts within the county in accordance with Revenue and Taxation Code section 97.70(a)(1)(A). If the ERAF fund is insufficient to fund the VLF adjustment amount, the county auditor shall reduce the total amount of ad valorem property tax revenue that is otherwise required to be allocated to all school districts and community college districts in the county for that fiscal year by an amount equal to the difference between the countywide VLF adjustment amount and the amount of ad valorem property tax revenue that is otherwise required to be allocated to the county ERAF for that fiscal year.

The process described in the preceding paragraph is in accordance with the provisions of Revenue and Taxation Code section 97.70(a)(1)(B) and in conjunction with 97.70(f)(1). For the purposes of completing this activity, school districts and community college districts do not include any districts that are excess tax school entities, as defined in Revenue and Taxation Code section 95(n).

It is recommended that the VLF Swap be done at the jurisdictional level (outside of the AB 8 process) because it is an exchange of discretionary vehicle license fees for Property Tax in Lieu of Vehicle License Fee. Although these in-lieu taxes are classified as property taxes, they are not secured property taxes or unsecured property taxes in the traditional sense, but are originated from each county's ERAF fund.

Each county will establish the Vehicle License Fee Property Tax Compensation Fund (VLF Compensation Fund) to deposit property tax revenues equal to the determined VLF Adjustment amounts (RTC, §97.70(a)(2)). In addition, a revenue account called the Property Tax in Lieu of Vehicle License Fee will be created for each county and city to record the allocation of revenues from the VLF Compensation Fund.

For more information on property taxes, local governments should refer to the California State Board of Equalization (BOE) website, at <http://www.boe.ca.gov>. Property tax legislative references are also covered in section 18.21, *Examples of Property Tax Codes*.

Example:

Method of Allocations

Secured and Unsecured Tax Rolls and Homeowners Exemption: Transfer the FY 2004–05 VLF Adjustment amounts as determined by the State Controller from the *ERAF* to the *VLF Compensation Fund*. Record the allocations from the *VLF Compensation Fund* to the newly created revenue account Property Tax in Lieu of Vehicle License Fee.

Timing and Entry of Allocations

Distribute the 1st half of the VLF Adjustment amount on or before January 31st and the second half of the VLF Adjustment amount on or before May 31st of each fiscal year, as defined in Revenue and Taxation Code section 97.70(b)(2).

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Educational Revenue Augmentation Fund:		
Cash	DR: \$9,500,000	
Due to VLF Compensation fund		CR: \$9,500,000
Due to VLF Compensation	DR: \$9,500,000	
Cash		CR: \$9,500,000
(To record allocations from the VLF Compensation Fund)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
VLF Compensation Fund:		
Cash	DR: \$9,500,000	
Due to City of Zinfandel		CR: \$50,000
Due to City of Shiraz		CR: \$1,050,000
Due to City of Merlot		CR: \$2,400,000
Due to County of Wine		CR: \$6,000,000
Due to City of Zinfandel	DR: \$50,000	
Due to City of Shiraz	DR: \$1,050,000	
Due to City of Merlot	DR: \$2,400,000	
Due to County of Wine	DR: \$6,000,000	
Property Tax In Lieu of VLF - City of Zinfandel		CR: \$50,000
Property Tax In Lieu of VLF - City of Shiraz		CR: \$1,050,000
Property Tax In Lieu of VLF - City of Merlot		CR: \$2,400,000
Property Tax In Lieu of VLF - County of Wine		CR: \$6,000,000
(To record allocations from the VLF Compensation Fund to the newly created Property Tax In Lieu of VLF Fund)		

18.11 Parcel Taxes

According to Government Code section 54930 et seq., parcel tax means:

A tax levied by a local agency upon any parcel of property identified using the assessor's parcel number system, or upon any person as an incident of property ownership pursuant to Section 4 of Article XIII A of the California Constitution, that is collected via the property tax bill.

Parcel taxes are considered special taxes according to Proposition 218 (Article XIII C and XIII D, 1996) and are non-ad valorem in nature, as they are not based on the assessed value of a property. Parcel taxes are usually calculated based on a wide variety of parcel characteristics such as parcel area, land use, etc. and are not based on the assessed value of a property. According to Section 3 of Article XIII D of the California Constitution, parcel taxes require two-thirds majority vote, even if they are levied for any general purposes.

Sales and Use Taxes

18.12 Sales and Use Tax

All consumers are familiar with the concept of sales tax. Every time a tangible item is purchased from a store, a sales tax is imposed on the item purchased. The sales tax a consumer pays is actually imposed on the retailer by either a city or a county, but some exceptions apply. Most services are also exempt from sales tax.

The base statewide sales and use tax rate is 7.25%. The sales and use tax rate can be higher than the statewide base rate and vary from one taxing district (not special districts) to another because taxing districts can also impose one or more district taxes pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 7261 et seq.

According to Revenue and Taxation section 7202(h)(1), payment of the city sales tax is credited against the payment of the county sales tax — in this way, the purchaser only pays once for the sales tax.

In addition to sales tax, local voters may authorize additional transaction and use tax. Local government entities can levy transactions and use tax pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 7285 et seq. Transactions and use taxes usually apply to use, storage or other consumption of goods. Revenue and Taxation section 7251.1 caps the combined rate for transactions and use tax at 2%.

Not all special districts can levy transaction and use taxes. Local governments should refer to the statutes that created them to determine whether they can levy transaction and use taxes, pursuant to Revenue and Taxation section 7251 et seq.

Pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 7284 et seq., and Government Code section 37100 et seq., local government entities may impose utility tax on the consumption of electricity, gas, water, sewer, telephone and cable television services. Utility companies usually collect the utility user taxes via their billing process and remit the tax to the local government entity that imposed them. Any increase of a local tax requires voter approval.

For more information on sales and use tax, local governments should refer to Revenue and Taxation Code section 6001 et seq., and the California Department of Tax and Fee Administration (CDTFA) website, at <https://www.cdtfa.ca.gov>. The CDTFA website also contains the latest information on sales and use tax rates applicable to cities and counties.

18.13 State Public Safety Sales Tax

Proposition 172 imposed a one-half percent sales tax to be used by local governments on local public safety. These funds are collected by the BOE and made available to the State Controller's Office to apportion to counties based on its share of statewide taxable sales. Local governments may refer to Government Code section 30051 et seq. and section 35 of Article XIII of the California Constitution for more details.

Other Taxes

18.14 Gas Tax

Pursuant to various provisions of the Revenue and Taxation Code section, the State imposes a tax on each gallon of gasoline and diesel fuel. These funds are apportioned to local governments pursuant to the various provisions of the Streets and Highways Code. Local governments should use these tax revenues for research, planning, construction, improvement and maintenance of public streets, highways and mass transit.

18.15 Motor Vehicle License Fee

The Motor Vehicle License Fee is a tax imposed and collected by the State on the ownership of a registered vehicle. Counties receive these revenues to fund certain health, social service and public safety programs that were realigned to counties in 1991 and 2011.

18.16 Business License Tax

Local government entities may impose a business license tax on persons and entities pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 7284 et seq., and Government Code section 37100 et seq. Voter approval is necessary to impose a business license tax.

Business license tax rates are set individually by local government entities, and may be based on a number of factors, including total business revenue, quantity of goods sold, number of employees, or square footage of the business. Local government entities may also levy business license tax rates at a flat rate. Generally, business license taxes are not levied for any specific purposes; they usually fall within the purview of a general tax.

18.17 Transient Occupancy Tax or Hotel Bed Tax

Pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 7280 et seq., local government entities may impose transient occupancy taxes on people occupying hotels, motels or similar types of lodging, including mobile homes, for a period of 30 days or less. Local governments that are allowed to levy the transient occupancy tax may set their own transient occupancy rates. Any increase of a local tax requires voter approval.

18.18 Aircraft Tax

Aircraft is taxed at the same rate and in the same manner as all other personal property. Distribution of this tax is determined pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 5451 et seq.

Example:

- a) Taxable aircraft within the county is assessed at a market value of \$630,000. Aircraft taxes of \$6,300 are charged off on the unsecured roll:

Unapportioned Tax Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – current – unsecured	DR: \$6,300	
Due to other funds and other governments – aircraft taxes		CR: \$6,300
(To record the aircraft tax charge on the unsecured roll)		

- b) \$6,300 in aircraft taxes is collected:

Unapportioned Tax Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$6,300	
Taxes Receivable – current – unsecured		CR: \$6,300
(To record the collection of aircraft taxes)		

18.19 Other In Lieu Taxes

County-Levied taxes for which a revenue account has not otherwise been provided are posted to the Other Taxes account. Following is a brief description of each.

Timber Yield Tax (Revenue and Taxation Code section 38101 et seq.)

The timber yield tax is a State tax that is authorized under subdivision (j) of Section 3 of Article XIII of the Constitution for the stated purpose of encouraging the continued use of timberlands for the production of trees for timber products (stats. 1976, Ch. 176, p. 324, in effect May 24, 1976). This yield tax is actually a payment in lieu of ad valorem property taxes.

The Timber Yield Tax Fund is administered by the California Department of Tax and Fee Administration (CDTFA). The in lieu tax is based on cut timber only and the rate and values are determined based on numerous criteria. Each person/company cutting timber must apply for a permit to do so. A Timber Tax Return is filed quarterly and payments are made to the CDTFA. The payments are accumulated and, on November 30 and May 31 of each fiscal year, the Controller must transmit to the county treasurers the balance in the Timber Tax Fund on those dates. The State allocates to each county its percentage share of the Timber Yield Fund after reimbursement of the State's costs. CDTFA provides a reconciliation with the payment.

Upon receipt of the amount certified by the Controller, the auditor shall distribute to each taxing agency its share within 10 days. The amount due to each taxing agency is determined using an average timber tax dollar received for FYs 1972–73, 1973–74, and 1974–75. Adjustments to schools for their share of any area-wide monies and to colleges based on Government Code section 27423(b) are included in this average. A percentage of each entity to the full average timber tax dollar is determined and these factors are used in all subsequent years to allocate the amounts received from CDTFA. The value of the timber per the assessor or CDTFA is determined and an estimate of the FY 1972–73 to FY 1974–75 averaging years is made. The above calculation of factors is redone based on this shift of timber value.

State Highway Property Rental (Streets and Highways Code section 104.13)

The Department of Transportation (DOT), under Streets and Highways Code (SHC) section 104.6, is given the authority to acquire land for future needs. DOT is also authorized to lease the property acquired until needed for highway expansion. The total of the lease payments received is deposited in the State Highway Account in the State Transportation Fund. Twenty-four percent of such rent is allocated pursuant to section 104.10 of the Streets and Highways Code.

No later than the first day of November following the close of the fiscal year, DOT shall pay rents computed pursuant to SHC section 104.6. DOT certifies to the Department of Finance the amount of such rentals attributable to each county and notifies the county of location and the rental amount of each property within the county's jurisdiction.

Upon receipt of the State's payment, the county auditor shall distribute any payment received pursuant to this section to each revenue district for which the county is the assessing and collecting agent, and to every other taxing agency within the county in which the property is situated in the amount as determined by the board of supervisors, with the following exception: one-half of the allocation for a rental property shall be allocated to the city in which the rental property is located. DOT should be notified if the revenue received is not sufficient to pay the total tax due.

Fish and Game Tax (Fish and Game Code section 1504)

The Department of Fish and Game acquires real property within counties for the specific purposes of wildlife management and preservation. The property tax revenue loss to the county is reimbursable as an in lieu tax under Fish and Game Code section 1504. This tax dollar value is determined at the time of acquisition by the State and does not increase with changes in tax rate or market value.

An annual billing is submitted (usually in September or October) to the Department of Fish and Game for payment. Payments are allocated to the entities based on the billing year's AB 8 factors.

Racehorse Tax (Revenue and Taxation Code Section 5721)

A tax in lieu of a property tax is imposed on the privilege of breeding, training, caring for, or racing racehorses (such as thoroughbreds) in the State. The annual tax is imposed accordingly to Revenue and Taxation Code section 5721. Distribution of the in lieu tax is determined pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 5790.

Housing Authority in Lieu (Health and Safety Code section 34401)

The property of a housing authority is exempt from all taxes and special assessments of the State or any city, county, or political subdivision of the State. In lieu of such taxes or special assessments, the authority may agree to make payments to any agency of the State for services, improvements, or facilities furnished by such agency for the benefit of the housing project owned by the authority. These payments shall not exceed the estimated cost to the agency of the services, improvements, or facilities.

Code Reference Charts and Common Taxing Authorities

18.20 Common Taxing Authorities

Local governments may impose other taxes based on provisions of the law. Examples include documentary transfer tax, admission taxes, parking taxes, and construction/development taxes. Local governments can also refer to Revenue and Taxation Code section 6001 et seq. to obtain more information on other tax provisions that may be applicable to them.

Apart from Sales and Use Tax, the CDTFA administers over 30 special tax and fee programs. To obtain more information, local governments should refer to the CDTFA website, at <https://www.cdtfa.ca.gov/taxes-and-fees>.

In addition to property taxes, the BOE also administers other tax programs such as the Alcoholic Beverage Tax. For more information on the tax programs administered by the BOE local governments should refer to the BOE website, at <http://www.boe.ca.gov>.

The Office of Tax Appeals is an appeals body that was created by the Taxpayer Transparency and Fairness Act (2017). This agency was established to hear appeals from the California taxpayers regarding various taxes and fees administered by the CDTFA and the Franchise Tax Board. For more information on the Office of Tax Appeals refer to their website at <https://ota.ca.gov>.

18.21 Examples of Property Tax Codes

The legislative references identified in this section may be applicable to local governments, however they should be considered in conjunction with other provisions of the law.

Purpose/Program	Code sections Potentially Applicable to Local Governments
Property Tax Rate Limit	Section 1 of Article XIII A of the California Constitution
AB 8 Base Year Calculations	RTC section 50 et seq.
Change in Ownership and New Construction	RTC section 60 et seq.
Assessments on Supplemental Rolls	RTC section 75.10 et seq.
Notice of Assessment and Assessment Appeals	RTC section 75.31 et seq.
Collection of Supplemental	RTC section 75.50 et seq.
Reimbursement of County Costs	RTC section 75.60 et seq.
Disposition of Revenues	RTC section 75.70 et seq.
Property Tax Rates	RTC section 93 et seq.
Allocation of Property Tax Revenue (also known as AB 8 Allocations)	RTC section 95 et seq.
Allocation of Unitary Property Tax	RTC section 100 et seq.
Assessments	RTC section 201 et seq.
Homeowners Property Tax Exemption	RTC section 218 et seq.
Assessment Roll	RTC section 601 et seq.
Assessments by State Board of Equalization	RTC section 721 et seq.
Equalization (County Board)	RTC section 1601 et seq.
Alternate Method of Computing Levies	RTC section 2131 et seq.
Collection of Taxes	RTC section 2501 et seq.
Tax Sales	RTC section 3351 et seq.
Redemption	RTC section 4101 et seq.
Distributions — Secured Roll	RTC section 4653 et seq.
Distributions — Unsecured roll	RTC section 4655 et seq.
Distributions — Redemptions	RTC section 4656 et seq.
Distributions — Delinquent Unsecured Roll	RTC section 4658 et seq.
Districts Located In More Than Once County: Alternative Method of Distribution of Tax Levies and Collections	RTC section 4701 et seq.
Corrections of Property Taxes	RTC section 4801 et seq.
Cancellations of Property Taxes and Assessments	RTC section 4985 et seq.
Refunds of Property Taxes	RTC section 5096 et seq.
Aircraft Assessment and Taxation	RTC section 5301 et seq.
Taxation of Race Horses	RTC section 5701 et seq.
Taxation of Manufactured Homes	RTC section 5800 et seq.

18.22 Chart of Tax Apportionment Codes

The following chart provides an overview of how property taxes are apportioned by counties. It is not intended to be a complete list of items apportioned. For additional detail, refer to the codes listed in the Comments column of the chart.

Current Roll:

Tax Type	Tax Rates	AB 8 Apportionment Factors	Penalty Distribution**	Comments
Secured/Utility	CY	CY	County General Fund	RTC §4653 – 4653.8
Unitary	CY	CY	County General Fund	Unique levy & distribution RTC §100, §100.11 (previously RTC §98.9–98.10)
Unsecured	PY	CY	County General Fund	RTC 2905 RTC §4655–4655.4 RTC 5392 - 5456
Supplemental	PY or AYR	PY or AYR	County General Fund	Admin Fee RTC §75.6 Other distr. RTC §75.70–75.72
Fixed charges	N/A	N/A	County General Fund	N/A

Prior Roll:

Tax Type	Tax Rates	AB 8 Apportionment Factors	Penalty Distribution**	Comments
Secured (Redemption)	PY	PY	Counties Follows Taxes	RTC §4656.2–4656.7**
Unsecured	PY	PY	County General Fund	RTC §4658.2–4658.4
Supplemental Except FY 1983–84 FY 1983–84	PY or AYR N/A	PY or AYR N/A	Counties Follows Taxes Counties Follows Taxes	Admin Fee RTC §75.60. Other dist. RTC §75.70–75.72 Apportioned based on ADA RTC §75.70
Fixed Charges	N/A	N/A	Counties Follows Assessments	RTC §4656.3

Miscellaneous:

Tax Type	Tax Rates	AB 8 Apportionment Factors	Penalty Distribution**	Comments
Change of Ownership Statement Penalty	N/A	N/A	County General Fund	RTC §4653.7
Timber	N/A	N/A	N/A	RTC §38905.1
Racehorse	N/A	N/A	N/A	1/3 ea. cities, general fund, schools RTC §5790
Homeowners	N/A	N/A	N/A	RTC §218
Tax-Defaulted Land Sales	PY or AYR	PY or AYR	Refer to RTC Codes	N/A
Airplane	N/A	N/A	N/A	1/3 each: cities, county general fund, schools; RTC §5451–5456
State Highway Prop Rental	N/A	N/A	N/A	Streets and Highways Code §104.10
Fish & Game Tax	AYR	AYR	N/A	Fish and Game Code §1504
Interest on Unapportioned taxes	N/A	N/A	N/A	Distribution based on taxes paid to each jurisdiction

Legend:

Abbreviation	Definition
CY	Current Year — All costs are distributed to the County General Fund for use by the Tax Collector
PY	Prior Year — All costs are distributed to the County General Fund for use by the Tax Collector
AYR	Applicable Year Rate
N/A	Not applicable
**	Except alternate method of tax apportionment. Penalties collected by counties for amounts under the alternate method are deposited into the Tax Losses Reserve Fund.

18.23 Special District Tax Codes

Note: Given the incremental nature of legislation, the table below is not all-inclusive.

Code Abbreviations:

GOV= Government Code

HNC= Harbors and Navigation Code

HSC= Health and Safety Code

MVC= Military and Veterans Code

PRC = Public Resources Code

PUC = Public Utilities Code

WAT = Water Code

Purpose/Program	Authority	Agency	Notes
Airports	PUC §22901 et seq.	Any airport district	Special tax
Ambulance / Paramedic Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Cemeteries	HSC §9080 et seq.	Any public cemetery district	Special tax
Child Care Facilities	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Child Care Facilities Insurance	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Community Service or Facilities	GOV §61120 et seq.	Any community services district	Special Tax
Facilities	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Fire Protection and Suppression Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Fire Protection and Prevention Services	GOV §53970 et seq.	Any special district which provides fire protection or prevention services	Special Tax
Fire Protection Services	HSC §13910 et seq.	Any fire protection district	Special Tax
Flood and Storm Water Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Harbor Improvement or Development	HNC §6090 et seq.	Any harbor district	Special tax
Hazardous Substance Cleanup Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Health Care	GOV §53730.01 et seq.	Any local health care district	Special Tax

Purpose/Program	Authority	Agency	Notes
Interest Payments on Voter Approved indebtedness	CA Constitution Art. XIII A, §1(b)	Any special district	Ad valorem property taxes exceeding the Statewide maximum rate of 1% may be levied to pay interest on indebtedness approved by the voters before July 1, 1978, or indebtedness for the acquisition or improvement of real property approved by two-thirds vote after July 1, 1978.
Library Facilities	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Library Facilities and Services	GOV §53717 et seq.	Library district	Special tax
Library Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Lighting of Parks, Parkways, Streets, Roads, and Open Space	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Memorial Halls, Buildings, or Meeting Places	MVC §1190 et seq.	Any memorial district	Special tax
Mosquito Abatement and Vector Control	HSC §2080 et seq.	Any mosquito abatement and vector district	Special tax and Mello-Roos Act
Museum and Cultural Facilities, Operations and Maintenance	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Open Space Acquisition Preservation or Maintenance	PRC §35170 et seq.	Santa Clara Open Space Authority	Special tax
Park, Recreation, Parkway, and Open Space Facilities	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Park, Recreation, and Open Space Facilities and Recreation Services	PRC §5789 et seq.	Any recreation and park district	Special tax and Mello-Roos Act

Code Abbreviations:**GOV= Government Code****HNC= Harbors and Navigation Code****HSC= Health and Safety Code****MVC= Military and Veterans Code****PRC = Public Resources Code****PUC = Public Utilities Code****WAT = Water Code**

Purpose/Program	Authority	Agency	Notes
Parks, Parkways, and Open Space, Maintenance Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Pest Abatement	HSC §2870 et seq.	Any pest abatement special district	Special tax
Pleasure Riding	GOV §53940 et seq.	Any regional park district	Special tax on horses, mules, and other trail-riding animals. Not to exceed \$10 per animal
Police Protection Services	GOV §53970 et seq.	Any special district authorized to provide police protection services	Special tax
Police Protection Services	HSC §20101 et seq.	Any police protection district	Special tax
Police Protection and Criminal Justice Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Port Operation and Development	HNC §6360 et seq.	Any port district	Special tax
Recreation Program Services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Resource Conservation	PRC §9501 et seq.	Any resource conservation district	Special tax
School Facilities Maintenance Services for Elementary and Secondary School Sites	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Seismic Safety Work on Buildings and Real Property	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Soil Deterioration Repair and Abatement	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Street and Road Maintenance	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act

Code Abbreviations:**GOV= Government Code****HNC= Harbors and Navigation Code****HSC= Health and Safety Code****MVC= Military and Veterans Code****PRC = Public Resources Code****PUC = Public Utilities Code****WAT = Water Code**

Purpose/Program	Authority	Agency	Notes
Transportation	PUC §25891 et seq.	Transit Districts that are also special districts	Special tax and Transactions and Use Tax. <u>Note:</u> Special districts should refer to the legislation that created them to determine whether they are eligible to levy special taxes and transactions and use tax.
Transit Capital Projects and purchase of transit vehicles	PUC §99500 et seq.	Any special district that is also a local transit district.	Motor vehicle fuel tax. <u>Note:</u> Special Districts should refer to the legislation that created them to determine whether they are eligible to levy motor vehicle fuel tax.
Municipal Utilities	PUC §12891 et seq.	Any special district that is also a local transit district.	Special tax
Public Utilities	PUC §16641 et seq.	Any public utility district that is also a special district.	Special tax
Construction or Undergrounding for utility projects or services	GOV §53311 et seq.	Any special district that formed a Community Facilities District	Mello-Roos Act
Water	WAT §22075 et seq.	Any irrigation district	Special tax
Water	WAT §31650 et seq.	Any county water district	Special tax
Water	WAT §72090 et seq.	Any municipal water district	Special tax

Accounting for Taxes

The accounting examples are for illustrative purposes only and are not all-inclusive. The examples illustrated should be considered with the applicable provisions of the law.

18.24 Accounting for Tax Receipts

According to GASB Cod. Sec. 1800.132 (Section 1800, paragraph .132), the primary classification of governmental fund revenues is by fund and source. While governments often classify revenues by organizational units (e.g., departments or units), the method of classifying revenues should supplement rather than supplant the classifications by fund and source. All taxes, even special taxes, are reported as general revenues in the government-wide financial statements. Non-tax revenues, however, can be classified as either program or general revenues.

When using cash basis accounting, tax revenues should be recognized as cash is received. When using the modified accrual basis of accounting, tax revenues should be recognized as they become measurable and receivable in the current period. When recording tax revenues in governmental funds, government entities should use the modified accrual basis of accounting. When preparing government-wide financial statements, tax revenues should be recorded using the full accrual basis of accounting. For more information on basis of accounting refer to Chapter 3, *Governmental Accounting Principles*, and Chapter 4, *Basis of Accounting*.

Local governments should follow the rules of exchange and nonexchange transactions when recording tax revenues. Tax revenues can come from either an exchange (e.g., derived tax revenue) or nonexchange transaction (e.g., imposed nonexchange revenue). Exchange transactions involve both the recipient and provider transferring an equal value of benefits, goods, or services. Legislation or contractual requirement or both typically give rise to nonexchange transactions.

Refer to Chapter 7, *Classification and Terminology* for more details on revenue classifications, and Chapter 14, *Contracts and Agreements* for more details on nonexchange transactions, and related recognition rules.

Example:

On January 2, 20XX, a local government entity levied \$500,000 worth of property taxes on its citizenry. The taxes are expected to be collected within 60 days of the levy date. These revenues were collected in full on February 28th, 20XX. According to the local government entity’s procedures, these revenues are recorded in the general fund.

The entry to record tax revenues in the general fund would be as follows:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
January 2, 20XX		
Accounts Receivable — Tax Revenue	DR: \$500,000	
Tax Revenue		CR: \$500,000
(To record the levy of property taxes)		

The subsequent receipt of this tax revenue would be recorded as:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$500,000	
Accounts Receivable — Tax Revenue		CR: \$500,000
(To record property tax revenues collected)		

18.25 Accounting for Property Taxes

Government entities should recognize property tax revenue in the period the property tax is levied, provided the property tax revenue is available. According to the GASB, Available means “collected soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period.” For most governments, the availability period does not exceed 60 days.

Local government entities should recognize property tax receivable in the same period taxes are levied, even if the legal claim arises and due date for payment arise in a different time period. The property tax receivable should be adjusted for uncollectible amounts. Property tax revenues received prior to the levy date should be recorded as deferred inflows of resources; however, once they become available (see preceding paragraph), they should be recognized as revenues.

According to the GASB, the following should be disclosed in the notes to financial statements in regard to property taxes:

Property tax calendar:

- Lien dates;
- Due dates; and
- Collection dates

For more information on the treatment of property tax revenues (imposed nonexchange transactions) refer to Chapter 14, *Contracts and Agreements*.

While the examples in this chapter section may be of interest to other local government entities, the illustrations below are applicable to counties only. The examples are not all-inclusive. Counties should note that they should structure their accounts according to their own reporting needs and statutory requirements.

Unapportioned Tax Fund Accounts

The Unapportioned Tax Fund is used to control the tax charges and collections prior to distribution, and also acts as a suspense fund for tax receipts collected by the tax collector. The suggested accounts for the Unapportioned Tax Fund and their normal balances are:

Unapportioned Tax Fund Accounts

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Current Secured	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Current Unsecured	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Current Supplemental	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Prior Secured	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Prior Unsecured	DR	
Taxes Receivable — Prior Supplemental	DR	
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Current Secured		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Current Unsecured		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Current Supplemental		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Prior Secured		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Prior Unsecured		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Prior Supplemental		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Tax Defaulted Land Sales		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Redemption Installments		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Advance Collections		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Refundable Taxes		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Protested Taxes Impounded		CR
Due to Other Funds and Entities — Other Taxes (Designate)		CR
(To record taxes collectible prior to distribution)		

Accounting Basis

To exercise control over the current secured, unsecured, and supplemental levies, tax receivables are recorded in the unapportioned tax fund. Taxes receivable and other revenues may be collected in advance of the fiscal year to which they apply. If all eligibility requirements, excluding time requirements, have been met, amounts received in advance should be recorded as a deferred inflow of resources and recognized as revenue of the period to which they apply. If not an advance payment, receivables are recorded at the time the tax charge or levy computations are completed. Supplemental receivables are updated to account for each billing.

Recording the Change

The tax charge (sum total of the tax bills prepared) is recorded in the Unapportioned Tax Fund:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – Current Secured	DR: \$5,000,000	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured		CR: \$5,000,000
(To record the tax charge in the Unapportioned Tax Fund)		

Roll Changes

Assessed values and tax charges may change after tax bills are mailed, due to changes made by the auditor during the year. The types of changes fall into four general categories:

- **Cancellations**: These are often a result of acquisitions of property by tax-exempt jurisdictions during the year requiring either a portion or all of the tax amount due to be canceled. Another common reason includes duplicate or erroneous property assessments by the Assessor.
- **Escaped Assessments**: These changes pertain to current and prior year assessed valuations of properties that were not assessed and taxed during that fiscal year. The tax amounts are based on the rates levied for the escaped year and added to the current charge file. These types of corrections are found on both the current secured and unsecured rolls.
- **Fixed Charges**: These types of corrections are usually reported to the auditor by a local district to correct fixed charges such as special benefit assessments added to the tax bill. These corrections affect the tax charge only and do not involve assessed valuations.
- **Corrections**: This category includes assessor's errors, name changes, missed or erroneous exemptions, erroneous tax rate areas, transfers to the unsecured roll, etc.

Generally, any changes to assessed valuations or the tax charge will necessitate entries in the Unapportioned Tax Fund.

Change	Amount
A) The State of California purchased (apportionment date according to RTC 5082 10/01) a parcel within the county assessed at \$200,000 and a tax bill of \$2,200. Taxes for \$1,650 (75%) are cancelled	\$ (1,650)
B) During the year the assessor reports escaped valuations for the two previous years in a parcel, resulting in additional taxes of \$5,000 added to the current roll.	5,000
C) The auditor is notified by a fire district to cancel weed abatement levied on a parcel in error	(50)
D) A parcel is transferred from the secured roll to the unsecured roll.	(500)
Total secured amount of changes	\$ 2,800
Total unsecured amount of changes	\$ 500

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – Current Secured	DR: \$2,800	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured		CR: \$2,800
Taxes Receivable – current unsecured	DR: \$500	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Unsecured		CR: \$500
(To record corrections to current secured and unsecured rolls)		

Collection of Taxes

As tax payments are collected by the county tax collector, they are processed against the tax charge and deposited in the Unapportioned Tax Fund of the county treasury. By statutory provision, the tax collector is required, each month, to furnish the auditor with a detailed statement of collections for the preceding month. As illustrated below, collections are credited against the receivable when deposited.

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – Current Secured	DR: \$1,000,000	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured		CR: \$1,000,000
(To record tax collections deposited in the Unapportioned Tax Fund)		

Apportionment of Taxes

The apportionment of taxes by the auditor is governed by various sections of the Revenue and Taxation Code. The frequency of distribution is based on the type of property tax being distributed and the method of apportionment. The accounting entries made in the Unapportioned Tax Fund and each receiving fund or jurisdiction for the apportionment of current secured taxes are shown in the following example:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured	DR: \$1,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$1,000,000
(To record the apportionment of collection to various jurisdictions for a specific collection period)		

Each jurisdiction's general and/or debt service fund (if any):

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$100,000	
Revenue – Current Secured Property Taxes		CR: \$100,000
(To record the receipt of current secured property tax distribution, for a specific collection period)		

Fixed Charges for Special Benefit Assessments

It should be noted that, while fixed charges for various purposes added to the tax bill are collected and distributed along with the property taxes, upon receipt by the jurisdiction specific revenue codes are used to record them. Items such as water or sewer standby charges, weed abatement, street lighting, improvement bonds, and special taxes approved by the electorate are examples of fixed charges that jurisdictions report to the county auditor to be added to the current secured tax bills.

Year-End Entries

It is recommended that the uncollected or unapportioned taxes levied for each county be recognized in the accounts at June 30. The taxes receivable should be offset by the Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes equal to the amount of taxes determined to be uncollectible plus the amount to be collected within the established accrual period.

Example:

On June 30, taxes levied for the County General Fund are as follows:

Taxes	<u>Amount</u>
Collected but unapportioned:	
Current Secured	\$1,800
Uncollected:	
Current Secured	\$3,500
Prior Secured	\$800
Current Unsecured	\$1,200
Prior Unsecured	\$300
Total	\$7,600

Of the uncollected taxes, it is estimated that 75% of current and 50% of prior will be collected during the accrual period as established by the county auditor:

County General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable	DR: \$7,600	
Allowance for Uncollectable Taxes		CR: \$1,725
Property Taxes – Current – Secured		CR: \$4,425
Property Taxes – Current – Unsecured		CR: \$900
Property Taxes – Prior – Secured		CR: \$400
Property Taxes – Prior – Unsecured		CR: \$150
(To record the year-end accrual of property taxes)		

Opening Entries — Unapportioned Tax Fund

On July 1 unpaid current secured and supplemental (due on or before June 30) property taxes for the previous fiscal year are tax defaulted. Current unsecured property taxes levied in the current fiscal year become prior unsecured taxes as well. These changes in status from current to prior should, therefore, be recorded in the Unapportioned Tax Fund. In each case, the entry would be to transfer the Receivable and the Due to Other Funds and Entities from current to prior accounts, as shown in the following example.

Example:

The uncollected outstanding balance as of June 30 for current secured taxes is \$1,500,000:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured	DR: \$1,500,000	
Taxes Receivable – Current Secured		CR: \$1,500,000
Taxes Receivable – Prior Secured	DR: \$1,500,000	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured		CR: \$1,500,000
(Entry to transfer tax-defaulted amounts from current to prior receivables)		

Penalties and Costs**A. Current Secured and Unsecured Levies**

Penalties and costs attach to current property tax bills if not paid on or before specific dates. On a current secured tax bill, a 10% penalty is added to each delinquent installment. In addition, a \$10 cost is added to all delinquent second installments. On current unsecured tax bills unpaid as of the delinquent date, only the penalty is imposed.

As penalties and costs are added to the tax rolls, the liability of these amounts may be reflected in the control accounts of the Unapportioned Tax Fund and added to the appropriate receivable and liability account. Penalties and costs are combined with existing balances and not recorded separately in the control accounts. The distinction between tax and penalty amounts are controlled in the tax charge, collection reports received from the tax collector, and the apportionment process.

Example:**Unapportioned Tax Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – Current Secured	DR: \$50,000	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Unsecured		CR: \$50,000
(To record penalties of \$50,000 added to delinquent unsecured tax bills as of August 31)		

B. Supplemental Roll

Supplemental property tax bills may be prepared and mailed on a recurring basis (e.g., monthly) throughout the fiscal year. The date the bill is mailed determines the installment and delinquency dates. A 10% penalty is added to each delinquent installment and a \$10 cost is added to the final installment. It is permissible to account for penalties and costs in the same manner used in redemption.

C. Redemption

If redemption penalties and costs are regularly added to all tax-defaulted property, they should be posted to the prior secured receivable and due to accounts. However, as redemption penalties accrue on these balances monthly and vary with the year of tax default, the usual practice is to compute the amount necessary to redeem upon request or at the time of payment. Prior secured taxes are recognized without regard to the fiscal year levied. Redemption penalties and fees are posted to the liability account when collected.

Example:

A tax-defaulted parcel is redeemed by payment of the following amounts:

Payment	<u>Amount</u>
Amount of Tax and Fixed Charges	\$150.00
10% Penalty	\$15.00
Delinquent Cost	\$10.00
Redemption Fee	\$15.00
Redemption Penalties (6 months at 1.5% monthly)	\$13.50
Total Paid	\$203.50

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$203.50	
Taxes Receivable – Prior Secured		CR: \$175.00
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured (\$15.00+\$13.50)		CR: \$28.50
(To record redemption of tax-defaulted parcel)		

It should be noted that penalties are apportioned in the same manner as the property taxes and fixed charges that they are charged against. Costs collected are distributed to the county General Fund.

Redemption

A. Distribution of Collections

After the tax collector publishes the required statutory notice of delinquent secured taxes, secured property becomes tax-defaulted if unpaid as of June 30. This is the beginning of a five-year period at the end of which the property is subject to the tax collector's power of sale and may be sold at public auction, by sealed bid, or by agreement.

The apportionment of redemption collections is made using the prior fiscal year apportionment factors without regard to the fiscal years of the levy. The exception to this is tax-defaulted supplemental taxes, which are apportioned similarly but with certain changes for K-12 schools.

Example:

At the close of a collection period the following redemption amounts have been deposited and are to be apportioned:

Deposited	Amount
Taxes – Prior Secured	\$7,500
Penalties	\$1,200
Redemption Fees	\$195
Delinquent Costs	\$130
Total	\$9,025

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured	DR: \$9,025	
Cash		CR: \$9,025
(To record apportionment of prior secured taxes)		

Other Custodial Fund (fund used to account for amount due to State)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$65	
Due to State – Redemption Fee		CR: \$65
(To record State's portion of redemption fees, equal to one-third of the above redemption fees)		

County General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,870	
Property Taxes – Prior Secured		CR: \$2,250
Penalties and Costs – Delinquent Taxes		CR: \$620
(To record apportionment of redemption collections)		

Note:

- This example assumes that the county received 30% of collections.
- The revenue amount of \$620 shown as Penalties and Costs — Delinquent Taxes in the preceding journal entry is comprised of the following:
 - 30% of the Total Penalties Distributed \$360
 - 100% of the Costs Apportioned \$130
 - 2/3 of the Redemption Fees Distributed \$130

B. Installment Payment Plans

The law contains provisions allowing for the payment of delinquent taxes through installments. Under the plan, the taxpayer initially pays 20% of the redemption amount, and at least 20% annually thereafter, plus interest on the unpaid balance until payment is completed. During this period, the current taxes and penalties shall be paid on or before April 10 of each year to prevent default.

In the Unapportioned Tax Fund, the amounts due under installment plans cannot be shown as a separate asset, as the tax-defaulted amounts are already included in the Taxes Receivable — Prior Secured account.

There are two basic methods of apportioning installment collections:

1. Payments are held until either redemption is completed or the property has lost the right to receive credit for payments made.

Example:

A taxpayer agrees to redeem his/her property, having a redemption amount of \$500, by paying \$100 immediately and \$100 plus accrued interest by April 10 of each of the four succeeding fiscal years:

A) Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$100	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Redemption Installments		CR: \$100
(Entry to record initial payment)		

B) Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$172	
Due to Funds and Entities – Redemption Installments		CR: \$172
(Entry to record \$100 installment payment plus \$72 interest based upon 1.5% per month x 12 months on a \$400 unpaid balance)		

C) Summary Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$408	
Due to Funds and Entities – Redemption Installments		CR: \$408
(Entry to record three subsequent installment payments)		

D) Summary Entry

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Redemption Installments	DR: \$680	
Taxes Receivable – Prior Secured		CR: \$440
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured Taxes		CR: \$240
(Entry to record the issuance of a tax redemption certificate)		

Prior Secured Taxes Underlying Data

<u>The \$240 consists of:</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Notification fee	\$ 35
Delinquent Second Installment Cost	10
Interest	180
Redemption Fee	<u>15</u>
Total	\$ 240

2. Payments are included with the apportionment of other redemption collections.Example:**Unapportioned Tax Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$100	
Taxes Receivable – Prior Secured		CR: \$88
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured		CR: \$12
(Summary entry to record payments)		

See Redemption A, Distribution of Collections for entries recording the apportionment of the collections.

Tax-Defaulted Land Sales

After the five-year period, the property becomes subject to the tax collector's power of sale and may be sold at public auction, sealed bid sale, or by agreement. Sale proceeds may be greater or less than the total redemption amount. Procedures concerning the disposition of proceeds in excess of the redemption amount are covered in section 4671 et seq., of the Revenue and Taxation Code. When a sale occurs, adjusting entries in the accounts of the Unapportioned Tax Fund should be made.

Example:

Tax-defaulted property, on which \$635 is included in the Taxes Receivable — Prior Secured account, is sold for \$560.

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$560	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Tax Defaulted		
Land Sales		CR: \$560
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Prior Secured	DR: \$635	
Taxes Receivable – Prior Secured		CR: \$635
(To record the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

Refundable Taxes

A multitude of situations can result in the issuance of tax refunds, including:

- Erroneous payments (paying the same bill twice, overpayments, etc.);
- Roll corrections reducing parcel valuation or entering an exemption such as a homeowners' exemption where the tax bill has already been paid; or
- Assessment appeal hearings that result in a reduction of value where the tax bill has already been paid.

In some cases, it is necessary for a claim for refund to be filed prior to the issuance of a refund of taxes. Procedures governing refunds are covered in section 5096, et seq., of the Revenue and Taxation Code. Interest on refunds, if applicable, is governed by Revenue and Taxation Code section 5150.5 et seq.

Example:

- a) The tax collector discovers that a \$125 duplicate current unsecured payment was received and issues a refund warrant to the taxpayer:**

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Taxes Receivable – Current Unsecured	DR: \$125	
Cash		CR: \$125
(To record refund of duplicate payment)		

b) A roll change to a prior-year paid tax bill results in a refund due of \$75. Once the refund claim requirements are met, the following entries are recorded:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Unsecured	DR: \$75	
Due to Taxpayers – Refundable Taxes		CR: \$75
(To record the receipt of a claim for refund)		
Due to Taxpayers – Refundable Taxes	DR: \$75	
Cash		CR: \$75
(To record the issuance of a refund upon receipt of the claim for refund)		

The amount refunded would subsequently be reversed or deducted from the apportionment covering the period the refund was made.

Pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 5102, if a claim for refund on an overpayment is not filed within four years of the payment date, the unclaimed amount may be transferred to the county's general fund upon order of the board of supervisors.

18.26 Advance Collections

Current unsecured property taxes are, by statute, due and payable on the January 1 lien date of the preceding fiscal year for which they are levied. A deferred inflow of resources should be reported when tax payments are collected by the county tax collector before (a) the period for which property taxes are levied or (b) the period when resources are required to be used or when use is first permitted for all other imposed nonexchange revenues in which the enabling legislation includes time requirements.

In this instance, collections received prior to July 1 are credited to the Deferred Inflows of Resources account and subsequently transferred to the Tax Receivable account.

Example:

Unsecured payments totaling \$5,000 are deposited on May 13 and are applicable to the fiscal year beginning on July 1:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,000	
Deferred Inflows of Resources		CR: \$5,000
(To record the receipt of advanced unsecured payments)		

After July 1, the unsecured tax levy was recorded. The deferred inflows of resources are transferred:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflows of Resources	DR: \$5,000	
Taxes Receivable – Current Unsecured		CR: \$5,000
(To reduce taxes receivable for unsecured advance collections)		

18.27 Disputed Taxes

In the previous section, refund claims were discussed in relation to over payments or erroneous payments. Disputed taxes are those in question for reasons other than errors in payment amounts. Within six months prior to taking legal action, a claim for refund must be filed with and rejected by the board of supervisors (RTC, §5141 and GOV, §26906.1).

In these instances, the tax amount under protest may be impounded by the auditor (with approval from the Board of Supervisors) and not apportioned. The decision to determine whether or not to impound the disputed tax amount is a question of judgment, based on such factors as:

- The basis upon which the action is filed;
- The probability of a successful recovery;
- The dollar amount of the protested taxes in question; or
- County policies and procedures regarding disputed taxes within the jurisdiction of the county.

The impoundment of taxes should be handled in such a manner that interest earnings on the litigated amount may also be retained and impounded.

Example:

Legal action is filed involving \$200,000 in protested secured taxes, and it is decided that the taxes are to be impounded:

Unapportioned Tax Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Current Secured	DR: \$200,000	
Due to Other Funds and Entities – Protested		
Taxes Impounded		CR: \$200,000
(To record the impound of protested secured taxes)		

18.28 Alternate Treatment of Tax Apportionment

The purpose of this section is to describe an alternative procedure for the distribution of property tax and/or direct assessment levies on the secured roll as outlined in Revenue and Taxation Code section 4701, et seq. This is an accrual method that recognizes taxes receivable as an expendable resource and, subsequently, simplifies the tax apportionment process.

Sequence of Events

- A resolution, indicating the board of supervisors' intention to operate under the Alternate Method of Tax Apportionment, must be adopted no later than July 15 of the fiscal year for which it is to first apply (October 15 for 1993/94) (RTC, §4702).
- The Tax Losses Reserve Fund must be created to cover losses that may occur in the amount of tax liens as a result of special sales of tax-defaulted property (RTC, §4703).
- The Apportioned Tax Resources Fund is established as a control for the funds to which taxes are apportioned and will be referred to in this discussion as the Tax Resources Fund (RTC §4705).
- The dollar value of the existing tax-defaulted property is entered on the rolls (RTC, §4704).
- The dollar value of the delinquent abstracts ad valorem taxes is determined and ninety-five percent (95%) of the amount is apportioned to the countywide taxing agencies. The remaining five percent (5%) is credited to the Tax Losses Reserve Fund, and one hundred percent (100%) of delinquent assessments is apportioned to the levying funds (RTC, §4713).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 18: Taxes

The accounting entries for implementing and administering the alternate method are illustrated in sections A through R using T-accounts.

ALTERNATE METHOD ACCOUNT ANALYSIS

APPORTIONED TAX RESOURCES FUND																							
CASH				DUE TO OTHERS				P/Y TAXES RECEIVABLE				P/Y SPECIAL ASSET RECEIVABLE				C/Y TAXES RECEIVABLE				C/Y SPECIAL ASSET RECEIVABLE			
C2	3,000,000	10,000,000	A2	A2	10,000,000	10,000,000	A1	A1	9,000,000	2,700,000	C2	A1	1,000,000	300,000	C2	B1	990,000,000	520,000,000	E1	B1	10,000,000	5,800,000	E1
E1	525,800,000	550,000,000	D1	D1	550,000,000	1,000,000,000	B1	K1	99,990,000	1,847,000	F2	K1	99,000	300,000	F2			370,000,000	H1			4,100,000	H1
F2	2,147,000	400,000,000	G1	G1	400,000,000																		
H1	374,100,000																						
					960,000,000	1,010,000,000			108,990,000	4,547,000			1,099,000	600,000			999,000,000	890,000,000					
	905,047,000	960,000,000		J1	11,000													10,000	J1		10,000,000	9,900,000	
		49,989,000	L1		960,011,000	1,010,000,000			108,990,000	4,547,000			1,099,000	600,000								1,000	J1
	905,047,000	1,009,989,000		L1	49,989,000												990,000,000	890,010,000				9,901,000	
								M1	104,443,000									99,990,000	K1			99,000	K1
										8,000	N3	M1	499,000										
		104,942,000	M1		1,010,000,000	1,010,000,000				8,000	P3			2,000	N3		990,000,000	990,000,000			10,000,000	10,000,000	
N3	10,000													2,000	P3								
P3	10,000								108,990,000	4,563,000													
													1,099,000	604,000									
	905,067,000	1,009,989,000						R1	104,427,000														
												R1	495,000										
		104,922,000	R1																				
TAX LOSSES RESERVE FUND																SALE TRUST FUND							
CASH				EQUITY				DELINQUENT PENALTIES				REDEMPTION PENALTIES				CASH				DISBURSEMENTS/RECEIPTS			
A3	450,000				450,000	A3	Q1	352,000	200,000	C1	Q1	18,500	10,000	C1	N1	45,000	12,500	N2	N2	12,500	45,000	N1	
C1	210,000				370,500	Q1			150,000	F1			8,000	F1	P1	9,000	9,000	P2	P2	9,000	9,000	P1	
F1	158,000	1,000	P4	P4	1,000				2,000	N4			500	N4									
N4	2,500																						
	820,500	1,000			1,000	820,500		352,000	352,000			18,500	18,500			54,000	21,500			21,500	54,000		
	819,500				819,500																		
OTHER ENTITIES								GENERAL FUND								ASSESSMENT RESOURCES FUND							
CASH				REVENUE				CASH				REVENUE				CASH				REVENUE			
A5	5,728,500				5,728,500	A5	A4	2,821,500					2,821,500	A4	A6	1,000,000					1,000,000	A6	
D3	364,815,000				364,815,000	D3	D2	179,685,000					179,685,000	D2	D4	5,500,000					5,500,000	D4	
G3	265,320,000				265,320,000	G3	G2	130,680,000					130,680,000	G2	G4	4,000,000					4,000,000	G4	
L3	33,158,333				33,158,333	L3	L2	16,331,667					16,331,667	L2	L4	499,000					499,000	L4	
LEGEND: Numbers to the left of debit entries and to the right of credit entries represent the journal entry number in the text of the explanation.																							

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Section A — Initial Apportionment of Delinquent Abstract

Example:

Total taxes in the delinquent abstract are \$10,000,000. The county's AB 8 tax allocation factor is 33%; 95% is apportioned to taxing jurisdictions, and the remaining 5% is apportioned to the Tax Losses Reserve Fund:

A1 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
P/Y Taxes Receivable	DR: \$9,000,000	
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable	DR: \$1,000,000	
Due to Others		CR: \$10,000,000
(To record initial delinquency as a Taxes Receivable and a Fixed Charges Receivable)		

The delinquent abstract amounts that have been established in the Due to Others account are then paid out as follows:

A2 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Others	DR: \$10,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$10,000,000
(To record the payment of prior-year taxes to appropriate entities and the Tax Losses Reserve Fund)		

A3 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$450,000	
Equity		CR: \$450,000
(To record the initial apportionment of the delinquent abstract $[(\$9,000,000 \times 5\%)]$ which represents 5% of P/Y Taxes Receivable. The Tax Losses Reserve Fund receives 5% of the delinquent taxes only. 100% of the delinquent assessments is paid to the levying funds [(RTC, \$4713.5)])		

A4 Account**General Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,821,500	
Revenue – Prior Secured – Property Taxes		CR: \$2,821,500
(To record the initial apportionment of the delinquent abstract in the General Fund $[(\$9,000,000 \times 0.95) \times 0.33]$)		

A5 Account**All Other Funds and Entities**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,728,500	
Revenue – Prior Secured – Property Taxes		CR: \$5,728,500
(To record the initial apportionment of the delinquent abstract in all other funds and entities $[(\$9,000,000 \times 0.95) - \$2,821,500]$)		

A6 Account**Assessment Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$1,000,000	
Revenue – Prior Special Assessments		CR: \$1,000,000
(To record the initial apportionment of the delinquent abstract for fixed charge)		

Section B — Current-Year Apportionment

When the current-year levy is determined, the full amount is apportioned to the credit of those funds on the accounts of the county auditor and county treasurer. Exactly how the apportionment is accomplished and when cash is made available in these funds varies with participating counties and depends greatly upon individual system capabilities and county policies, respectively (RTC, §4705).

General practice and cash flow limitations allow for a percentage allocation on specific dates determined by each county for entities receiving taxes that do not use the county treasury as a depository. These dates usually correspond closely with the delinquent dates for secured installments. These percentage allocations and apportionment dates are at the discretion of each county auditor.

Example:

The following example assumes a current-year secured levy of \$1,000,000,000 (\$990,000,000 taxes and \$10,000,000 fixed charges):

B1 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
C/Y Taxes Receivable	DR: \$990,000,000	
C/Y Special Assessments Receivable (Fixed Charges)	DR: \$10,000,000	
Due to Others		CR: \$1,000,000,000
(To record the levy of secured taxed and special assessments)		

Section C — Receipt of Redemption PaymentsExample:

After apportionment to the State of the amounts prescribed by Revenue and Taxation Code section 4656.2, the amount of \$3,210,000 is received from redemptions of prior-year delinquencies. \$2,700,000 represents prior-year taxes, \$300,000 represents prior-year fixed charges, \$200,000 represents delinquent penalties, and \$10,000 represents redemption penalties. (RTC, §4710).

C1 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$210,000	
Delinquent Penalties		CR: \$200,000
Redemption Penalties		CR: \$10,000
(To record the receipt of delinquent and redemption penalties receive on the abstract roll)		

C2 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$3,000,000	
P/Y Tax Receivable		CR: \$2,700,000
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$300,000
(To record redemption payments received)		

Section D — Initial Apportionment to Entities

Example:

On December 10, the initial 55% of tax and fixed charges recorded in B1 [\$100,000,000] is distributed to the appropriate entities:

D1 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Others	DR: \$550,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$550,000,000
(To record the apportionment of 55% of taxes due to other entities [$\$1,000,000,000 \times 0.55$])		

D2 Account**General Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$179,685,000	
Revenue — Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$179,685,000
(To record the apportionment of 55% of the annual tax [$(990,000,000 \times 0.55) \times 0.33$])		

D3 Account**All Other Entities**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$364,815,000	
Revenue — Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$364,815,000
(To record the apportionment of 55% of the annual tax [$(990,000,000 \times 0.55) \times 0.67$])		

D4 Account**Assessment Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,500,000	
Revenue — Current Special Assessments		CR: \$5,500,000
(To record the apportionment of 55% of the amounts attributed to fixed charges [$10,000,000 \times 0.55$])		

Section E — Receipt of First Installment

Example:

The first installment of current taxes is received in the amount of \$525,800,000, of which \$520,000,000 is current taxes and \$5,800,000 is current direct assessments (RTC, §4710):

E1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$525,800,000	
C/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$520,000,000
C/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$5,800,000
(To record collection of the first installment of current taxes)		

Section F — Additional Redemptions Received

Example:

Additional redemptions are received totaling \$2,305,000. This represents \$1,847,000 of prior-year taxes, \$300,000 of prior-year direct assessments, \$150,000 in delinquent penalties, and \$8,000 in redemption penalties (RTC, §4710):

F1 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$158,000	
Delinquent Penalties		CR: \$150,000
Redemption Penalties		CR: \$8,000
(To record receipt of delinquent and redemption penalties on the abstract roll. [Interest on installment plans is treated as redemption penalties])		

F2 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,147,000	
P/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$1,847,000
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$300,000
(To record receipt of taxed and assessments on the abstract roll)		

Section G — Second Apportionment to Entities

Example:

On April 10, an additional 40% of tax and fixed charges recorded in B1 is distributed to the appropriate entities:

G1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Others	DR: \$400,000,000	
Cash		CR: \$400,000,000
(To record the apportionment of 40% of taxes due to other entities [$\$1,000,000,000 \times 0.40$])		

G2 Account**General Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$130,680,000	
Revenue – Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$130,680,000
(To record apportionment of 40% of the annual tax [$(990,000,000 \times 0.40) \times 0.33$])		

G3 Account**All Other Entities**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$265,320,000	
Revenue – Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$265,320,000
(To record apportionment of 40% of the annual tax [$(990,000,000 \times 0.40) \times 0.67$])		

G4 Account**Assessments Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$4,000,000	
Revenue – Current Special Assessments		CR: \$4,000,000
(To record the apportionments of 40% of the amount attributed to fixed charges [$10,000,000 \times 0.40$])		

Section H — Receipt of Second Installment

Example:

The second installments of the current taxes are received for \$374,100,000, representing \$370,000,000 in current taxes and \$4,100,000 in current direct assessments (RTC, §4710):

H1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$374,100,000	
C/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$370,000,000
C/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$4,100,000
(To record the collection of the second installment of current taxes)		

Section J — Adjustments to Secured Roll for Corrections and Refunds

Example:

Corrections made throughout the tax year are netted and the following adjustment is made. This example uses a \$10,000 decrease in tax and a \$1,000 decrease in fixed charges as the net adjustment:

J1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Others	DR: \$11,000	
C/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$10,000
C/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$1,000
(To record net adjustments for the tax roll)		

Throughout the year, corrections and cancellations are processed on the current-year tax bills. As a result, the initial apportionment is based on a gross billing that is not the same as the actual taxes collected plus year-end delinquencies. All C/Y and P/Y refunds and corrections are adjusted through the Apportioned Taxes Fund. Each entity pays its portion of the refund when all corrections, cancellations, and refunds from the C/Y and P/Y secured roll are netted and apportioned in what is referred to as a reverse apportionment (RTC, §4707). Prior-year refunds and corrections may or may not affect the year-end buyout.

Section K — Current Roll Transfer to the Delinquent Roll

Example:

After June 30, the balance of current taxes and current direct assessments unpaid is transferred to a delinquent status (RTC, §4710):

K1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
P/Y Taxes Receivable	DR: \$99,990,000	
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable	DR: \$99,000	
C/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$99,990,000
C/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$99,000
(To record transfer of current taxes and special assessments to P/Y status)		

Section L — Final Apportionment Net of Adjustments

Example:

After June 30, the final 5% of taxes and fixed charges, less the adjustments made in Section J (J1), is apportioned to the various entities:

L1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due to Others	DR: \$49,989,000	
Cash		CR: \$49,989,000
(To record the apportionment of 5% if taxes due to other entities)		

L2 Account**General Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$16,331,667	
Revenue – Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$16,331,667
(To record apportionment of 5% of the annual tax [(990,000,000 x 0.33) - (179,685,000 + 130,680,000 + 3,333)])		

L3 Account**All Other Entities**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$33,158,333	
Revenue – Current Secured Property Tax		CR: \$33,158,333
(To record apportionment of 5% of the annual tax $[(990,000,000 \times 0.67) - (364,815,000 + 265,320,000 + 6,667)]$)		

L4 Account**Assessment Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$499,000	
Revenue – Current Special Assignments		CR: \$499,000
(To record the apportionment of 5% of amounts attributed to fixed charges)		

Section M — Content of Tax Resources FundExample:

The makeup of the Tax Resources Fund after the above entries is as follows:

M1 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
P/Y Taxes Receivable	DR: \$104,443,000	
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable	DR: \$499,000	
Cash		CR: \$104,942,000
Total	DR: \$104,942,000	CR: \$104,942,000

Note: There are no balances in the C/Y taxes receivable accounts as all current year taxes have been received and allocated to other funds accordingly.

The process begins again for the next year at this point.

Some additional areas that affect these special tax accounts is the sale of property at auction and the transfer to the General Fund when the balance of the tax losses reserve exceeds any of the options given in Section S of this chapter section.

Section N — Property Sold at Auction with a Surplus (RTC, §4710 and §4711)

Example:

A delinquent parcel sold at auction generates \$45,000. The Tax Resources Fund is due \$8,000 in P/Y Taxes Receivable and \$2,000 in P/Y Fixed Charges Receivable. The Tax Losses Reserve Fund is due \$2,000 in delinquent penalties and \$500 in redemption penalties. The balance remains in the delinquent tax Sale Trust Fund (Tax Collector's Fund) for claim by parties of interest. The unclaimed portion is credited to the Tax Losses Reserve Fund a year after the date of sale. The journal entries are as follows:

N1 Account**Sales Trust Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$45,000	
Receipts		CR: \$45,000
(To record proceeds from the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

N2 Account**Sales Trust Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Disbursements	DR: \$12,500	
Cash		CR: \$12,500
(To record the payment to the Tax Resources Fund for prior receivables and the payments to the Tax Losses Reserve Fund for penalties and interest)		

N3 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$10,000	
P/Y Taxes Receivable		CR: \$8,000
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$2,000
(To record the payment of prior receivables from the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

N4 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$2,500	
Delinquent Penalties		CR: \$2,000
Redemption Penalties		CR: \$500
(To record recovery of penalties and interest on the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

Section P — Property Sold at Auction at a Loss (RTC, §4711)

Example:

A similar parcel, with the same taxes due, is sold at auction but generates only \$9,000, leaving the Tax Resources Fund short \$1,000:

P1 Account**Sale Trust Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$9,000	
Receipts		CR: \$9,000
(To record proceeds from the sale of tax defaulted property)		

P2 Account**Sale Trust Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Disbursements	DR: \$9,000	
Cash		CR: \$9,000
(To record the payment to the Tax Resources Fund for prior receivables)		

P3 Account**Taxes Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$10,000	
P/Y Taxes Receivables		CR: \$8,000
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable		CR: \$2,000
(To record the payment of prior receivables from the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

P4 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Equity	DR: \$1,000	
Cash		CR: \$1,000
(To record the loss from the sale of tax-defaulted property)		

Section Q — Delinquent and Redemption Penalties—Year-End

Example:

The end-of-the-year adjustment in the Tax Losses Reserve Fund consists of closing the penalty and redemption interest accounts against the Equity account in this fund:

Q1 Account**Tax Losses Reserve Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Delinquent Penalties	DR: \$352,000	
Redemption Penalties	DR: \$18,500	
Equity		CR: \$370,500
(To record the closing of penalty and interest to Equity)		

Section R — Content of Tax Resources Fund

Example:

The makeup of the Tax Resources Fund at year-end is as follows:

R1 Account**Tax Resources Fund**

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
P/Y Taxes Receivables	DR: \$104,427,000	
P/Y Special Assessments Receivable	DR: \$495,000	
Cash		CR: \$104,922,000
(To record the closing entries in the Tax Resources Fund)		

Section S — Transfer of Excess Balance in Tax Losses Reserve Fund

The Tax Losses Reserve Fund receives revenues from payment of delinquent penalties, redemption penalties, and redemption interest. Unclaimed proceeds from the sale of defaulted property are also a revenue to this fund. The fund is charged with the losses from the sale of defaulted property. Each fiscal year, the fund is subject to the provisions of Revenue and Taxation Code section 4703 or section 4703.2.

Two alternatives exist for determining the maximum balance required in the Tax Losses Reserve Fund:

- First, Revenue and Taxation Code section 4703 requires the Tax Losses Reserve Fund to have a balance in an amount equivalent to 1% of the total of all taxes and assessments levied on the secured roll for that year on behalf of the entities participating in the Alternate Method of Tax Apportionment before any transfers to the general fund can occur. Amounts in excess of the 1% threshold may, for the remainder of the fiscal year, be credited to the general fund.

- Second, Revenue and Taxation Code section 4703.2 requires the Tax Losses Reserve Fund to have a balance in an amount equivalent to 25% of the total delinquent secured taxes and assessments of those entities participating in the Alternate Method of Tax Apportionment, as calculated at the end of the fiscal year, before any transfers to the general fund can occur. At the end of the fiscal year, amounts in excess of this threshold may be transferred to the General Fund.

The Tax Losses Reserve Fund requirements of Revenue and Taxation Code section 4703 must be used unless a county adopts a resolution by October 31 of any fiscal year electing to be governed by Revenue and Taxation Code section 4703.2

For more information relating to ERAF, local governments should refer to the Excess Educational Revenue Augmentation Fund Revenue Guidance, located under the Property Tax header on the SCO's website at https://www.sco.ca.gov/pubs_guides.html.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 19: Sales, Pledges, and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues

Chapter Contents

Introduction 439

Types of Future Revenues 439

19.01 Sales of Receivables 439

19.02 Sales of Future Revenues 440

19.03 Pledges of Receivables 441

19.04 Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues 442

Disclosure Requirements.....443

19.05 Disclosures Related to Future Revenues 443

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 19: Sales, Pledges, and Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues

Introduction

This chapter will cover accounting and reporting standards for transactions in which a government receives or is entitled to receive resources in exchange for future cash flows.

Types of Future Revenues

19.01 Sales of Receivables

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. S20.103 (Section S20, paragraph .103), a transaction in which a local government receives, or is entitled to receive, proceeds in exchange for the future cash flows from its account receivables should be reported as a sale if the local government's continuing involvement with those receivables is effectively terminated.

The continuing involvement of a local government is effectively terminated if all of the following criteria are met:

- The transferee's ability to subsequently sell or pledge the receivables is not significantly limited by constraints imposed by the transferor government.
- The transferor government does not have the option or ability to unilaterally substitute for or reacquire specific accounts from the receivables transferred, except as opted by the transferee.
- The sale agreement is not cancelable by either party.
- The receivables and the cash resulting from their collection have been isolated from the transferor government (refer to criteria list for determining isolation in next paragraph).

The term transferor refers to the local government that is selling and/or pledging receivables or future revenues, while the term transferee refers to the local government that is taking control of the receivables or future revenues.

In accordance with GASB Cod. Sec. S20.104 (Section S20, paragraph .104), the following criteria should be used to determine whether receivables have been isolated from the transferor government:

- a. The transferee should have legal standing separate from the transferor.
- b. Generally, banking arrangements should eliminate access by the transferor and its component units (other than the transferee) to the cash generated by collecting the receivables. Access is eliminated when payments on individual accounts are made directly to a custodial account maintained for the benefit of the transferee.

However, if the transferor continues to service the accounts or if obligors misdirect their payments on transferred accounts to the transferor:

- (1) The payments to the transferee should be made only from the resources generated by the specific receivables rather than from the transferor's own resources. Transferor should have no obligation to advance amounts to the transferee before it collects equivalent amounts from the underlying accounts.
 - (2) Cash collected by the transferor on behalf of the transferee should be remitted to the transferee without any significant delay. Earnings on invested collections should also be remitted to the transferee.
 - (3) The transferor should consider proceeds received from the transferee as satisfaction of individual accounts and indicate in its records, which accounts have been transferred and which collections pertain to those accounts.
- c. Provisions in the transfer agreement or provided in other governing documents (e.g., statutes, charters, other governing agreements, etc.) should protect the transferee from the claims of the transferor's creditors.

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. S20.110 (Section S20, paragraph .110), in a sale of receivables the transferor should no longer recognize the receivables sold as assets and remove the individual accounts at their carrying values. For nongovernmental funds, the difference between the proceeds (excluding amounts that may be refundable) and the carrying value of the receivables should be recognized as a gain or loss in the period of the sale. In governmental funds, the difference between the proceeds received and the receivables sold (net of allowances and liabilities) should be recognized as revenue.

If the transferee is a government outside of the transferor government's financial reporting entity, the transferee government should recognize the acquisition of the receivables at the purchase price. For a description of intra-entity transfers, refer to section 19.04, *Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues*.

19.02 Sales of Future Revenues

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. S20.105 (Section S20, paragraph .105), a transaction in which a local government receives proceeds in exchange for cash flows from specific future revenues should be reported as a sale if the local government's continuing involvement meets all of the following criteria:

- The transferor government will not have an active involvement in the future generation of those revenues.
- The transferee's ability to subsequently sell or pledge the future cash flows is not significantly limited by constraints imposed by the transferor.
- The cash resulting from collection of the future revenues has been isolated from the transferor government, other than to pass on receipts of the revenue to the transferee.

- The contract, agreement, or other arrangement between the original resource provider and the transferor government does not prohibit the transfer or assignment of those resources.
- The sale agreement is not cancelable by either party, including cancellation through a lump sum payment or transfer of other assets or rights.

Resources from the sales of future revenues represent an increase to net position and should be classified as a deferred inflow of resources. The transferor should recognize the deferred inflows in future periods over the duration of the agreement. The transferee should record the receivables at the purchase price, and should recognize the receivables as revenue when the recognition criteria appropriate to the type of revenue are met. For information concerning intra-entity transfers of future revenues, refer to section 19.04, *Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues*.

19.03 Pledges of Receivables or Future Revenues

According to GASB Cod. Sec. S20.108 – S20.109 (Section S20, paragraphs .108 – .109), when the sale of receivables or future revenues do not meet the criteria required for sale reporting as described in GASB Cod. Sec. S20.103 – .106 (Section S20, paragraphs .103 – .106), the transaction should be reported as a collateralized borrowing and should be considered pledged rather than sold.

The proceeds received by the pledging government should be reported as a liability in its statements of net position and as an other financing source in its governmental funds statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balance, if governmental funds receive the proceeds.

The pledging government would still carry the accounts receivable on its balance sheet or state them as an asset, as it is not a sale, and would treat pledged revenues as its own revenues following normal revenue recognition rules. If the transferee receives revenues, it should reduce the pledging government's liability to the transferee and recognize a receivable for the amounts paid to the pledging government.

Pledges of Future Revenues When Resources are Not Received by the Pledging Government

Governments that pledge the future cash flows of specific revenues but do not receive resource in exchange for that pledge may be empowered to create separate component units or use existing component units to issue debt on their behalf that will benefit their constituencies, programs, or functions. As security for the debt issued by a component unit, the government pledges all or a portion of a specific future revenue stream to the debt-issuing component unit without establishing itself as primarily or secondarily obligated for the component unit's debt. The debt-issuing component unit then pledges those future payments from the pledging government as security for its debt.

When issuing stand-alone financial statements, at the time the pledge agreement is made, the pledging government should not recognize a liability, and the debt-issuing component unit should not recognize a receivable for the future revenues pledged.

The pledging government should continue to recognize revenue from the pledged amounts and should recognize a liability to the debt-issuing component unit and an expenditure/expense simultaneously with the recognition of the revenues that are pledged. The debt-issuing component unit should recognize revenue when the pledging government is obligated to make the payments.

In the process of blending the financial statements of a debt-issuing component unit into the financial statements of a primary government pledging revenue for the component unit's debt, the primary government should reclassify an amount due to the component unit as an interfund payable and in interfund transfer out simultaneously with the recognition of the revenues that are pledged. The debt-issuing component unit (presented as a fund of the primary government) should recognize an interfund receivable and a transfer in when the primary government is obligated to make the payments.

19.04 Intra-Entity Transfers of Future Revenues

When transferring future revenues within the same financial reporting entity, the transferee should record the future revenues received at the carrying value of the transferor government.

If the transferee government is not a defined benefit pension plan or a defined benefit Other Postemployment Benefit (OPEB) plan, the difference between the amount paid and the carrying value of the receivables transferred should be reported as a gain or loss by the transferor and as a revenue or expenditure/expense by the transferee in their separately-issued statements, but reclassified as transfers or subsidies — as appropriate — in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

If the transferee government is a defined benefit pension plan or a defined benefit OPEB plan then difference between the amount paid and the carrying value of the receivables transferred should be reported as an employer/non employer contribution to the pension/OPEB plan in accordance with the requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. P20 or P50 (Section P20 or P50) as applicable. In the case of stand-alone pension/OPEB plans, the difference should be reported in accordance with of GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5 or Po50 (Section Pe5 or Po50).

Local governments should refer to Chapter 22, *Retirement Systems* for more information if the transferee is either a defined benefit pension plan or a defined benefit OPEB plan.

There may be instances where during an intra-entity sale of future revenues, the transferor government will not report the carrying value for the rights sold if the asset recognition criteria has not been met. In such circumstances the transferee government should not recognize the asset and related revenues until the asset recognition criteria is met. Therefore, the carrying value should be recorded as a deferred outflow of resources, amortized (recognized as expenses) over the duration of the sale agreement by the transferee. The transferor government should report the proceeds of the sale as a deferred inflow of resources and recognize the revenue over the life of the sale agreement.

Disclosure Requirements

19.05 Disclosures Related to Future Revenues

Disclosure of Future Revenues Sold

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. S20.122 (Section S20, paragraph .122), in the year of the sale, local governments that sell future revenue streams, should disclose in the notes to the financial statements any information about the specific revenues sold, including:

- Identification of the specific revenue sold and the significant assumptions used in determining the approximate amount.
- The period to which the sale is applicable.
- The proportion of the specific revenue stream that has been sold, if estimable.
- A comparison of the proceeds of the sale and the present value of the future revenues sold, including any significant assumptions used in determining the present value.

Disclosure of Future Revenues Pledged

Pledging local governments should disclose pledged revenues that have been formally committed to directly collateralize or secure debt, or directly or indirectly collateralize or secure debt of a component unit. In accordance with GASB Cod. Sec. S20.121 (Section S20, paragraph .121), for each period in which the secured debt remains outstanding, pledging governments should disclose in the notes to the financial statements, any information about specific revenues pledged, including:

- Identification of the specific revenue pledged and the approximate amount of the pledge.
- Identification of, and general purpose for, the debt secured by the pledged revenue.
- The term of the commitment (period during which revenue will not be available for other purposes).
- The proportion of the specific revenue stream that has been pledged, if estimable.
- A comparison of the pledged revenues recognized during the period to the principal and interest requirements for the debt directly or indirectly collateralized by those revenues. For this disclosure, pledged revenues recognized during the period may be presented net of specified operating expenses, based on the provisions of the pledge agreement; however, the amounts should not be netted in the financial statements.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 20: Special Assessment Accounting

Chapter Contents

Introduction	447
Types of Special Assessments	448
20.01 Service Assessments	448
20.02 Capital Improvement Assessments	448
Accounting and Reporting For Special Assessments	449
20.03 Special Assessment Debt	449
20.04 Special Assessment Reporting Requirements	450
20.05 Reporting Special Assessments for Services	450
20.06 Reporting Capital Improvement Special Assessments	450
20.07 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt — Governmental Funds	453
20.08 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt — Proprietary Funds	454
20.09 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt — Government-wide Financial Statements	455
20.10 Required Disclosures	455
20.11 Special Assessment Related Laws	456
20.12 Example – Special Assessments	457

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 20: Special Assessment Accounting

Introduction

Local governments provide some capital improvements or services primarily to benefit a particular property owner or group of property owners rather than the general citizenry. The property owners will frequently initiate or undertake these capital improvements or services — that is to say, the project is authorized by a special assessment petition signed by a majority of the property owners who will benefit from the proposed project. The local government then acts on behalf of those property owners by:

- organizing a special assessment district;
- performing the project (often using private contractors);
- providing or arranging for financing;
- overseeing and approving the progress and completion of the project; and
- collecting the assessments to pay any debt incurred to finance the project.

The costs of providing the capital improvement or services described in the preceding paragraph will be either partially or totally charged to the property owners who receive the benefit. Sometimes the local government assumes a portion of the cost of an improvement, either by incurring debt or by using other available resources, in recognition of a public benefit that also results from the project.

All local governments should consult with their respective legal counsel for further clarification on statutory provisions relating to special assessments.

Pursuant to California Constitution Article XIII D, section two:

Assessment means any levy or charge upon real property by an agency for a special benefit conferred upon the real property. Assessment includes, but is not limited to, special assessment, benefit assessment, maintenance assessment, and special assessment tax.

Typically, local governments can use special assessments to pay for public works like sewers, parks, water systems, and some services. California Constitution Article XIII C, section two requires all local governments, including special districts, to obtain weighted ballot approval from property owners before levying any assessments.

According to Government Code section 56036, the terms district or special district are synonymous and include county service areas, but excludes assessment districts and special assessment districts. For a complete list of excluded district types, refer to Government Code section 56036(b).

Types of Special Assessments

20.01 Service Assessments

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.104 (Section S40, paragraph .104):

Service-type special assessment projects are for operating activities and do not result in the purchase or construction of capital assets. Often the assessments are for services that are normally provided to the public as general governmental functions and that would otherwise be financed by the general fund or a special revenue fund. Those services include street lighting, street cleaning, and snow plowing. Financing for these routine services typically comes from general revenues.

However, if the local government extends these routine services to property owners outside the normal service area of the local government, or the services are provided at a higher level or at more frequent intervals than for the general public, then special assessments are sometimes levied. Only the owners of the affected properties would be charged for the additional services.

20.02 Capital Improvement Assessments

Special assessment projects are usually capital in nature and enhance the utility, accessibility, or aesthetic value of the affected properties. They also provide improvements or additions to a government's general capital assets or infrastructure. Examples of typical special assessment capital improvements include construction or improvement of streets, sidewalks, parking facilities, and curbs and gutters.

Capital improvement special assessment projects have two distinct and functionally different phases. The initial phase is comprised of the financing and construction of the project, which in most cases is relatively short in duration — usually a few months to a couple of years (in rare cases). The second phase, which is usually substantially longer, consists of collecting the assessment principal and interest levied against the benefited properties and the repayment of the cost of financing the construction. The second phase may start at the same time as, during, or after the initial phase.

Local governments typically issue long-term debt (e.g., bonds) to finance capital improvement projects and secure these debts by placing a lien on the assessed properties of the beneficiaries. The lien is attached to each property when the assessment is levied and is released only after the assessment is paid in full.

Ordinarily, the assessed property owners pay the assessments in installments, but may elect to pay the entire assessment all at once, or the remaining balance at any time during the life of the assessment.

The primary source of repayment of these debts is usually the assessments collected by the local government. However, a local government may sometimes choose to finance the debt by partially using its own funds (e.g., capital grants or tax revenues) and partially from assessments collected.

Accounting and Reporting For Special Assessments

Local governments are encouraged to modify their accounting systems so that they can account for the revenues and expenditures/expenses related to special assessment projects; this would also include the recording of bond proceeds and payments. For example, if a local government issues bonds to finance a capital project under the Municipal Improvement Act of 1913 (SHC. Code, §10602), the bond proceeds are required to be deposited into a special fund established for the purposes of the capital improvement project. Streets and Highways Code § 10602 states, “The proceeds of the bonds shall be deposited in the fund specified in Section 10424.”

20.03 Special Assessment Debt

Special assessment debt is defined in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.108 (Section S40 paragraph .108) as:

Those long-term obligations secured by a lien on the assessed properties for which the primary source of repayment is the assessments levied against the benefitting properties.

As previously noted in this chapter, special assessment debt can be repaid by more than one method. According to GASB Cod. Sec. S40.110 (Section S40, paragraph .110):

The primary source for repayment of special assessment debt is assessments against benefitting property owners. However, because the government is often directly responsible for paying a portion of the project cost, either as a public benefit or as a property owner benefitting from the improvement, general governmental resources repay the portion of the debt related to the government’s share of the project cost.

In short, the type and structure of debt associated with special assessment-related capital improvements can vary considerably from one jurisdiction to another.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.112 (Section S40, paragraph .112):

Capital improvements involving special assessments may be financed by debt that is:

- a. General obligation debt that is not secured by liens on assessed properties but nevertheless will be repaid in part by special assessment collections.
- b. Special assessment debt that is secured by liens on assessed properties and is also backed by the full faith and credit of the government as additional security.
- c. Special assessment debt that is secured by liens on assessed properties and is not backed by the full faith and credit of the government but is, however, fully or partially backed by some other type of general governmental commitment.
- d. Special assessment debt that is secured by liens on assessed properties, is not backed by the full faith and credit of the government, and is not backed by any other type of general governmental commitment; the government is not liable under any circumstance for the repayment of this category of debt, should the property owner default.

20.04 Special Assessment Reporting Requirements

In accordance with GASB Cod. Sec. S40.113 (Section S40, paragraph .113), the special assessment fund type, as identified in National Council on Government Accounting (NCGA) Statement 1, *Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles*, should not be used in basic financial statements to report the construction of public improvements or the provision of services financed by special assessments, unless there is a legal requirement.

Legal requirements can generally be met by maintaining separate funds for special revenues, capital projects, and debt service for individual special assessment projects. They can also be met by identifying special assessment transaction and accounts separately within the other funds. If one of these approaches does not satisfy the legal requirements, additional schedules and narrative explanations can be presented in the notes to the basic financial statements, the annual comprehensive financial report, or in separate special purpose reports, in accordance with GASB Cod. Sec. 1200.113 (Section 1200, paragraph .113).

20.05 Reporting Special Assessments for Services

In the fund financial statements, the transactions of a service-type special assessment should be reported in the fund type that best reflects the nature of the transactions, usually the general fund, a special revenue fund, or an enterprise fund. Only the minimum number of funds consistent with legal and administrative requirements should be established by the local government.

Service-type special assessments transactions (exchange or exchange-like), including related expenditures (expenses), should be recognized on the same basis of accounting as that normally used for that fund type. Both the assessment revenues and the expenditures (expenses) for which the assessments were levied should be recognized on the same basis of accounting as that normally used for that fund type. In the government-wide financial statements, exchange or exchange-like service type special assessments should be reported as either governmental or business-type activities using the full accrual basis of accounting.

As discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.114 (Section S40, paragraph .114), revenues from service-type special assessment transactions that are nonexchange transactions, as defined in GASB Cod. Sec. N50 (Section N50), should be reported in accordance with the provisions outlined by GASB.

20.06 Reporting Capital Improvement Special Assessments

According to GASB Cod. Sec. S40.115 (Section S40, paragraph .115):

The extent of a government's liability for debt related to a special assessment capital improvement can vary significantly. For example, a government may be primarily liable for the debt (as in the case of a general obligation issue), it may have no liability whatsoever for special assessment debt, or it may be obligated in some manner to provide a secondary source of funds for repayment of special assessment debt in the event of default by the assessed property owners.

A local government entity is obligated in some manner for special assessment debt if:

- it is legally obligated to assume all or part of the debt in the event of default; or
- the government may take certain actions to assume secondary liability for all or part of the debt — and the government takes, or gives indications that it will take, those actions.

The conditions that indicate that a government is obligated in some manner include:

- a. The government is obligated to honor deficiencies to the extent that lien foreclosure proceeds are insufficient.
- b. The government is required to establish a reserve, guarantee, or sinking fund with other resources. If a fund is established, GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.107 (Section 1300, paragraph .107) requires those transactions and balances to be reported in a debt service fund.
- c. The government is required to cover delinquencies with other resources until foreclosure proceeds are received.
- d. The government must purchase all properties (sold for delinquent assessments) that were not sold at public auction.
- e. The government is authorized to establish a reserve, guarantee, or sinking fund, and it establishes such a fund. If a fund is not established, the considerations in subparagraphs “g” and “h” may nevertheless provide evidence that the government is obligated in some manner. If a fund is established, GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.107 (Section 1300, paragraph .107) requires those transactions and balances to be reported in a debt service fund.
- f. The local government may establish a separate fund with other resources for the purpose of purchasing or redeeming special assessment debt, and it establishes such a fund. If a fund is not established, the considerations in subparagraphs “g” and “h” may nevertheless provide evidence that the government is obligated in some manner.
- g. The government explicitly indicates by contract, such as the bond agreement or offering statement, that in the event of default it may cover delinquencies, although it has no legal obligation to do so.
- h. Legal decisions within the State or previous actions by the government related to defaults on other special assessment projects make it probable that the government will assume responsibility for the debt in the event of default.

Simply put, the phrase obligated in some manner as used in this section is intended to include all situations other than those in which:

- the government is prohibited (by constitution, charter, statute, ordinance, or contract) from assuming the debt in the event of default by the property owner; or
- the government is not legally liable for assuming the debt and makes no statement, or gives no indication, that it will, or may, honor the debt in the event of default.

As stated in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.116 (Section S40, paragraph .116):

Debt issued to finance capital projects that will be paid wholly or partly from special assessments against benefited property owners should be reported as follows:

- a. General obligation debt that will be repaid, in part, from special assessments should be reported as general long-term liabilities only in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position.
- b. Special assessment debt for which the government is obligated in some manner (as described in the preceding list of conditions of how a government may be obligated in some manner), should be reported as general long-term liabilities in the government-wide statement of net position, except for the portion, if any, that is a direct obligation of a proprietary fund, or that is expected to be repaid from operating revenues of a proprietary fund.
 - (1) The portion of the special assessment debt that will be repaid from property owner assessments should be reported as special assessment debt with governmental commitment.
 - (2) The portion of special assessment debt that will be repaid from general resources of the government (the public benefit portion, or the amount assessed against government-owned property) should be reported like other general long-term liabilities.
 - (3) The portion of special assessment debt that is (a) a direct obligation of a proprietary fund or (b) not a direct obligation but is expected to be repaid from proprietary fund revenues should be reported as liabilities of those funds in the proprietary fund statement of net position as well as in the government-wide statement of net position.
- c. Special assessment debt for which the government is not obligated in any manner should not be displayed in the government's financial statements. However, if the government is liable for a portion of that debt (the public benefit portion, or as a property owner), that portion should be reported as previously stated.
- d. If a governmental entity is obligated in some manner for capital improvement special assessment debt (as discussed in the preceding list of conditions of how a government may be obligated in some manner), capital assets constructed or acquired with capital improvement special assessment debt should be reported in the government-wide financial statements as capital assets of either governmental or business-type activities in the statement of net position.

20.07 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt — Governmental Funds

According to GASB Cod. Sec. S40.118 (Section S40, paragraph .118), if the government is obligated in some manner to assume the payment of related debt service in the event of default by the property owners, as described in section 20.06, *Reporting Capital Improvement Special Assessments*, then:

- All expenditure should be reported in the same manner as any other capital improvement and financing transaction. Revenue from special assessment capital improvement transactions that are exchange or exchange-like transactions and related expenditures should be recognized on the full accrual basis of accounting.
- Transactions of the construction phase of the project should be reported in a capital projects fund or other appropriate fund. Transactions of the debt service phase should be reported in a debt service fund, if the use of a debt service fund is required by the guidance in GASB Cod. Sec. 1300.107 (Section 1300, paragraph .107). At the time of levy, receivables related to special assessments should be recognized and should be offset by a deferred inflow of resources. As the assessments become measurable and available, the deferred inflow of resources should be reduced accordingly.
- The capital assets constructed or acquired (other than those related to proprietary funds — refer to section 20.08, *Capital Improvement Financing — Proprietary Funds*) should be reported as general capital assets only in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position, as stated in GASB Cod. Sec. 1400.101 (Section 1400, paragraph .101).
- The outstanding long-term debt should be reported as general long-term liabilities only in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position in accordance with the provisions outlined in section 20.06, *Reporting Capital Improvement Special Assessments*.

Conversely, pursuant to GASB Cod. Sec. S40.119 (Section S40, paragraph .119), if the government is not obligated in any manner for a special assessment issue then:

- The debt service transactions should be reported in a custodial fund in the statement of fiduciary net position rather than a debt service fund. In this instance, the government's duties are limited to acting as an agent for the assessed property owners and the bondholders.
- Transactions of the construction phase should be reported in a capital projects fund, or other appropriate fund. The source of funds in the capital projects fund should be identified by a description other than bond proceeds, such as contribution from property owners.

- The capital assets constructed or acquired should be reported only as general capital assets in the governmental activities column in the government-wide statement of net position. Displaying the transactions in this manner recognizes that the construction or acquisition is a governmental activity and results in the addition of a general capital asset, but is not financed by governmental debt.

Finally, as stated in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.120 (Section S40, paragraph .120):

If an improvement is initially financed with existing governmental fund resources rather than with debt, either a direct capital expenditure or a transfer to a capital projects fund should be reported. At the time of the levy, special assessments receivable in the amount of the levy—and a deferred inflow of resources equal to the amount that is not measurable and available—should be recognized in the fund that provides the resources.

20.08 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt—Proprietary Funds

According to GASB Cod. Sec. S40.121 (Section S40, paragraph .121):

If a local governmental entity is obligated in some manner for capital improvement special assessment debt and that debt is directly related to and expected to be paid from proprietary funds, all transactions related to capital improvements financed by special assessments should be reported in the same manner, and on the same basis of accounting, as any other capital improvement and financing transaction reported in proprietary funds. Special assessment revenue and receivables should be recognized on the full accrual basis.

Generally, the provisions outlined in section 20.06, *Reporting Capital Improvement Special Assessments* should be followed even when the capital improvements financed by special assessments provide capital assets to a local government's enterprise fund. However, the cost of the improvements should be capitalized on the enterprise fund's statement of financial position and an equal amount should be reported as capital contributions after nonoperating revenues and expenses in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in fund net position.

Finally, as discussed in GASB Cod. Sec. S40.123 (Section S40, paragraph .123):

Only that portion, if any, of special assessment debt that (a) is a direct obligation of the proprietary fund or (b) is not a direct obligation but is expected to be repaid from proprietary fund revenues, should be reported as a liability on the proprietary fund's statement of net position. However, a government entity is not precluded from reporting all of the transactions and balances of a special assessment project within a proprietary fund to properly reflect the actual administration of a project.

20.09 Capital Improvements Financed by Special Assessment Debt—Government-wide Financial Statements

If a governmental entity is obligated in some manner for capital improvement special assessment debt—as discussed in section 20.06, *Reporting Capital Improvements Special Assessments*—then capital assets constructed or acquired with capital improvement special assessment debt should be reported as capital assets of either governmental or business-type activities in the government-wide statement of net position. Special assessment revenues and receivables should be recognized using the full accrual basis of accounting.

If a governmental entity is not obligated in any manner for special assessment debt, program revenue equal to the amount capitalized—along with other grants or contributions restricted for capital purposes — should be reported in the statement of activities using the full accrual basis of accounting.

20.10 Required Disclosures

If the government is obligated in some manner for special assessment debt, the notes to financial statements should disclose the information required in the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 2300 (Section 2300), as it applies to long-term debt. The information should describe the nature of the government's obligation, including the identification and description of any guarantee, reserve, or sinking fund established to cover defaults by property owners. Additionally, the notes should also disclose the amount of special assessment receivables that are delinquent if not separately displayed on the face of the financial statements.

Following are some examples of disclosures that should be included in the notes:

- Nature of the local government's obligation for the special assessment debt.
- Descriptions of special assessment debt issues faced by the local government.
- Summary of debt service requirements to maturity.
- Special assessment debt authorized but unissued.
- Changes in general long-term debt (the portion for which the governmental entity is responsible).

If the government is not obligated in any manner for special assessment debt, then the notes to the financial statements should disclose the amount of the debt and the fact that the government is not liable in any way for repayment but is only acting as an agent for the property owners in collecting the assessments, forwarding the collections to bondholders, and, if appropriate, initiating foreclosure proceedings.

It should be noted that some special assessment districts constitute component units. The accounts of those units, including the special assessment debt for which the component unit is obligated in some manner, should be included in the reporting entity in accordance with the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. 2600 (Section 2600), even though the primary government may have no obligation for the debt.

20.11 Special Assessment Related Laws

California has a variety of assessment laws. Following is a list of some (but not all) of the more commonly used assessment laws. As previously stated, local governments should refer to their respective legal counsel when interpreting the requirements of these statutory provisions.

Benefit Assessment Act of 1982 (Government Code section 54703 et seq.). Allows local governments to finance property related services through the imposition of an assessment upon those properties that benefit from those services.

Fire Suppression Assessments (Government Code section 50078 et seq.). Allows local government entities that provide fire suppression services directly or by contract with the State or a local agency to—by ordinance or by resolution adopted after notice and hearing—determine and levy an assessment for fire suppression services pursuant to this article. The assessment may be made for the purpose of obtaining, furnishing, operating, and maintaining fire suppression equipment or apparatus or for the purpose of paying the salaries and benefits of firefighting personnel, or both, whether or not fire suppression services are actually used by or upon a parcel, improvement, or property.

Improvement Act of 1911 (Streets and Highway Code 5000 et seq.). Allows local government entities to fund various types of projects such as transportation systems, street paving, parks, recreation areas, sewers, drainage systems, etc.

Improvement Bond Act of 1915 (Streets and Highway Code 8500 et seq.). This act is not an assessment act. It allows local government entities to issue assessment bonds or anticipation notes when using other assessment acts such as the Improvement Act of 1911.

Landscaping and Lighting Act of 1972 (Streets and Highway Code section 22500 et seq.). Allows local agencies to levy assessments for improvements and maintenance for parks, recreational areas and public lighting facilities.

Municipal Improvement Act of 1913 (Streets and Highway Code section 10000 et seq.). Allows local government entities to levy assessments for a variety of improvements, which include improvements related to water, electric power, gas services, and, necessary works and appliances for lighting purposes.

20.12 Example – Special Assessments

The following example is for illustrative purposes only and is not intended to modify or limit the requirements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. Existing standards may require disclosures in addition to those illustrated. Local government entities should carefully consider their own unique circumstances in determining the most appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.

Special Assessment Project

The local government entity agreed to participate in a special assessment to construct a street in a newly developed area during the current fiscal year. The project has an estimated cost of \$2,100,000 before change orders. Payments in the amount of \$1,950,000 were made by the local government entity to the capital projects fund during the current fiscal year in partial fulfillment of this commitment:

General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Other Financing Uses – Transfers Out – Capital Projects Fund	DR: \$2,100,000	
Due to Other Funds - Capital Projects Fund (To record the local government entity's portion of special assessment project)		CR: \$2,100,000
Due to Other Funds – Capital Projects Fund Cash	DR: \$1,950,000	
(To record partial payment of project construction costs)		CR: \$1,950,000

The local government entity issued \$5,100,000 in special assessment bonds and also committed to provide additional resources in the event of a shortfall resulting from a bond discount. The special assessment bonds, which are reported in the capital projects fund, were sold at a \$15,000 original issue discount; therefore, the local government entity was obligated to transfer an amount equal to the discount to the capital projects fund. Furthermore, the local government entity agreed to pay the special assessment bond issuance costs of \$160,000 from general fund resources, which required a transfer of \$160,000 to the capital projects fund and an adjustment to the general fund's budget.

General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Other Financing Uses – Transfers Out – Capital Projects Fund	DR: \$15,000	
Due to Other Funds - Capital Projects Fund (To record local government entity's commitment to provide additional resources)		CR: \$15,000
Other Financing Uses – Transfers Out – Capital Projects Fund	DR: \$160,000	
Due to Other Funds – Capital Projects Fund (To record amount due to capital projects fund for reimbursement of bond issuance costs)		CR: \$160,000

Capital Projects Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Due from Other Funds – General Fund	DR: \$15,000	
Other Financing Sources – Transfers In – General Fund		CR: \$15,000
(To record the general fund's commitment to make up the difference between the face value of the special assessment bonds and their present value)		
Due from Other Funds – General Fund	DR: \$160,000	
Other Financing Sources – Transfers In – General Fund		CR: \$160,000
(To record the general fund's commitment to reimburse the capital projects fund for bond issuance costs)		

Special Assessment Levy

A special assessment levy of \$5,100,000 was approved in the current fiscal year to repay special assessment debt. The special assessment debt proceeds were recorded in the capital projects fund in the current fiscal year. Interest at the rate of 7 percent accrues on the outstanding balances assessed to property owners. The local government entity does not consider special assessments to be available until collected:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Special Assessment Receivable	DR: \$5,100,000	
Unavailable Revenue – Special Assessments		CR: \$5,100,000
(To record special assessment levy)		

Special Assessment Collections

The local government entity collects the special assessment levy from property owners twice a year (every 6 months), which amounted to \$688,500 (including \$178,500 in interest each time a collection is made):

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$688,500	
Special Assessment Receivable		CR: \$510,000
Revenues – Investment Earnings		CR: \$178,500
(To record annual collection of special assessment levy)		
Unavailable Revenue – Special Assessments	DR: \$510,000	
Revenues – Special Assessments		CR: \$510,000
(To recognize revenue associated with special assessment collections)		

Chapter 21: Risk Management

Chapter Contents

Introduction	461
Overview of Risks	461
21.01 Risks	461
21.02 Costs of Risk	462
Self-Insurance and Risk Pools	462
21.03 Self-Insurance Allocations	462
21.04 Risk Pools without Transfer of Risk	462
21.05 Capitalization Contributions to Risk Pools	463
Accounting	463
21.06 Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims	463
21.07 Valuation of Accrued Claims	465
21.08 Discounting	466
21.09 Insurance Related Transactions	466
21.10 Policyholder or Pool Dividends	469
21.11 Annuity Contracts	469
Funds	469
21.12 Governmental Funds Used to Account for Risk Financing Activities	469
21.13 Internal Service Funds Used to Account For Risk Financing Activities	470
21.14 Reporting Claim Losses in Proprietary and Fiduciary Funds	470
21.15 Reporting Claim Losses in Government-wide Financial Statements	471
21.16 Reporting Risk Financing	471
Disclosures	471
21.17 Disclosure of Loss Contingencies	471
21.18 Risk Management Disclosures	472
21.19 Subsequent Events	473
21.20 Risk Management Internal Service Fund Illustrative Entries	474

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 21: Risk Management

Introduction

Local governments are exposed to a variety of risks that may result in losses. These risks include possible losses from natural disasters, injuries to employees, or breaches of contract. The purpose of this section is to provide general guidance on accounting and financial reporting standards for risk, financing, and insurance-related activities for local governments.

Overview of Risks

21.01 Risks

Local governments face risk of loss from a variety of events, including:

- torts (wrongful acts, injuries, or damages, not involving breach of contract, for which a civil action can be brought);
- theft of, damage to, or destruction of assets;
- business interruptions;
- errors and omissions (deficiencies, such as omission of information, which can result in legal claims for negligence or failure to perform);
- job-related illnesses, employee related damages, or injuries to employees;
- liabilities for environmental remediation; and
- natural disasters (events beyond human origin or control, such as lightning, windstorms, and earthquakes).

According to GASB Cod. Sec. C50.104 (Section C50, paragraph .104), risk management is defined as the “process of managing an organization’s activities to minimize the adverse effects of certain types of losses.” Risk control (to minimize the losses that strike an organization) and risk financing (to obtain finances to provide for or restore the economic damages of those losses) are the main elements of risk management. Techniques of risk financing include risk retention (sometimes referred to as self-insurance), risk transfer to and from an insurer, and risk transfer to a noninsurer.

A local government should decide how to finance losses that may arise from the types of risks identified in the list at the beginning of this section. A local government should also consider if an accrual for possible losses should be recognized at the end of an accounting period. The consideration for a possible accrual for losses by a local government is no different from the evaluation that a private enterprise should consider.

21.02 Costs of Risk

The costs of risk include (not all-inclusive):

- Administration costs, such as salaries, benefits, and other operating expenses associated with managing the total risk of the local government;
- Mitigation costs, such as security software, background checks, and safety education programs;
- Transfer costs, such as insurance or financial instruments; and
- Uninsured losses, such as losses from accidents, repairs, or insurance deductibles.

Self-Insurance and Risk Pools

21.03 Self-Insurance Allocations

Self-insurance describes an entity's retention of its own risk, rather than transferring the risk to an independent third party through the purchase of an insurance policy. The term self-insurance is somewhat of a misnomer because no insurance is actually involved. It is sometimes accompanied by the setting aside of assets to fund any related losses. Risk financing techniques for self-insurance require an effective cost allocation system to formulate contributions.

Contributions should be:

- equitable, reflecting actual hazards and costs;
- based on easily ascertained and quantifiable data;
- adjustable for different size deductibles, if units have widely disparate financial size; and
- within guidelines and contribution thresholds set by law.

21.04 Risk Pools without Transfer of Risk

A local government may participate in pools in which there is no transfer or pooling of risk, such as those in which only banking or servicing is the function of the pool. In these instances, the local government should measure and recognize its reasonably estimated claims liabilities and related expenditures/expenses in accordance with the principles outlined in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*, because the risk of loss has not been transferred to an unrelated third party.

Payments, including capitalization contributions, made to risk pools to which there has been no transfer or pooling of risk, should be accounted for as either deposits or reductions of the claims liabilities account, as applicable. A deposit should be recorded when there are no recorded liabilities for reasonably expected claims. A reduction of the claims liabilities account should be made when payments to the risk pools are to be used to pay claims as they are incurred.

21.05 Capitalization Contributions to Risk Pools

When a local government makes capital contributions to a risk pool whereby risk has been transferred or pooled, a determination should be made whether to record the contribution as an asset, deposit, or an expenditure/expense.

The capitalization contribution to a public entity risk pool with transfer or pooling of risk should be reported as a deposit if it is probable that the contribution will be returned to the local government upon either the dissolution of or the approved withdrawal from the risk pool. The decision as to whether an asset exists should be based on the type of fund, the pooling agreement, and the pool's ability to return the contribution. In governmental funds, the deposit amount should be classified as nonspendable fund balance because it is considered contractually required to be maintained intact.

In the government-wide financial statements, the contribution should initially be reported as prepaid insurance (an asset), and expenses should be allocated and recognized over the periods for which the pool is expected to provide coverage. The periods expected to be covered should be consistent with the periods for which the contribution is factored into the pool's determination of premiums, but should not exceed ten years if not readily determinable.

For governmental funds, the entire amount of the capitalization contribution may be recognized as an expenditure in the period of the contribution; reporting of prepaid insurance is not required. Otherwise, the contribution should be reported initially as prepaid insurance (an asset), and expenditures should be allocated and recognized over the periods for which the pool is expected to provide coverage. For more information on reporting capital contributions in a governmental fund refer to GASB Cod. Sec. C50.138 (Section C50, paragraph .138).

When it comes to proprietary funds, the contribution should be reported initially as prepaid insurance (an asset), and expenses should be allocated and recognized over the periods for which the pool is expected to provide coverage. For more information on reporting capital contributions in a proprietary fund refer to GASB Cod. Sec. C50.137 (Section C50, paragraph .137)

Accounting

21.06 Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims

When an internal service fund is used, if a risk of loss or a portion of risk of loss from events have not been transferred to an unrelated third party, the local government should report an estimated loss from a claim as an expenditure/expense and as an accrued liability if both of the following conditions exist:

- On the basis of information available, it is probable that an asset has been impaired or a liability has been incurred as of the date of the financial statements; and
- The amount of loss can be reasonably estimated.

To determine whether a loss is probable, all relevant information available prior to the issuance of the financial statements should be evaluated. The expenditure/expense and liability related to the loss should be recognized and disclosed in the financial statements. There are situations when an incident occurs prior to the balance sheet date, but claims are not reported or asserted when the financial statements are prepared and are referred to as an incurred but not reported (IBNR) loss. If an IBNR loss can be reasonably estimated and it is probable that a claim will be asserted, the expenditure/expense and liability should be recognized.

When a loss contingency exists, the likelihood that the future event or events will confirm the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability can range from probable to remote. The accrual of a loss suggests that the local government will be held liable for the loss, which will eventually be confirmed when the local government is required to pay the injured party.

The various probabilities of whether a contingent loss will eventually be confirmed by a future event, for purposes of disclosure, include:

- Probable — the future event or events confirming the fact that a loss has occurred are likely to occur;
- Reasonably Possible — the chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely; or
- Remote — the chance of the future event or event occurring is slight.

Local governments should evaluate their exposure to liabilities related to unpaid claims, which includes both (1) claims that have been reported and (2) claims that have been incurred but not reported (IBNR).

Liabilities for unpaid claims, including IBNR claims, should be based on the following cost factors:

- Estimated ultimate cost of settling the claims, including the effects of inflation and other societal and economic factors;
- Past experience of settling claims (adjusted for current trends); and
- Any factors that would modify past experience.

Incurred but Not Reported (IBNR) Claims

Incurred but not reported (IBNR) claims for insured events are those claims that have not yet been asserted as of the financial statements issuance date, even though the incident related to the claim may have occurred before the date of the balance sheet date.

If the local government concludes that it is not probable that the IBNR claim will be asserted, then the loss should not be accrued or disclosed in the financial statements. If the local government concludes that it is probable that another party will assert an IBNR claim, the expense/expenditure and liability related to the loss should be recognized in the financial statements.

IBNR claims include:

- known loss events that are expected to later be presented as claims;
- unknown loss events that are expected to become claims; or
- expected future development on claims already reported.

The following are examples (not all inclusive) of loss contingencies that should be evaluated for possible accrual:

- Contractual actions (such as claims for delays or inadequate specification on contracts);
- Guarantees of another entities' debt;
- Unemployment compensation claims;
- Property tax appeals;
- Tax refund claims; or
- Refunds of nonexchange revenues when the recipient government does not satisfy a provider's requirements.

21.07 Valuation of Accrued Claims

The claim liability (including IBNR) should be based on the estimated ultimate cost of settling the claims (including the effects of inflation and other societal and economic factors), using past experience as adjusted for current trends. Claims liabilities should include specific, incremental claim adjustment expenditures/expenses. The estimated recoveries on unsettled claims should be evaluated in terms of their estimated realizable value and deducted from the liability for unpaid claims. Estimated recoveries on settled claims should also be deducted from the liability for unpaid claims.

Expenditures/expenses and liabilities may be estimated through a case-by-case review of all claims, application of historical experience to the outstanding claims, or a combination of these techniques. Any estimates for IBNR losses should be based on historical experience. When historical experience is used to estimate claim liability, the outstanding claims should be ranked by the amount and type of claim and the ranking should be sufficiently refined to ensure that the estimation is reasonable.

Other allocated or unallocated claim adjustment expenditures or expenses may be included in the estimated liability for claims; however, their inclusion is not required if not incremental to the claim. Disclosure in the financial statements is required if other claim adjustment expenditures or expenses are included.

The estimated liability for unsettled claims costs should be reduced by estimated recoveries, such as salvage and subrogation.

- Salvage is defined in GASB Cod. Sec. C50.501 (Section C50, paragraph .501) as the "amount received by a public entity risk pool from the sale of property (usually damaged) on which the pool has paid a total claim to the insured and has obtained title to the property."

- Subrogation is defined in GASB Cod. Sec. C50.501 (Section C50, paragraph .501) as “the right of an insurer to pursue any course of recovery of damages, in its name or the name of the policyholder, against a third party who is liable for costs of an insured event that has been paid by the insurer.”

In addition to claims that have not been settled, the local government may also anticipate recoveries from claims that have already been settled. Anticipated recoveries on settled claims should be netted (reduced) against the estimated liability for claims costs.

21.08 Discounting

It is acceptable (but not mandated) to report the claims liabilities at a discounted present value of estimated future cash payments, with one exception — structured settlements should be discounted if the amount to be paid to the claimant is fixed by contract and the payment dates are fixed or determinable.

When claims liabilities are presented in the financial statements at discounted amounts, the rate selected to compute the discounted amounts should consider such factors as the entity’s settlement rate and its investment yield rate.

Both types of rates are defined as follows:

- Settlement Rate is defined in GASB Cod. Sec. C50.501 (Section C50, paragraph .501) as “the rate at which a monetary liability with uncertain terms can be settled or a monetary asset (receivable) with uncertain terms can be sold.”
- Investment Yield Rate is defined in the 2016 Governmental GAAP Guide for State and Local Governments, by Eric S. Berman, “as the expected rate of return on investments held by the local government during the period in which the expected payments to the claimant will occur.”

21.09 Insurance Related Transactions

According to GASB Statement No. 30, *Risk Financing Omnibus — an amendment of GASB Statement No. 10*, as amended, claims development information for public entity risk pools should be reported consistently. Occurrence-based policies should use either a policy-year basis or an accident-year basis. Claims-made policies should use a report-year basis. The type of policy affects the complexity of producing consistent risk information and may require added disclosures.

Required supplementary information schedules should be presented as originally reported at the end of each of the past ten accident years (for occurrence-based policies or contracts), report years (for claims-made policies or contracts), or policy years, including the latest year. Amounts should be limited to provisions for claims resulting from events that triggered coverage under the policy or participation contract in that year. If amounts are not presented on an accident-year basis or a report-year basis, they should be reported on a policy-year basis.

Claims-Made Policies

A claims-made policy covers losses reported during the policy period, regardless of whether the event occurred in that period. A claims-made policy transfers risk within the policy limits to the insurer or pool only for claims and incidents reported to the insurer or pool within an allowable period.

The local government is separately liable for any claims that have been made but were not reported nor filed during the period allowed. In such cases, the local government entity should account for the unreported risk using the recognition rules discussed in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*.

For claims-based policies, a report-year basis would include the claims that were reported during the same period for all policies, regardless of individual policy years.

Tail coverage is a type of policy designed to cover claims incurred before, but reported after, cancellation or expiration of a claims-made policy. The risk exposure related to a claims-made policy can be avoided by acquiring a tail coverage insurance policy. When tail coverage is acquired, a local government does not have to evaluate the possible accrual or disclosure of unreported losses that are covered by the tail coverage policy.

Occurrence-Based Policies

An occurrence-based policy is a type of policy or participation contract that covers losses that happen during the policy period, regardless of when the claims are asserted, reported, or paid.

As stated in GASB Statement No. 30, *Risk Financing Omnibus — an amendment of GASB Statement No. 10*, as amended:

For occurrence-based policies, a policy-year basis includes the actual periods covered in each policy, whether or not they are coextensive.

If there is a possibility that the insurer or pool may not be able to fulfill its obligations or that the risk may fall outside the coverage of the policy due to type or timing of claim or occurrence, then risk may not effectively be transferred. The local government should evaluate the likelihood that it will be required to pay its own claims.

Retrospectively Rated Policies and Contracts

Retrospective (experience) rating is a method for determining the final amount of an insurance premium by which the initial premium is adjusted based on actual experience during the period of coverage. The purpose is to encourage safety by the insured and to compensate the insurer if larger than expected losses are incurred. When a local government acquires a retrospectively rated policy, the minimum premium should be recognized as an expenditure or expense over the period covered by the policy.

Accruals should be done for estimated claim losses (reported and unreported) in the manner prescribed in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*. If there is a maximum contribution identified in the contract, the accrual should not exceed the amount of the maximum premium.

Some local governments purchase retrospectively rated policies that are based on the experience of a group of policyholders. When a retrospective-rated policy is based on group experience, the initial premium should be amortized pro rata as an expenditure or expense over the period of time covered by the contract.

The local government should accrue supplemental premiums or refunds on the basis of the group's experience to date which should include provisions for the ultimate cost of reported and unreported claims before the financial statement date, whether reported or unreported.

In addition, both of the following additional disclosures should be made:

- Insurance coverage is based on retrospectively rated policies; and
- Premiums are accrued based on the ultimate cost of experience to date of a group of entities.

The local government should rely on the insurer entity to provide the information necessary to accrue additional premiums or refunds as of the date of the statement of net position.

When a local government cannot estimate losses from reported or unreported claims, it should disclose the existing contingency in the notes to financial statements.

Cash Reserves for Self-Insurance

A local government may also consider maintaining cash reserves for self-insurance. The term self-insurance is often used to describe a government entity's retention of risk of loss arising from property ownership or from some other cause, rather than transferring that risk to an independent third party through an insurance policy. A trust fund or reserve account can set aside assets to pay for any anticipated and unanticipated events. The local government should retain control of cash reserves for self-insurance until claims are actually paid.

A well-managed self-insurance program offers the potential for significant cost savings as compared to some of the more traditional insurance plans. Potential cost savings can result from reducing and controlling losses, increased awareness of claim payments, reduction in expenses associated with insurance plans, and the opportunity to generate investment income as a result of maintaining control of the cash reserves. Maintaining sufficient cash reserves for self-insurance can promote the local government's short-term and long-term sustainability as it minimizes the impact of potential financial losses.

The decision to self-insure should be based on a balanced consideration of the distinctive risks, reserve policies, and regulations. Any self-insurance program should be reviewed regularly, as the financial environment of a local government — which includes periodic applicable legislative or regulatory changes — is dynamic.

21.10 Policyholder or Pool Dividends

A local government may be entitled to a policyholder dividend or return of contribution based on the terms of its insurance or pool participation contract. A policyholder dividend should be recorded by the local government as a reduction of expenditures or expenses as of the date the dividend is declared by the insurer.

21.11 Annuity Contracts

A local government may satisfy its obligation to a claimant by purchasing an annuity in the claimant's name. If the possibility of making additional payments to the claimant is remote, then the claim should be removed as a liability on the proprietary and government-wide financial statements, and the purchase of the annuity contract should not be presented as an asset.

When claims have been removed from the claims liability account because of the purchase of an annuity contract, the amount removed should be disclosed as a contingent liability. The disclosure should continue as long as there is a legal possibility that the claimant could demand payment from the local government.

Disclosure is not required for annuity contracts purchased if both of the following conditions exist:

- The claimant has signed an agreement releasing the local government from further obligation; and
- The likelihood of future payments to the claimant is remote.

If a claim was removed from the claims liability account because an annuity contract was purchased in a previous period, but in the current period it is determined that the governmental entity is primarily liable for the claim, then the claim should be reestablished as a claims liability.

Funds

21.12 Governmental Funds Used to Account for Risk Financing Activities

The modified accrual basis of accounting and current financial resources measurement focus should be applied to accounting for claims and judgments in governmental funds. As noted earlier, expenditures and liabilities should be recognized based on the principles discussed in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*.

If a local government is using a governmental fund to account for its risk financing activities, that fund should recognize claim expenditures and liabilities. Then the local government may choose any methodology to allocate loss expenditures to other funds. When allocating the loss expenditures, the governmental fund managing the risk financing activity should reduce its own expenditures while the paying funds should recognize the allocation as an expenditure. Any amounts allocated in excess of the local government's total expenditure should be treated as a transfer.

The governmental fund used to manage the risk financing activities should record contributions from other funds as interfund reimbursements. Claims liabilities should be reduced by amounts to be recovered through excess insurance.

21.13 Internal Service Funds Used to Account For Risk Financing Activities

When an Internal Service Fund (ISF) is used to account for a local government's risk financing activities in the fund financial statements, claims liabilities and the related expenses should be recognized based on the standards discussed in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*. Any accrual of claim expenses and liabilities should be reduced by amounts expected to be paid through excess insurance.

If a local government concludes that a loss related to risk-financing activities should not be accrued because the occurrence of the loss is not probable or the amount of the loss is not subject to reasonable estimation, then the loss should be evaluated to determine whether disclosure in the financial statement is necessary.

The risk-financing activities provided by the ISF should be charged to other funds using any method that the ISF considers appropriate as long as the following guidelines are satisfied:

- The total charges to other funds are calculated in accordance with the principles outlined in chapter section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*.
- The total charges to other funds are based on an actuarial method or historical cost information, reasonably adjusted over time so that the expenses and revenues are approximately the same; and
- The total charge may include a reasonable provision to cover expected future catastrophic losses.

The amount charged by the ISF to the other funds should be recognized as revenue, and each fund should recognize the amount charged as expenditures/expenses. Deficits (if any) of the ISF do not have to be adjusted in any one year, if adjustments are made over a reasonable period of time to reduce the difference, but the deficit fund balance of the ISF should be disclosed in the notes to the local government's financial statements. Any amount in the ISF's net position that arose from an optional additional charge for catastrophic losses should also be reported in the notes to the financial statements, reported as restricted for future catastrophic losses.

21.14 Reporting Claim Losses in Proprietary and Fiduciary Funds

The full accrual basis of accounting and the economic resources measurement focus should be used to determine which claims should be presented in a proprietary or fiduciary fund. Estimated losses from a claim should be treated as an expense or deduction and a liability in the proprietary or fiduciary fund financial statements in accordance with the principles outlined in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*.

Transactions related to insurance recoveries other than impairment of capital assets, such as theft or embezzlement of monetary assets, should be accounted for separately as an other financing source or extraordinary item.

21.15 Reporting Claim Losses in Government-wide Financial Statements

The full accrual basis of accounting and the economic resources measurement focus should be used to determine which claims and assessment should be presented in the government-wide financial statements. Reporting should be in accordance with the principles outlined in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*. If a claims liability is incurred, the liability should be presented as a debt obligation of the local government in its governmental and business activities columns of the statement of net position. Liabilities that have an average maturity of greater than one year should be reported in two components on the statement of net position; (1) the amount due within one year (current liabilities) and (2) the amount due in more than one year (long-term liabilities).

When claim expenses are recorded, the expenses should be evaluated to determine how the expense should be presented in the statement of activities. A determination should be made as to whether the claims expense is a direct expense, identifiable to a particular function or program. In some instances, a claims expense may be an extraordinary item and, therefore, should be presented separately at the bottom of the statement of activities. When a claims expense is either unusual or infrequent, the item should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

21.16 Reporting Risk Financing

Internal Service Fund Balances and Activity in the Government-wide Financial Statements

If an internal service fund (ISF) is used to account for risk management activities, such activities should be eliminated to avoid doubling-up expenses and revenues in the government activities column of the statement of activities. Any residual risk activity balances related to the ISF's net position should usually be reported in the government activities column in the statement of net position.

However, if an enterprise fund is the main participant in the risk financing internal service fund, the assets, liabilities, deferred inflows and outflows should be reported in the business-type activities column of the statement of net position.

Disclosures

21.17 Disclosure of Loss Contingencies

When a possible future loss does not satisfy the criteria for an accrual in accordance with the principles outlined in section 21.06, *Liability and Expenditure/Expense Recognition of Claims*, the loss should be evaluated to determine whether it should be disclosed in the governmental entity's financial statements. Any loss should be disclosed if there is a reasonable possibility that the loss may have been incurred.

When a loss contingency is disclosed in the financial statements, the following should be disclosed:

- Nature of the contingency; and
- Estimate, or estimated range of the loss (if no estimate can be made, the disclosure should state so).

When a loss is based on a future event whose likelihood of occurring is remote, the loss should not be accrued or disclosed in the financial statements.

21.18 Risk Management Disclosures

The following disclosures should be made in the financial statements, if applicable:

- Description of the types of risk to which the local government is exposed and how they are handled, such as the methods used for risk financing.
- Description of significant reductions in insurance coverage from the previous year, arranged by major category of risk, and an indication of whether settlements exceeded insurance coverage for each of the past three years.
- Disclosure of whether the local government participates in a risk pool and the nature of participation, if any, including rights and obligations of the local government and the risk pool.
- Disclosure of whether the local government has retained the risk of loss, and description of the following four items:
 - The basis of estimating liabilities for unpaid claims including the effects of specific, incremental claim adjustment expenditures and expenses, salvage and subrogation, and whether the allocated or unallocated claim adjustment expenditures and expenses are included. Include insurance that does not cover risk exposure (the local government has in-substance retained the risk of loss).
 - The carrying amount of unpaid claims liabilities that have been reported at present value and the range of discount rates used to compute the discount.
 - The aggregated total of outstanding claims liabilities that have been removed from the balance sheet because of the purchase of annuity contracts from third parties in the name of claimants.
 - Presentation of an aggregated claims liabilities reconciliation, including changes in aggregate liabilities for claims in the current year and prior year, using the following tabular format:
 - Beginning balance of claims liabilities;
 - Incurred claims for the year and increases or decreases in the provision for events that were incurred in prior years;
 - Payments made for claims arising during the current year and prior fiscal years;
 - Explanation of each material item; and
 - Ending balance of claims liabilities.

Component units that participate in the primary government's risk management internal service fund should make the above disclosures in their separate financial statements, disclosing the participation, nature, and rights and responsibilities of the unit and the primary government.

An example of risk management disclosure is contained in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Level of Disclosure

Professional judgment should be exercised to determine the most appropriate level of disclosure. The notes to the financial statements should focus on the local government, including its blended component units, and supporting the information presented in the government-wide financial statements and the fund financial statements.

A local government should also ensure that disclosures related to discretely presented units are identified separately. In some situations, it may be appropriate for the local government to make disclosures for the entity as a whole. Separate or additional disclosures by individual major funds may be appropriate in other situations.

21.19 Subsequent Events

To ensure that the financial statements are not misleading, the local government should consider whether to disclose subsequent events, which are events or transactions related to risk management that occurred after the date of the balance sheet but before the financial statements are issued.

Disclosure may be necessary to keep financial statements from being misleading for material items that have one of the following characteristics:

- The subsequent event resulted in the impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability; or
- A reasonable possibility exists that a subsequent event resulted in the impairment of an asset or the incurrence of a liability.

If a local government concludes that a subsequent event should be disclosed, the following information should be presented in the disclosure:

- The nature of the actual or contingent loss; and
- An estimate (or the range of estimates) of the actual or contingent loss (if no estimate can be made, disclose appropriately).

Sometimes a subsequent event may result in the presentation of pro forma financial statements to supplement the historical financial statements. Usually, a pro forma balance sheet or statement of net position is most informative when prepared on a comparative basis.

21.20 Risk Management Internal Service Fund Illustrative Entries

Assume that a local government is under a self-administered risk management program that includes workers' compensation and liability insurance, and is using a contracting claims adjuster.

- a) On July 1, the local government's Internal Service Fund billed the General Fund and the Road Fund for annual liability premium charges and workers' compensation insurance charges, based on the relative risk factors and the loss experience for each department:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Internal Service Fund</u>		
Due from General Fund	DR: \$1,100,000	
Due from Road Fund	DR: \$1,000,000	
Revenue from Liability Premium Charges		CR: \$900,000
Revenue from Worker's Compensation Premium Charges		CR: \$1,200,000
<u>General Fund</u>		
Deferred Outflows of Resources	DR: \$1,100,000	
Due to Internal Service Fund		CR: \$1,100,000

Note: The General Fund will recognize a deferred outflow of resources on July 1, and then recognize the workers compensation and liability premium expenses in a systematic and rational manner throughout the fiscal year. As the General Fund recognizes the expense, it will adjust the deferred outflows of resources accordingly. Alternatively, the workers compensation and liability premiums can be treated as prepaid expenses under the current assets section of the balance sheet and amortized accordingly throughout the physical year.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Road Fund</u>		
Deferred Outflows of Resources	DR: \$1,000,000	
Due to Internal Service Fund		CR: \$1,000,000

Note: The Road Fund will recognize a deferred outflow of resources on July 1, and then recognize the workers compensation expense in a systematic and rational manner throughout the fiscal year. As the Road Fund recognizes the expense, it will adjust the deferred outflows of resources accordingly. Alternatively, the workers compensation and liability premiums can be treated as prepaid expenses under the current assets section of the balance sheet and amortized accordingly throughout the physical year.

b) Cash is received from the General Fund and the Road Fund as a result of billings by the Internal Service Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Internal Service Fund</u>		
Cash	DR: \$2,100,000	
Due From General Fund		CR: \$1,100,000
Due From Road Fund		CR: \$1,000,000

Note: Journal entry to record the cash received from the General Fund and Road Fund for workers compensation and liability premiums.

General Fund

Due to Internal Service Fund	DR: \$1,100,000	
Cash		CR: \$1,100,000

Note: Journal entry to record the cash paid to the Internal Service Fund from the General Fund.

Road Fund

Due to Internal Service Fund	DR: \$1,100,000	
Cash		CR: \$1,100,000

Note: Journal entry to record the cash paid to the Internal Service Fund from the Road Fund.

c) On September 1, 20X1, the contract claims adjustor is paid the full amount of a 13-month contract at \$1,000 per month, for the time period of July 1, 20X1 to July 31, 20X2:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Professional and Specialized Services	DR: \$2,000	
Prepaid Expenses	DR: \$11,000	
Cash		CR: \$13,000

d) Liability and workers' compensation payments are made by the Internal Service Fund:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Judgments and Damages - Liability	DR: \$100,000	
Judgments and Damages – Workers' Compensation	DR: \$470,000	
Cash		CR: \$570,000

e) Revenue is received in the Internal Service Fund from a third-party source whose liability resulted from actions that caused damage to a local government's property or an injury to a local government's employee:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$7,000	
Revenue from Recoveries		CR: \$7,000

f) At year-end, the prepaid claims adjustor expense is adjusted and the current-year expense is recorded:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Professional and Specialized Services	DR: \$10,000	
Prepaid Expenses		CR: \$10,000

g) At year-end, the following claim liabilities are accrued:

- claims incurred but not yet reported
- claims reported but not yet settled
- claims settled but not yet paid

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Judgments and Damages - Liability	DR: \$300,000	
Judgments and Damages – Workers' Compensation	DR: \$200,000	
Liability Claims Payable		CR: \$300,000
Workers' Compensation Claims Payable		CR: \$200,000

Claims incurred but not yet reported should be accrued in accordance with the provisions of GASB Codification sections C50, *Claims and Judgments*, and Po20, *Public Entity Risk Pools*. This entry may be reversed at the beginning of the next fiscal year and then reestablished at the end of the year.

Chapter 22: Retirement Systems

Chapter Contents

Introduction	479
General Information	479
22.01 Financial Reporting Framework	479
22.02 Statutory Requirements	480
Financial Reporting For Pension Plans by Employers	481
22.03 Types of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and Employers	482
22.04 Special Funding Situations	483
22.05 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resources and Accrual Basis	484
22.06 Single and Agent Employers: Current Financial Resources — Modified Accrual Basis	485
22.07 Cost-Sharing Employers: Economic Resources and Accrual Basis	486
Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions	487
22.08 Cost-Sharing Employers: Current Financial Resources and Modified Accrual Basis	489
22.09 Notes to Financial Statements	489
22.10 Notes to Financial Statement — GASB Statement No. 68 Note Disclosures	493
22.11 Required Supplementary Information (RSI)	500
22.12 Note to Required Schedules	504
Intra-Entity Transfers of Capital or Financial Assets Within the Same Reporting Entity — Defined Benefit Pension Plan	505
Financial Reporting For Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans by Employers	505
22.13 Types of OPEB Plans	506
22.14 Types of Defined Benefit OPEB Plans	506
22.15 Special Funding Situations (OPEB)	507
22.16 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resource Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — No Special Funding	507
22.17 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resource Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — Special Funding Situation	508
22.18 Single and Agent Employers: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis	508
22.19 Cost Sharing Employers: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — No Special Funding	509

22.20 Cost Sharing Employers: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — Special Funding Situation.....	512
22.21 Cost Sharing Employers: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis.....	513
22.22 Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis.....	514
22.23 Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis	515
22.24 Notes to Financial Statements	515
22.25 Notes to Financial Statement — GASB Statement No. 75 Note Disclosures	519
22.26 Required Supplementary Information — GASB Statement No. 75.....	527
22.27 Notes to Required Schedules	531
Financial Reporting for Stand-Alone Pension and OPEB Plans	531
22.28 Financial Reporting for Pension and OPEB Plans — GASB 67 and GASB 74.....	531
Intra-Entity Transfers of Capital or Financial Assets Within the Same Reporting Entity — Defined Benefit OPEB Plan.....	533

Chapter 22: Retirement Systems

Introduction

Public-sector employees are frequently provided with pension benefits and other postemployment benefits (OPEB) when they retire. Although legislation specifies the organization, administration, and operating guidelines for these benefits, the standards concerning the accounting and financial reporting of governmental pension and OPEB plans are established by the Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB).

While most governments have the option of providing their retirement benefits via a defined benefit or contribution plan, most local governments use defined benefit plans to provide retirement benefits to their employees. The purpose of this chapter is to examine the appropriate accounting and financial reporting for such benefits from an employer perspective (not the plan itself) with the focus being on defined benefit plans.

This chapter is divided into three parts and will focus mostly on the following:

- Financial Reporting for Pension Plans by Employers
- Financial Reporting for Other Post-Employment Benefits by Employers

In addition, this chapter will briefly touch on the financial reporting requirements for the pension and OPEB plan itself (not the employer). Pension/OPEB related examples can be found in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

General Information

22.01 Financial Reporting Framework

GASB Codification Sections P20, P22, P23, P24, and Pe5 provide information at the employer level regarding the nature of the pension obligation and the ability of the state or local government employer to satisfy that obligation; specifically, the individual employer's share of the plan's assets, liabilities, including net pension liability, deferred inflows and outflows, and fiduciary net position.

The financial reporting framework for a local government's pension obligation are discussed extensively in GASB Statement No. 68 *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions—an amendment of GASB Statement No.27*, as amended, and GASB implementation guides. GASB Statement No. 68, as amended, also applies to the financial statements of all state and local government employers whose employees are provided with pensions through plans that are not administered through certain trusts as specifically defined in GASB Codification Section P20. The guidance also applies to state and local governmental nonemployer contributors that have a legal obligation for direct contributions to these plans.

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.101 (Section P20, paragraph .101), established the following criteria for determining whether pensions plans should be considered as being administered through trusts or equivalent arrangements (hereafter jointly referred to as trusts):

- Contributions from employers and nonemployer contributing entities to the pension plan and earnings on those contributions are irrevocable.
- Pension plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members in accordance with the benefit terms.
- Pension plan assets are legally protected from the creditors of employers, nonemployer contributing entities, and the pension plan administrator. If the plan is a defined benefit pension plan, pension plan assets also are legally protected from creditors of the plan members.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Codification Sections P20, P22, P23, P24, and Pe5 for more information on accounting and reporting requirements for defined benefit pension plans that are not administered through a trust but meets the criteria identified in the preceding paragraph.

GASB Codification Sections P50, P51, P52, and P54 extends the approach from GASB Codification Sections P20, P22, P23, P24, and Pe5 and applied it to OPEB plans that meet the criteria in the preceding list, with some exceptions applying. The accounting and reporting guidance provided for OPEB plans administered via a trust or equivalent arrangement also applies to OPEB plans that are not administered via trust but meets the criteria identified above.

Some pension and OPEB plans promise specific contributions from the employer during an employee's active service, while some pension and OPEB plans promise specific payments to employees following an employee's active service. An employer in a defined contribution plan commits to making agreed-upon payments to an employee's retirement account during the employee's active service, while in a defined benefit plan the employer commits to provide a predetermined level of benefit once an employee retires.

GASB Codification guidance for local government agencies pertaining to pensions and OPEB are available on the GASB website at: <https://gars.gasb.org/Login>.

22.02 Statutory Requirements

Pursuant to Government Code section 53215 et seq., a legislative body of a local government may establish a pension trust for its officers and employees. Local governments may also refer to the County Employers Retirement Law of 1937 (Title 3, Division 4, Part 3, Chapter 3 and 3.9, Section 31450 et seq., of the California Government Code) when setting up their retirement systems.

The County Employees Retirement Law of 1937 governs the establishment and administration of county employee retirement systems for counties that establish retirement plans, and for cities or special districts within a county's boundaries that choose to participate in that county's employee retirement system.

Local governments should also refer to the legislation that created them to determine their statutory requirements relating to pension trusts or any other retirement plan. If a local government is part of a Joint Powers Authority (JPA) and the JPA participates in a public retirement system, then prior to filing a notice of termination or upon a notice of termination by the Board of Administration of the Public Employees' Retirement System, the members of the JPA are required to mutually agree as to the apportionment of the agency's retirement obligations among themselves, provided that the agreement equals 100% of the retirement liability of the agency.

For more information concerning a JPA's retirement liability obligations, refer to Government Code section 6500 et seq. (the Joint Exercise of Powers Act).

Administration Expenses

According to the provisions of Government Code sections 31580 and 31580.2:

- The board of supervisors shall appropriate annually from the proper county funds the amount necessary to defray the entire expense of administration of the retirement system based upon budget estimates prepared by the treasurer.
- In counties in which the board of retirement, or both the board of retirement and the board of investment, have appointed personnel pursuant to Section 31522.1, 31522.5, 31522.7, 31522.9, 31522.10, or 31522.11, the respective board or boards shall annually adopt a budget covering the entire expense of administration of the retirement system which expense shall be charged against the earnings of the retirement fund. The expense incurred in any year may not exceed the greater of either of the following:
 - Twenty-one hundredths of 1% of the accrued actuarial liability of the retirement system.
 - Two million dollars (\$2,000,000), as adjusted annually by the amount of the annual cost-of-living adjustment computed in accordance with Article 16.5 (commencing with section 31870).
- Expenditures for computer software, computer hardware, and computer technology consulting services in support of these computer products shall not be considered a cost of administration of the retirement system for purposes of this section.

Financial Reporting For Pension Plans by Employers

The primary focus for this part (pension) of the chapter is on the accounting and reporting requirements for defined benefit pension plans.

Local governments should refer to GASB Codification Section P20 — *Pension Activities — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit*, should they need more information concerning the pension guidance presented in this part of the chapter.

Local government agencies who offer defined contribution plans to their employees should refer to the following GASB Codification sections for more information:

- GASB Codification Section P21 — *Pension Activities — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Certain Specified—Defined Contribution.*
- GASB Codification Section P24 — *Pension Activities — Reporting for Benefits Not Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*

22.03 Types of Defined Benefit Pension Plans and Employers

As used in this section, the term pensions includes the following:

- a) Retirement income; and
- b) Postemployment benefits other than retirement income (e.g., life insurance, disability benefits, etc.) that are provided through a pension plan

It should be noted that pensions do not include postemployment health care benefits and termination benefits.

Within the reporting scope, governmental employers should define what type of defined benefit plans to which they belong. Generally, defined benefit plans are classified according to the number of employers within the plan and whether plan assets are shared across employers (if applicable).

The following are types of defined benefit plans and the characteristics that define them:

- **Single Employer Defined Benefit Plan:** A plan that provides pensions to the employees of only one employer.
- **Multiple Employer Defined Benefit Plan:** A plan that provides pensions to the employees of more than one employer. Additionally, there are two subtypes of multiple employer plans which are defined by how assets are reported and shared:
 - **Agent Multiple Employer Defined Benefit Plan:** A plan in which the assets are pooled for investment purposes but separate accounts are maintained for each individual employer so only assets of a particular employer are available to pay benefits to employees of only that employer.
 - **Cost Sharing Multiple Employer Defined Benefit Plan:** A plan in which the assets are pooled for investment purposes, but are available to pay benefits to employees of any employer within the plan.

22.04 Special Funding Situations

A Special Funding situation exists when a nonemployer is statutorily required to make contributions directly into a pension plan that is used to provide pensions to the employees of another entity or entities and either of the following conditions exist:

- a) The amount of contributions for which the non-employer entity is legally responsible is not dependent upon one or more events unrelated to pensions.
- b) The non-employer is the only entity with a legal obligation to make contributions directly to a pension plan.

Special funding situations do not include circumstances in which resources are provided to the employer, regardless of the purpose for which those resources are provided.

An employer that has a special funding situation for defined benefit pensions should recognize a pension liability and deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions with adjustments for the involvement of non-employer contributing entities. The employer is required to recognize its proportionate share of the collective pension expense, as well as additional pension expense and revenue for the pension support of the non-employer contributing entities.

The GASB requires the employer to disclose in notes to financial statements information about the amount of support provided by non-employer contributing entities and to present similar information about the involvement of those entities in 10-year schedules of required supplementary information.

The approach required for measurement and recognition of liabilities, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources, and expense by a governmental non-employer contributing entity in a special funding situation for defined benefit pensions is similar to the approach required for cost-sharing employers.

The information that should be disclosed in notes to financial statements and presented in required supplementary information of a governmental non-employer contributing entity in a special funding situation depends on the proportion of the collective net pension liability that it recognizes. If the governmental non-employer contributing entity recognizes a substantial proportion of the collective net pension liability, it should disclose in notes to financial statements a description of the pensions, including the types of benefits provided and the employees covered, and the discount rate and assumptions made in the measurement of the net pension liability.

The governmental non-employer contributing entity also should present schedules of required supplementary information similar to those required of a cost-sharing employer. Reduced note disclosures and required supplementary information are required for governmental non-employer contributing entities that recognize a less-than-substantial portion of the collective net pension liability.

For more information regarding special funding situations refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P20.185 – .199 (Section P20, paragraphs, .185 – .199).

22.05 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resources and Accrual Basis

Net Pension Liability

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.119 - .120 (Section P20, paragraph .119 - .120), states:

A liability should be recognized for the net pension liability. The net pension liability should be measured as the portion of the actuarial present value of projected benefit payments that is attributed to past periods of employee service in conformity with the requirements of total pension liability, net of the pension plan's fiduciary net position. The pension plan's fiduciary net position should be determined using the same valuation methods used by the pension plan for purposes of preparing its statement of fiduciary net position. The net pension liability should be measured as of a date (measurement date) no earlier than the end of the employer's prior fiscal year, consistently applied from period to period.

Whether pensions are provided through single-employer, agent, or cost-sharing pension plans, both liabilities for net pension liabilities associated with different pension plans, and assets for net pension assets associated with different pension plans, may be displayed in the aggregate in the financial statements. Aggregated pension liabilities should be displayed separately from aggregated pension assets.

When calculating total pension liability the following factors should be taken into account:

- Timing and frequency of actuarial valuations;
- Selection of assumptions;
- Projection of benefit payments;
- Discount rate; and
- Attribution of the actuarial present value of projected benefit payments to periods.

Changes in Net Pension Liability

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.132 (Section P20, paragraph .132), states:

Changes in the net pension liability should be recognized in pension expense in the current reporting period except as indicated below:

- a) Each of the following should be recognized in pension expense, beginning in the current reporting period, using a systematic and rational method over a closed period equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with pensions through the pension plan (active employees and inactive employees) determined as of the beginning of the measurement period:
 - (1) Differences between expected and actual experience with regard to economic or demographic factors (differences between expected and actual experience) in the measurement of the total pension liability.
 - (2) Changes of assumptions about future economic or demographic factors or of other inputs (changes of assumptions or other inputs).

Note: The portion of (1) and (2) not recognized in pension expense should be reported as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to pensions.

- b) The difference between projected and actual earnings on pension plan investments should be recognized in pension expense using a systematic and rational method over a closed five-year period, beginning in the current reporting period. The amount not recognized in pension expense should be reported as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to pensions. Deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources arising from differences between projected and actual pension plan investment earnings in different measurement periods should be aggregated and reported as a net deferred outflow of resources related to pensions or a net deferred inflow of resources related to pensions.
- c) Contributions to the pension plan from the employer should not be recognized in pension expense.
- d) Contributions to the pension plan from non-employer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation should be recognized as revenue.

Contributions to the pension plan from the employer subsequent to the measurement date of the net pension liability and before the end of the reporting period should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources related to pensions. Contributions from nonemployers where no special funding situation exists should be excluded when calculating deferred outflow of resources.

22.06 Single and Agent Employers: Current Financial Resources — Modified Accrual Basis

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.135 (Section P20, paragraph .135) states in part, that for financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, a net pension liability should be recognized to the extent the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources — that is, benefit payments are due and payable, however the pension plan's fiduciary net position is not sufficient for payment of those benefits.

Pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid by the employer (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) during the reporting period to the pension plan; and
- b) the change between the employer's (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Pension expenditures also include amounts for payables to the pension plan.

22.07 Cost-Sharing Employers: Economic Resources and Accrual Basis

Proportionate Share of the Collective Net Pension Liability

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.148 – .151 (Section P20, paragraphs .148 – .151) states:

A liability should be recognized for the employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability, measured as of a date (measurement date) no earlier than the end of the employer's prior fiscal year, consistently applied from period to period. The employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability should be measured by:

- a) Determining the employer's portion — a measure of the proportionate relationship of (1) the employer (and, to the extent associated with the employer, non-employer contributing entities, if any, that provide support for the employer but that are not in a special funding situation) to (2) all employers and all non-employer contributing entities. The basis for the employer's proportion should be consistent with the manner in which contributions to the pension plan, excluding those to separately finance specific liabilities of an individual employer to the pension plan, are determined. The use of the employer's projected long-term contribution effort to the pension plan (including that of non-employer contributing entities that provide support for the employer but that are not in a special funding situation) as compared to the total projected long-term contribution effort of all employers and all non-employer contributing entities to determine the employer's proportion is encouraged.
- b) Multiplying the collective net pension liability by the employer's proportion calculated in (a).

To the extent that different contribution rates are assessed based on separate relationships that constitute the collective net pension liability (for example, separate rates are calculated based on an internal allocation of liabilities and assets for different classes or groups of employees), the determination of the employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability should be made in a manner that reflects those separate relationships.

The employer's proportion should be established as of the measurement date, unless the employer's proportion is actuarially determined, in which case a proportion established at the date of the actuarial valuation used to determine the collective net pension liability may be used.

Whether pensions are provided through cost-sharing, single-employer, or agent pension plans, liabilities for net pension liabilities associated with different pension plans may be displayed in the aggregate, and assets for net pension assets associated with different pension plans may be displayed in the aggregate in the financial statements. Aggregated pension liabilities should be displayed separately from aggregated pension assets.

Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

Proportionate Share

According to GASB Cod. Sec.P20.153 (Section P20, paragraph .153),

Pension expense, as well as deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, should be recognized for the employer's proportionate shares of collective pension expense and collective deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions. The employer's proportionate shares should be determined using the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability.

Change in Proportion

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P20.154 (Section P20, paragraph .154):

If there is a change in the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability since the prior measurement date, the net effect of that change on the employer's proportionate shares of the collective net pension liability and collective deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, determined as of the beginning of the measurement period, should be recognized in the employer's pension expense, beginning in the current reporting period, using a systematic and rational method over a closed period. For this purpose, the length of the expense recognition period should be equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with pensions through the pension plan (active employees and inactive employees) determined as of the beginning of the measurement period. The amount not recognized in the employer's pension expense should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources related to pensions.

Contributions during the Measurement Period

GASB Cod. Sec.P20.155 – .157 (Section P20, paragraphs .155 – .157) states the following:

For contributions to the pension plan, other than those to separately finance specific liabilities of an individual employer or non-employer contributing entity to the pension plan, the difference during the measurement period between (a) the total amount of such contributions from the employer (and amounts associated with the employer from non-employer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation) and (b) the amount of the employer's proportionate share of the total of such contributions from all employers and all non-employer contributing entities should be recognized in the employer's pension expense, beginning in the current reporting period, using a systematic and rational method over a closed period.

For this purpose, the length of the expense recognition period should be equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with pensions through the pension plan (active employees and inactive employees) determined as of the beginning of the measurement period. The amount not recognized in the employer's pension expense should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources or deferred inflow of resources related to pensions.

For contributions to the pension plan to separately finance specific liabilities of the individual employer to the pension plan, the difference during the measurement period between (a) the amount of such contributions from the employer (and amounts associated with the employer from non-employer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation) and (b) the amount of the employer's proportionate share of the total of the contributions in (a), determined using the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability, should be recognized in the employer's pension expense.

For contributions made by others to the pension plan during the measurement period to separately finance specific liabilities to the pension plan (excluding amounts associated with the employer from nonemployer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation), the amount of the employer's proportionate share of the total of such contributions determined using the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability should be recognized as a reduction of the employer's pension expense.

Employer Contributions Subsequent to the Measurement Date

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.158 (Section P20, paragraph .158) states:

Contributions to the pension plan from the employer subsequent to the measurement date of the collective net pension liability and before the end of the employer's reporting period (excluding amounts associated with the employer from nonemployer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation), should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources related to pensions.

In addition to the deferred inflows and outflows of resources arising from the calculation of pension expense, employers will also report a deferred outflow of resources for contributions to the pension system that occur after the measurement date.

Under new GASB standards, employer contributions to pension systems are no longer considered a component of administrative expenses. These contributions are now treated as a payment of an outstanding liability, the net pension liability created through the employment arrangement.

At the beginning of the period when the provisions of GASB Statement No.68, as amended, are adopted, it may not be feasible to determine accurately all pension amounts that would qualify as deferred inflows and outflows of resources. In such circumstances local governments should recognize the beginning deferred outflow of resources only for its pension contributions, if any, made subsequent to the measurement date of the beginning of the net pension liability but before the start of the local governments fiscal year. Additionally, in those circumstances, no beginning balances for other deferred outflows and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions should be recognized.

22.08 Cost-Sharing Employers: Current Financial Resources and Modified Accrual Basis

GASB Cod. Sec. P20.174 (Section P20, paragraph .174) states:

In financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, an employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability should be recognized to the extent the liability measured as of the end of the reporting period is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Net pension liabilities are normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources to the extent that benefit payments have matured — that is, benefit payments are due and payable and the pension plan's fiduciary net position is not sufficient for payment of those benefits. Pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (a) amounts paid during the reporting period by the employer (and, to the extent associated with the employer, by nonemployer contributing entities, if any) to the pension plan and (b) the change between the employer's (and to the extent associated with the employer, nonemployer contributing entities', if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Pension expenditures include amounts for payables to a pension plan.

22.09 Notes to Financial Statements

The total of the employer's pension liabilities (aggregate for all pensions, whether provided through single-employer, agent, or cost-sharing pension plans), pension assets, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, and pension expense/expenditures for the period associated with net pension liabilities should be disclosed, if the total amounts are not otherwise identifiable from information presented in the financial statements.

Single and Agent Employers

Under circumstances in which the employees of a primary government and its component units are provided with pensions through the same single-employer or agent pension plan, the note disclosures in the reporting entity's financial statements should separately identify amounts associated with the primary government (including its blended component units) and those associated with its discretely presented component units. Additional information on note disclosures for single and agent employers is available in section 22.10, *Notes to Financial Statements — GASB Statement 68 Note Disclosures*.

Cost-Sharing Employers, Governmental Non-Employer Contributing Entities that Recognize a Substantial Proportion of Collective Net Pension Liability

Information should be disclosed for benefits provided through each cost-sharing pension plan in which the employer participates. Disclosures related to more than one pension plan should be combined in a manner that avoids unnecessary duplication. Additional information on note disclosures for cost sharing employers and governmental non-employer contributing entities are available in section 22.10, *Notes to Financial Statements — GASB Statement 68 Note Disclosures*.

Governmental Non-Employer Contributing Entities that Recognize a Less than Substantial Proportion of the Collective Net Pension Liability

If the governmental non-employer contributing entity recognizes more than one collective net pension liability, information may be presented in the aggregate for all such liabilities. Additional information on note disclosures is available in section 22.10, *Notes to Financial Statements — GASB Statement 68 Note Disclosures*.

Defined Contribution Plans — No Special Funding Situation

When preparing financial statements using the economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting, pension expense should be equal to the amount of contributions or credits to the local government entity's employees account, net of any amounts forfeited from the employee's account. Amounts reallocated to accounts of other employees are not considered to be forfeited amounts.

A change in pension liability under economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting should equal the difference between the amounts recognized as pension expense and amounts paid into the local government entity's pension plan.

In financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (a) amounts paid by the employer (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) to the pension plan and (b) the change between the employer's (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable financial resources.

A liability for defined contribution pensions should be recognized to the extent that the liability is normally expected to be paid with expendable available financial resources. Liabilities for defined contribution pensions are normally expected to be paid with expendable available financial resources to the extent that contributions are due and payable pursuant to legal requirements, including contractual arrangements.

Pension liabilities and assets for pensions provided through different pension plans may each be displayed in the aggregate in the financial statements. Aggregated pension liabilities should be displayed separately from aggregated pension assets.

Defined Contribution Plans — Special Funding Situation

In financial statements prepared using economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting, the following should be recognized:

- Pension expense equal to the local government entity's share of contributions or credits made to an employee's pension account;
- Change in pension liability should recognize the difference between amounts recognized as pension expense and amounts paid by the local government entity into the pension plan.
- The contributions from the nonemployer contributing entities used for pension payments should be treated as revenues when received by the local government entity and treated as additional pension expenses when paid out as pension payments.

When preparing financial statements using current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, the conditions outlined in the preceding subsection (*Defined Contribution Plans — No Special Funding*) for recognizing pension expenditures for defined contributions pension plans with no special funding situations will also apply to defined contributions pension plans with a special funding situation.

Revenues should be recognized as the total of:

- a) amounts paid by nonemployer contributing entities to the local government entities pension plan; and
- b) the change between the nonemployer contributing entities' beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable financial resources.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

22.10 Notes to Financial Statement — GASB Statement No. 68 Note Disclosures

Note: The following list of note disclosures is not all-inclusive. For more information local governments should refer to:

GASB Codification Section P20 — *Pension Activities — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit.*

GASB Codification Section P21 — *Pension Activities — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
Pension Plan Description						
Name of Plan	X	X	X	X	X	X
Identification of Type of Plan	X	X	X	X	X	X
Description of Benefits and Authority Establishing Benefits	X	X	X		X	X
Contribution Requirements and Authority Establishing Rates	X	X	X	X	X	X
Number of Employees Covered by Benefit Terms	X	X				
Pension Expense Recognized					X	X

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
Pension Plan Description (Continued)						
Amount of Forfeitures in Pension Expense Recognized					X	X
Liability Outstanding at the End of the Period					X	X
Whether the Plan Issues Stand Alone Financial Reports	X	X	X			
Net Pension Liability/Collective Net Pension Liability						
<u>Assumptions and Other Inputs</u>						
<u>Significant Assumptions and Sources</u>	X	X	X			
Dates of Experience Studies on which the Assumptions are Based	X	X	X			
<u>Discount Rates</u>						
Discount Rate Applied	X	X	X			
Assumptions about Projected Cash Flows Into and Out of the Plan	X	X	X			
Long Term Expected Rate of Return	X	X	X			
Municipal Bond Rate if Incorporated	X	X	X			
Periods of Projected Benefit Payments	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Discount Rates (Continued)</u>						
Asset Allocation of the Pension Plans Portfolio	X	X	X			
Sensitivity of Net Pension Liability to Changes in Discount Rate (+1% and -1%)	X	X	X			
Pension Plan's Fiduciary Net Position						
Assets	X	X	X			
Deferred Outflows of Resources	X	X	X			
Liabilities	X	X	X			
Deferred Inflows of Resources	X	X	X			
Fiduciary Net Position	X	X	X			
Changes in Net Pension Liability						
Beginning Total Pension Liability, Pension Plans Fiduciary Net Position, and Net Pension Liability	X					
Service Cost	X					
Interest	X					
Changes in Benefit Terms	X					
Differences Between Expected and Actual Experience Studies- Total Pension Liability	X					

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
Changes in Net Pension Liability <i>(Continued)</i>						
Changes in Assumptions	X					
Contributions from the Employer	X					
Contributions from Non-Employer Contributing Entities	X					
Contributions from Employees	X					
Pension Plan Net Investment Income (Loss)	X					
Benefit Payment Including Refunds	X					
Pension Plan Administrative Costs	X					
Other Changes	X					
Ending Balances of Total Pension Liability, Pension Plans Fiduciary Net Position, and Net Pension Liability	X					
<u>Special Funding Situation</u>						
Non-employer Contribution Entities' Total Proportionate Share of Collective Net Pension Liability	X					
Employer's Proportionate Share of the Collective Net Pension Liability	X					

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Additional Disclosures if Applicable</u>						
Measurement Date of Net Pension Liability/Collective Net Pension Liability	X	X	X			
Date of Actuarial Valuation Used	X	X	X			
Employer's Proportion of the Collective Net Pension Liability	X	X				
Basis on How the Employers Proportion (above) Was Determined and Change in Proportion Since Measurement Date	X					
Nonemployers Proportionate Share of Collective Net Pension Liability		X	X	X		
Brief Description of Changes in Assumptions Affecting Changes in Total Pension Liability Since Prior Measurement Date	X	X	X			
Brief Description of Changes in Benefit Terms Affecting Changes in Total Pension Liability Since Prior Measurement Date	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Additional Disclosures if Applicable</u> <i>(Continued)</i>						
Amount of Benefit Payments Attributed to Purchase of Allocated Insurance Contracts Including Obligation to Transfer Payments from the Employer to One or More Insurance Companies	X					
Brief Description of Nature of Changes Between Measurement Date and the Reporting Date that are Expected to have a Significant Effect on the Net Pension Liability	X	X	X			
Pension Expense Recognized by the Employer and Nonemployer	X	X	X	X		
<u>Employer's Balances of Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources</u>						
Difference Between Expected and Actual Experience	X	X	X			
Changes of Assumptions	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Employer's Balances of Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources</u> (Continued)						
Net Difference Between Projected and Actual Investment Earnings	X	X	X			
Changes in Proportion and Differences Between Contributions and Proportionate Share of Contributions (For Single/Agent Employers - if Special Funding Situation exists)	X	X	X			
Subsequent Contributions to the Measurement Date	X	X	X			
<u>Five Year Schedule</u>						
Employer's Balances of Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources to be Recognized in the Pension Expense	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 68 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Special Funding Situations</u>						
NO — Balance of Deferred Outflows to be Recognized as a Reduction of the Net Pension Liability	X					
YES — Balance of Deferred Outflows to be Included as a Reduction of the Collective net Pension Liability (Non Single/Agent Employers)	X			X		
Balance of Deferred Outflows to be Included as a Reduction of the Collective Net Pension Liability (Non Single/Agent Employers)		X	X			
Revenue Recognized for Support by Non-Employer Contributing Entities	X	X				

22.11 Required Supplementary Information (RSI)

All Single and Agent Employers

The following information should be presented separately in the applicable schedules of Required Supplementary Information (RSI) for each single-employer and agent pension plan through which pensions are provided, exceptions apply.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P20.144 - .146 (Section P20, paragraph 144 - .146), the following should be presented in the RSI:

A 10-year schedule of changes in net pension liability that separately presents for each year (if employer has a special funding situation, information in parts a–c below should be presented for the collective net pension liability):

- a) The beginning and ending balances of the total pension liability, the pension plan's fiduciary net position, and the net pension liability; and
- b) The effects of the following on items in (a) during the year, as applicable:
 - service cost;
 - interest on the total pension liability;
 - changes of benefit terms;
 - differences between expected and actual experience with regard to economic or demographic factors in the measurement of the total pension liability;
 - changes of assumptions about future economic or demographic factors or of other inputs;
 - contributions from employers;
 - contributions from non-employer contributing entities;
 - contributions from plan members;
 - pension plan net investment income;
 - benefit payments, including refunds of plan member contributions;
 - pension plan administrative expense; and
 - other changes, separately identified if individually significant.
- c) The ending balance of the total pension liability, the pension plan's fiduciary net position and net pension liability.
- d) If the employer has a special funding situation:
 - The nonemployer contributing entities total proportionate share of collective net pension liability.
 - The employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability.

A 10-year schedule presenting the following for each year:

(1) If the employer does not have a special funding situation:

- total pension liability;
- pension plan's fiduciary net position;
- net pension liability;
- pension plan's fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability;
- covered payroll; and
- net pension liability as a percentage of covered payroll.

(2) If the employer has a special funding situation, information about collective net pension liability:

- total pension liability;
- pension plan's fiduciary net position;
- collective net pension liability;
- nonemployer contributing entities' total proportionate share of the collective net pension liability;
- employers proportionate share of the collective net pension liability;
- covered payroll;
- employers proportionate share of the collective net pension liability as a percentage of covered payroll;
- pension plans fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability.

A 10-year schedule presenting the following information for each year, if an actuarially determined contribution is calculated:

- Actuarially determined contributions of the employer. For the purposes of this schedule, actuarially determined contributions should exclude amounts, if any, associated with payables to the pension plan that arose in a prior fiscal year and those associated with separately financed specific liabilities of the individual employer to the pension plan.
- Amount of contributions recognized during the fiscal year by the pension plan in relation to the actuarially determined contribution of the employer. For purposes of this schedule, contributions should include only amounts recognized as additions to the pension plan's fiduciary net position during the employer's fiscal year resulting from actual contributions and from contributions recognized by the pension plan as current receivables.
- Difference between the actuarially determined contributions of the employer and the amount of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the actuarially determined contribution of the employer.
- Covered payroll.
- Amounts of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the actuarially determined contribution of the employer as a percentage of covered payroll.

A 10-year schedule presenting the following information for each year, if an actuarially determined contribution is not calculated and the contribution requirements of the employer are statutorily or contractually established:

- Statutorily or contractually required employer contribution. For purposes of this schedule, statutorily or contractually required contributions should exclude amounts, if any, associated with payables to the pension plan that arose in a prior fiscal year and those associated with separately finance specific liabilities of the individual employer to the pension plan. Amount of contributions recognized during the fiscal year by the pension plan in relation to the actuarially determined contribution of the employer. For purposes of this schedule, contributions should include only amounts recognized as additions to the pension plan's fiduciary net position during the employer's fiscal year resulting from actual contributions and from contributions recognized by the pension plan as current receivables.
- Difference between the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution and the amount of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution.
- Covered payroll.
- Amounts of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution as a percentage of covered payroll.

All Cost Sharing Employees

The following information should be presented separately in schedules of Required Supplementary Information (RSI) for each cost-sharing pension plan through which pensions are provided, exceptions apply. Information should be determined as of the measurement date of the collective net pension liability and should be determined as of the employer's most recent fiscal year-end.

A 10-year schedule presenting the following for each year if the employer does not have a special funding situation:

- a) employer's proportion (percentage) of the collective net pension liability;
- b) employer's proportionate share (amount) of the collective net pension liability;
- c) employer's covered payroll;
- d) employer's proportionate share (amount) of the collective net pension liability as a percentage of the employer's covered payroll; and
- e) the pension plan's fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability.

A 10-year schedule presenting the following for each year if the employer does have a special funding situation:

- a) employer's proportion (percentage) of the collective net pension liability;
- b) employer's proportionate share (amount) of the collective net pension liability;
- c) portion of nonemployer contributing entities share of collective net pension liability associated with the local governmental entity;
- d) total of (b) and (c);
- e) employer's covered payroll;
- f) employer's proportionate share (amount) of the collective net pension liability as a percentage of the employer's covered payroll; and
- g) the pension plan's fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability.

A 10-year schedule presenting for each year the information indicated below, if the contribution requirements of the employer are statutorily or contractually established. The information below should be determined as of the employer's most recent fiscal year.

- Statutorily or contractually required employer contribution, exceptions apply.
- Amount of contributions recognized during the fiscal year by the pension plan in relation to the actuarially determined contribution of the employer.
- Difference between the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution and the amount of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution.
- Employer's covered payroll.
- Amounts of contributions recognized by the pension plan in relation to the statutorily or contractually required employer contribution as a percentage of covered payroll.

22.12 Note to Required Schedules

For each of the schedules identified in section in section 22.11, *Required Supplementary Information (RSI)*, significant factors that affect the amounts reported on these schedules should be presented as notes to these schedules. Examples of these significant factors include the following:

- changes of assumptions;
- changes of benefit terms; and
- changes in size or composition of the population covered by the benefit terms.

Additionally, significant factors that have an impact on the pension plans investments should also be presented as notes to these schedules. However, the factors reported should be those that are under the control of the participating local government entity or pension plan. An example of such a factor would be changes in investment policies. External factors such as market prices that are not within the influence (control) of the pension plan or the participating local government entity should not be presented.

Intra-Entity Transfers of Capital or Financial Assets Within the Same Reporting Entity — Defined Benefit Pension Plan

In a transfer of capital or financial assets within the same financial reporting entity, if the transferee government is not a defined benefit pension plan the difference between the amount paid (excluding amounts that may be refundable) and the carrying value of the receivables transferred should be reported as a gain or loss by the transferor and as a revenue or expenditure/expense by the transferee in their separately issued statements, but reclassified as transfers or subsidies — as appropriate — in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

If the transferee is a defined benefit pension plan, the difference between the amount paid by the pension plan (exclusive of amounts that may be refundable) and the carrying value of the assets transferred should be reported as:

- 1) an employer contribution or a nonemployer contributing entity contribution to the pension plan in accordance with the requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. P20 (Section P20), as applicable, in the separately issued statements of the employer or nonemployer contributing entity and the financial statements of the reporting entity; and
- 2) an employer contribution or a nonemployer contributing entity contribution in accordance with the requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5 (Section Pe5), as applicable, in the stand-alone statements of the pension plan and in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

Financial Reporting For Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans by Employers

This part of the chapter will focus on covering the accounting and reporting requirements for other postemployment benefits (OPEB) that are administered through trusts or equivalent arrangements in which:

- Contributions from employer/nonemployer entities to the OPEB plan and earnings on those contributions are irrevocable.
- OPEB plan assets are dedicated to providing benefits to plan members.
- OPEB plan assets are legally protected from creditors of employers, nonemployer contributing entities, and the OPEB plan administrator. For a defined benefit OPEB plan, the plan assets are also protected from the creditors of the plan members.

Since most local government employers offer defined benefit OPEB plans, the primary focus of this part of the chapter will focus on the accounting and reporting requirements for defined benefit OPEB plans.

Local governments should refer to GASB Codification Section P50 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit*, if they need more information concerning the OPEB guidance presented in this part of the chapter.

22.13 Types of OPEB Plans

OPEB includes the following:

- **Postemployment Healthcare Benefits:** medical, dental, vision and other health related benefits. These may be provided separately or through a pension plan.
- **Other Postemployment Benefits:** for example, death benefits, disability benefits, life insurance, etc. These benefits are provided separately from a pension plan.

Generally, termination benefits do not qualify as an OPEB benefit, exceptions apply.

Defined Benefit OPEB: these are benefits that an employee will receive at or after separation from employment as defined by the defined benefit OPEB plan.

Defined Contribution (DC) OPEB Plans: these are pension plans with the following attributes:

- Each employee has an individual account (e.g., employees have their own 457 Plan).
- Contributions (from employer/nonemployer) made towards the DC plan during periods in which the employee renders service.
- OPEB benefits received by an employee from a DC plan will depend on variables such as:
 - contributions (or credits) to the employees account;
 - investment earnings of the OPEB plan; and
 - OPEB plan administrative costs.

Since the focus of this chapter is on defined benefit plans, local governments should refer to the following GASB Codification sections for more information on DC OPEB plans:

- GASB Codification Section P51 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Provided through Trusts That Meet Certain Specified — Defined Contribution.*
- GASB Codification Section P54 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Not Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*

22.14 Types of Defined Benefit OPEB Plans

Single-Employer Defined Benefit OPEB Plan: a defined benefit OPEB plan that is used to provide OPEB to employees of one employer.

Multiple Employer Defined Benefit OPEB Plan: a defined benefit OPEB plan that is used to provide OPEB to employees of more than one employer. Multiple employers plans can be classified as either an agent multiple-employer defined OPEB plan or cost-sharing multiple employer defined benefit OPEB plan.

Note: If a local government entity is providing OPEB to its employees via an insurance plan, they should refer to GASB Codification Section P52 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Not Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit*, for their accounting and reporting needs.

22.15 Special Funding Situations (OPEB)

A special funding situation for defined benefit OPEB plans occurs when a nonemployer entity is legally responsible for making contributions directly to a local government entity's OPEB plan. The OPEB plan should be administered through a trust that meet the criteria outlined in the preceding sections (located under the Financial Reporting For Other Post-Employment Benefits by Employers introductory section) and meet either of the two following criteria:

- a) The amount of contributions or benefit payments for which the nonemployer entity is legally responsible is not dependent upon one or more events or circumstances unrelated to the OPEB. An example of a condition in which such an amount is not dependent includes a circumstance in which the nonemployer entity is required by statute to contribute a defined percentage of an employer's payroll directly to an OPEB plan. Another example would be where the nonemployer entity is required to pay retiree health insurance as they become due.
- b) The nonemployer entity is the only entity with a legal obligation to provide financial support directly to an OPEB plan that is used to provide OPEB to employees of another entity.

Special funding situations do not include circumstances in which resources are provided to the local government entity, regardless of the purpose for which those resources are provided.

22.16 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resource Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — No Special Funding

The net OPEB liability should be measured as the portion of the actuarial present value of projected benefit payments that is attributed to the past periods of employee service in conformity with the following list of requirements (calculating total OPEB liability), net of the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position.

When calculating total OPEB the following should be taken into account:

- Timing and frequency of actuarial valuations;
- Selection of assumptions;
- Projection of benefit payments;
- Discount rate; and
- Attribution of the actuarial present value of projected benefit payments to periods.

The OPEB plan's fiduciary net position should be determined using the same valuation methods that are used by the OPEB plan for the purposes of preparing the plan's statement of fiduciary net position.

The net OPEB liability should be measured as of the measurement date no earlier than the end of the employer's prior fiscal year and no later than the end of the employer's current fiscal year, consistently applied from period to period.

If a local government has less than 100 employees (active and inactive) it may choose to use the alternative measurement method to measure net OPEB liability. Local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.244 – .246 (Section P50, paragraphs .244 – .246) for more information on the alternative measurement method of calculating net OPEB liability.

Changes in the net OPEB liability should be recognized in OPEB expense in the current reporting period, exceptions apply. Contributions to the OPEB plan subsequent to the measurement date of the net OPEB liability and before the end of the reporting period should be reported as deferred outflow of resources.

22.17 Single and Agent Employers: Economic Resource Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — Special Funding Situation

The employer's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability should be measured as the collective net OPEB liability, net of the nonemployer contributing entities total proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability. OPEB expense and deferred inflows/outflows of resources related to OPEB should be recognized for the following items:

- Employer's share of collective OPEB expense and collective deferred inflows/outflows of resources related to OPEB.
- Change in employer's proportionate share of collective net OPEB liability (since the prior measurement date).
- Contributions made by employer and nonemployer contributing entities towards the OPEB plan during the measurement period.
- Employer contributions subsequent to the measurement date.

Local government should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.199 – .207 (Section P50, paragraphs .199 – .207) for more information on OPEB expenses and deferred inflows/outflows of resources pertaining to single and agent employers.

Contributions from nonemployer contributing entities should be recognized as revenues regardless of whether a special funding situation exists or not.

22.18 Single and Agent Employers: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis

When local government entities prepare financial statements using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, net OPEB liability should be recognized to the extent that the OPEB liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available resources.

OPEB expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid during the reporting period by the employer (and nonemployer contributing entities, if any) to the OPEB plan, including amounts paid for OPEB as benefits become due; and
- b) the change between the employer's (and nonemployer contributing entities, if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expandable financial resources.

A net OPEB liability is normally expected to be liquidated with available expendable resources to the extent that benefit payments have matured (i.e., benefit payments are due and payable and the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position is not sufficient for payment of those benefits).

Revenues from nonemployer contributing entities should be recognized equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid during the reporting period by nonemployer contributing entities to the OPEB plan, including amounts paid for OPEB as the benefits come due; and
- b) the change between the nonemployer contributing entities beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

The revenue and OPEB expenditures amounts described in the preceding lists include amounts for payables to an OPEB plan.

22.19 Cost Sharing Employers: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — No Special Funding

Proportionate Share of the Collective Net OPEB Liability

A local government entity should recognize its share of its collective net OPEB liability in its financial statements as of the measurement date, no earlier than the end of the employer's prior fiscal year and no later than the end of the employer's current fiscal year (applied consistently period to period).

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.156 (Section P50, paragraph .156):

The employer's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability should be measured by:

- a) Determining the employer's proportion — a measure of the proportionate relationship of (1) the employer (and, to the extent associated with the employer, nonemployer contributing entities, if any, that provide support for the employer but that are not in a special funding situation) to (2) all employers and all nonemployer contributing entities. The basis for the employer's proportion should be consistent with the manner in which contributions to the OPEB plan, excluding those associated with separately financed specific liabilities of an individual employer to the OPEB plan, are determined.

The use of the employer's projected long-term contribution effort to the OPEB plan (including that of nonemployer contributing entities that provide support for the employer but that are not in a special funding situation) as compared to the total projected long-term contribution effort of all employers and all nonemployer contributing entities to determine the employer's proportion is encouraged.

- b) Multiplying the collective net OPEB liability by the employer's proportion calculated in (a).

A local government entity's portion of the collective net OPEB liability should be established as of the measurement date, unless the local government entity's portion is actuarially determined. If this is the case, a proportion established at the date of the actuarial valuation used to determine the collective net OPEB liability may be used.

OPEB Expense and Deferred Inflows and Outflows of Resources

Local government entities should recognize OPEB expense and OPEB deferred outflows/inflows of resources for the following items:

- A local government entity's proportionate shares of collective OPEB expense and collective deferred outflows/inflows of resources related to OPEB;
- Change in the employer's proportion of the collective net OPEB liability since the prior measurement period;
- Contributions towards the OPEB plan during the measurement period; and
- Employer contributions subsequent to measurement date.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.156 – .167 (Section P50, paragraphs .156 – .167) for more information concerning the items identified in the preceding paragraph.

Contributions from nonemployers towards a local government entity's OPEB plan where no special funding conditions exist should be treated as revenues by a local governmental entity.

Pursuant to GASB Cod. Section P50.168 (Section P50, paragraph .168), revenue should be recognized in an amount equal to:

- a) the change in the collective net OPEB liability arising from contributions to the OPEB plan during the measurement period from nonemployer contributing entities that are not in a special funding situation to separately finance specific liabilities of the individual employer to the OPEB plan; and
- b) the employer's proportionate share of the change in the collective net OPEB liability arising from contributions to the OPEB plan during the measurement period from nonemployer contributing entities for purposes other than the separate financing of specific liabilities to the OPEB plan.

Collective Net OPEB Liability

The collective net OPEB liability should be measured as the total OPEB liability, net of the OPEB's plan fiduciary net position. The following should be taken into account when calculating total OPEB liability:

- Timing and Frequency of Actuarial Valuations
- Selection of Assumptions
- Projection of Benefit Payments
- Discount Rate

Note: If a local government entity has less than a hundred employees (active and inactive), it may choose the alternative measurement method to measure total OPEB liability. Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.245 – .246 (Section P50, paragraphs .245 – .246) for more information on the alternative measurement method of calculating net OPEB liability.

Changes to Collective Net OPEB liability

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.185 (Section P50, paragraph .185):

Changes in the collective net OPEB liability should be included in collective OPEB expense in the current measurement period except as indicated in the following subparagraphs:

- a) If the alternative measurement method is not used to measure the total OPEB liability, each of the following should be included in collective OPEB expense, beginning in the current measurement period, using a systematic and rational method over a closed period equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with OPEB through the OPEB plan (active employees and inactive employees) determined as of the beginning of the measurement period:
 - (1) Differences between expected and actual experience with regard to economic or demographic factors (differences between expected and actual experience) in the measurement of the total OPEB liability.
 - (2) Changes of assumptions about future economic or demographic factors or of other inputs (changes of assumptions or other inputs).

The portion of (1) and (2) not included in collective OPEB expense should be included in collective deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to OPEB.

- b) The difference between projected and actual earnings on OPEB plan investments should be included in collective OPEB expense using a systematic and rational method over a closed five-year period, beginning in the current measurement period. The amount not included in collective OPEB expense should be included in collective deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to OPEB. Collective deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources arising from differences between projected and actual OPEB plan investment earnings in different measurement periods should be aggregated and included as a net collective deferred outflow of resources related to OPEB or a net collective deferred inflow of resources related to OPEB.
- c) Contributions to the OPEB plan from employers or nonemployer contributing entities should not be included in collective OPEB expense.

22.20 Cost Sharing Employers: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis — Special Funding Situation

Net OPEB Liability

An employer that has a special funding situation should apply the provisions outlined in section 22.18, *Single and Agent Employers — Modified Accrual Basis*, when measuring net OPEB liability.

Proportionate Share of Collective Net OPEB Liability

Local government entities should recognize the employer's proportionate share of collective net OPEB liability as of the measurement date, no earlier than the end of the local government entity's prior fiscal year and no later than the local government entity's current fiscal year, consistently applied from period to period. Refer to section 22.19, *Cost Sharing Employers — Full Accrual Basis — No Special Funding*, for more information.

OPEB Expense and Deferred Inflows and Outflows of Resources

Local government entities should recognize OPEB expense and OPEB deferred outflows/inflows of resources for the following items, as applicable:

- A local government entity's proportionate shares of collective OPEB expense and collective deferred outflows/inflows of resources related to OPEB;
- Change in the employer's proportion of the collective net OPEB liability since the prior measurement date;
- Contributions towards the OPEB plan during the measurement period; and
- Employer contributions subsequent to measurement date.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. P50.156 – .167 (Section P50, paragraphs .156 – .167) for more information on the items identified in the preceding paragraph.

Additionally, OPEB expense should also be recognized for the portion of the following amounts associated with the employer (if any):

- the nonemployers contributing entities total proportionate share of collective OPEB expense adjusted for any contributions made to finance specific liabilities of the local government entity's OPEB plan.
- the nonemployers contributing entities total additional expense recognized for contributions to the local government entity's OPEB plan to separately finance specific liabilities of the individual governmental nonemployer contributing entity to the OPEB plan.

Contributions from nonemployer contributing entities should be recognized as revenues regardless of whether a special funding situation exists or not. For more information, local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.215 – .216 (Section P50, paragraphs .215 – .216).

22.21 Cost Sharing Employers: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis

When local government entities prepare financial statements using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, a local government entity's proportionate share of collective net OPEB liability should be recognized to the extent the liability measured as of the end of the reporting period is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available resources.

OPEB expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid during the reporting period by the employer (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) to the OPEB plan, including amounts paid for OPEB as the benefits become due; and
- b) the change between the employer's (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

In addition to the items in the preceding list, OPEB expenditures also include amounts for payables to an OPEB plan.

A net OPEB liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available resources to the extent that benefit payments have matured (i.e., benefit payments are due and payable and the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position is not sufficient for payment of those benefits).

Revenues from nonemployer contributing entities should be recognized equal to the portion of the following amounts associated with the employer:

- a) amounts paid during the reporting period by nonemployer contributing entities to the OPEB plan, including amounts paid for OPEB as the benefits come due; and
- b) the change between the nonemployer contributing entities' beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

The revenue amounts described in the preceding list include amounts for payables to an OPEB plan.

22.22 Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities: Economic Resources Measurement Focus — Full Accrual Basis

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.218 (Section P50, paragraph .218):

A liability should be recognized for the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability. The governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability should be measured as of a date (measurement date) no earlier than the end of the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's prior fiscal year and no later than the end of the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's current fiscal year, consistently applied from period to period. The governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability should be measured by:

- a) Determining the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportion — a measure of the proportionate relationship of (1) the governmental nonemployer contributing entity to (2) all employers and all nonemployer contributing entities. The basis for the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportion should be consistent with the manner in which contributions to the OPEB plan, excluding those to separately finance specific liabilities of an individual employer or nonemployer contributing entity to the OPEB plan, are determined. The use of the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's projected long-term contribution effort to the OPEB plan as compared to the total projected long-term contribution effort of all employers and all nonemployer contributing entities to determine the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportion is encouraged.
- b) Multiplying the collective net OPEB liability by the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportion calculated in (a).

Local government entities should recognize OPEB expense and OPEB deferred outflows/inflows of resources for the following three items:

- Governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportionate shares of collective OPEB expense and collective deferred outflows/inflows of resources related to OPEB;
- Change in the governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportion of the collective net OPEB liability since the prior measurement date; and
- Contributions from nonemployer contributing entities and governmental nonemployer contributing towards the OPEB plan during the measurement period, exceptions apply.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. P222 – .229 (Section P50, paragraphs .222 – .229) for more information on the items identified in the preceding paragraph.

22.23 Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities: Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus — Modified Accrual Basis

When using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, governmental nonemployer contributing entity's proportionate share of collective net OPEB liability should be recognized to the extent that the liability measured within the reporting period can be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. A net OPEB liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources to the extent that benefit payments have matured (i.e., benefits payments are due and payable and the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position is not sufficient for payment of those benefits).

Expenditures should be recognized by the local government entity equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid during the reporting period by the governmental nonemployer contributing entity to the local government entity's OPEB plan, including any amounts paid by the governmental nonemployer contributing entity for OPEB benefits due; and
- b) the change between beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Expenditures include amounts for payables to the OPEB plan and should be classified in the same manner as the governmental nonemployer contributing entity classifies similar grants to other entities.

22.24 Notes to Financial Statements

According to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.144 (Section P50, paragraph .144), all single and agent employers should report the following in their notes to financial statements:

The total of the employer's OPEB liabilities, net OPEB assets, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to OPEB, and OPEB expense/expenditures for the period associated with defined benefit OPEB liabilities to employees, as applicable, should be disclosed if the total amounts are not otherwise identifiable from information presented in the financial statements.

In some situations local governments provide defined benefit OPEB through a cost sharing OPEB plan that:

- a) is not a state or local government plan
- b) is used to provide defined benefit OPEB both to employees of state or local governmental employers and to employees of employers that are not state or local governmental employers; and
- c) has no predominant state or local government employers.

If a cost sharing employer provides benefits through an OPEB plan that does not meet the characteristics of the preceding paragraph, then according to GASB Cod. Sec. P50.189 (Section P50, paragraph .189), the cost sharing employer should report the following in their notes to financial statements:

The total of the employer's OPEB liabilities, net OPEB assets, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to OPEB, and OPEB expense/expenditures for the period associated with OPEB liabilities to employees, as applicable, should be disclosed if the total amounts are not otherwise identifiable from information presented in the financial statements.

Single and Agent Employers

Under circumstances in which the employees of a primary government and its component units are provided with OPEB through the same single-employer or agent OPEB plan, the note disclosures in the reporting entity's financial statements should separately identify amounts associated with the primary government (including its blended component units) and those associated with its discretely presented component units. More information on note disclosures for single and agent employers are provided in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Cost-Sharing Employers, Governmental Non-Employer Contributing Entities that Recognize a Substantial Proportion of Collective Net OPEB Liability

Information should be disclosed for benefits provided through each cost-sharing OPEB plan in which the employer participates. Disclosures related to more than one OPEB pension plan should be combined in a manner that avoids unnecessary duplication. More information on note disclosures for cost sharing employers and governmental non-employer contributing entities are provided in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Governmental Non-Employer Contributing Entities that Recognize a Less than Substantial Proportion of the Collective Net OPEB Liability

If the governmental non-employer contributing entity recognizes more than one collective net OPEB liability, information may be presented in the aggregate for all such liabilities. More information on note disclosures are provided in Appendix E, *Examples of Financial Reporting*.

Defined Contribution Plans — No Special Funding Situation

For financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting, the following should be recognized by employers that do not have a special funding situation for defined contribution OPEB:

- OPEB expense equal to the amount of contributions or credits to the local government entity's employees' accounts that are defined by the benefit terms as attributable to employees' services in the period, net of any forfeited amounts removed from the employee's accounts. Amounts reallocated to accounts of other employees should not be considered as forfeited amounts.
- A change in OPEB liability equal to the difference between the amounts recognized as OPEB expense and amounts paid by the employer to the local government entity's OPEB plan.

In financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, OPEB expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (a) amounts paid by the employer (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) to the OPEB plan and (b) the change between the employer's (including nonemployer contributing entities, if any) beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable financial resources. A liability for defined contribution pensions should be recognized to the extent that the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Liabilities for defined contribution OPEB are normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources to the extent that contributions are due and payable pursuant to legal requirements, including contractual arrangements.

OPEB liabilities provided through different OPEB plans may be displayed in the aggregate in the financial statements. OPEB assets provided through different OPEB plans that are administered through trusts [as described in GASB Cod. Sec. P51.101 (Section P51, paragraph .101)], may be displayed in the aggregate. Aggregated OPEB liabilities should be displayed separately from aggregated pension assets.

Defined Contribution Plans — Special Funding Situation

In financial statements prepared using economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting, the following should be recognized:

- OPEB expense equal to the local government entity's amount of contributions or credits made to an employee's OPEB account
- Change in OPEB liability equal to the difference between amounts recognized as OPEB expense and amounts paid by the local government entity to the OPEB plan.
- Additional OPEB expense for the amount of expense recognized by nonemployer contributing entities for OPEB provided through the OPEB plan.
- Revenue equal to the amount of expense recognized by nonemployer contributing entities for OPEB provided through the OPEB plan.

When preparing financial statements using the current financial resources measurement focus and modified accrual basis of accounting, the conditions outlined in the preceding paragraph located under for recognizing OPEB expenditures for defined contribution OPEB plans with no special funding situations, are also applicable to defined contributions OPEB plans that do have a special funding situation.

Revenues should be recognized equal to the total of:

- a) amounts paid by nonemployer contributing entities to the local government entity's OPEB plan; and
- b) the change between the nonemployer contributing entities' beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

22.25 Notes to Financial Statement — GASB Statement No. 75 Note Disclosures

Note: The list of note disclosures below are not all inclusive. For more information local governments should refer to:

GASB Codification Section P50 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit.*

GASB Codification Section P51 — *Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS
	Single and Agent Employers	Cost Sharing Employers	Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	No Special Funding	Special Funding Situation
OPEB Plan Description						
Name of Plan	X	X	X	X	X	X
Identification of Type of Plan	X	X	X	X	X	X
Description of Benefits and Authority Establishing Benefits	X	X	X		X	X
Contribution Requirements and Authority Establishing Rates	X	X	X	X	X	X
OPEB Expense Recognized					X	X
Amount of Forfeitures in OPEB Expense Recognized					X	X
Liability Outstanding at the End of Period					X	X

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<i>OPEB Plan Description (Continued)</i>						
Number of Active/Inactive Employees Covered by OPEB Plan	X	X				
Brief Description of Contribution Requirements	X	X	X	X		
Whether the Plan Issues Stand Alone Financial Reports	X	X	X			
Net OPEB Liability/Collective Net OPEB Liability						
<u>Assumptions and Other Inputs</u>						
Significant Assumptions and Sources	X	X	X			
Dates of Experience Studies on which the Assumptions are Based	X	X	X			
Discount Rate Applied	X	X	X			
Assumptions about Projected Cash Flows Into and Out of the Plan	X	X	X			
Long Term Expected Rate of Return	X	X	X			
Municipal Bond Rate if Incorporated	X	X	X			
Periods of Projected Benefit Payments	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Assumptions and Other Inputs (Continued)</u>						
Asset Allocation of the OPEB Plans Portfolio	X	X	X			
Sensitivity of Net Pension Liability to Changes in Discount Rate (+1% and -1%)	X	X	X			
OPEB Plan's Fiduciary Net Position						
Plan Assets	X	X	X			
Deferred Outflows of Resources	X	X	X			
Liabilities	X	X	X			
Deferred Inflows of Resources	X	X	X			
Fiduciary Net Position	X	X	X			
Changes in Net OPEB Liability						
Beginning Total OPEB Liability, OPEB Plans Fiduciary Net Position and Net OPEB Liability	X	X				
Service Cost	X	X				
Interest	X	X				
Changes in Benefit Terms	X	X				

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
Changes in Net OPEB Liability (Continued)						
Differences Between Expected and Actual Experience Studies - Total OPEB Liability	X	X				
Changes in Assumptions	X	X				
Contributions from the Employer	X	X				
Contributions from Non-Employer Contributing Entities	X	X				
Contributions from Employees	X	X				
OPEB Plan Net Investment Income (Loss)	X	X				
Benefit Payment Including Refunds	X	X				
OPEB Plan Administrative Costs	X	X				
Other Changes	X	X				
Ending Balances of Total OPEB Liability, OPEB Plans Fiduciary Net Position, and Net OPEB Liability	X	X				
<u>Special Funding Situation</u>						
Non-employer Contribution Entities' Total Proportionate Share of Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X				
Employer's Proportionate Share of the Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X				

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<i>Additional Disclosures if Applicable (Net OPEB Liability)</i>						
Measurement Date of Net OPEB Liability	X	X	X			
Date of Actuarial Valuation Used or Alternative Measurement Method Calculation	X	X	X			
Employer's Proportion of the Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X		X		
Basis on How the Employer's Proportion of the Collective Net OPEB Liability Was Determined	X	X	X	X		
Portion of Non-Employer Contributing Entities Total Proportionate Share Of Collective Net OPEB Liability Associated With The Employer		X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Additional Disclosures if Applicable (Net OPEB Liability) Continued</u>						
Total Employer's Proportionate Share Of The Collective Net OPEB Liability		X				
Change in Proportion From Prior Measurement Date	X	X				
Brief Description of Changes in Assumption Affecting Changes in Total Pension Liability Since Prior Measurement Date	X	X	X			
Brief Description of Changes in Benefit Terms Affecting Changes in Total OPEB Liability Since Prior Measurement Date	X	X	X			
Amount of Benefit Payments Attributed to Purchase of Allotted Insurance Contracts Including Obligations To Transfer Payments From the Employer To One Or More Insurance Companies	X					

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<i>Additional Disclosures if Applicable (Net OPEB Liability) Continued</i>						
Brief Description of Nature of Changes Between Measurement Date and the Reporting Date that are expected to have a Significant Effect on the Net OPEB Liability	X	X	X			
OPEB Expense Recognized by the Employer	X	X	X	X		
Employer's Balances of Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources	X	X		X		
Difference Between Expected and Actual Experience	X	X	X			
Changes in Assumptions	X	X	X			
Net Difference Between Projected and Actual Investment Earnings	X	X	X			
If Special Funding Situation - Changes in Proportion and Differences Between Contributions and Proportionate Share of Contributions	X	X	X			
Subsequent Contributions to the Measurement Date	X	X	X			

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net Pension Liability	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS No Special Funding	DEFINED CONTRIBUTION OPEB PLANS Special Funding Situation
<u>Five Year Schedule</u>						
Employer's Balances of Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources to be Recognized in the OPEB Expense	X	X	X			
<u>Special Funding Situations</u>						
NO — Balance of Deferred Outflows to be Recognized as a Reduction of the Net OPEB Liability	X					
YES — Balance of Deferred Outflows to be Included as a Reduction of the Collective Net OPEB Liability	X			X		
Revenue Recognized for Support by Non- Employer Contributing Entities	X	X				

22.26 Required Supplementary Information — GASB Statement No. 75

Note: The following list is not all-inclusive. For more information, local governments may refer to:

- GASB Codification Section P50 — Post Employment Benefits Other Than Pensions — Reporting for Benefits Provided Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit.

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability
10 Year Schedule - Changes to Net OPEB Liability/Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X	X	X
10 Year Schedule - No Special Funding Situation				
Total OPEB Liability	X			
OPEB Plan's Fiduciary Net Position	X			
Net OPEB Liability/Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X		
Covered Payroll or Covered-Employee Payroll	X	X		
Net OPEB Liability or Collective Net OPEB Liability as a percentage of the Covered Payroll or Covered Employee Payroll	X	X		
OPEB Plan's Fiduciary Net Position as a percentage of Total OPEB liability		X		
10 Year Schedule - Special Funding Situation				
Total OPEB Liability	X			
OPEB Plan's Fiduciary Net Position	X			

Chapter 22: Retirement Systems

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability
10 Year Schedule - Special Funding Situation (Continued)				
Collective Net OPEB liability	X			
Nonemployer Contributing Entities Total Proportionate Share of Collective Net OPEB Liability	X			
Employer's Share of Collective Net OPEB Liability	X	X		
Covered Payroll or Covered Employee Payroll	X	X		
Employers Proportionate Share of the Collective Net OPEB Liability as a percentage of covered payroll or covered-employee payroll	X	X		
OPEB Plan's Fiduciary Net Position as a percentage of the total OPEB liability	X	X		
10 Year Schedule - Actuarially Determined Contributions (if applicable)				
Employer's Actuarially Determined Contribution	X			
Amount of Actuarially Determined Contribution Recognized by the OPEB Plan	X			
Differences between Actuarially Determined Contributions	X			
Covered Payroll or Covered Employee Payroll	X			
Amount of Contributions recognized by the OPEB plan as a percentage of covered payroll or covered-employee payroll	X			
Significant Methods and Assumptions Used in Calculating Actuarially Determined Contributions	X			

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION GASB 75 (As Amended) NOTE DISCLOSURES	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Single and Agent Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Cost Sharing Employers	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability	DEFINED BENEFIT OPEB PLANS Governmental Nonemployer Contributing Entities Recognizing Less Than Substantial Portion of Collective Net OPEB Liability
10 Year Schedule - Contributions Statutorily/Contractually Established (No Actuarial Calculations)				
Statutorily or Contractually required Contributions	X	X	X	
Statutorily or Contractually required Contributions recognized by the OPEB Plan	X	X	X	
Differences between Statutorily or Contractually Required Contributions and the Amount of Contributions recognized by the OPEB Plan	X	X	X	
Covered Payroll or Covered Employee Payroll	X	X		
Amount of Contributions Recognized by the OPEB Plan as a percentage of Covered Payroll or Covered-Employee Payroll	X	X		

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

22.27 Notes to Required Schedules

For each of the schedules identified in section 22.26, *Required Supplementary Information — GASB Statement No. 75* as amended, significant factors that affect the amounts reported on these schedules should also be presented as notes to these schedules.

Examples of these significant factors include the following:

- changes of assumptions;
- changes of benefit terms; and
- changes in size or composition of the population covered by the benefit terms.

However, the factors reported should be those that are under the control of the participating local government entity or OPEB Plan. An example of such a factor would be changes in investment policies. External factors such as market prices that are not within the influence (control) of the OPEB plan or the participating local government entity should not be presented.

Financial Reporting for Stand-Alone Pension and OPEB Plans

22.28 Financial Reporting for Pension and OPEB Plans — GASB 67 and GASB 74

This section will provide a brief overview of the accounting and reporting guidance for pension and OPEB plans administered through a trust or equivalent arrangement as required by:

- GASB Statement No. 67, *Financial Reporting for Pension Plans — an amendment of GASB Statement No. 25*, as amended.
- GASB Statement No. 74, *Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefit Plans Other Than Pension Plans*, as amended.

In addition to the pronouncements in the preceding paragraph, accounting and reporting requirements for stand-alone pension and OPEB plans (not the employer), can also be found in the following GASB Codification sections:

- Pe5 — *Pension Plans Administered through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit.*
- Pe6 — *Pension Plans Administered through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*
- Po50 — *Postemployment Benefit Plans (Other Than Pension Plans) Administered through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Benefit.*
- Po51 — *Postemployment Benefit Plans (Other Than Pension Plans) Administered Through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria — Defined Contribution.*

The GASB requires stand-alone pension and OPEB plans administered by a trust to present two financial statements that are prepared using the full accrual basis of accounting.

- Statement of Fiduciary Net Position
- Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

Statement of Fiduciary Net Position

The purpose of statement of fiduciary net position is to provide the fiduciary net position of a pension or OPEB plan at the end of the reporting period. A statement of fiduciary net position should provide the following information in relation to a pension or OPEB plan:

- Assets such cash/cash equivalents, receivables from employers, other contributing entities and plan members, and pension assets held as investments;
- Deferred outflow of resources (e.g., pension expense attributed to future reporting periods);
- Liabilities such as benefit payment due to members;
- Deferred inflows of resources (e.g., pension contributions belonging to future periods received in the current reporting period); and
- Fiduciary net position.

GASB defines Fiduciary Net Position as “assets, plus deferred outflows of resources, less liabilities, less deferred inflows of resources at the end of the pension plans reporting period as net position restricted for pensions.”

Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

The statement of changes in fiduciary net position should provide the following information for the plans reporting period:

- Additions such as employer and employee contributions, contributions from nonemployer entities, and net investment income.
- Deductions such as benefit payments and administrative expenses.
- Net increase (decrease) in fiduciary net position which is the difference between total additions and deduction for the plan’s reporting period.

Other Plan Reporting Requirements

At minimum, the following should also be reported as part of the stand-alone pension or OPEB plan financial statements:

- Notes to financial statements
- Disclosures specific to single-employer and cost sharing pension plans
- Required supplementary information:
 - Single Employer and Cost-Sharing Plans
 - Agent Pension Plans
 - Notes to required schedules

Intra-Entity Transfers of Capital or Financial Assets Within the Same Reporting Entity — Defined Benefit OPEB Plan

In a transfer of capital or financial assets within the same financial reporting entity, if the transferee government is not a defined benefit OPEB plan, the difference between the amount paid (excluding amounts that may be refundable) and the carrying value of the receivables transferred should be reported as a gain or loss by the transferor and as a revenue or expenditure/expense by the transferee in their separately issued statements, but reclassified as transfers or subsidies — as appropriate — in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

If the transferee is a defined benefit OPEB plan, the difference between the amount paid by the OPEB plan (exclusive of amounts that may be refundable) and the carrying value of the assets transferred should be reported as:

- 1) an employer contribution or a nonemployer contributing entity contribution to the OPEB plan in accordance with the requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. P50 (Section P50) — as applicable — in the separately issued statements of the employer or nonemployer contributing entity and the financial statements of the reporting entity; and
- 2) an employer contribution or a nonemployer contributing entity contribution in accordance with the requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. Po50 (Section Po50) — as applicable — in the stand-alone statements of the OPEB plan and in the financial statements of the reporting entity.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 23: Deferred Compensation Plans

Chapter Contents

Introduction.....537

Overview of Deferred Compensation Plans.....537

23.01 Nature and Purpose.....537

23.02 Deferred Compensation Plans.....537

23.03 Contributions.....538

23.04 Qualified and Nonqualified Plans.....538

Accounting for Deferred Compensation Plans.....539

23.05 General Accounting 539

Laws and Related Codes.....540

23.06 State and Federal Law.....540

23.07 Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA).....540

23.08 Small Business Job Protection Act of 1996 540

23.09 Taxpayer Relief Act of 1997.....540

23.10 State and Federal Wages and Payroll Taxes.....541

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 23: Deferred Compensation Plans

Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of the accounting and reporting requirements for local government entities that provide deferred compensation plans to their employees.

Overview of Deferred Compensation Plans

23.01 Nature and Purpose

Deferred compensation refers to an eligible deferred payment plan offered to employees whereby reporting of gross earnings is postponed to a future year, providing an exception to the general rule for reporting gross income to the Internal Revenue Service. The rules for eligibility for this timing for State and local governments are covered under U.S. Code: Title 26, Internal Revenue Code (IRC), section 457 (457 Plan). To postpone earnings, an employee must agree to contribute current earnings according to the terms of the eligible plan.

The governing body of a local government may provide deferred compensation plans to the employees of the local government, including any of their subdivisions, agencies, or instrumentalities as long as they meet the requirements of IRC section 457. A primary benefit of most deferred compensation plans is the deferral of individual taxes on amounts being invested.

Deferred compensation plans can be made up of annuities, pensions, deferred savings plans, stock options, and other deferred earnings. Vacation leave, sick leave, disability pay, or death benefit plans are excluded from eligibility. Some common examples of governmental deferred compensation plans include individual retirement accounts (IRA) accounts, 401(a) employer sponsored retirement plans, 401(k) profit-sharing plans, 403(b) tax-sheltered annuity plans, and 457(b) retirement savings accounts, among others.

23.02 Deferred Compensation Plans

Deferred compensation plans should explain:

- the meaning of words and terms;
- who will administer the plan;
- the types of investments to be made;
- who bears the cost of administration;
- which employees are eligible;
- how employees may enroll/the sign-up period;
- the maximum and minimum contributions;
- the investment options available to employees;
- how earnings are credited to individual accounts; and
- the processes if contributions are changed or terminated in full.

Additionally, the employer is required to disclose the options available to the employee and beneficiary in the event of retirement, separation, disability, death, leave of absence, or hardship. Provisions must be made for the issuance of either W-2 or 1099 forms to former employees or their beneficiaries, covering plan disbursements.

23.03 Contributions

To be considered an eligible plan, IRC section 457 Plans must be funded with assets held in trust for the benefit of employees. The deferred compensation fund should be reported as the appropriate fiduciary fund type according to the criteria covered in Chapter 5, *Fund Accounting*. An eligible plan may defer contributions from income up to an annual limit. In addition, catch-up contributions may be made to employees age 50 or older.

As defined in the plan documents, employee contributions may be pre-tax salary reductions (elective deferrals), designated Roth contributions, post-tax contributions, or catch-up contributions. The employer may make matching contributions, which can be discretionary or mandatory, for employees who contribute elective deferrals.

According to the IRS webpage entitled *Retirement Topics — Contributions*:

Employers must deposit employee contributions to the retirement plan's trust or individual accounts as soon as they can reasonably be segregated from the employer's general assets. The Department of Labor provides a 7-business-day safe harbor rule for employee contributions to plans with fewer than 100 participants.

To access the *Retirement Topics — Contribution* webpage, refer to the IRS website at <https://www.irs.gov/retirement-plans/plan-participant-employee/retirement-topics-contributions>

For additional information on retirement plans or contributions, refer to the IRS website at <https://www.irs.gov/>.

23.04 Qualified and Nonqualified Plans

A qualified employer plan is a pension plan governed by the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (ERISA) of 1974 and it must be offered to all employees who meet the eligibility requirements of a qualified retirement plan, such as 401(k), 403(b), and 457(b) Plans. The IRS administers a determination letter for sponsors to get advance assurance that their retirement plan is qualified. The local government should ensure their plan operates in accordance to the plan document and that the determination letter is up to date. Online guidance concerning qualified plan requirements can be found at the IRS website, at <https://www.irs.gov/>, along with other guidance on retirement plans.

A nonqualified deferred compensation plan falls outside of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act guidelines and is a contractual agreement between the employer and employee to defer gross earnings. Rules for eligibility of a nonqualified plan are outlined in Internal Revenue Code (IRC) section 409A. If an arrangement does not meet the requirements in IRC section 409A for a qualified plan, the deferred compensation must then meet the IRC section 409A criteria for a nonqualified plan to defer the income. If income is deferred, but not in compliance with these requirements, then the employee becomes subject to interest and additional income tax, including a 20% additional tax and a possible penalty interest assessment.

Accounting for Deferred Compensation Plans

23.05 General Accounting

Accounting for deferred compensation plans requires an understanding of the underlying general transactions taking place. While the local government records the earnings paid to the employee, deferred compensation is withheld from current earnings, similar to the withholding of payroll taxes and, therefore, there is a liability to the employee for the withheld amount.

To be eligible for the plan, the liability should be funded. In other words, an equivalent amount of assets should be held in trust to fund the liability; therefore there is a transfer of assets to the trust.

Some deferred compensation contracts provide for periodic payments to employees or their surviving spouses for life, with provisions for a minimum lump-sum settlement in the event of the early death of one or all of the beneficiaries. The estimated present value of future payments to be made under these types of contracts are required to be accrued over the period of active employment from the time the contract is agreed upon or its inception.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. D25.101 (Section D25, paragraph 101), a 457 Plan should be classified as either a pension plan, an employee benefit plan other than a pension plan, or an other post-employment benefit plan (OPEB), as follows:

- A Section 457 Plan that meets the definition of a pension plan as described in paragraph .501 of Section Pe5 or paragraph .501 of Section P23 is a pension plan for accounting and financial reporting purposes.
- A Section 457 Plan that does not meet the definition of a pension plan is an other employee benefit plan for accounting and financial reporting purposes.

If a 457 Plan meets the definition of a pension plan and is either included in the local government entity's financial statements or the financial statements of the 457 Plan are issued as a stand-alone financial statement, all accounting and reporting requirements pertaining to pension plans should be applied to the 457 Plan.

There are instances where a 457 Plan may provide a combination of benefits, which may qualify as either a pension plan or other employee benefits. For those benefits that qualify as a pension plan, all accounting and financial reporting requirements that are relevant to pensions should be applied to these benefits.

Additionally, if a 457 Plan qualifies as a fiduciary activity, the plan should be reported as a fiduciary activity in a local government entity's fiduciary financial statements. For more information on fiduciary activities, refer to Chapter 5, *Fund Accounting*.

The measurement of the total liability for the deferred compensation plan will depend on the individual plan and the value is usually provided through the services of an actuary. Chapter 22, *Retirement Systems*, provides further guidance on the measurement of the total pension liability for deferred compensation contributions to a pension plan.

For additional information on accounting and reporting guidance pertaining to deferred compensation plans, local governments may refer to GASB Codification at <https://www.gasb.org>.

Laws and Related Codes

23.06 State and Federal Law

Significant state and federal regulations pertaining to the deferred compensation plans are covered in multiple codes. Each local agency may establish a deferred compensation plan under California's Government Code section 53213, et seq., and each is obligated to identify risks and financial condition information annually pursuant to the provisions of Labor Code section 2809. Additional guidelines and provisions for deferred compensation plans are further covered in Internal Revenue Code (IRC) sections 401 through 436, and 457.

For the most current regulations concerning deferred compensation plans such as the IRC 401(a) plan — qualified plan, IRC 403(b) plan — annuity for public schools, and the IRC 457(b)/457(f) Plans — nonqualified deferred compensation plans, refer to the IRS website at <https://www.irs.gov/retirement-plans>.

23.07 Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA)

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (ERISA) set forth provisions that established new uniform requirements for all employee benefit plans, including notice and disclosure protections. Government plans are exempt from the requirements of ERISA, although many of the ERISA requirements have been incorporated into California statutory law and, therefore, made applicable to local government plans. ERISA provisions have been codified in U.S. Code, Title 29, Chapter 18, Retirement Income Security; the government exclusion is listed in Subchapter I, section 1003. Local governments may refer to the U.S. Code website at <https://uscode.house.gov/> for additional information.

23.08 Small Business Job Protection Act of 1996

The purpose of the Small Business Job Protection Act of 1996 is to provide tax relief for small businesses, protect earnings, create opportunities, and increase the take-home pay of workers. This law is the foundation for nondiscrimination provisions and new pension amendments that are in the current IRC provisions and guidelines.

23.09 Taxpayer Relief Act of 1997

The Taxpayer Relief Act of 1997 added provisions to the U.S. Code for civil service retirement systems of State or local government, with administrative guidelines for trust funds. As part of this Act, Roth Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) were established, permanently exempting these retirement accounts from capital gains taxes.

23.10 State and Federal Wages and Payroll Taxes

Under U.S. Code section 3401, deferred compensation plans are included in the definition of wages for the purpose of employment taxes. The Code of Federal Regulations includes IRC provisions concerning the requirements for nonqualified plans in regard to the liability for social security tax. Refer to social security tax under Title 26, Chapter I, Subchapter C, Part 31, Subpart B, Section 31.3121(v)(2)-1 and federal unemployment tax under Title 26, Chapter C, Part 31, Subpart D, Section 31.3306(r)(2)-1.

The unique guidelines relating to a local government's responsibility for withholding employee taxes and proper payroll tax reporting for deferred compensation can be obtained from the California State Employment Development Department (EDD) website, at <https://www.edd.ca.gov>, and the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) website at <https://www.irs.gov>.

Helpful employer publications to reference include the following:

- IRS Publication 5138, Quick Reference Guide for Public Employers
- IRS Publication 15, Circular E, Employer's Tax Guide
- IRS Publication 15-A, Employer's Supplemental Tax Guide
- IRS Publication 963, Federal-State Reference Guide
- EDD Information Sheets DE 231A, Wages
- DE 231EB, Taxability of Employee Benefits

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 24: Compensated Absences

Chapter Contents

Introduction 545

Overview of Compensated Absences 545

24.01 Vacation Leave 547

24.02 Sick Leave 547

24.03 Sabbatical Leave 547

24.04 Liability Calculation of Compensated Absences 547

24.05 Salary-Related Payments 548

24.06 Relationship to Postemployment Benefits 549

24.07 Reporting Compensated Absences 550

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 24: Compensated Absences

Introduction

This chapter provides an overview for accounting and reporting requirements for compensated absences and associated salary related payments (e.g. pension and other postemployment benefit payments). For additional information on the accounting and reporting requirements for compensated absences, local government entities may refer to GASB Cod. Sec. C60 (Section C60).

24.01 Overview of Compensated Absences

According to GASB Cod. Sec. C60.102 (Section C60, paragraph .102) a compensated absence is defined as leave for which an employee may receive one or more of the following:

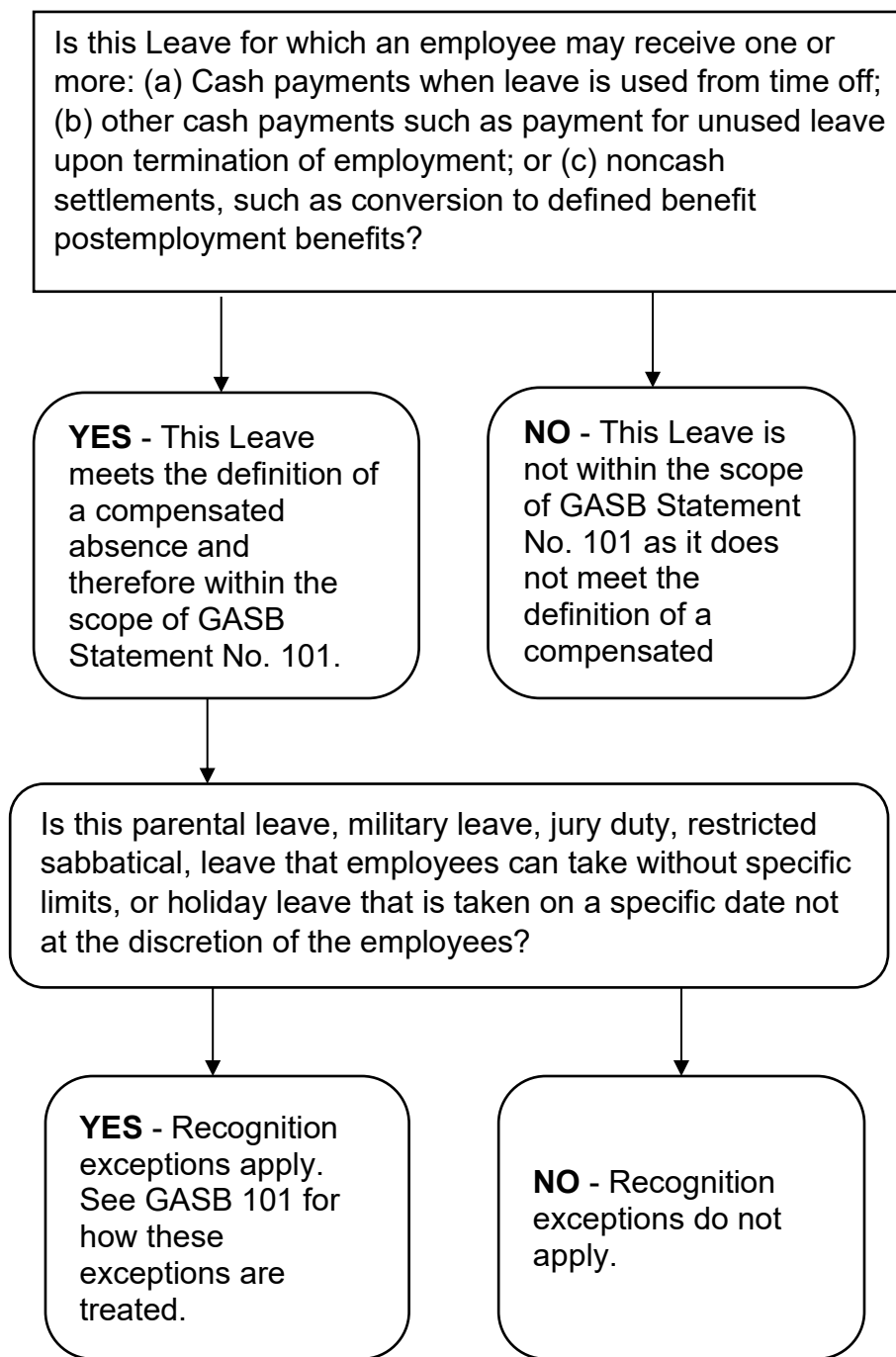
- a) Cash payments when the leave is used for time off;
- b) Other cash payments, such as payment for unused leave upon termination of employment;
or
- c) Noncash settlements, such as conversion to defined benefit postemployment benefits.

The payments or settlements could occur during employment or upon termination of employment. Compensated absences typically do not have a set payment schedule. Compensated absences include vacation (or annual) leave, sick leave, paid time off (PTO), holidays, parental leave, bereavement leave, and certain types of sabbatical leave.

A sabbatical leave in which an employee is not required to perform any significant duties for the government is considered to be a compensated absence. If the employee is required to perform duties of a different nature for the government (e.g., research instead of teaching), that is not considered a compensated absence.

Termination of employment refers to the end of an employee's active service, which can occur for a variety of reasons, including voluntary resignation or retirement. The guidance in this chapter does not apply to termination benefits. Please refer to GASB Cod. Sec. T25 (Section T25) for additional information concerning termination benefits.

Following is a flowchart to assist local governments on how to treat “leave entitlements” if the type of leave meets the definition of “compensated absences” as outlined in GASBS 101.



24.02 Liability Calculation of Compensated Absences

Liabilities for compensated absences should be recognized in financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus for (a) leave that has not been used and (b) leave that has been used but not yet paid in cash or settled. Those liabilities are not required to be aggregated for display in the basic financial statements. Applicable salary-related payments should be included in the measurement of those liabilities.

Leave That Has Not Been Used

For leave that has not been used, a liability should be recognized if all of the following are true (exceptions apply):

- a) The leave is attributable to services already rendered;
- b) The leave accumulates; and
- c) The leave is more than likely not to be used for time off or otherwise paid in cash or settled through noncash means.

Note: Sick leave and unrestricted sabbatical leave should be recognized in accordance with the provisions outlined above

Leave that is attributable to services already rendered is leave for which an employee has performed the services required to earn the leave. Leave that accumulates is carried forward from the reporting period in which it was earned to a future reporting period during which it may be used for a time off or otherwise paid in cash or settled through noncash means.

A local government entity should evaluate if leave is more likely than not to be used for time off or otherwise paid in cash or settled through noncash means by assessing relevant factors, including the following:

- a) The government's employment policies related to compensated absences.
- b) Whether leave that has been earned is, or will become, eligible for use or payment in the future.
- c) Historical information about the use, payment, or forfeiture of compensated absences.
- d) Information known to the government that would indicate that historical information may not be representative of future trends or patterns.

Leave that is more likely than not to be settled through conversion to defined benefit postemployment benefits should not be recognized as a liability for compensated absences.

Certain types of compensated absences are dependent upon the occurrence of a specific event that affects a relatively small number of employees in any particular period. Examples include parental leave, military leave, and jury duty. For these types of compensated absences leave should not be recognized as liabilities until the leave commences.

The following types of compensated absences should not be recognized as a liability until the leave is used:

- a) Leave that employees are able to take as needed without specific limits (often referred to as unlimited leave).
- b) Holiday leave that is taken on a specific date not at the discretion of employees.

A liability for leave that is recognized in accordance with the guidance of the preceding section should be measured using an employee's pay rate as of the date of the financial statements, unless one of the following criteria is met:

- a) If some or all of the leave is more likely than not to be paid at a rate different from the employee's pay rate at the time the payment is made, a local government entity should measure that portion of the liability using that different rate as of the date of the financial statements.
- b) If the leave is not attributable to a specific employee as of the date of the financial statements (e.g., leave donated to a shared employee leave pool), a local government entity should measure the liability using an estimated pay rate that is representative of the eligible employee population.
- c) If some or all of the leave is more likely than not to be settled through noncash means other than conversion to defined benefit postemployment benefits, a local government entity should measure the liability based on the amount for which it is more likely than not to be settled.

Changes to the measurement of the liability in future periods due to a change in pay rate should be recognized in the period of the change.

Leave That Has Been Used

A liability should be reported when leave is used for time off but has not yet been paid in cash or settled through noncash means, including the types of leave discussed in the preceding paragraphs. That liability, including any applicable salary-related payments, should be measured at the amount of the cash payment or noncash settlement to be made for the use of the leave.

24.03 Salary-Related Payments

Salary-related payments are obligations that a government incurs related to providing leave in exchange for services rendered. Examples of salary-related payments include the employer share of Social Security and Medicare taxes.

A local government entity should include in the measurement of its liabilities for compensated absences (for both leave that has been used and leave that has not been used) salary-related payments that are directly and incrementally associated with the leave, except salary related payments related to defined benefit pensions or defined benefit OPEB. A payment is directly associated if the amount of the payment is a function of salary to be paid.

A payment is incrementally associated if the government will make a payment in addition to the payment for the salary. The portion of the liability that is for salary-related payments should be measured using the rates in effect as of the date of the financial statements. Changes to the measurement of the portion of the liability that is for salary-related payments in future periods due to a change in rate should be recognized in the period of the change.

Salary-related payments related to defined benefit pensions or defined benefit OPEB should not be included in the measurement of liabilities for compensated absences, even if they meet the criteria in the preceding paragraph.

A salary-related payment may be incrementally associated only with a portion of the recognized leave. For example, a government that provides benefits through a defined contribution pension plan may be required to make employer contributions related to leave used for time off but not for leave paid upon termination of employment. In that case, the only amount that is incrementally associated with the recognized leave is the amount of employer contributions related to the portion of the leave that is more likely than not to be used for time off.

For leave that has not been used, expense for salary-related payments related to defined contribution pensions or defined contribution OPEB should be recognized when the liability for that leave is recognized, and should be reported as a pension expense or OPEB expense, as applicable. Those amounts should not be reported as a pension liability or an OPEB liability. For leave that has been used, salary-related payments related to defined contribution pensions or defined contribution OPEB should be included in a pension liability or an OPEB liability in accordance with the following guidance:

- GASB Cod. Sec. P21 — *Pension Activities—Reporting for Benefits Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria—Defined Contribution*
- GASB Cod. Sec. P24 — *Pension Activities—Reporting for Benefits Not Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria—Defined Contribution*
- GASB Cod. Sec. P51 — *Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pension—Reporting for Benefits Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria—Defined Contribution*
- GASB Cod. Sec. P54 — *Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pension—Reporting for Benefits Not Provided through Trusts That Meet Specified Criteria—Defined Contribution*

24.04 Relationship to Postemployment Benefits

The projected effects on an employer's defined benefit postemployment benefits liability resulting from a payment for compensated absences should not be included in the liability for compensated absences.

Some local government entities allow or require compensated absences (usually sick leave) to be paid to an employee upon termination of employment through a distribution to an individual account (instead of directly to the employee) to be used for specified purposes, such as payment of the employee's share of future healthcare premiums. Leave that (a) has not been used, (b) meets the recognition criteria in Section 24.02, *Liability Calculation of Compensated Absences*, and (c) is more likely than not to be paid in this manner should be included in a liability for compensated absences following the general measurement provisions in Section 24.02.

24.05 Reporting Compensated Absences

Financial Statements Prepared Using Current Financial Resources Management Focus

A liability for compensated absences should be accounted for and reported on a basis consistent with governmental fund accounting principles. The amount of compensated absences recognized as expenditures in financial statements prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus should be the amount that normally would be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Liabilities for compensated absences are normally liquidated with expendable available financial resources, and a governmental fund liability and expenditure should be recognized, as payments come due each period upon the occurrence of relevant events such as employee resignations and retirements.

The accumulation of earmarked net assets in a governmental fund for eventual payment of unmatured general long-term indebtedness, including compensated absences, does not constitute an outflow of current financial resources and should not result in the recognition of an additional governmental fund liability or expenditure.

Notes to Financial Statements

The requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. 2300.120b. (Section 2300, paragraph .120b), require increases and decreases in long-term liabilities to be reported in note disclosures. Accordingly, a local government entity should present either (a) the separate increases and decreases, or (b) a net increase or a net decrease in its liability for compensated absences included in that disclosure. A local government entity that presents a net increase or a net decrease should indicate that it is a net amount. This disclosure requirement is not required to be applied to liabilities for compensated absences included in that disclosure.

Example:

The following is the status for compensated balances as of June 30, 20X1:

Account	General Fund Balance
Current Value of Compensated Absences	\$ 100,000
Short-term portion	\$ 5,000 ¹
Long-term portion	\$ 95,000
Amount currently in debt accounting records	\$ 80,000

¹ The full amount for fiscal year 20X1–20X2 compensated leave balances is included in the budget. The \$5,000 represents the estimated terminal payments resulting from these accrued balances.

Account	Enterprise Fund Balance
Current Value of Compensated Absences	\$ 10,000
Short-term portion	\$ 4,000
Long-term portion	\$ 6,000
Amount currently in long-term liability	\$ 3,000

General Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit</u>	<u>Credit</u>
Expenditure — Salaries and Employee Benefits	DR: \$5,000	
Short-term Liabilities — Salaries and Benefits Payable		CR: \$5,000
Debt Accounting Records Amount to be Provided	DR: \$15,000	
Employee Salaries and Benefits Payable		CR: \$15,000

Proprietary Fund

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit</u>	<u>Credit</u>
Expenses — Salaries and Employee Benefits	DR: \$7,000	
Short-Term Liabilities — Salaries and Benefits Payable		CR: \$4,000
Long-Term Liabilities — Salaries and Benefits Payable		CR: \$3,000

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 25: Municipal Solid Waste Landfill Closure and Postclosure Care Costs

Chapter Contents

Introduction 555

Accounting and Reporting for Municipal Solid Waste Landfill Closure and Post-Closure Costs.....556

25.01 Allocation of Costs 556

25.02 Assets Placed in Trusts 556

25.03 Proprietary Funds (MSWLF) 556

25.04 Governmental Funds (MSWLF) 556

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 25: Municipal Solid Waste Landfill Closure and Postclosure Care Costs

Introduction

GASB Cod. Sec. L10 (Section L10) sets standards of accounting and financial reporting for the cost of Municipal Solid Waste Landfill (MSWLF) closure and postclosure care. The local government entity's financial statements should reflect the impact of all closure and postclosure care costs during the life of a MSWLF.

Costs that result in disbursements near or after the date that the MSWLF stops accepting solid waste and during the postclosure period should be included in the estimated total current cost of MSWLF closure and postclosure care, regardless of their capital or operating nature. The estimated total current cost should include:

- the cost of equipment expected to be installed and facilities expected to be constructed near or after the date that the MSWLF stops accepting solid waste and during the postclosure period;
- the cost of final cover (capping) expected to be applied near or after the date that the MSWLF stops accepting solid waste; and
- the cost of monitoring and maintaining the expected usable MSWLF area during the postclosure period.

The estimated total current cost of MSWLF closure and postclosure care should be based on applicable federal, state, or local laws and regulations concerning closure and postclosure care that have been approved as of the balance sheet date, regardless of their effective date.

The current cost is the amount that would be paid if all equipment, facilities, and services included in the estimate were acquired during the current period. These costs should be adjusted annually for the effects of inflation or deflation. Additionally, current costs should be adjusted if changes in the closure or postclosure care plan or MSWLF operating conditions increase or decrease estimated costs. The changes may include the type of equipment, facilities, changes in technology, changes in the expected usable landfill area, or changes in closure and postclosure legal or regulatory requirements,

For additional information on the accounting and reporting requirements for landfill closure and postclosure care costs, local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. L10 (Section L10).

Accounting and Reporting for Municipal Solid Waste Landfill Closure and Post-Closure Costs

25.01 Allocation of Costs

When reporting MSWLF in proprietary fund financial statements, a portion of the estimated total current cost of MSWLF closure and postclosure care should be recognized as an expense and as a liability in each period the MSWLF accepts solid waste. This recognition should begin the date the MSWLF begins accepting solid waste. Recognition should continue for each period that it accepts waste and be completed by the time it stops accepting waste. The estimated total current cost should be allocated over the life of the MSWLF using the following formula:

Estimated Total Current Cost x <u>Cumulative Capacity Used</u> Total Estimated Capacity	— Amount Previously Recognized	= Annual Allocation

It should be noted that costs are allocated based on usage rather than the passage of time.

25.02 Assets Placed in Trusts

Some local governments may be required by the regulatory authorities or contractual provisions to provide financial assurances for closure, postclosure care, and remediation of each landfill by placing assets in a third-party trustee or in a surety standby trust. These amounts should be reported in the fund used to report the landfill operations and be identified by a description such as amounts held by trustee. Investment earnings on amounts set aside to finance closure and postclosure care should be reported as revenue, and not as reductions of the estimated total current cost of MSWLF closure and postclosure care and related accrued liability.

25.03 Proprietary Funds (MSWLF)

Local governments reporting MSWLF using proprietary funds should recognize the amount computed through the formula in chapter section 25.01, *Allocation of Costs*, as an expense and as a liability for each period that the MSWLF accepts solid waste.

Equipment and facilities included in the estimated total current cost of closure and postclosure care should not be reported as capital assets, but should be reported as a reduction to accrued liability for MSWLF closure and postclosure care when they are acquired. Capital assets not included in the estimated total current cost of closure and postclosure care and were exclusively acquired for MSWLF purposes should be fully depreciated until the MSWLF stops accepting solid waste.

25.04 Governmental Funds (MSWLF)

Local government entities reporting MSWLFs using governmental funds should measure fund liabilities similar to that of proprietary funds. MSWLF expenditures and liabilities are recognized in governmental funds using the modified accrual basis of accounting. Fund liabilities are usually liquidated with expendable available financial resources. A governmental fund liability and expenditure should be recognized when payments come due each period upon receipt of good and services used in the closing and postclosure care processes.

Liabilities not liquidated with current financial resources should be treated as long-term liabilities and should be reported in the government-wide statement of net position of the financial statements in the governmental activities column. In the statement of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balance, acquisition of facilities and equipment that were included in the estimated total current costs should be reported as closure and post-closure care expenditures.

-

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 26: Leases

Chapter Contents

Introduction 561

Foundational Guidance.....562

26.01 Definition, Scope, and Applicability 562

26.02 Lease Term and Lease Thresholds 563

Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities 564

26.03 Lessee 565

26.04 Lessor.....566

Exceptions and Special Circumstances 568

26.05 Transfer of Ownership 568

26.06 Countywide Cost Allocation Plans—Capital Lease Exclusions.....569

26.07 Lease Incentives.....569

26.08 Leases with Multiple Components/Contract Combinations.....569

26.09 Lease Modifications and Terminations 570

26.10 Subleases and Leaseback Transactions 571

26.11 Intra-Entity Leases.....572

26.12 Leases Between Related Parties.....572

26.13 Examples 573

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 26: Leases

Introduction

Prior accounting and reporting standards classified leases as being either an operating or a capital lease. That guidance considered a lease to be a capital lease if it met any of the criteria in paragraphs 212 – 215 of Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 62, as amended. In the case of capital leases, the lessee would report a capital asset and a long-term liability, which would be equal to the present value of the future lease payments. In the case of operating leases however, no long-term liabilities, long-term receivables, or capital assets were reported at the inception of the lease. Any payments made or received related to operating leases were reported each year as expenses/expenditures and revenues, respectively.

This methodology allowed a lease to be structured in a manner that avoided reporting the economic substance of the transaction. In other words, a long-term liability and related asset that resulted from the lease transaction were not being reported. Due to the extensive unreported liabilities for future operating lease payments, the GASB determined that financial reports needed to capture related long-term liabilities and assets not previously reported, aligning the accounting and reporting of lease transactions more closely with their economic substance.

To achieve this goal, the GASB issued Statement No. 87, *Leases*, as amended, which provides guidance for lease contracts for nonfinancial assets — including vehicles, heavy equipment, and buildings — but excludes nonexchange transactions, including donated assets, and leases of intangible assets (such as patents and software licenses). Once the provisions of GASB Statement No. 87 became effective, the previous distinction between operating and capital leases and the associated lease terminology was eliminated and therefore no longer applicable. The provisions of GASB Statement No. 87, as amended, have been incorporated into GASB Cod. Sec. L20 (Section L20) and are effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2021 and all reporting periods thereafter.

To assist local government entities with implementing the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. L20 (Section L20) the State Controller's Office (SCO) has compiled the following suggested preliminary steps.

Suggested Implementation Steps (nine total):

- **Step 1:** Identify all leases (e.g., rental contracts, contractual arrangements, etc.) and calculate the remaining life for each one.
- **Step 2:** Verify if the leases identified in Step 1 meet the definition of a Lease according to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.102 (Section L20, paragraph .102).
- **Step 3:** Verify the Lease Term for each lease identified in Step 2, and if applicable, confirm that it meets the value threshold for reporting as a lease.

- **Step 4:** Determine the lease liability (Lessor) and the lease asset (Lessee) for each lease, measured at present value.
- **Step 5:** Determine the value of the lease receivable and the deferred inflows of resources (Lessor), measured at present value.
- **Step 6:** Determine if there are multiple components within each lease that will need to be reported separately.
- **Step 7:** Identify those leases that may need to be modified or are close to terminating.
- **Step 8:** Identify any sublease, sale-leaseback or lease-lease back type contracts.
- **Step 9:** Use the following guidance for entering the full value of the future lease payments in the appropriate accounting records.

Foundational Guidance

26.01 Definition, Scope, and Applicability

With the exception of short-term leases, the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. L20 (Section L20) are based on the foundational principle that leases are financings of the right to use an underlying asset. Going forward, all leases will now be defined as “a contract that conveys control of the right to use another entity’s nonfinancial asset (the underlying asset) as specified in the contract for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.” Contracts for services are excluded from this new definition, except for those contracts that contain both a lease component and a service component.

In order to determine whether or not a contract conveys control of the right to use the underlying asset, local governments should evaluate if the contract has both:

- The right to obtain the present service capacity from use of the underlying asset as specified in the contract; and
- The right to determine the nature and manner of use of the underlying asset as specified in the contract.

The new definition for a lease includes contracts that are not explicitly identified as leases, but may now meet the definition of a lease. Governments should, therefore, evaluate all of their lease contracts based on the facts and circumstances of the lease in the period of implementation and not the inception of the lease.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.106 (Section L20, paragraph .106), the definition of a lease does not apply to the following seven situations:

- 1) Leases of intangible assets (exceptions apply).
- 2) Leases of biological assets (e.g., timber, living plants, and living animals).
- 3) Leases of inventory.
- 4) Leases where the asset is financed with outstanding conduit debt (exceptions apply).
- 5) Supply contracts (e.g., power purchase agreements).
- 6) Public-private and public-public partnerships (exceptions apply)

7) Contracts that fall within the scope of Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements

Short-Term Leases

According to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.116 (Section L20, paragraph .116), a short-term lease is defined as “a lease that, at the commencement of the lease term, has a maximum possible term under the lease contract of 12 months (or less), including any options to extend, regardless of their probability of being exercised.”

A lease that was previously determined to be short term and has been modified to extend the initial maximum possible term under the lease contract, should be reassessed from the inception of the lease. If the reassessed maximum possible term is greater than 12 months, the lease should no longer be considered a short-term lease. Leases reclassified from a short-term lease should be assessed beginning at the date of the modification for purposes of measuring the lease receivable or lease liability.

Local government entities should report payments on short-term leases (lessee) as outflows of resources (e.g., expense/expenditure) and report lease payments received (lessor) concerning short-term leases as inflows of resources (e.g., revenue), based on the payment provisions of the lease contract.

A lessee should recognize an asset if rental payments are made in advance or a liability if rental payments that are due will be made after the reporting period. The lessee should not recognize an outflow of resources during any rent holiday period (e.g., one or more months free).

Lessors should recognize a liability when payments are received in advance or an asset if rental payments are due to be received after the reporting period.

26.02 Lease Term and Lease Thresholds

In order to determine the present value of the lease payments, local government entities need to first calculate the lease term. The lease term is the period during which a lessee has a noncancelable right to use an underlying asset, plus any time period option where it is reasonably certain the time period option will be exercised (extended or terminated).

A termination option is an unconditional right that exists within the contract. Any provision that gives the lessee or lessor the right to terminate the lease only in certain circumstances or upon the occurrence of certain events, should not be considered an option to terminate the lease for purposes of determining the lease term. If a lessee has the option to purchase the underlying asset during the lease term and the contract does not transfer ownership that is required to be reported, then the lease term should exclude the period (if any) after the date at which the purchase option is reasonably certain to be exercised.

Periods for which both the lessee and lessor have an option to terminate the lease without permission from the other party (or if both parties must agree to extend) are considered cancellable periods and are excluded from the lease term. An example of this would be a rolling month-to-month lease as it would not be enforceable if both the lessee and lessor have an option to terminate and, therefore could cancel the lease at any time.

Fiscal funding or cancellation clauses may affect the lease term if it is not reasonably certain that the clause will be exercised.

For example, assume that a county enters into a lease contract to obtain equipment and the contract is for 60 months with an option to extend for an additional 24 months (84 months). The county is uncertain whether it will extend the lease (an additional 24 months). Since the county is unsure about extending the lease (an additional 24 months), the lease term is 60 months as this is deemed to be the noncancellable period.

Similar to capital asset threshold policies, government entities may develop policies that specify thresholds for when identifying immaterial lease assets that should be expensed. When establishing these policies, government entities should specify amounts that they consider to be significant, individually or in the aggregate.

Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities

The following tables summarize the roles and responsibilities of the lessee and lessor during initial and subsequent reporting. Detailed guidance on this topic is provided in Chapter 26.03, *Lessee* and Chapter 26.04, *Lessor*.

Initial Reporting

ROLE	ASSETS	LIABILITY	DEFERRED INFLOW
Lessee	Report an intangible lease asset (right to use underlying asset), which is the value of the lease liability plus prepayments and initial direct costs that are ancillary to place asset in use.	Report the present value of future lease payments, which includes fixed payments, variable payments based on an index or rate, reasonably certain residual guarantees, etc.	N/A
Lessor	Report a lease receivable, which generally includes the same items as the lessee's liability. Also, need to continue to report the leased asset.	N/A	The deferred inflow would be equal to the lease receivable plus any cash received up front that relates to a future period.

Note: A lease contract may allow for the transfer ownership to the lessee at the end of the lease term. For additional guidance on transfer of ownership, refer to the *Exceptions and Special Circumstances* section, beginning with section 26.05, *Transfer of Ownership*.

Subsequent Reporting

ROLE	ASSETS	LIABILITY	DEFERRED INFLOW
Lessee	Amortize the intangible lease asset over the shorter of either the useful life or the lease term.	Reduce the liability by the lease payments, less any amount for interest expense.	N/A
Lessor	Depreciate the leased asset, unless indefinite life or it is required to be returned in its original or enhanced condition.	N/A	Recognize revenue over the lease term in a systematic and rational manner.

26.03 Lessee

Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

The following guidance applies only to financial statements that are prepared using the full accrual basis (economic resources measurement focus) and, if applicable, to financial statements prepared using the modified accrual basis (current resources measurement focus).

At the commencement of the lease term, the lessee should recognize a lease liability and a lease asset. The lease liability should be measured at the present value of lease payments expected to be made during the lease term. If required by a lease, the measurement should include, among other items, any fixed payments, variable payments dependent on an index or a rate (e.g., consumer price index or market interest rate), the exercise price of a purchase option (exceptions apply), payments for penalties for terminating the lease (exceptions apply), and any lease incentives receivable from the lessor.

The lessee should remeasure the lease liability at subsequent financial reporting dates if one or more of the following changes has occurred at or before that financial reporting date. They include changes in the:

- lease term;
- conditions that could impact the payment of the residual value guarantee;
- purchasing options,
- payment options pertaining to the lease liability;
- interest rate the lessor charges the lessee (if used as the initial discount rate); or
- variable payments (e.g., variable payments made to lessor now treated as fixed payments)

If the lease liability has changed due to the factors identified in the preceding paragraph, it may require the index or rate used to determine variable payments to be reevaluated provided the change in the index or rate is expected to affect the lease liability significantly.

A lease liability should not be remeasured solely due to a change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments. The lessee should also update the discount rate as part of remeasuring the lease liability if (1) there is change in lease term or (2) purchasing option conditions have changed from reasonably certain to not reasonably certain, or vice versa.

A lease liability should not be remeasured, nor should the discount rate be reassessed, solely due to a change in the lessee's incremental borrowing rate. Initially the measurement of the lease asset amount should include the sum of the initial measurement of the lease liability, any lease payments made to the lessor at or before the commencement of the lease term (less any lease incentives), and any initial direct costs necessary to place the lease asset into service. The lease asset should be amortized in a systematic and rational manner over the shorter of the lease term or useful life of the lease asset.

The notes to the financial statements should include, among other requirements, a general description of the leasing arrangements, the total amount of lease assets recognized, the amount of lease assets by major classes of underlying assets disclosed separately from other capital assets, principal and interest requirements to maturity, and other outflows of resources not previously included in the measurement of lease liability. In addition, a lessee should provide relevant disclosures pertaining to sublease transactions, sale-leaseback transactions and lease-leaseback transactions. If a lessee receives lease incentives from the lessor, then the lessee should adjust its lease liability accordingly. For additional information regarding note disclosures pertaining to lessees, local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.137 – .139 (Section L20, paragraphs .137 – .139).

Modified Accrual Basis (Current Resources Management Focus)

The following guidance should be applied only to financial statements that are prepared using the modified accrual basis (current resources measurement focus).

The lease should be accounted for and reported on a basis consistent with governmental fund accounting principles, if lease payments are expected to be paid from general government resources. The lessee should report an expenditure and other financing source in the period the lease is initially recognized. The lease expenditure and other financing source should be measured at the present value of lease payments expected to be made during the lease term.

The notes to the financial statements should include, among other requirements, a general description of the leasing arrangements, the total amount of lease assets recognized, the amount of lease assets by major classes of underlying assets (disclosed separately from other capital assets), principal and interest requirements, and other outflows of resources not previously included in the measurement of the lease liability. If a lessee receives lease incentives from the lessor, the lessee should adjust its lease liability accordingly. In addition, a lessee should provide relevant disclosures pertaining to sublease transactions, sale-leaseback transactions and lease-leaseback transactions if applicable. A lessee is not required to disclose collateral pledged as security for a leased asset provided the collateral is solely the asset underlying the lease.

26.04 Lessor

Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

The following guidance applies only to financial statements that are prepared using the full accrual basis (economic resources measurement focus) and, if applicable, to financial statements prepared using the modified accrual basis (current resources measurement focus).

At the commencement of the lease term, the lessor should recognize a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources, exceptions apply (e.g., short-term lease). Any initial direct costs incurred by the lessor should be reported as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) for the period.

The lease receivable should be measured at the present value of lease payments expected to be received during the lease term, less any provision for estimated uncollectible amounts. If required by a lease, the measurement should include, among other items, any fixed payments, variable payments dependent on an index or a rate (e.g., consumer price index or market interest rate), residual value guarantee payments that are fixed in substance, and any lease incentives payable to the lessee.

The lessor should remeasure the lease receivable at subsequent financial reporting dates if one or more of the following changes has occurred at or before that financial reporting date. They include the following:

- There is a change in lease term.
- Interest rate the lessor charges the lessee has changed.
- Variable payments by the lessee that were not part of the initial lease receivable calculation now meets the criteria to be incorporated the lease receivable calculation (e.g., variable payments now become fixed payments).

If the lease receivable has changed due to the factors identified in the preceding paragraph, it may require the index or rate used to determine variable payments to be reevaluated provided the change in the index or rate is expected to affect the lease receivable significantly. A lease receivable should not be remeasured solely due to a change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments.

The lessor should update the discount rate as part of remeasuring the lease receivable if (1) there is change in the lease term or (2) there is a change in the interest rate the lessor charges the lessee.

The deferred inflow of resources is the amount of the initial measurement of the lease receivable, plus any lease payments received from the lessee at or before the commencement of the lease that relate to future periods, less any lease incentives paid to, or on behalf of, the lessee at or before the commencement of the lease term. The lessor should subsequently recognize the deferred inflow of resources as inflows of resources (e.g., revenues) in a systematic and rational manner over the term of the lease.

The notes to the financial statements should include, among other requirements, a general description of the leasing arrangements (e.g., terms, conditions, termination options) and the total amount of inflows of resources recognized in the reporting period from leases (e.g., lease revenue, interest, variable payments).

If applicable, the lessor should also disclose information on leases of assets that are investments, subleases, sale-lease backs, lease-leasebacks, and regulated assets. Should the lessor offer lease incentives to the lessee, the lessor should adjust its lease receivable accordingly.

For additional information regarding note disclosures pertaining to lessors, local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.157 – .160 (Section L20, paragraphs .157 – .160).

Note: A lessor should continue to depreciate the asset during the lease term, except for when the lease contract requires the lessee to return the asset in its original or enhanced condition.

Modified Accrual Basis (Current Resources Measurement Focus)

The following guidance should be applied only to financial statements that are prepared using the modified accrual basis (current resources measurement focus).

In financial statements that are prepared using the current financial resources measurement focus, the lessor should recognize a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources to account for the lease. The deferred inflow of resources should be measured at the initial value of the lease receivable, plus the amount of any lease payments received at or before the commencement of the lease term that relate to future periods. Subsequently the lessor should recognize the deferred inflow of resources as inflows of resources (e.g., revenue), if available, in a systematic and rational manner over the term of the lease.

The notes to the financial statements should include, among other requirements, a general description of the leasing arrangements (e.g., terms, conditions, and termination options) and the total amount of inflows of resources recognized in the reporting period from leases (e.g., lease revenue, interest, and variable payments).

If applicable, the lessor should also disclose information on leases of assets that are investments, subleases, sale-leasebacks, lease-lease backs, and regulated leases. Should the lessor offer lease incentives to the lessee, the lessor should adjust its lease receivable accordingly.

Exceptions and Special Circumstances

26.05 Transfer of Ownership

A lease should be reported as a financed purchase of the underlying asset by the lessee or sale of the asset by the lessor, if ownership of the underlying asset transfers to the lessee by the end of the contract, and the lease does not contain any termination options (lease may contain a fiscal funding or cancellation clause that is not reasonably certain of being exercised). For this purpose, provisions that allow for termination of a lease due to the purchase of the underlying asset, payment of all monies due, or default on payments, are not considered termination options.

Local government entities should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.119 (Section L20, paragraph .119) for additional information on the accounting and reporting requirements for contracts that transfer ownership.

26.06 Countywide Cost Allocation Plans — Allowability of Leases

Although the guidance presented in this section is primarily applicable to California counties, it may be useful for dependent special districts whose affairs and finances are under the control of a county's board of supervisors.

For reporting in California Countywide Cost Allocation Plans (CCAPs), counties have the option to include the implementation costs for Right-to-Use (RTU) leases and Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITAs). However, the claiming costs must be done via cash basis in accordance with County Fiscal Letter 20/21-106E.

California counties can refer to section 3340 of the State Controller's Office (SCO), *Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties* (Handbook) for more detailed information on this topic. The Handbook is accessible on the Countywide Cost Allocation Plans webpage on the SCO website at https://sco.ca.gov/ard_county_cost_allocation.html

26.07 Lease Incentives

According to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.161 (Section L20, paragraph .161):

Lease incentives are (a) payments made to, or on behalf of, the lessee, for which the lessee has a right of offset with its obligation to the lessor, or (b) other concessions granted to the lessee. A lease incentive is equivalent to a rebate or discount and includes an assumption of, or an agreement to pay, a lessee's preexisting lease obligations to a third party, other reimbursements of lessee costs, rent holidays, and reductions of interest or principal changes by the lessor.

Pursuant to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. L20.162 (Section L20, paragraph .162), lease incentives reduce the amount the lessee is required to pay for a lease. Lease incentives made at or before the commencement of a lease term should be included in the initial measurement by directly reducing the amount of the lease asset. The lease liability should be adjusted accordingly.

Lease incentives made after the commencement of the lease term should be included in the initial measurement and any remeasurement of the lease asset/liability by the lessee only if the lease incentive is fixed or fixed in substance.

26.08 Leases with Multiple Components/Contract Combinations

Contract Combinations

Contracts entered into at or near the same time with the same party should be considered part of the same contract if either of the following conditions are met:

- a) The contracts were entered into as a package deal with a single objective; or
- b) The amount paid for one contract is dependent upon the price or performance of another contract (in the same package deal).

Contracts with Multiple Components

If a lessee or lessor enters into a contract that contains both a lease component (e.g., right to use a building) and a nonlease component (e.g., maintenance service contract), the local government entity should account for these contracts separately.

If a lease involves multiple underlying assets with different lease terms, the lessee and lessor should account for each underlying asset as a separate lease contract. For disclosure purposes, each underlying asset should be treated as a separate lease component if the assets belong to different major classes.

According to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.166 (Section L20, paragraph .166):

To allocate the contract price to the different components, lessees and lessors first should use any prices for individual components that are included in the contract, as long as the price allocation does not appear to be unreasonable based on the terms of the contract and professional judgment, maximizing the use of observable information; for example, using readily available observable stand-alone prices. Stand-alone prices are those that would be paid or received if the same or similar assets were leased individually or if the same or similar nonlease components (such as services) were contracted individually.

Some contracts provide discounts for bundling multiple leases or lease and nonlease components together in one contract. Those discounts may be taken into account when determining whether individual component prices do not appear to be unreasonable. For example, if the individual component prices are each discounted by the same percentage from normal market prices, the discount included in those component prices would not appear to be unreasonable.

If the contract does not break down the prices for individual lease components, both the lessee and the lessor should use professional judgement when setting the contract price for these components. In the event where it is impossible to set prices for individual lease components, the components should be treated as a single lease unit. The accounting for the single lease unit should be based on the primary lease component within that unit.

26.09 Lease Modifications and Terminations

Lease contracts may be amended/modified while the contract is in effect. Examples of amendments include a change in lease terms, a change in the right to use the underlying asset, or a change in lease payments. An amendment is considered a modification of the provisions of a lease contract, unless the lessee's right to use the underlying asset decreases. If the amendment of a lease contract reduces the lessee's right to use an underlying asset — the amendment should either be treated as a partial or a full lease termination.

Lease Modifications

The lessee and lessor should treat lease modifications as a separate lease contract if both of the following conditions are met:

- a) The lease modification provides the lessee additional lease assets that were not part of the additional lease contract; and

- b) The increase in lease payments for additional lease payments does not appear to be unreasonable.

If variable rate payments are based on the interbank offered rate (IBOR), an amendment to the lease contract solely to replace the IBOR rate with another rate or adding/changing fallback provisions related to the new rate is not a lease modification. A lease modification that does not qualify as a separate lease should be accounted for by remeasuring the lease liability and an adjustment of the related lease asset by the lessee.

The lessor would remeasure the lease receivable and adjust the related deferred inflows of resources. For additional information on accounting and reporting requirements for lease modifications, local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.171 – .177 (Section L20, paragraphs .171 – .177).

Lease Terminations

If a lease contract reduces the lessee's right to use the lease asset, it could result in a partial or full lease termination. In this case, the lessee would reduce the carrying values of the lease liability and the lease asset, while the lessor would reduce the lease receivable and deferred inflows of resources. For additional information on accounting and reporting requirements for lease terminations, local governments should refer to GASB Cod. Sec L20.178 – .180 (Section L20, paragraphs .178 – .180).

26.10 Subleases and Leaseback Transactions

Subleases

A sublease involves three parties:

- The original lessor;
- The original lessee (who also is the lessor in the sublease); and
- The new lessee.

The original lessor should continue applying the general lessor guidance (as previously discussed in this chapter). The original lessee should account for the original lease and the sublease as two separate transactions (as a lessee and a lessor, respectively) and disclose them separately in their financial statements. The new lessee should follow the general lessee guidance discussed previously in this chapter.

Sale-Leaseback

A sale-leaseback transaction involves the sale of an underlying asset by the owner and a lease of the property back to the seller (original owner). If the sale-leaseback transaction does not include a qualifying sale, it should be accounted for as a borrowing activity by the seller (lessee) and a lending activity by the buyer (lessor).

The sale and the lease portions of a sale-leaseback transaction should be accounted for in financial statements prepared using full accrual (economic resources measurement focus) separately. Any difference between the carrying value of the capital asset that was sold and the

net proceeds from the sale should be reported as a deferred inflow of resources or a deferred outflow of resources and subsequently recognized over the term of the lease.

However if the lease portion of a sale-lease back transaction qualifies as a short-term lease, any differences between the carrying value of the asset sold and the net proceeds from the sale should be recognized immediately.

A seller-lessee should disclose the terms and conditions of the sale-leaseback transactions in addition to the requirements discussed in section 26.03, *Lessee*. A buyer-lessor should provide the disclosures required of a lessor in section 26.04, *Lessor*.

Lease-Leaseback Transactions

In a lease-leaseback transaction, an asset is leased by one party (first party) to another party and then leased back to the first party. A lease-leaseback transaction should be accounted for as a net transaction. Both parties to a lease-leaseback transaction should disclose the amounts of the lease and the leaseback separately in the notes to financial statements. An example of this type of transaction is where a county government leases land to a city government for an office building. The city government then leases one of the floors of that building back to the county government.

26.11 Intra-Entity Leases

According to GASB Cod. Sec. L20.189 (Section L20, paragraph .189), when the lessee or lessor is included as a blended component unit of the primary government, the reporting requirements outlined under the provisions of GASB Codification Sec. L20 (Section L20) do not apply. When the lessor is a blended component unit, the debt and assets of the lessor should be reported as if they were the primary government's debt and assets.

Pursuant to the provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. L20.190 (Section L20, paragraph .190), lease arrangements between the primary government and discretely presented component units (or between discretely presented component units) should be treated in the same manner as any other lease under the provisions of GASB Codification Sec. L20 (Section L20). Any related receivables and payables should not be combined with other amounts due to or due from discretely presented component units or with lease receivables and payables with organizations outside the reporting entity.

26.12 Leases Between Related Parties

In the separate financial statements of the related parties, the classification and accounting should be the same as for similar leases between unrelated parties, except in cases in which it is clear that the terms of the transaction have been significantly affected by the fact that the lessee and lessor are related.

In such cases, the classification and accounting should be modified as necessary to recognize the substance of the transaction rather than merely its legal form. The nature and extent of leasing transactions with related parties should be disclosed.

In financial statements for which an interest in an investee is accounted for using the equity method, any inflow of resources or outflow of resources (e.g., gain or loss) on a leasing transaction with the related party should be accounted for in accordance with GASB Cod.

Sec. I50.109 – .116 (Section I50, paragraphs .109 – .116) and GASB Cod. Sec. I50.146 (Section I50, paragraph .146).

26.13 Examples

The following examples are for illustrative purposes only and is not intended to modify or limit the requirements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. Existing standards may require disclosures in addition to those illustrated. Local government entities should carefully consider their own unique circumstances in determining the most appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.

Short-Term Lease Example (12 Months or Less)

Initial Assumptions

- City of Andromeda (Lessee) leases a piece of equipment (excavator) from the County of Orion (Lessor) for 12 months on January 1, 20X1.
- Excavator has an economic life of five years.
- Lease requires monthly payments of \$5,000 be made at the end of each month.
- Lease agreement conveys no transfer of ownership at the end of the lease term, there are no cancellation options, and there are no potential extensions to the lease term.

Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries to record the rent payment (Lessee) made and rent revenue (Lessor) received on January 31, 20X1 for the first month would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Rent Expense	DR: \$5,000	
Cash		CR: \$5,000
(To record expense for lease of equipment.)		

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,000	
Rent Revenue		CR: \$5,000
(To record revenue received for lease of equipment.)		

Modified Accrual Basis (Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries to record the rent payment (Lessee) made and rent revenue (Lessor) received on January 31, 20X1 for the first month would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Rent Expenditures	DR: \$5,000	
Cash/Vouchers Payable (if paid by other fund)		CR: \$5,000
(To record expenditure for lease of equipment.)		

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$5,000	
Rent Revenue		CR: \$5,000
(To record revenue received for lease of equipment.)		

Lease Example (Greater than 12 Months)

Initial Assumptions

- City of Andromeda (Lessee) agrees to a building lease with the County of Orion (Lessor)
- Lease starts on January 1, 20X1 and is for five years
- Annual payment of \$12,000 is due at the end of each year
- Lease goes to a month-to-month basis after five years until the building is returned
- Lease agreement conveys no transfer of ownership at the end of the lease term
- During month-to-month period the rate can be adjusted upward based on Consumer Price Index (CPI) with 30 days' notice to Lessee (City of Andromeda)
- Lessee (City of Andromeda) pays the Lessor (County of Orion) \$2,000 for initial set-up costs
- Implicit Interest rate, provided by the Lessor (County of Orion), is 5%

Present Value (PV) Calculations for Lessee (City of Andromeda)

Present value of \$12,000 annual payments for 5 years is calculated to be \$51,954 using the following criteria (using present value function in Excel):

- Implicit Interest Rate (R) = 5% per year
- Number of Periods (NPer) = 5
- Annual Payment (Pmt) = \$12,000
- Future Value (FV) = 0
- Type = 1 (if payments are made at beginning of period); 0 (if made at the end of the period)

The total intangible asset and lease liability is calculated to be \$53,954:

- \$51,954 — present value expected payments to be made by the lessee to the lessor; and
- \$2,000 initial set-up costs.

Payment Calculations

- Divide the \$12,000 annual payment into interest and principal
- Total amounts for the first year are as follows:

Redemption of principal	\$9,402
Interest	<u>2,598</u>
Total	\$12,000 (excludes the \$2,000 set-up payment)

Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries made on January 1, 20X1 to record the lease asset/liability (Lessee), lease receivable/deferred inflow of resources (Lessor), and the associated set-up costs (Lessee/Lessor) would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Leased Buildings	DR: \$53,954	
Lease Liability		CR: \$53,954
(To record the capital asset and related liability from lease or temporary building.)		

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Lease Receivable	DR: \$53,954	
Deferred Inflow of Resources		CR: \$53,954
(To record the receivable and related deferred inflow from leasing.)		

The journal entries to record the first year payment made on December 31, 20X1 would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Lease Liability	DR: \$9,402	
Interest Expense	2,598	
Cash		CR: \$12,000
(To record the <u>first year</u> lease payment on December 31, 20X1.)		

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization — Leased Buildings	DR: \$10,791	
Accumulated Amortization		CR: \$10,791
(To record amortization of the leased building (\$53,954/5 years = \$10,791.)		

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$12,000	
Lease Receivable		CR: \$9,402
Interest Income		2,598

(To record receipt of the first year lease payment on December 31, 20X1.)

County of Orion (Lessor) — Continued

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$9,402	
Lease Revenue		CR: \$9,402

(To record revenue received from lease of the building.)

Modified Accrual Basis (Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries made on January 1, 20X1 to record the capital expenditure/related financing (Lessee), lease receivable/deferred inflow of resources (Lessor), and the associated set-up costs (Lessee/Lessor) would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure — Leased Buildings	DR: \$53,954	
Other Financing Sources — Lease Financing		CR: \$53,954

(To record the lease agreement at the present value of the minimum lease payments.)

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Lease Receivable	DR: \$53,954	
Deferred Inflow of Resources		CR: \$53,954

(To record the receivable and related deferred inflow from leasing.)

The journal entries to record the first year payment made on December 31, 20X1 would be as shown:

City of Andromeda (Lessee)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure — Lease Financing Principle	DR: \$9,402	
Expenditure — Interest	2,598	
Cash		CR: \$12,000

(To record the first year lease payment on December 31, 20X1.)

County of Orion (Lessor)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$12,000	
Lease Receivable		CR: \$9,402
Interest Income		2,598

(To record receipt of the first year lease payment on December 31, 20X1.)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Deferred Inflow of Resources	DR: \$9,402	
Lease Revenue		CR: \$9,402

(To record revenue received from lease of the building.)

Contracts That Transfer Ownership

Initial Assumptions

- City of Yorkshire agrees to lease office equipment from ABC Ltd. (private sector entity) with a fair value of \$75,000. The lease conveys ownership of equipment to the City of Yorkshire at the end of the lease term.
- Lease starts on January 1, 20X1 and is for three years.
- Office equipment has a useful life of 10 years with no residual value.
- Annual payment of \$27,540 is due at the end of each year.
- Implicit Interest rate is 5%.
- City of Yorkshire intends to use the office equipment throughout its useful life (10 years) and will depreciate it using the straight-line method.
- The City is reasonably certain that it will take ownership of the office equipment in three years.

Note: According to provisions outlined in GASB Cod. Sec. L20.116 (Section L20, paragraph .116), the transactions between the City of Yorkshire and ABC Ltd. should be recorded as a financed purchase and not a lease.

Amortization Schedule

Date	Payments	Interest	Principal	Outstanding Balance
01/01/X1				\$ 75,000
12/31/X1	\$ 27,540	\$ 3,750	\$ 23,790	51,208
12/31/X2	27,540	2,560	24,980	26,230
12/31/X3	27,540	1,310	26,230	-
Totals	\$ 82,620	\$ 7,620	\$ 75,000	

Note: Interest is calculated to be 5% on Outstanding Balance. For example in year 12/31/X1, interest is \$3,750 (5% of \$75,000).

Full Accrual Basis (Economic Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries made on January 1, 20X1 would be as shown:

City of Yorkshire

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Office Equipment	DR: \$75,000	
Accounts Payable — ABC Ltd.		CR: \$75,000

(To record the finance purchase of office equipment from ABC Ltd on January 1, 20X1.)

ABC Ltd. (Private Sector Entity)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Receivable — City of Yorkshire	DR: \$75,000	
Sale — Office Equipment		CR: \$75,000

(To record the receivable and sale of office equipment to the City of Yorkshire on January 1, 20X1)

The journal entries made on December 31, 20X1 would be as follows:

City of Yorkshire

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Accounts Payable — ABC Ltd.	DR: \$23,790	
Interest Expense	3,750	
Cash		CR: \$27,540

(To record the first year payment (principal and interest) on December 31, 20X1.)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Depreciation — Office Equipment	DR: \$7,500	
Accumulated Depreciation		CR: \$7,500

(To record depreciation of the office equipment using straight-line method (\$75,000/10 years = \$7,500.)

ABC Ltd. (Private Sector Entity)

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Cash	DR: \$27,540	
Receivable — City of Yorkshire		CR: \$23,790
Interest Revenue		3,750
(To record the receivable and interest revenue from City of Yorkshire on December 31, 20X1)		

Modified Accrual Basis (Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

The journal entries made on January 1, 20X1 would be as shown:

City of Yorkshire

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure — Office Equipment	DR: \$75,000	
Other Financing Source — ABC Ltd.		CR: \$75,000
(To record the finance purchase of office equipment from ABC Ltd. on January 1, 20X1)		

The journal entries made on December 31, 20X1 would be as follows:

City of Yorkshire

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditure — ABC Ltd.	DR: \$23,790	
Expenditure — Interest	3,750	
Cash		CR: \$27,540
(To record the <u>first year</u> payment on December 31, 20X1.)		

Note:

- Under modified accrual basis of accounting the City of Yorkshire will not be recording any depreciation in the governmental fund financial statements.
- There will be no journal entries under modified accrual basis of accounting done by ABC Ltd. as private sector entities generally follow full-accrual basis of accounting.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 27: Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements

Chapter Contents

Introduction 583

Foundational Guidance.....583

27.01 SBITA Definition, Scope, and Applicability 583

27.02 Subscription Term.....584

SBITA Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities 586

27.03 Subscription Liability 586

27.04 Subscription Asset 588

SBITA Exceptions and Special Circumstances 591

27.05 Incentives Provided by a SBITA Vendor 591

27.06 Contracts with Multiple Components 591

27.07 SBITA Modifications and Terminations 592

27.08 Financial Statements (Prepared Using Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus).....593

27.09 Example – Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA) 594

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Chapter 27: Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements

Introduction

In the past few years, it has become common for governments to enter into subscription-based information technology arrangements (SBITAs) to use vendor-provided information technology (IT). SBITAs provide governments with access to vendors' IT software and associated tangible capital assets for subscription payments without granting governments perpetual license or title to the IT software and associated tangible capital assets. Guidelines concerning the accounting and reporting requirements for SBITAs have been incorporated into GASB Statement No. 96, *Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements*, which have subsequently been incorporated into GASB Cod. Sec. S80 (Section S80). Prior to the issuance of GASB Statement No. 96, there was no accounting or financial reporting guidance specifically for SBITAs.

The main objective of GASB Cod. Sec. S80 (Section S80) is to better meet the information needs of financial statement users by establishing uniform accounting and financial reporting requirements for SBITAs, improving the comparability of financial statements among governments that have entered into SBITAs, and to enhance the understandability, reliability, relevance, and consistency of information about SBITAs.

Foundational Guidance

27.01 SBITA Definition, Scope, and Applicability

The requirements of GASB Cod. Sec. S80 (Section S80) are applicable to the financial statements of all state and local governments concerning the accounting and financial reporting of *Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements* (SBITAs).

The provisions of GASB Cod. Sec. S80 (Section S80) do not apply to:

- Contracts that convey control of the right to use another party's combination of IT software and tangible capital assets that meet the definition of a lease in GASB Cod. Sec. L20 (Section L20).
- Governments that provide the right to use their IT software and associated tangible capital assets to other entities through SBITAs.
- Contracts that meet the definition of a PPP as defined in GASB Cod. Sec. P90 (Section P90).
- Licensing arrangements that provide a perpetual license to governments to use a vendor's computer software, which are subject to the requirements for intangible assets in GASB Cod. Sec. 1400 (Section 1400).

As defined in GASB Cod. Sec. S80.103 (Section S80, paragraph .103), a SBITA is:

A contract that conveys control of the right to use another party's (a SBITA vendor's) IT software, alone or in combination with tangible capital assets (the underlying IT assets), as specified in the contract for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

To determine whether a contract conveys control of the right to use the underlying IT assets, a government should assess whether it has both:

- The right to obtain the present service capacity from use of the underlying IT assets as specified in the contract; and
- The right to determine the nature and manner of use of the underlying IT assets as specified in the contract.

SBITAs include contracts (although not explicitly identified as a SBITA) that meet the definition of a SBITA as defined earlier in this chapter section. That definition excludes contracts that solely provide IT support services, but includes contracts that contain both a right-to-use IT asset component and an IT support services component.

27.02 Subscription Term

The subscription term is the period during which a government entity has a noncancelable right to use the underlying IT assets (the noncancelable period), in addition to the following periods (if applicable):

- a) Periods covered by a government's option to extend the SBITA if it is reasonably certain, based on all relevant factors, that the government will exercise that option.
- b) Periods covered by a government's option to terminate the SBITA if it is reasonably certain, based on all relevant factors, that the government will not exercise that option.
- c) Periods covered by a SBITA vendor's option to extend the SBITA if it is reasonably certain, based on all relevant factors, that the SBITA vendor will exercise that option.
- d) Periods covered by a SBITA vendor's option to terminate the SBITA if it is reasonably certain, based on all relevant factors, that the SBITA vendor will not exercise that option.

A termination option is an unconditional right that exists within the SBITA contract. Any provision that gives a party to the SBITA the right to terminate the SBITA contract only in certain circumstances or upon the occurrence of certain events, should not be considered an option to terminate the SBITA contract for purposes of determining the SBITA term. For example, provisions that allow for the termination of a SBITA due to a violation of SBITA terms and conditions (e.g., a default on payments) are not considered options to terminate the SBITA.

Periods for which both the local government and the SBITA vendor have an option to terminate the SBITA without permission from the other party (or if both parties must agree to extend) are considered cancellable periods and are excluded from the subscription term. An example of this would be a rolling month-to-month SBITA as it would not be enforceable if both the local government and the SBITA vendor have an option to terminate and, therefore could cancel the lease at any time.

A fiscal funding or cancellation clause allows a government to cancel a SBITA, typically on an annual basis, if the government does not appropriate funds for the subscription payments. This type of clause should affect the subscription term only if it is reasonably certain that the clause will be exercised.

At the beginning of the subscription term, a government entity should assess all factors relevant to the likelihood that the government or the SBITA vendor will exercise the options identified previously in this chapter section, whether those factors are contract based, underlying IT asset based, market based, or government specific. The assessment often requires consideration of a combination of interrelated factors.

Examples of factors to consider include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a) A significant economic incentive, such as contractual terms and conditions for the optional periods that are favorable compared with current market rates.
- b) A potential change in technological development that significantly affects the technology used by the underlying IT assets.
- c) A potential significant change in the government's demand for the SBITA vendor's IT assets.
- d) A significant economic disincentive, such as costs to terminate the SBITA and sign a new SBITA.
- e) The history of exercising options to extend or terminate.
- f) The extent to which the underlying IT assets in the SBITA are essential to the provision of government services.

A local government should reassess the subscription term only if one or more of the following occur:

- a) The government or SBITA vendor elects to exercise an option even though it was previously determined that it was reasonably certain that the government or SBITA vendor would not exercise that option.
- b) The government or SBITA vendor elects not to exercise an option even though it was previously determined that it was reasonably certain that the government or SBITA vendor would exercise that option.
- c) An event specified in the SBITA contract that requires an extension or termination of the SBITA takes place.

Short-Term SBITAs

A short-term SBITA is a SBITA that, at the beginning of the subscription term, has a maximum possible term under the SBITA contract of 12 months (or less), including any options to extend, regardless of their probability of being exercised. As previously discussed, periods for which both the government and the SBITA vendor have an option to terminate the SBITA without permission from the other party (or if both parties have to agree to extend) are cancellable periods and should be excluded from the maximum possible term.

For a SBITA that has cancellable periods, such as a rolling month-to-month or a year-to-year SBITA, the maximum possible term is the noncancelable period, including any notice periods.

A SBITA that was previously determined to be short term and has been modified to extend the initial maximum possible term under the SBITA contract, should be reassessed from the inception of the SBITA. If the reassessed maximum possible term is greater than 12 months, the SBITA should no longer be considered a short-term SBITA. Modified SBITAs that have been reclassified from a short-term SBITA should be assessed beginning at the date of the modification for purposes of measuring the subscription liability.

A local government should recognize short-term subscription payments as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) based on the payment provisions of the SBITA contract. A government should recognize an asset if subscription payments are made in advance, or a liability if subscription payments are to be made subsequent to the reporting period. A local government entity should not recognize an outflow of resources for the period for which the SBITA vendor grants the right to use the underlying IT assets to the government free of charge (e.g., one or more months free).

SBITA Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure Responsibilities

At the beginning of the subscription term, a local government should recognize a subscription liability and an intangible right-to-use asset (the subscription asset), except for short-term SBITAs provisions previously discussed. The beginning of the subscription term occurs when the initial implementation stage is completed, at which time the local government entity has obtained control of the right to use the underlying IT assets, and, therefore, the subscription asset is placed into service.

27.03 Subscription Liability

A local government entity should initially measure the subscription liability at the present value of subscription payments expected to be made during the subscription term. If required by a SBITA, measurement of the subscription liability should include the following elements:

- a) Fixed payments
- b) Variable payments that depend on an index or a rate (e.g., the Consumer Price Index or a market interest rate), measured using the index or rate as of the commencement of the subscription term.
- c) Variable payments that are fixed in substance.

- d) Payments for penalties for terminating the SBITA, if the subscription term reflects the government exercising an option to terminate the SBITA or a fiscal funding or cancellation clause.
- e) Any subscription contract incentives receivable from the SBITA vendor.
- f) Any other payments to the SBITA vendor associated with the SBITA contract that are reasonably certain of being required based on an assessment of all relevant factors.

Variable payments other than those that depend on an index or a rate, should not be included in the measurement of the subscription liability. Instead, those variable payments should be recognized as outflows of resources (e.g., expense) in the period in which the obligation for those payments is incurred. However, any component of those variable payments that is fixed in substance should be included in the measurement of the subscription liability.

In subsequent financial reporting periods, a government entity should calculate the amortization of the discount on the subscription liability and report that amount as an outflow of resources (e.g., interest expense) for those periods. Any subscription payments made should first be allocated to the accrued interest liability and then to the subscription liability, in that order.

A local government entity should remeasure the subscription liability at subsequent financial reporting dates if one or more of the following changes have occurred at or before those financial reporting dates:

- There is a change in the subscription term.
- There is a change in the estimated amounts for subscription payments already included in the measurement of the subscription liability (exceptions apply).
- There is a change in the interest rate the SBITA vendor charges the government (if used as the initial discount rate).
- A contingency, upon which some or all of the variable payments that will be made over the remainder of the subscription term are based, is resolved such that those payments now meet the criteria for measuring the subscription liability (e.g., an event occurs causing variable payments that were contingent on the performance or use of the underlying IT assets to become fixed payments for the remainder of the subscription term).

If a subscription liability is remeasured for any of the changes in the preceding list, the liability should also be adjusted for any change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments if that change in the index or rate is expected to significantly affect the amount of the liability since the previous measurement. A subscription liability should not be remeasured solely due to a change in an index or a rate used to determine variable payments.

Additionally, a local government entity should update the discount rate as part of the remeasurement if there is a change in the subscription term and that change is expected to significantly affect the amount of the subscription liability. A subscription liability should not be remeasured, nor should the discount rate be reassessed, solely for a change in a local government's incremental borrowing rate.

If the discount rate is required to be updated, the discount rate should be based on the revised interest rate the SBITA vendor charges the government at the time the discount rate is updated. If that interest rate cannot readily be determined, the government's estimated incremental borrowing rate at the time the discount rate is updated should be used.

27.04 Subscription Asset

A local government entity should initially measure the subscription asset as the sum of the following, less any SBITA vendor incentives received from the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term:

- The amount of the initial measurement of the subscription liability;
- Payments associated with the SBITA contract made to the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term (if applicable); and
- Capitalizable initial implementation costs.

Payments made prior to the beginning of the subscription term associated with the SBITA contract made to the SBITA vendor, should be reported as a prepayment (an asset). A prepayment to a SBITA vendor should be reduced by any incentives received from the same SBITA vendor before the beginning of the subscription term, if a right of offset exists. This prepayment should be reclassified as an addition to the initial measurement of the subscription asset at the commencement of the subscription term.

If the SBITA vendor incentives are greater than the SBITA vendor prepayments made to the same vendor, the difference should be reported as a liability until the commencement of the subscription term, at which time that amount should reduce the initial measurement of the subscription asset.

A subscription asset should be amortized in a systematic and rational manner over the subscription term or the useful life of the underlying IT assets, whichever is shorter. The amortization of the subscription asset should be reported as an outflow of resources (e.g., amortization expense), which may be combined with depreciation expense related to other capital assets for financial reporting purposes. Amortization should begin at the commencement of the subscription term.

Additionally, a subscription asset generally should be adjusted by the same amount as the corresponding subscription liability when that liability is remeasured. However, if that change reduces the carrying value of the subscription asset to zero, any remaining amount should be reported in the resource flows statement (e.g., a gain).

Stages of Implementation

Activities associated with a SBITA (other than a government making subscription payments to the SBITA vendor for the right to use the underlying IT assets) should be grouped into the following three stages:

- Preliminary Project Stage: Activities in this stage include the conceptual formulation and evaluation of alternatives, the determination of the existence of needed technology, and the final selection of alternatives for the SBITA.

- Initial Implementation Stage: Activities in this stage include ancillary charges related to designing the chosen path (e.g., configuration, coding, testing, and installation associated with the government's access to the underlying IT assets). Other ancillary charges necessary to place the subscription asset into service also should be included in this stage. The initial implementation stage for the SBITA is completed when the subscription asset is placed into service.
- Operation and Additional Implementation Stage: Activities in this stage include maintenance, troubleshooting, and other activities associated with the government's ongoing access to the underlying IT assets. Activities in this stage also may include additional implementation activities, that occur after the subscription asset is placed into service.

If a SBITA has more than one module and the modules are implemented at different times, the initial implementation stage for the SBITA is completed, and, therefore, the subscription asset is placed into service when initial implementation is completed for the first independently functional module or for the first set of interdependent modules, regardless of whether all remaining modules have been completely implemented. For the remaining modules of that SBITA, all additional implementation activities should be considered subsequent implementation outlays and should be accounted for accordingly.

Data conversion should be considered an activity of the initial implementation stage only to the extent that it is determined to be necessary to place the subscription asset into service. Otherwise, data conversion should be considered an activity of the operation and additional implementation stage.

Accounting for Outlays Incurred

Other than subscription payments for the right to use the underlying IT assets, outlays incurred prior to completing all of the following should be expensed as incurred:

- Determination of the specific objective of the project and the nature of the service capacity that is expected to be provided by the subscription asset.
- Demonstration of the technical or technological feasibility such that the subscription asset will provide its expected service capacity.
- Demonstration of the current intention, ability, and presence of effort to enter into a SBITA contract.

The requirements in the preceding paragraph should be considered to be completed only when both of the following occur:

- The activities noted in the preliminary project stage are completed.
- Management implicitly or explicitly authorizes and commits to funding the SBITA, at least for the current fiscal year in the case of a multiyear project.

Outlays associated with activities in the preliminary project stage should be expensed as incurred, while outlays associated with activities in the initial implementation stage generally should be capitalized as part of the subscription asset. If no subscription asset is recognized (e.g., contract is a short-term SBITA), activities in the initial implementation stage should be expensed as incurred.

Outlays in the operation and additional implementation stage that are associated with operational activities should be expensed as incurred (exceptions apply). Outlays in this stage that are associated with additional implementation activities should be accounted for accordingly.

Accounting for Certain Outlays

The activities of implementation of a SBITA, as discussed in the preceding subsection, may overlap or occur in multiple cycles. Regardless of whether a SBITA is composed of one module, more than one module implemented at the same time, or more than one module implemented at different times, the recognition guidance for outlays other than subscription payments should be applied based on the nature and timing of the activity. Although both factors should be considered, the nature of the activity should be the determining factor. Subscription payments should be accounted for in accordance with the provisions discussed in chapter sections 27.03, *Subscription Liability* and 27.04, *Subscription Asset*.

Training costs should be expensed as incurred, regardless of the stage in which they are incurred. If outlays are a result of SBITA modifications as discussed in chapter section 27.07, *SBITA Modifications and Terminations*, the outlays should be accounted for in accordance with that guidance. There may also be outlays associated with a SBITA already in operation that are incurred in addition to subscription payments. Generally, those outlays should be expensed as incurred.

However, additional outlays that are not a result of SBITA modifications but that result in either of the following, should be capitalized as an addition to an existing subscription asset:

- An increase in the functionality of the subscription asset (i.e., the subscription asset allows a local government to perform tasks that it could not previously perform with the subscription asset); or
- An increase in the efficiency of the subscription asset (i.e., an increase in the level of service provided by the subscription asset without the ability to perform additional tasks).

Impairment

The presence of impairment indicators with respect to the underlying IT assets may result in a change in the manner or duration of use of the subscription asset. Such a change in the manner or duration of use of the subscription asset may indicate that the service utility of the subscription asset is impaired.

The length of time during which a local government cannot use the underlying IT assets, or is limited to using them in a different manner, should be compared to their previously expected manner and duration of use to determine whether there is a significant decline in the service utility of the subscription asset.

If a subscription asset is impaired, the amount reported for the subscription asset should be reduced first for any change in the corresponding subscription liability. Any remaining amount should be recognized as an impairment.

SBITA Exceptions and Special Circumstances

27.05 Incentives Provided by a SBITA Vendor

Incentives provided by a SBITA vendor are either:

- payments made to, or on behalf of, a government for which the government has a right of offset with its obligation to the SBITA vendor; or
- other concessions granted to the government.

A SBITA vendor incentive is equivalent to a rebate or discount and includes an agreement to pay a local government's preexisting subscription obligations to a third party, other reimbursements of end user costs, free subscription periods, and reductions of interest or principal charges by the SBITA vendor. SBITA vendor incentives reduce the amount that a government is required to pay for a SBITA. SBITA vendor incentives that provide payments to, or on behalf of, a government at or before the commencement of a subscription term should be included in initial measurement by directly reducing the amount of the subscription asset.

SBITA vendor incentives that provide payments after the commencement of the subscription term should be factored into the present value of the subscription payments for the periods in which the incentive payments will be provided, when initially measuring the subscription liability.

Accordingly, SBITA vendor incentive payments to be provided after the commencement of the subscription term are included in the initial measurement and any remeasurement of the subscription liability if the incentive payments are fixed or fixed in substance, whereas variable or contingent incentive payments are not included.

27.06 Contracts with Multiple Components

A local government may enter into contracts that contain multiple components, such as a contract that contains both a subscription component (right to use the underlying IT assets) and a nonsubscription component, or a contract that contains multiple underlying IT asset components. If a local government does enter into a contract that contains both a subscription component and a nonsubscription component, the government should account for the subscription and nonsubscription components as separate contracts (exceptions apply).

If a SBITA involves multiple underlying IT asset components and the IT asset components have different subscription terms, the government should account for each underlying IT asset component as a separate subscription component (exceptions apply).

If multiple components are accounted for as a single SBITA, the accounting for that SBITA should be based on the primary subscription component within that SBITA. As an example, the primary subscription component's term should be used for the SBITA if those components have different terms.

Contracts that are entered into at or near the same time with the same SBITA vendor should be considered part of the same contract if either of the following criteria is met:

- The contracts are negotiated as a package with a single objective; or
- The amount of consideration to be paid in one contract depends on the price or performance of the other contract.

If multiple contracts are determined to be part of the same contract, that contract should be evaluated in accordance with the guidance for contracts containing multiple components, as discussed at the beginning of this chapter section.

27.07 SBITA Modifications and Terminations

The provisions of a SBITA contract may be amended (a change in the provisions of the SBITA contract) while the contract is in effect. Some examples of amendments to SBITA contracts include changing the contract price of the arrangement, lengthening or shortening the subscription term, adding or removing underlying IT assets, and changing the index or rate upon which variable payments depend.

An amendment should be considered a SBITA modification unless the local government's right to use the underlying IT assets decreases, in which case the amendment should be considered a partial or full SBITA termination. By contrast, exercising an existing option (e.g., an option to extend or terminate the SBITA), is subject to the guidance for remeasurement.

If variable payments of a SBITA contract depend on an interbank offered rate (IBOR), an amendment of the contract solely to replace the IBOR with another rate by either changing the rate or adding or changing fallback provisions related to the rate, is not a modification to the SBITA contract.

SBITA Modifications

A local government entity should account for an amendment during the reporting period resulting in a modification to a SBITA contract as a separate SBITA if both of the following conditions are present:

- The SBITA modification gives the government an additional subscription asset by adding access to more underlying IT assets that were not included in the original SBITA contract; and
- The increase in subscription payments for the additional subscription asset does not appear to be unreasonable based on the terms of the amended SBITA contract and professional judgment.

Unless a modification is reported as a separate SBITA, a local government should account for a SBITA modification by remeasuring the subscription liability. The subscription asset should be adjusted by the difference between the remeasured liability and the liability immediately before the SBITA modification. However, if the change reduces the carrying value of the subscription asset to zero, any remaining amount should be reported in the resource flows statement (e.g., a gain).

SBITA Terminations

A local government should account for an amendment during the reporting period resulting in a decrease in the local government's right to use the underlying IT assets (e.g., the subscription term is shortened or the underlying IT assets are reduced) as a partial or full SBITA termination. Additionally, a local government should generally account for the partial or full SBITA termination by reducing the carrying values of the subscription asset and subscription liability and recognizing a gain or loss for the difference.

27.08 Financial Statements (Prepared Using Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus)

If a SBITA is expected to be paid from general government resources, the SBITA should be accounted for and reported on a basis consistent with governmental fund accounting principles. An expenditure and other financing source should be reported in the period the subscription asset is initially recognized. Subsequent governmental fund subscription payments should be accounted for consistent with principles for debt service payments on long-term debt.

Notes to Financial Statements

A local government entity should disclose in the notes to financial statements the following information about its SBITAs (other than short-term SBITAs). SBITAs may be grouped for purposes of disclosure:

- a) A general description of its SBITAs, including the basis, terms, and conditions on which variable payments not included in the measurement of the subscription liability are determined.
- b) The total amount of subscription assets, and the related accumulated amortization, disclosed separately from other capital assets.
- c) The amount of outflows of resources recognized in the reporting period for variable payments not previously included in the measurement of the subscription liability.
- d) The amount of outflows of resources recognized in the reporting period for other payments (e.g., termination penalties, not previously included in the measurement of the subscription liability).
- e) Principal and interest requirements to maturity, presented separately, for the subscription liability for each of the five subsequent fiscal years and in five-year increments thereafter.
- f) Commitments under SBITAs before the commencement of the subscription term.
- g) The components of any loss associated with an impairment (the impairment loss and any related change in the subscription liability).

For disclosure purposes, subscription liabilities are not considered debt that is subject to the disclosure requirements in GASB Cod. Sec. 1500.130 (Section 1500, paragraph .130).

27.09 Example – Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements (SBITA)

The following examples are for illustrative purposes only and are not intended to modify or limit the requirements of the Governmental Accounting Standards Board. Existing standards may require disclosures in addition to those illustrated. Local government entities should carefully consider their own unique circumstances in determining the most appropriate application of generally accepted accounting principles.

Initial Assumptions

The County of Andromeda uses proprietary software belonging to Orion Data Solutions (ODS) to manage its routine accounting functions and recognizes the contract it has with ODS qualifies as a subscription-based information technology arrangement (SBITA) due to the following arrangement terms.

- Subscription Term: 3 years
- Subscription Start Date: July 1, 20X2
- Subscription End Date: June 30, 20X5
- First Payment Date: July 1, 20X2
- Payments: \$7,000 annually, paid in advance (on July 1st)
- Discount Rate: 3%
- Initial Implementation Stage: Data Migration Costs \$3000

Subscription Liability Calculation

The initial subscription liability is measured as the present value of the subscription payments expected to be made by the County of Andromeda to ODS during the subscription term.

The initial value of the subscription liability is calculated to have a present value of \$20,394 using the following criteria (applied the present value formula/function in Excel):

- Discount Rate (R) = 3% per year
- Number of Periods (NPer) = 3
- Annual Payment (Pmt) = \$7,000
- Future Value (FV) = 0
- Type = 1 (1 for payments made at beginning of the period; 0 for payments made at end of the period)

Subscription Asset Calculation

To obtain a total for the initial subscription asset, the subscription liability of \$20,394 is added to the \$3,000 capitalizable initial implementation costs for data migration as shown.

\$20,394 — the present value of expected payments to be made over the subscription term; and

\$ 3,000 — the initial implementation costs for data migration.

\$23,394 — starting subscription asset value

The monthly subscription asset amortization amount is \$650 (\$23,394/36 months).

Payment Calculations

Divide the \$7,000 annual payments into interest and principal amounts:

- The first payment of \$7,000 is made on July 1, 20X2 and is subtracted from the initial value of the subscription liability (\$20,394). There is no interest payment made at this time.

Initial value of subscription liability	\$20,394
First payment	<u>7,000</u>
Total	\$13,394

- Total amount recorded for accrued interest at the end of the first year are as follows and will be paid on July 1, 20X3, along with the principal component:

Redemption of principal	\$6,598	
Interest	<u>402</u>	(3% x \$13,394/12 months = \$33.50 monthly interest expense)
Total	\$7,000	

- Total amount recorded for accrued interest at the end of the second year are as follows and will be paid on July 1, 20X4, along with the principal component:

Redemption of principal	\$6,796	(\$13,394 - \$6,598)
Interest	<u>204</u>	(3% x \$6,796/12 months = \$16.99 monthly interest expense)
Total	\$7,000	

- There is no accrued interest liability recorded during the third year (July 1, 20X4 – June 30, 20X5)

The interest expense in each month is based on the outstanding liability balance at the end of the prior month. In a period when no payment is made, the local government entity should accrue interest expense in a separate liability account called accrued interest liability and should not increase the balance of the outstanding subscription liability.

Chapter 27: Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangements

Amortization Schedule - Subscription Liability and Subscription Asset

Period	Payment (Cash)	Interest Expense	Liability Reduction	Accrued Interest Liability	(Cum.) Accrued Interest Liability	Subscription Liability	Subscription Asset Amortization Expense	Net Subscription Asset Balance	Accumulated Amortization
07/01/20X2	\$7,000	0	\$7,000	0	0	\$13,394	0	0	0
07/31/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$33	\$13,394	\$650	\$22,744	\$650
08/31/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$67	\$13,394	\$650	\$22,094	\$1,300
09/30/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$100	\$13,394	\$650	\$21,444	\$1,950
10/31/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$134	\$13,394	\$650	\$20,794	\$2,600
11/30/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$167	\$13,394	\$650	\$20,144	\$3,250
12/30/20X2	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$201	\$13,394	\$650	\$19,494	\$3,900
01/31/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$234	\$13,394	\$650	\$18,844	\$4,550
02/28/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$268	\$13,394	\$650	\$18,194	\$5,200
03/31/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$301	\$13,394	\$650	\$17,544	\$5,850
04/30/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$335	\$13,394	\$650	\$16,894	\$6,500
05/31/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$368	\$13,394	\$650	\$16,244	\$7,150
06/30/20X3	0	\$33.50	0	\$33.50	\$402	\$13,394	\$650	\$15,594	\$7,800
07/01/20X3	\$7,000	\$33.50	\$6,598	-\$402	0	\$6,796	0	\$15,594	\$7,800
07/31/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$17	\$6,796	\$650	\$14,944	\$8,450
08/31/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$34	\$6,796	\$650	\$14,294	\$9,100
09/30/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$51	\$6,796	\$650	\$13,644	\$9,750
10/31/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$68	\$6,796	\$650	\$12,994	\$10,400
11/30/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$85	\$6,796	\$650	\$12,344	\$11,050
12/31/20X3	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$102	\$6,796	\$650	\$11,694	\$11,700
01/31/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$119	\$6,796	\$650	\$11,044	\$12,350
02/28/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$136	\$6,796	\$650	\$10,394	\$13,000
03/31/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$153	\$6,796	\$650	\$9,744	\$13,650
04/30/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$170	\$6,796	\$650	\$9,094	\$14,300
05/31/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$187	\$6,796	\$650	\$8,444	\$14,950
06/30/20X4	0	\$17	0	\$17	\$204	\$6,796	\$650	\$7,794	\$15,600
07/01/20X4	\$7,000	\$17	\$6,796	-\$204	0	0	0	\$7,794	\$15,600
07/31/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$7,144	\$16,250
08/31/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$6,494	\$16,900
09/30/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$5,844	\$17,550
10/31/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$5,194	\$18,200
11/30/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$4,544	\$18,850
12/31/20X4	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$3,894	\$19,500
01/31/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$3,244	\$20,150
02/28/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$2,594	\$20,800
03/31/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$1,944	\$21,450
04/30/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$1,294	\$22,100
05/31/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$650	\$644	\$22,750
06/30/20X5	0	0	0	0	0	0	\$644*	0	\$23,400

* Final amortization expense for subscription asset is \$644 due to rounding.

Journal Entries

Journal Entries for July 1, 20X2 – June 30, 20X3

On July 1, 20X2, the following journal entry is made by the County of Andromeda to record the initial recognition of the subscription asset, the subscription liability, and the initial implementation costs:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Gross Subscription Asset	DR: \$23,394	
Subscription Liability		CR: \$20,394
Cash (for initial implementation costs)		CR: \$3,000

(To record the initial subscription asset, subscription liability, and payment of implementation costs.)

Also on July 1, 20X2, the following journal entry is made to recognize the initial subscription payment:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Subscription Liability (reduction)	DR: \$7,000	
Cash (for subscription payment)		CR: \$7,000

(To record the initial subscription payment for July 20X2.)

Finally, on July 31, 20X2, the following journal entry is made, even though the County of Andromeda is not making a cash payment:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization Expense	DR: \$650	
Interest Expense	DR: \$33.50	
Accumulated Amortization		CR: \$650
Accrued Interest Liability		CR: \$33.50

(To record the monthly amortization of the subscription asset and the monthly interest expense for July 20X2.)

In each of the subsequent months through June 30, 20X3, a similar entry should be made to amortize the subscription asset and record the accumulated interest expense. Any costs not capitalized as part of the subscription asset (e.g., consulting expenses and the additional support fees), should be expensed in the period incurred.

Journal Entries for July 1, 20X3 – June 30, 20X4

On July 1, 20X3, the following journal entry is made to recognize the second subscription payment:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Subscription Liability (reduction)	DR: \$6,598	
Accrued Interest Liability	DR: \$402	
Cash (for subscription payment)		CR: \$7,000

(To record the second subscription payment for July 20X3 and payment of accrued interest liability for fiscal year 20X2.)

On July 31, 20X3, the following journal entry is made, even though the County of Andromeda is not making a cash payment:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization Expense	DR: \$650	
Interest Expense	DR: \$17	
Accumulated Amortization		CR: \$650
Accrued Interest Liability		CR: \$17

(To record the monthly amortization of the subscription asset and the monthly interest expense for July 20X3.)

In each of the subsequent months through June 30, 20X4, a similar entry should be made to amortize the subscription asset and record the accumulated interest expense. Any costs not capitalized as part of the subscription asset (e.g., consulting expenses and the additional support fees), should be expensed in the period incurred.

Journal Entries for July 1, 20X4 – June 30, 20X5

On July 1, 20X4, the following journal entry is made to recognize the final subscription payment:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Subscription Liability (reduction)	DR: \$6,796	
Accrued Interest Liability	DR: \$204	
Cash (for subscription payment)		CR: \$7,000

(To record the final subscription payment for July 20X4 and payment of accrued interest liability for fiscal year 20X3.)

On July 31, 20X4, the following journal entry is made to record the monthly amortization expense:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Amortization Expense	DR: \$650	
Accumulated Amortization		CR: \$650

(To record the amortization of the subscription asset for July 20X4.)

In each of the subsequent months through June 30, 20X5, a similar entry should be made to amortize the subscription asset. Any costs not capitalized as part of the subscription asset (e.g., consulting expenses and the additional support fees), should be expensed in the period incurred.

On the date of the final subscription payment (July 1, 20X4), the subscription liability is reduced to \$0 because all payments will have been made and the County of Andromeda has no further obligation to ODS. The subscription asset, however, is amortized over the entire subscription period because the County of Andromeda has the right to use the SBITA (ODS software) until the last day of the subscription term, which is June 30, 20X5.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDICES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix A: Upcoming Changes

Appendix Contents

Introduction 605

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix A: Upcoming Changes

*No Upcoming Changes Scheduled for the
Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties (ASP) Manual,
2025 Edition*

The guidance (if any) in this appendix will be incorporated/released into the main body of this manual in a future edition, as applicable.

Introduction

This appendix is intended to prepare the reader for upcoming changes from the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) that are not yet effective. Any GASB pronouncements (e.g., GASB Statements, Technical Bulletins, Implementation Guides, etc.) scheduled for release prior to the vetting of the *Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties (ASP)* manual will be incorporated into a future edition of the manual.

Local governments that are early adopters of the provisions for any proposed changes presented in this appendix should add a disclosure in their financial statements to recognize the different accounting treatment.

Use the following links to access GASB's current projects and technical plan:

- GASB – Current Projects: <https://www.gasb.org/projects/current-projects>
- GASB – Technical Plan: <https://www.gasb.org/archive/technical-plans>

The GASB Current Projects webpage provides basic information about current projects and pre-agenda research at a glance. The GASB Technical Plan webpage provides information concerning GASB specific projects, pre-agenda research, monitoring activities, post implementation reviews, and their priorities.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix B: Glossary

Appendix Contents

Acronyms..... 609

A 610

B 621

C 626

D 641

E 647

F 652

G 659

H 664

I 664

J 672

K 673

L 673

M 678

N 682

O 688

P 693

Q 702

R 703

S 710

T 720

U 725

V 728

W 729

X 730

Y 730

Z 730

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix B: Glossary

This glossary is a practical and easy-to-use guide for terms used in the manual. While every effort has been made to present accurate and up-to-date definitions, this glossary should be used only as a resource, not as an authority.

Acronyms

The following are some of the acronyms used in governmental accounting:

AICPA	American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
ALN	Assistance Listings Numbers
AcSEC	Accounting Standards Executive Committee
APB	Accounting Principles Board
ACFR	Annual Comprehensive Financial Report
CPA	Certified Public Accountant
EDP	Electronic Data Processing
GAAP	Generally Accepted Accounting Principles
GAAS	Generally Accepted Auditing Standards
GAGAS	Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards
GAN	Grant Anticipation Note
GAO	Governmental Accountability Office
GASB	Governmental Accounting Standards Board
GFOA	Government Finance Officers Association
GNMA	Government National Mortgage Association
IGAS	Interpretation of Governmental Accounting
LAFCo	Local Agency Formation Commission
NCGA	National Council on Governmental Accounting
OPEB	Other Postemployment Benefits
SEC	Securities and Exchange Commission
SGAC	Statement of Governmental Accounting Concepts
SGAS	Statement of Governmental Accounting Standards
TB	Technical Bulletin

Appendix B: Glossary

A

AB 8. Assembly Bill 8, Chapter 282, Statutes of 1979. (State law governing the distribution of property tax.)

Abatement. A complete or partial cancelation of a levy imposed by a government. Abatements usually apply to tax levies, special assessments, and service charges.

Abstract. See Redemption Roll.

Accountability. Term used by Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) to describe a government's duty to justify the raising and spending of public resources. GASB identified accountability as the paramount objective of financial reporting from which all objectives flow.

Account. A record of a type of monetary transaction maintained in a ledger. Also sometimes referred to as object (for example, objects of expenditures or revenues). See Object.

Accounting Change. Changes in accounting principles, changes in accounting estimates, and changes to or within the financial reporting entity. The correction of an error in previously issued financial statements is not an accounting change.

Account Number. See Coding.

Accounting Period. See Fiscal Period.

Accounting Principle. The standards, rules, guidelines and industry-specific requirements for financial reporting.

Accounting Principles Board (APB). The authoritative private-sector standard-setting body that preceded the Financial Accounting Standards Board. The APB issued guidance in the form of opinions.

Accounting Procedures. All processes that discover, record, classify, and summarize financial information to produce financial reports and to provide internal control.

Accounting Standards Executive Committee (AcSEC). A committee within the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA) authorized to issue Practice Bulletins.

Accounting System. The methods and records established to identify, assemble, analyze, classify, record and report a government's transactions and to maintain accountability for the related assets and liabilities.

Accounts Payable. A short-term (or current liability) liability account reflecting amounts owed to private persons or organizations (including other governments) for goods and services received by a government (but not including amounts due to other funds of the same government).

Accounts Receivable. A current asset account reflecting amounts due from private persons or organizations (including other governments) for goods and services furnished by a government (but not including amounts due from other funds or other governments).

Accreted Value. A valuation basis for certain investments and debt instruments that report on the balance sheet only that portion of their face value that reflects principal and interest accrued to date.

Accrual Basis. The method of accounting that recognizes the financial effect of transactions, events, and interfund activity when they occur, regardless of the timing of related cash flows.

Accrued Expenses. Expenses incurred but not paid. In place of the expense, a journal entry is created to record an accrued expense, as well as an offsetting liability.

Accrued Interest Payable. A liability account reflecting interest costs incurred but not due until a later date.

Accrued Revenue. Revenues earned but not received. See Modified Accrual Basis.

Accrued Taxes Payable. A liability account reflecting taxes incurred but not due until a later date.

Accrued Salaries and Wages Payable. A liability account reflecting salaries and wages earned by employees but not yet paid to them.

Accumulated Depreciation. The amount of a fixed/capital asset's cost that has been allocated to depreciation expense since a time the asset is put into service. A contra-asset account to report the accumulation of periodic credits (depreciation expense) made to reflect the expiration of the estimated service life of capital assets.

Acquisition Costs. The costs incurred by a government in acquiring a new asset, contract, or renewing an existing contract. Acquisition costs include, but are not limited to, fees for legal, accounting, valuation, professional, or consulting services.

Acquisition Value. The price that would be paid to acquire an asset with equivalent service potential in an orderly market transaction at the acquisition date, or the amount at which liability could be liquidated with the counterparty at the acquisition date. Acquisition value is also referred to as acquisition costs: adjusted for discounts, incentives, closing costs and other expenditures but before sales tax.

Active Employees. Individuals employed at the end of the reporting or measurement period, as applicable.

Activity. Specific and distinguishable service performed by one or more organizational components of a government to accomplish a function for which the government is responsible. (e.g., Police is an activity within the public safety function.)

Activity Classification. Expenditure classification according to the specific lines of work performed by organization units. For example, sewage treatment and disposal, garbage collection, garbage disposal, and street cleaning are activities performed in carrying out the function of sanitation. The segregation of the expenditures made for each of these activities constitutes an activity classification.

Actual Accounts. Accounts that show actual financial position and results of operations, such as actual assets, liabilities, fund balances, revenues, expenditures, and expenses, as distinguished from budgetary accounts. See Budgetary Accounts.

Actual Contributions. In the context of defined benefit pension and Other Post-Employment Benefits (OPEB) plans, cash contributions recognized as additions to a pension plan's fiduciary net position.

Actuarial Accrued Liability. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, it is the present value of benefits already earned by employees.

Actuarial Assumptions. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, the assumptions as to the occurrence of future events affecting pension costs, such as mortality, withdrawal, disablement and retirement; changes in compensation and government provided pension benefits; rates or depreciation; procedures used to determine future entrants for Open Group Actuarial Cost Methods; and other relevant items.

Actuarial Basis. A basis used in computing the amount of contributions to be made periodically to a fund or account so that the total contributions plus the compounded earnings thereon will equal the required payments to be made out of the fund. The factors taken into account in arriving at the amount of these contributions include the length of time over which each contribution is to be held and the rate of return compounded on such contribution over its life. A Pension and OPEB Trust Fund for a public employee retirement system is an example of a fund used to account for a defined benefit pension plan concerned with actuarial basis data.

Actuarial Cost Method. A procedure for determining the Actuarial Present Value of pension plan benefits and expenses and for developing an actuarially equivalent allocation of such value to time periods, usually in the form of a Normal Cost and Actuarial Accrued Liability.

Actuarial Method. Any of several techniques that actuaries use to determine the amounts and timing of contributions needed to finance claims liabilities so that the total contributions plus compounded earnings on them will equal the amounts needed to satisfy claims liabilities. It may or may not include a provision for anticipated catastrophe losses.

Actuarial Section. One of the five sections of a public employee retirement system's ACFR.

Actuarial Valuation. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, the determination, as of a point in time (the actuarial valuation date), of the service cost, total pension or OPEB liability, and related actuarial present value of projected benefit payments for pensions performed in conformity with Actuarial Standards of Practice unless otherwise specified by the GASB.

Actuarial Valuation Date. The date as of which an actuarial valuation is performed.

Actuarial Value of Assets. The value of cash, investments, and other property belonging to a pension or OPEB plan, as used by the actuary for the purpose of an actuarial valuation of plan assets.

ADA. Average Daily Attendance, as determined by the State Department of Education.

Additions. A term used to describe increases in the net position of fiduciary funds.

Administration Cost. Includes expenses/expenditures associated with the general oversight and operation of a government or non-governmental entity.

Adopted Budget. The budget document formally approved by the board of supervisors after the required public hearings and deliberations on the recommended budget.

Ad Valorem Property Tax. Any assessment imposed on the basis of the value of the real property, including any special ad valorem assessment.

Ad Valorem Property Taxation. Any source of revenue derived from applying a property tax rate to the assessed value of the property.

Advance-From-Fund. A liability account used to record amounts owed by one fund to another fund within the same reporting entity. See also Due-From Fund and Interfund Receivable/Payable.

Advance Refunding. Transaction in which new debt is issued to refinance existing debt (old debt), but the proceeds should be placed in escrow pending call date or maturity (refunding in advance of redemption).

Advance Refunding (of Bonds). In an advance refunding transaction, new debt is issued to provide money to pay interest on old, outstanding debt as it becomes due, and to pay the principal on the old debt either as it matures or at an earlier call date. An advance refunding occurs before the maturity or call date of the old debt, and the proceeds of the new debt are invested until the maturity or call date of the old debt. Most advance refunds result in defeasance of debt. Defeasance of debt can be either legal or in substance.

Advance-To-Fund. An asset account used to record loans made by one fund to another fund within the same reporting entity. See also Due-To-Fund and Interfund Receivable/Payable.

Adverse Opinion. An opinion stating the auditor's view that the financial statements do not present the financial position fairly, results of operations, or changes in financial position, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles. See also Disclaimer of Opinion, Modified Opinion, and Qualified Opinion.

Agency Funds. Formerly, one of the four types of fiduciary funds. Agency funds were used to report resources held by a local government entity in purely custodial capacity. Agency funds are now referred to as Custodial Funds. See Custodial Funds.

Agent Employer. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, an employer whose employees are provided with pensions or OPEB through an agent multiple-employer defined benefit pension or OPEB plan.

Agent Fees. Amounts paid by a lender to its securities lending agent as compensation for managing its securities lending transactions.

Agent Multiple-Employer Defined Benefit Pension or OPEB Plan. A multiple-employer defined benefit pension or OPEB plan in which plan assets are pooled for investment purposes but separate accounts are maintained for each individual employer so that each employer's share of the pooled assets is legally available to pay the benefits of only its employees.

Aggregate Actuarial Cost Method. A method under which the excess of the actuarial present value of projected benefits of the group included in an actuarial valuation over the actuarial value of assets is service of the group between the valuation date and assumed exit. This allocation is performed for the group as a whole, not as a sum of individual allocations. That portion of valuation year is called the Normal Cost. The actuarial accrued liability is equal to the actuarial value of assets.

Agricultural Land. See Open Space Land.

Agricultural Preserve. An area devoted to either agricultural use, recreational use, open space use, or any combination of such uses, and which is established in accordance with the provisions of the California Land Conservation Act of 1965.

Agricultural Use. Use of land for the purpose of producing an agricultural commodity for commercial purposes.

AICPA. American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

Allocate. To divide a lump-sum appropriation into parts which are classified as expenditure by specific organization units and/or for specific purposes, activities, or objects.

Allocated Claims Adjustment Expenses. In the context of risk financing activities, expenses associated directly with specific claims paid or in the process of settlement, such as legal and adjusters' fees.

Allocation. A part of a lump-sum appropriation that is classified as an expenditure by specific organization units and for special purposes, activities, or objects.

Allotment (or Allot). Portion of an annual or biennial budgetary appropriation allocated to an interim period.

Allotment Ledger. A subsidiary ledger which contains an account for each allotment showing the amount allotted, expenditures for the allotment period, outstanding encumbrances, and net balance. See Appropriation Ledger.

Allotment Period. A period of time during which an allotment is effective. Monthly and quarterly allotments are most common. See Allotment.

Allowance for Uncollectibles. A contra-asset valuation account used to indicate the portion of a receivable not expected to be collected.

Alternate Method of Tax Apportionment. Allows counties to allocate secured property taxes to jurisdictions at 100% of the billed amount rather than actual tax collections. The county collects all future delinquent payments, penalties, interest, and distributes them to the appropriate funds.

Amortization. (1) The portion of the cost of a limited-life or intangible asset charged as an expense during a particular period. (2) The reduction of debt by regular payments of principal and interest sufficient to retire the debt by maturity.

Amortization Schedule. A schedule of debt service payments separating the portions of payments attributable to principal and interest.

Analytical Review. A term used by auditors to describe the process of attempting to determine the reasonableness of financial data by comparisons made with other financial and nonfinancial data.

Annexation. Changes in the territorial boundaries of governments. An annexation may also be known as reorganization. In a government annexation arrangement, one government extends the bounds of its geographic footprint to include newly incorporated or unincorporated areas. Often, annexations result only in changes in boundaries, and the annexed governments generally do not give up assets or gain relief from liabilities. However, in annexations in which assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources comprising an operation are transferred, those items are required to be recognized at the carrying amounts reported by the transferring government.

Annual Budget. A budget applicable to a single fiscal year. See Budget and Operating Budget.

Annual Covered Payroll. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, all element of annual compensation paid to active employees on which contributions to a plan are based.

Annual Compressive Financial Report (ACFR). Financial report that contains, at a minimum three sections: (1) introductory, (2) financial, and (3) statistical, and whose financial section provides information on each individual fund and component unit.

Annual Financial Report. A financial report applicable to a single fiscal year.

Annual Inflation Factor. See Cost of Living.

Annual Operating Budget. See Operating Budget.

Annual OPEB Cost. An accrual-basis measure of the periodic cost of an employer's participation in a defined benefit OPEB plan.

Annual Required Contribution of the Employer(s) (ARC). In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, the employer's periodic required contributions (actuarially determined) to a defined benefit or OPEB plan in a given year.

Annual Tax Increment. The difference resulting from the comparison of base-year to current-year values.

Annuity. A series of equal payments made or received at equal intervals over a specified period of time.

Annuity, Amount of. The total amount of money accumulated or paid during an annuity period from an annuity along with compound interest at a specified rate.

Annuity Bonds. See Serial Bonds.

Annuity Period. The length of time during which annuity payments are to occur.

APB. See Accounting Principles Board.

Application Development Stage. In the context of internally generated computer software, the stage of development that includes the design of the chosen path, including software configuration and software interfaces, coding, installation to hardware, and testing, including the parallel processing phase.

Appoint. To select members of a governing body, as long as the ability to do so is not severely limited by a nomination process, or to confirm appointments made by others, provided the confirmation is more than a formality or part of a ministerial responsibility.

Apportionment. In the context of governments, it is the division and sharing of revenues carried out according to a managerial directive or statutory mandate.

Appraise. To estimate the value, particularly the value of property. If the property is valued for purposes of taxation, the narrower term assess is substituted.

Appropriated Budget. The expenditure authority created by a bill or ordinance that is in law. It may also include revenues, transfers, allocations, allotments and program changes. It may be for a single period or for multiple years and for capital or for operating purposes or both.

Appropriated Fund Balance. A portion of existing fund balance that is incorporated into the subsequent year's budget to balance expected expenditures in excess of expected revenues.

Appropriation. A line item giving spending authority in a budget.

Appropriation Account. A budgetary account set up to record spending authorizations for specific purposes. The account is credited with the original appropriation and any supplemental appropriations and is charged with expenditures and encumbrances.

Appropriation Balance. See Unallocated Balance of Appropriation, Unencumbered Allotment, Unencumbered Appropriation, Unexpended Allotment, and Unexpended Appropriation.

Appropriation Bill. A bill through which appropriations are given legal effect. See Ordinance, Resolution, Order.

Appropriation Expenditure. An expenditure chargeable to an appropriation. As virtually all expenditures of governments are chargeable to appropriations, the term expenditures by itself is widely and properly used.

Appropriation Expenditure Ledger. See Appropriation Ledger.

Appropriation for Contingencies. A budgetary provision representing that portion of the financing requirements set aside to meet unforeseen expenditure requirements.

Appropriation Ledger. A subsidiary ledger containing an account for each appropriation. Each account usually includes the amount originally appropriated, transfers to or from the appropriation, amounts charged against the appropriation, the available balance, and other related information. See Allotment Ledger.

Arbitrage. In the context of government finance, the reinvestment of the proceeds of tax-exempt securities in materially higher-yielding taxable securities.

Assess. To establish an official property value for taxation. See Appraise.

Assessed Valuation. The valuation that a government sets on real estate or other property as a basis for levying taxes.

Assessee. The person to whom the property tax is assessed.

Assessment. (1) The process of making the official valuation of property for taxation. (2) The valuation placed on property as a result of this process. See Special Assessment.

Assessment Year. The period beginning with a lien date and ending immediately prior to the succeeding lien date for taxes levied by the same agency.

Assessor Roll. See Roll Being Prepared.

Assessment Roll. With real property, the official list containing the legal description of each parcel of property and its assessed valuation. The name and address of the last known owner usually are listed. With personal property, the assessment roll is the official list containing the name and address of the owner, a description of the personal property and its assessed value.

Asset. Resources with present service capacity that the government presently controls.

Asset Allocation. In connection with pension and OPEB plans, the process of determining which types of investments are to be included in an investment portfolio and percentage of each.

Asset Impairment. A significant, unexpected decline in the service utility of a capital asset.

Assigned Fund Balance. Amounts that are constrained by the government's intent to be used for specific purposes, but are neither restricted nor committed. Intent should be expressed by (1) the governing body itself, or (2) a body (for example a budget or finance committee) or official to which the governing body has delegated the authority to assign amounts to be used for specific purposes.

Assignment. In the context of hedge accounting, an assignment occurs when a swap agreement is amended to replace an original swap counterparty, or the swap counterparty's credit support provider, but all the other terms of the swap agreement remain unchanged.

Attained Age Actuarial Cost Method. A method under which the excess of the actuarial present value of projected benefits over the actuarial accrued liability is respect of each individual included in an actuarial valuation is allocated on a level basis over the earnings or service of the individual between the valuation date and assumed exit. The porting of this actuarial present value which is allocated to a valuation year is called Normal Cost. The actuarial accrued liability is determined by using the unit credit actuarial cost method.

Audit. A methodical examination of an organization's accounting records as well as a physical inspection of an entity's assets. An audit includes a test of management's accounting system to determine the extent to which internal accounting controls are both available and being used. The purpose of an audit is to express an opinion on (1) the fairness of the entity's financial statements or (2) determine an entity is compliant with either their own policies and procedures or statutory requirements/regulations. See also Internal Auditing, Independent Audit, Financial Audit, Program Compliance Audit, Single Audit, and Performance Auditing.

Audit Committee. A group of individuals charged by the governing body with overseeing how management fulfills its responsibility for internal control and financial reporting.

Audit Finding. In the context of a financial audit, a weakness in internal controls or an instance of noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations that are presented in the audit report in conformity with GAGAS. A typical audit finding is composed of a statement of the condition (i.e., weakness or instance of noncompliance) and the criterion or criteria used to define it, an explanation of the cause of the condition, a discussion of its results, and recommendations for improvement. Findings ordinarily are presented together with a response from management stating management's concurrence or disagreement with each finding and its plan for corrective action.

Audit Guides. Series of AICPA publications, typically regarded as Nonauthoritative literature according to the GAAP hierarchy. In the public sector, a commonly referenced publication is the *State and Local Governments — Audit and Accounting Guide*.

Audit Management. The process used to procure auditing services to monitor the performance of the auditor, and to ensure the satisfactory resolution of issues raised by the audit.

Audit Procurement. The process used to obtain auditing services from independent public accountants.

Audit Program. A detailed outline of work to be performed and procedures to be followed in any given audit.

Auditor's Report. In the context of a financial audit, a statement by the auditor describing the scope of the audit and the auditing standards applied in the examination and setting forth the auditor's opinion on the fairness of presentation of the financial information in conformity with GAAP or some other comprehensive basis of accounting.

Audit Resolution. The process whereby corrective action is planned, implemented and monitored to remedy weaknesses discovered and reported in conjunction with an audit.

Audit Scope. In the context of a financial statement audit, the specific contents of a financial report for which the independent auditor offers an opinion.

Audited Claims Payable. See Accounts Payable.

Auditor. See Internal Auditor and Independent Auditor.

Auditor-Controller. If the office of the controller is established by the county, then the county auditor is the ex-officio controller, charged with the additional duties of auditing and statistical and financial reporting. See County Auditor or Director of Finance.

Auditor Rotation Policy. A policy that requires a government periodically to replace the independent auditor of its financial statements.

Auditor's Opinion. An expression in the audit report of the auditor's position on whether the financial information of the entity is presented fairly, in all material respects, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (or with other specified accounting principles applicable to the auditee).

Auditor's Report on Internal Controls and Compliance over Financial Reporting. Report issued in conjunction with a financial audit performed in accordance with GAGAS. In this report, the independent auditor reports on internal control weaknesses and instances of noncompliance discovered in connection with the financial audit, but does not offer an opinion on internal controls or compliance.

Authority. A government or public agency created to perform a single function or a restricted group of related activities. Usually, such units are financed from service charges, fees, and tolls, but in some instances they also have taxing powers. An authority may be completely independent of other governments or partially dependent on other governments for its financing or the exercise of certain powers.

Available Financing. In governmental fund types, the sum of the components that are available to meet the financing requirements for the accounting period involved. Available financing includes unassigned fund balance, decreases in other fund balance classifications (non-spendable, restricted, committed and assigned), revenues, other financing sources, and transfers in. This is a conventional term and should not be used in the financial statement presentation.

Available Fund Balance. For budgetary presentation purposes, that portion of the governmental type fund balance which is available for financing the budget requirements for the accounting period involved. This is a conventional term, which is synonymous with the accepted term unassigned fund balance, of the general fund, and for other governmental fund types, the portion of the assigned fund balance being used to finance budget requirements.

Availability Criterion. The requirement under the modified accrual basis of accounting that revenues be recognized only if they are collected or collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period.

Availability Payment Arrangement (APA). An arrangement in which a government compensates an operator for activities that may include designing, constructing, financing, maintaining, or operating an underlying nonfinancial asset for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

Availability Period. The designated period immediately following the close of the fiscal year by the end of which cash should be collected for related revenue to be recognized under the modified accrual basis of accounting.

Available Revenue. Money that is available for spending and saving. Also referred to as Disposable Income.

B

Back Taxes. All payments required to be made under any provision of law allowing payment of delinquent taxes in installments, except payments of current taxes due on the property and the penalties and costs on the current taxes.

Balance Sheet. Report of information about the current financial resources (assets, liabilities, deferred inflows/outflows and fund balances) of each major governmental fund and for nonmajor governmental funds in the aggregate and totaled as of the reporting date.

Bank Balance. In the context of GASB Statement No. 3, *Deposits With Financial Institutions, Investments (Including Repurchase Agreements), and Reverse Repurchase Agreements*, as amended, the amount credited by a financial institution to the government's account as opposed to the government's own ledger balance for the account (e.g., if checks have been written against an account but have not yet cleared the bank, the ledger balance would be lower than the bank balance). In addition, ending cash balance appearing on a bank statement is also considered bank balance (sometimes referred to as balance per bank account).

Basic Financial Statements (BFS). The core required financial statements of a government, including management's discussion and analysis, government-wide financial statements, fund financial statements, notes to the financial statements and required supplementary information other than the management's discussion and analysis. See Financial Statements.

Bank Holding Company. A company that controls one or more banks and may contain subsidiaries with operations related to banking.

Bank Investment Contract (BIC). A separate account at a financial institution that functions like a guaranteed investment contract (GIC).

Bankers' Acceptances. Bankers' acceptance generally is created based on a letter of credit issued in a foreign trade transaction. Bankers' acceptance is short-term, noninterest-bearing notes sold at a discount and redeemed by the accepting banks at maturity for face value.

Banking Pools. Risk financing arrangement in which monies are loaned to pool members in the event of loss.

Base Year (Assessor). The assessment year FY 1975–76 serves as the original base year. Thereafter, any assessment year in which real property, or a portion thereof, is purchased, is newly constructed, or changes ownership shall become the base year used in determining the full cash value of such real property, or a portion thereof.

Basis Differences. Differences that may arise when the basis of budgeting is different from GAAP.

Basis of Accounting. The timing of recognition for financial reporting purposes when the effects of transactions or events should be recognized in financial statements.

Basis of Budgeting. Method used to determine when revenues and expenditures are recognized for budgetary purposes.

Betterment. Addition made to, or change made in, a capital asset, other than maintenance, to prolong its life or to increase its efficiency or capacity. The cost of the addition or change normally is added to the book value of the asset. The term improvement is preferred.

Bill. A term used to denote a law or statute introduced by certain legislative bodies. A bill has greater legal formality and standing than a resolution. See Appropriation Bill, Ordinance, Resolution, and Order.

Blended Component Unit. These are component units that are so intertwined with the primary government that they are in substance the same as the primary government. These component units should be included in the primary government's financial statements using a method called Blending. See Blending (Blended).

Blending (Blended). The method of reporting the financial data of a component unit as though their funds were funds of the primary government.

Blue Book. A term commonly used to designate the Government Finance Officers Association's (GFOA) publication, *Governmental Accounting, Auditing, and Financial Reporting* (GAAFR).

Board Roll. See State Assessed Roll.

Bond. A written promise to pay a specified sum of money, called the face value or principal amount, at a specified date or dates in the future, called the maturity date(s), together with periodic interest at a specified rate. Sometimes, however, all or a substantial portion of the interest is included in the face value of the security. The difference between a note and a bond is that the latter is issued for a longer period and requires greater legal formality.

Bond Anticipation Note (BAN). Short-term, interest-bearing note issued by a government in anticipation of bond proceeds to be received at a later date. The note is retired from proceeds of the bonds to which it is related.

Bond Covenant. A legally enforceable promise made by an issuer of bonds to the bondholders, normally contained in the bond resolution or indenture (e.g., pledged revenues).

Bond Discount. The difference between the present value and the face amount of bonds when the former is less than the latter. In common usage, the term also often includes issuance costs withheld from the bond proceeds by the underwriter.

Bond Indenture. A formal agreement, also called a deed of trust, between an issuer of bonds and the bondholder.

Bond Ordinance (Resolution). An ordinance or resolution authorizing a bond issue.

Bond Premium. The difference between the present value and the face amount of bonds when the former is greater than the latter.

Bonded Debt. That portion of indebtedness represented by outstanding bonds. See Gross Bonded Debt, Net Bonded Debt, and Funded Debt.

Bonds Authorized and Unissued. Bonds that have been legally authorized but not issued and that can be issued and sold without further authorization.

Bonds Issued. Bonds sold by the government.

Bonds Payable. Generally, the face value of bonds issued and unpaid. In the case of deep-discount and zero-coupon bonds, however, only the accreted value of the security is reported as bonds payable on the balance sheet.

Book Entry System. A system that eliminates the need for physically transferring bearer-form paper or registering securities by using a central depository facility.

Book of Original Entry. The record in which the various transactions are formally recorded for the first time (e.g., cash journal, check register, or general journal). With automated bookkeeping methods, one transaction may be recorded simultaneously in several records, one of which may be regarded as the book of original entry. Memorandum books, check stubs, files of duplicate sales invoices, etc., on which first or prior business notations may have been made, are not books of original entry in the accepted meaning of the term, unless they are also used as the media for direct posting to the ledgers.

Book Value. Value as shown by books of account. In the case of assets that are subject to reduction by valuation allowances, book value refers to cost or stated value less the appropriate allowance. Sometimes a distinction is made between gross book value and net book value, the former designating value before deduction of related allowances and the latter the value after their deduction. In the absence of any modifiers, however, the term book value is understood to be synonymous with net book value.

Borrower. A broker-dealer or other entity that transfers collateral to a governmental entity in a securities lending transaction.

Budget. A plan of financial operation embodying an estimate of proposed expenditures for a given period and the proposed means of financing them. Used without any modifier, the term usually indicates a financial plan for a single fiscal year. See Annual Budget, Capital Budget, Capital Program, Long-Term Budget, Operating Budget, Performance Budget, Program Budget and Traditional Budget.

Budget Document. (1) The instrument used by the budget-making authority to present a comprehensive financial program to the appropriating body. The budget document usually consists of three parts. The first part contains a message from the budget-making authority, together with a summary of the proposed expenditures and the means of financing them. The second consists of schedules supporting the summary. These schedules show in detail past years' actual revenues, expenditures, and other data used in making the estimates. The third part is composed of drafts of the appropriation, revenue, and borrowing measures necessary to put the budget into effect. (2) The instrument used to present the plan of financial operations of the county and of the special district whose affairs and finances are under the supervision and control of the board of supervisors.

Budget-GAAP Basis Differences. Differences arising from the use of a basis of accounting for budgetary purposes that differs from the basis of accounting applicable to the fund type when reporting on operations in conformity with GAAP. For example, a cash-basis budget would produce a budget-GAAP basis difference.

Budget-GAAP Differences. Differences between the GAAP reporting model and a government's budgetary practices.

Budget-GAAP Entity Differences. Differences arising from the inclusion or exclusion in the budget of organizations, programs, activities and functions that may or may not be compatible with the criteria defining the government reporting entity.

Budget-GAAP Perspective Differences. Differences that result when the structure of financial information for budgetary purposes is not compatible with the fund structure prescribed by GAAP (i.e., some governments budget on the basis of organizational or program structures that differ from the funds used for financial reporting purposes).

Budget-GAAP Timing Differences. Variations such as continuing appropriations, project appropriations, automatic reappropriations, and biennial budgeting that separate budgetary accounting from GAAP.

Budget Message. A general discussion of the proposed budget as presented in writing by the budget-making authority to the legislative body. The budget message should contain an explanation of the principal budget items, an outline of the government's experience during the preceding period and its financial status at the time of the message, and recommendations regarding the financial policy for the coming period.

Budget Request. The sum of the organizational estimates of available financing and financing requirements for the period involved. The budget requests are compiled to prepare the recommended budget. See Recommended Budget.

Budget Unit. That classification of the expenditure budget requirements into appropriately identified accounting or organizational units deemed necessary or desirable for control of the financial operation.

Budget Year. For budgetary purposes, the budget year means the fiscal year (July 1 through June 30) for which the budget is being prepared.

Budgetary Accounts. Special accounts used to achieve budgetary integration that is not reported in the financial statements. By convention, ALL CAPS commonly are used to designate budgetary accounts. The most common budgetary accounts are Estimated Revenues, Appropriations, and Encumbrances.

Budgetary Basis of Accounting. The method used to determine when revenues and expenditures are recognized for budgetary purposes.

Budgetary Comparison. Schedules presented as required supplementary information for the general fund and for each major special revenue fund that has a legally adopted annual budget. The budgetary comparison schedule should present both (1) the original and (2) the final appropriated budgets for the reporting period, as well as (3) actual inflows, outflows, and budgetary basis. A separate column to report variances between the final budget and actual amounts is encouraged but not required. Governments may also report the variance between original and final budget amounts.

Budgetary Comparison Schedules. Schedules presented as required supplementary information for the general fund and for each major special revenue fund that has a legally adopted annual budget. The budgetary comparison schedule should present both (a) the original and (b) the final appropriated budgets for the reporting period as well as (c) actual inflows, outflows, and budgetary basis. A separate column to report variances between the final budget and actual amounts is encouraged but not required. Governments may also report the variance between original and final budget amounts.

Budgetary Control. The control or management of a government or enterprise in accordance with an approved budget to keep expenditures within the limitations of available appropriations and available revenues.

Budgetary Guidelines. Recommendations on budgeting issued by the National Advisory Council on State and Local Budgeting (NACSLB). NACSLB budgetary guidelines are chiefly of interest to accountants because of the emphasis they place on performance measurement in the context of the budgetary process.

Budgetary Integration. Use of budgetary accounts to record the operating budget in the general ledger to facilitate control during the year by providing a point of reference for comparison with actual results.

Budgetary Journal Entries. Journal entries involving budgetary accounts. Budgetary journal entries arise in connection with budgetary integration.

Budgetary Reporting. In the context of financial reporting, the requirement to present budgetary comparisons in connection with general purpose external financial reporting. Budgetary reporting is required in connection with the basic financial statements for both the general fund and individual major special revenue funds with annual (or biennial) appropriated budgets. Budgetary reporting also is required within the ACFR to demonstrate compliance at the legal level of control for all governmental funds with annual (or biennial) appropriated budgets.

Buildings and Improvements. A capital asset account reflecting the acquisition cost of permanent structures owned or held by a government, and improvements thereon.

Business-Type Activities. Activities financed in whole or in part by fees charged to external parties for goods and services.

C

Calendar Year. The yearly period from the first day of January to the last day of December, inclusive, for which the tax is imposed.

California Special Districts Association (CSDA). The not-for-profit association that assists in providing services for all independent special districts throughout California.

Call Option. An option that gives its holder the right but not the obligation to purchase a financial instrument or commodity at a certain price for a period of time.

Callable bond. A type of bond with a feature that permits the issuer to pay the obligation before the stated maturity date by giving notice of redemption in a manner specified in the bond contract.

Capital and Related Financing Activities. The (1) acquisition and disposal of capital assets used in providing services or producing goods, (2) borrowing money for acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets and repaying the amounts borrowed, including interest, and (3) paying for capital assets obtained from vendors on credit.

Capital Assets. Assets including land, improvements to land, easements, buildings, building improvements, vehicles, machinery, equipment, works of art and historical treasures, infrastructure, and all other tangible or intangible assets that are used in operations and that have initial useful lives extending beyond a single reporting period.

Capital Assets Held for Sale. A capital asset held for sale if (a) the government has decided to pursue the sale of the asset and (b) it is probable that the sale will be finalized within one year of the financial statement date.

Capital Budget. A plan of proposed capital outlays and the means of financing them. See Capital Program.

Capital Expenditures. Expenditures are resulting in the acquisition of or addition to the government's general capital assets.

Capital Grants. Grants restricted by the grantor for the acquisition and/or construction of capital assets.

Capital Improvement Assessment. Increase in taxes for capital asset acquisition or construction for a specific amount of time, for specific debts for specific property owners.

Capital Improvement Program. See Capital Program.

Capital Improvement Special Assessments. Special assessment projects that are capital in nature and enhance the utility, accessibility, or aesthetic value of the affected properties. Usually, the projects also provide improvements or additions to a government's general capital assets. Typical special assessment capital improvements are streets, sidewalks, parking facilities, and curbs and gutters. Sometimes the improvements provide capital assets that become an integral part of a government's enterprise activities (e.g., water or sewer main construction).

Capital Outlays. See Capital Expenditures.

Capital Program. A plan for capital expenditures to be incurred each year over a fixed period of years to meet capital needs arising from the long-term work program or other capital needs. A capital program sets forth each project or other contemplated expenditure in which the government is to have a part and specifies the resources estimated to be available to finance the projected expenditures.

Capital Projects Funds. Funds used to account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for capital outlays, including the acquisition or construction of capital facilities and other capital assets. Capital projects funds exclude those types of capital-related outflows financed by proprietary funds or for assets that will be held in trust for individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Capitalization Contribution. Contribution to a public-entity risk pool to meet initial or ongoing capital minimums established by statute, regulation, or the pooling agreement itself. Capitalization contributions generally take the form of cash.

Capitalization Threshold. Dollar value at which a government elects to capitalize tangible or intangible assets that are used in operations and that have initial useful lives extending beyond a single reporting period. Generally, capitalization thresholds are applied to individual items rather than groups of items unless the result would be to exclude items that in aggregate would clearly be material to the financial statements.

Capping. In the context of municipal solid-waste landfills, the cost of final cover expected to be applied near or after the date that the landfill stops accepting solid waste.

Carrying Amount (Book Value). The amount at which assets and liabilities are reported in the financial statements. See Book Value.

Cash. In the context of cash flows reporting, not only currency on hand but also demand deposits with banks or other financial institutions. Cash also includes deposits in other kinds of accounts or cash management pools that have the general characteristics of demand deposit accounts.

Cash Basis of Accounting. The basis of accounting that recognizes transactions or events when related cash amounts are received or disbursed.

Cash Conduit. In the context of pass-through grants, a grantee that merely transmits grantor-supplied monies to sub-recipients without having administrative or direct financial involvement in the program.

Cash Discount. An allowance received or given if payment of an account is completed within a stated period of time or earlier than the normal payment date.

Cash Equivalent. In the context of cash flow reporting, cash equivalents are defined as short-term, highly liquid investments that are both (1) readily convertible to known amounts of cash, and (2) so near their maturity that they present insignificant risk of changes in value because of changes in interest rates.

Cash Flow Underwriting. The practice of an insurance enterprise depending on investment income rather than on positive underwriting results to achieve a profit.

Cash with Fiscal Agent. An asset account reflecting deposits with fiscal agents, such as commercial banks, for the payment of long-term debt principal and interest.

Catastrophe. A fire, earthquake, windstorm, explosion, or similar event resulting in substantial losses or an unusually large number of unrelated and unexpected losses occurring in a single period.

Cede. To transfer all or part of an insurance risk to another enterprise through reinsurance.

Ceded Premiums/Claims Costs. Premiums paid to a public entity risk pool and claims costs that are transferred to another enterprise in connection with a reinsurance arrangement.

Certificate of Achievement for Excellence in Financial Reporting Program. Program sponsored by the GFOA to encourage and assist state and local governments to prepare high-quality ACFRs. The program has been in continuous operation since 1946. The program originally was known as the Certificate of Conformance Program.

Certificates of Participation (COP). Certificates issued for the financing of capital assets. COPs represent undivided interests in the rental payments under a tax-exempt lease.

Certified Public Accountant (CPA). An accountant who has met all the statutory and licensing requirements of a given state for use of that designation. All U.S. states require accountants, at a minimum, to complete successfully a uniform national examination before being allowed to designate themselves as CPAs.

Change in Accounting Estimate. Accounting estimates are amounts subject to measurement uncertainty that are recognized or disclosed in the basic financial statements. Accounting estimates are outputs determined based on inputs such as data, assumptions, and measurement methodologies. A change in an accounting estimate results from changes to the inputs of that estimate. Changes to inputs result from a change in circumstance, new information, or more experience.

Change in Accounting Principle. A change in accounting principle is the application of an accounting principle to transactions or other events of a similar type that is different from the accounting principle previously applied to those transactions or other events. Therefore, the initial adoption and application of an accounting principle to transactions or other events that (a) are clearly different in substance from those previously occurring, (b) are occurring for the first time, or (c) were previously insignificant in their effect is not a change in accounting principle.

Change to or Within the Financial Reporting Entity. Changes to or within the financial reporting entity resulting from one of the following:

- a) The addition or removal of a fund that results from the movement of continuing operations within the primary government, including its blended component units.
- b) A change in the fund's presentation as major or nonmajor.
- c) The addition of a component unit to the financial reporting entity or removal of a component unit from the financial reporting entity (exceptions apply).
- d) A change in the presentation of a component unit as blended or discretely presented.

Change in Ownership. A transfer of a percent interest in real property, including the beneficial use thereof, the value of which is substantially equal to the value of the fee interest.

Chapter 9 (U.S. Bankruptcy Code). A provision of the US Bankruptcy Code intended to protect a financially distressed government from its creditors while it develops and negotiates a plan for adjusting its debts. Chapter 9 must be approved by a state prior to usage by a government.

Character Classification. Classification of expenditures according to the periods they are presumed to benefit. The four character groupings are (1) current operating expenditures, presumed to benefit the current fiscal period; (2) debt service expenditures, presumed to benefit prior fiscal periods as well as current and future periods; (3) capital outlay expenditures, presumed to benefit the current and future fiscal periods; and (4) intergovernmental expenditures.

Charges for Services. The term used for a broad category of program revenues that arise from charges to customers, applicants, or others who purchase, use, or directly benefit from the goods, services, or privileges provided, or are otherwise directly affected by the services. Revenues in this category include fees charged for specific services such as water use or garbage collection; licenses and permits, such as dog licenses, liquor licenses, and building permits; operating special assessments, such as for street cleaning or special street lighting; and any other amounts charged to service recipients. Fines and forfeitures are also included in this category because they result from direct charges to those who are otherwise directly affected by a program or service, even though they receive no benefit. Payments from other governments for goods or services — for example, when a county reimburses a special district for borrowing the district's equipment — also should be reported in this category.

Check. A bill of exchange drawn on a bank and payable on demand; a written order on a bank to pay on demand a specified sum of money to a named person, to his or her order, or to the bearer out of money on deposit to the credit of the maker. A check differs from a warrant in that the latter is not necessarily payable on demand and may not be negotiable. A check differs from a voucher in that the latter is not an order to pay. A voucher-check combines the distinguishing characteristics of a voucher and a check; it shows the propriety of a payment and is an order to pay.

Claim. (1) Potential losses that can arise from (a) employment (e.g., workers' compensation and unemployment), (b) contractual actions (e.g., delays or inadequate specifications), (c) actions of government personnel (e.g., medical malpractice, damage to privately owned vehicles by government-owned vehicles, improper police arrest), and d) governmental properties (e.g., personal injuries, property damage). (2) In the context of insurance, demand payment of a policy benefit because of the occurrence of an insured event, such as the destruction or damage of property and related deaths or injuries.

Claims Made Policy. In connection with public entity risk pools, a type of policy that covers losses from claims asserted (reported or filed) against the policyholder during the policy period, regardless of whether the liability-imposing events occurred during the current or any previous period in which the policyholder was insured under the claims-made contract or other specified period before the policy period (the policy retroactive date).

Claims Servicing Pool. Public entity risk pool that manages separate accounts for each pool member from which the losses of that member are paid. Also referred to as an account pool.

Classification of Property. Any enumeration or grouping of property by a statute which results in it being treated differently from other property for the purpose of taxation.

Classified Presentation. Separate reporting of the current and noncurrent portions of assets and liabilities that permits the calculation of working capital. A classified presentation is required for the proprietary fund statement of net position.

Closed Amortization Period. A specific number of years that is counted from one date and, therefore, declines to zero with the passage of time. For example, if the amortization period initially is thirty years on a closed basis, twenty-nine years remain after the first year, twenty-eight years after the second year, and so forth. In contrast, an open amortization period (open basis) is one that begins again or is recalculated at the exact actuarial valuation date. Within a maximum number of years specified by law or policy (for example, thirty years), the period may increase, decrease, or remain stable.

Closed-End Mutual Fund. An SEC-registered investment company that issues a limited number of shares to investors that are then traded like an equity security on a stock exchange. See Open End Mutual Fund.

Closed Period. This term is used on connection with the amortization of deferred inflows and resources and deferred outflows of resources arising from recognition of postemployment benefit expense and changes in related liabilities. A specific number of years that is counted from one date and declines to zero with the passage of time. For example, if the recognition period initially is five years on a closed basis, four years remain after the first year, three years after the second year, and so forth.

Code. See Coding.

Coding. A system of numbering or otherwise designating accounts, entries, invoices, vouchers, etc., in such a manner that the symbol used reveals quickly certain required information. To illustrate the coding of accounts, numbers in the 400 range could be used for expenditures, numbers between 420 and 430 for expenditures within the public safety function, and the number 421 for expenditures incurred in connection with the police activity classification. Within the police activity classification, the number 421.5 could be used for support services, and the number 421.51 for communications support services. Accordingly, expenditure for police radios would be classified as 421.51 (i.e., expenditures for communications services, within support services, within the police activity classification, within the public safety function).

Collateral. The cash, securities, or letters of credit received by the lender from the borrower as protection against the borrower's failure to return the underlying securities.

Collateral Pool. A single financial institution collateral pool is a group of securities pledged by a single financial institution against all the public deposits it holds. A multiple financial institution collateral pool is a group of securities pledged by various financial institutions to provide a common collateral for their deposits of public funds. In such a collateral pool, the assets of the pool and the power to make additional assessments against the members of the pool, if necessary, ensure there will be no loss of public funds because of the default of a member.

Collector's Roll. See Tax Roll.

Combination Bond. A bond issued by a government that is payable from the revenues of a governmental enterprise but that is also backed by the full faith and credit of the government.

Combining Financial Statements. Financial statements that report separate columns for individual funds or component units. Combining financial statements normally are required in an ACFR to support each column in the basic financial statements that aggregate information from more than one fund or component unit.

Commercial Paper. An unsecured promissory note (typically to finance short-term debt) issued primarily by corporations for a specific amount and maturing on a specific day. The maximum maturity for commercial paper is 270 days, but most is sold with maturities of up to 30 days. Almost all commercial paper is rated as to credit risk by rating services.

Commitment Fees (Lending Activities). Fees charged for entering into an agreement that obligates the government to make or acquire a loan or to satisfy an obligation of the other party under a specified condition. May include fees for letters of credit and obligation to purchase a loan or group of loans.

Committed Fund Balance. Amounts that can be used only for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the government's highest level of decision-making authority should be reported as committed fund balance. Those committed amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the government removed or changes the specified use by taking the same type of action (for example, internal resolution and/or ordinance) it employed to commit previously those amounts. The authorization specifying the purposes for which amounts can be used should have the consent of both the legislative and executive branches of the government, if applicable. Committed fund balance also should incorporate the contractual obligation to the extent that existing resources in the fund have been specifically committed for use in satisfying those contractual requirements.

Commitments. In the context of note disclosure, contingent obligations at the balance sheet date, arising from the terms of executory contracts.

Committee on Accounting Procedure (CAP). The authoritative private-sector standard-setting body that preceded the Accounting Principles Board and the FASB. The CAP issued guidance in the form of Accounting Research Bulletins.

Commodities Programs. Distribution of surplus agricultural products as a form of assistance, often in connection with school lunch programs.

Comparability. The principle according to which differences between financial reports should reflect substantive differences in the underlying transactions or the governmental structure rather than the selection of different alternatives in accounting procedures or practices.

Comparative Data. Information from one or more prior fiscal periods that is provided to enhance the analysis of financial data of the current fiscal period.

Comparative Financial Statements. Financial Statements that provide all of the information required by GAAP for two or more fiscal periods.

Compensated Absences. Leave for which employees may receive one or more cash payments when the leave is used for time off, other cash payments (e.g., payment for unused leave upon termination of employment), or noncash settlements (e.g., conversion to defined benefit postemployment benefits). Examples of compensated absences include vacation (or annual) leave, sick leave, paid time off (PTO), holidays, parental leave, bereavement leave, and certain types of sabbatical leave.

Compliance Auditing. Auditing for compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Tests of compliance with laws and regulations are substantive tests; therefore, the term compliance auditing should not be confused with the similar term compliance testing, which usually refers to testing for compliance with internal control procedures.

Compliance Supplement. A publication of the U.S. Office of Management and Budget that outlines compliance requirements for federal awards programs. The publication is designed to assist independent auditors performing Single Audits.

Component Units. Legally separate organizations for which the elected officials of the primary government are financially accountable. In addition, a component unit can be another organization for which the nature and significance of its relationship with a primary government are such that exclusion would cause the reporting entity's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete (primary government + component units = financial reporting entity).

Component Unit Financial Report (CUFR). A report covering all funds of a component unit.

Component Unit Financial Statements. Financial statements of a component unit that may be issued separately from the component unit financial report.

Composite Depreciation Methods. Depreciation methods applied to groups of assets rather than to individual assets.

Comprehensive Framework of Internal Controls. A structure of internal controls that provides for: (a) a favorable control environment, (b) the continuing assessment of risk, (c) the design, implementation, and maintenance of effective control-related policies and procedures, (d) the effective communication of information, and (e) the ongoing monitoring of the effectiveness of control-related policies and procedures as well as the resolution of potential problems identified by controls.

Concentrations (Risk Related): A concentration is a lack of diversity related to an aspect of a significant inflow of resources or outflow of resources e.g. employers, industries and suppliers of materials.

Concession. A grant of rights, land or property in return for services or for a particular use, a right to undertake and profit by a specified activity, or a lease for a particular purpose. This may also refer to an agreement between the owner of a facility and the concession owner and/or concessionaire that grants the exclusive rights to operate a specified business in the facility under specified conditions. The concessionaire usually has to pay the party that grants it the concession's ongoing fees that may either be a fixed amount or a percentage of revenues. See Service Concession Arrangement (SCA).

Condensed Financial Statements. Abbreviated financial statements (condensed in one page) sometimes required by GAAP to be presented within the notes to the financial statements in connection with component units, external investment pools, and segments. In addition, GAAP prescribes the presentation of condensed financial information for the prior fiscal year as part of management's discussion and analysis.

Conduit Debt Obligation. A debt instrument issued in the name of a state or local government (the issuer) that is for the benefit of a third party that is primarily liable for the repayment of the debt instrument (third-party obligor). A conduit debt obligation has all of the characteristics: (a) There are at least three parties involved: (1) an issuer, (2) a third-party obligor, and (3) a debt holder or a debt trustee. There may be more than one third-party obligor, debt holder, or debt trustee; (b) the issuer and the third-party obligor are not within the same financial reporting entity; (c) the debt obligation is not a parity bond of the issuer, nor is it cross-collateralized with other debt of the issuer; (d) the third-party obligor or its agent, not the issuer, ultimately receives the proceeds from the debt issuance; and (e) the third-party obligor, not the issuer, is primarily obligated for the payment of all amounts associated with the debt obligation (debt service payments).

Connection Fees. Fees charged to join or to extend an existing utility system. Often referred to as tap fees or system development fees.

Consistency. The notion that once an accounting principle or reporting method is adopted, it will be used for all similar transactions and events.

Constraint (Risk Related): A constraint is a limitation that is imposed by an external party or by a formal action of a government's highest level of decision-making authority. Examples include spending limitations and mandated spending.

Construction Contracts Payable. A liability account reflecting amounts due on contracts for construction of infrastructure type assets and other related improvements.

Construction/Development in Progress. A capital asset account reflecting the cost of construction or development work for projects not yet completed. The terms Construction in Progress and Development in Progress are used when recognizing project expenditures in the capital assets accounting system for the construction of capital assets, such as building and improvements, infrastructure or the development of internally generated intangible assets.

Consumption Method. The method under which inventories are recorded as expenditures/expenses when used. See Purchases Method.

Contingency. An existing condition, situation, or set of circumstances involving uncertainty as to possible gain (referred to as a gain contingency) or loss (referred to as a loss contingency) to a government that will ultimately be resolved when one or more future events occur or fail to occur. Resolution of the uncertainty may confirm the acquisition of an asset or the reduction of liability or the loss or impairment of an asset or the incurrence of liability.

Contingency Appropriation. See Appropriation for Contingencies.

Contingent Liabilities. Items may become liabilities as a result of conditions undetermined at a given date, such as guarantees, pending lawsuits, judgments under appeal, unsettled disputed claims, unfilled purchase orders, and uncompleted contracts. Contingent liabilities should be disclosed in the financial statements (including the notes) when there is a reasonable possibility that a loss may have been incurred. Guarantees, however, should be disclosed even though the possibility of loss may be remote.

Continuing Appropriation. An appropriation that, once established, is automatically renewed without further legislative action, period after period, until altered or revoked. The term should not be confused with Indeterminate Appropriation.

Contracts Payable. A liability account reflecting amounts due on contracts for goods or services furnished to a government. Amounts withheld as guarantees on contracts should be classified separately in an account entitled Retainage Payable. See Accounts Payable.

Contributions. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, contributions are additions to a pension or OPEB plan's fiduciary net position for amounts from employers, nonemployer contributing entities (for example, state government contributions to a local government pension or OPEB plan), or employees.

Control Account. An account in the general ledger where there is recorded the aggregate of debit and credit postings to a number of related accounts called subsidiary accounts. For example, Taxes Receivable is a control account supported by the aggregate of individual balances in individual property taxpayers' subsidiary accounts. See General Ledger and Subsidiary Account.

Control Cycle. A term used in connection with the evaluation of internal control to describe a series of logically interrelated transactions/processes and associated control-related policies and procedures.

Control Deficiency in Internal Control. A control deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct misstatements on a timely basis.

Controller. See Auditor-Controller.

Corrective Action Plan. A plan that state and local officials are required to submit to appropriate federal officials under the Single Audit Act. The plan details how material noncompliance or weaknesses found in the audit will be eliminated or why corrective action is not necessary.

Correction of an Error. Changes to previously issued financial statements after discovering mathematical mistakes, mistakes in the application of accounting principles, or oversight or misuse of facts that existed at the time the financial statements were prepared.

Cost. The amount of money or other consideration exchanged for property or services.

Cost Accounting. The method of accounting that provides for the assembling and recording of all of the elements of cost incurred to accomplish a purpose, carry on an activity or operation, or complete a unit of work or a specific job.

Cost Ledger. A subsidiary record wherein each project, job production center, process, operation, product, or service is given a separate account to which all items entering into its cost are posted in the required detail. Such accounts should be arranged and kept such that the results shown in them may be reconciled with and verified by a control account or accounts in the general books.

Cost of Living. The Annual Percentage Factor as determined by the California Department of Industrial Relations used in determining the annual inflation factor (not to exceed 2%), pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 51(a)(1)(D).

Cost of Living Adjustment. The cost of living adjustment is a periodic update to a person's compensation that is intended to offset a decline in purchasing power. The adjustment is usually derived from a general index of pricing changes, such as the consumer price index.

Cost of Replacement. See Replacement Cost.

Cost of Reproduction. See Reproduction Cost.

Cost Records. All ledgers, supporting records, schedules, reports, invoices, vouchers, and other records and documents reflecting the cost of projects, jobs, production centers, processes, operations, products, or services, or the cost of any of the component parts thereof.

Cost Reimbursement Basis. Setting of charges so that costs are systematically recovered on a break-even basis over time. (Typically used by Internal Service Funds.)

Cost-Sharing Multiple-Employer Defined Benefit Pension or OPEB plan. A multi-employer defined benefit pension/OPEB plan that is administered through a trust in which the pension/OPEB obligations to the employees of more than one employer are pooled and pensions/OPB plan assets can be used to pay the benefits of the employees of any employer that provides pensions/OPEB through the pensions/OPEB plan.

Cost Unit. A term used in cost accounting to designate the unit of product or service whose cost is computed. These units are selected for the purpose of comparing the actual cost with a standard cost or with actual costs of units produced under different circumstances or at different places and times. See Unit Cost and Work Unit.

Counterparty. In the context of investments, the party that pledges collateral or repurchase agreement securities to the government or that sells investments to or buys them for the government. In the context of securities lending, the issuer of the security or equivalent party to other investments. In other contexts (such as deposits, liabilities, derivative instruments), the external (reciprocal) party to a contract, transaction or arrangement with a government.

County Budget Act. Under Title 3 Government of Counties, Gov. Code section 29000 – 29144 is referred to as the County Budget Act and defines the requirements concerning county budget matters prescribed by the Controller. The Chapter applies to counties, dependent special districts, and other agencies under the supervision of the county board. Refer to the Introduction section of Chapter 6, Budgetary Accounting to access a link to the County Budget Guide (which includes the County Budget Act).

Coupon Rate. The interest rate specified on interest coupons attached to a bond. The term nominal interest rate is also used in this sense.

Covenant. See Bond Covenant.

Coverage Ratio. Ratio of revenues pledged for debt to related debt service payments. A measure of the magnitude of resources available to pay the interest on and repay the principal of debt backed by pledged revenues. For each type of debt backed by pledged revenues, a coverage ratio is generally calculated by dividing gross pledged revenues or pledged revenues net of specific operating expenses by the sum of interest expenses and principal repayments.

Credit Risk. The risk that an issuer or counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations.

Crossover Refunding. Types of advance refunding in which the escrow established with the proceeds of the refunding bonds only begins to secure repayment of the refunded debt at some designated future time, known as the crossover date.

Current. As applied to budgeting and accounting, the operations of the present fiscal period, as opposed to past or future periods. Current usually connotes items likely to be used up or converted into cash within one year.

Current Assets. For accounting and financial reporting purposes, the term current assets are used to designate cash and other assets or resources commonly identified as those that are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed within a year. Therefore, current assets generally include such resources as (a) cash available for current operations and items that are the equivalent of cash; (b) inventories of merchandise, raw materials, goods in process, finished goods, operating supplies, and ordinary maintenance material and parts; (c) trade accounts, notes, and acceptances receivable; (d) receivables from taxpayers, other governments, vendors, customers, beneficiaries, and employees, if collective within a year; (e) installment or deferred accounts and notes receivable if they generally conform to normal trade practices and terms within the business-type activities; (f) marketable securities representing the investment of cash available for current operations; and (g) prepayments such as insurance, interest, rents, unused royalties, current paid advertising service not yet received, and operating supplies. Prepayments are not current assets in the sense that they will be converted into cash but in the sense that, if not paid in advance, they would require the use of current assets within a year. Current assets excludes such resources as: (1) cash and claims to cash that are restricted as to withdrawal or use for other than current operations, that are designated for disbursement in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets, or that are segregated for the liquidation of long-term debts; (2) receivables arising from unusual transactions (such as the sale of capital assets) that are not expected to be collected within 12 months; (3) cash surrender value of life insurance policies; (4) land and other natural resources; (5) depreciable assets; and (6) long-term prepayments that are applicable to the operations of several years, or deferred charges such as bonus payments under a long-term lease.

Current Costs. In connection with municipal solid-waste landfills and pollution remediation obligations, the amount that would be paid if all equipment, facilities, and services included in the estimate of the obligation were acquired during the current period.

Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus. Measurement focus where the aim of a set of financial statements is to report the near-term (current) inflows, outflows, and balances of expendable financial resources. The current financial resources measurement focus is unique to accounting and financial reporting for state and local governments and is used solely for reporting the financial position and results of operations of governmental funds.

Current Liabilities. Used principally to designate obligations whose liquidation is reasonably expected to require the use of existing resources properly classifiable as current assets or the creation of other current liabilities. As a category in the statement of net position, the classification is intended to include obligations for items that have entered into the operating cycle, such as payables incurred in the acquisition of materials and supplies to be used in providing services; collections received in advance of the performance of services' and debts that arise from operations directly related to the operating cycle, such as accruals for wages, salaries, commissions, rentals, and royalties. Other liabilities whose regular and ordinary liquidation is expected to occur within one year also are intended for inclusion, such as short-term debts arising from the acquisition of capital assets, serial maturities of long-term obligations, amounts required to be expended within one year under sinking fund provisions, and certain agency obligations arising from the collection or acceptance of cash or other assets for the account of third parties. The current liability classification also is intended to include obligations that, by their terms, are due on demand or will be due on demand within one year from the date of the financial statements, even though liquidation may not be expected within that period. It also is intended to include long-term obligations that are or will be callable by the creditor either because the debtor's violation of a provision of the debt agreement at the date of the financial statement makes the obligation callable or because the violation, if not cured within a specified grace period, will make the obligations callable. Accordingly, such callable obligations should be classified as current liabilities unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 1) The creditor has waived or subsequently lost the right to demand repayment for more than one year from the date of the financial statement.
- 2) For long-term obligations containing a grace period within which the debtor may cure the violation, it is probable that the violation will be cured within that period, thus preventing the obligation from becoming callable.

Current Refunding. Refunding transaction when the issuance of new debt immediately replaces previously outstanding issued debt. The situation differs from advance refunding, where the proceeds of the refunding bonds are placed in escrow pending the call date or maturity of the debt to be refunded.

Current Resources. Resources available to meet current obligations and expenditures. Examples: current assets, estimated revenues of a particular period not yet realized, transfers from other funds authorized but not received, and, in the case of certain funds, bonds authorized and unissued.

Current Roll Auditor's/Auditor's Roll. The roll containing the property on which current taxes are a lien.

Current Roll Supplemental/Supplemental Roll. The roll for the fiscal year during which the change in ownership occurs or the new construction is completed.

Current Tax Rate. The tax rate applicable to the current roll, including any rate for voter-approved indebtedness.

Current Taxes. Taxes levied and became due within one year.

Current Value. In connection with asset retirement obligations, the amount that would be paid if all equipment, facilities, and services included in the estimate were acquired during the current period.

Custodial Agreement. A written contract is establishing the responsibilities of a custodian who holds collateral for deposits with financial institutions, investment securities, or securities underlying repurchase agreements.

Custodial Credit Risk. The custodial credit risk for deposits is the risk that, in the event of the failure of a depository financial institution, a government will not be able to recover deposits or will not be able to recover collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. The custodial credit risk for investments is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty to a transaction, a government will not be able to recover the value of investment or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party.

Customer Deposits. A liability account used in an Enterprise Fund to reflect deposits made by customers as a prerequisite to receiving services and/or goods provided by the fund.

D

Data Processing (Information Systems). (1) The preparation and handling of information and data from source media through prescribed procedures to obtain such end results as classification, problem solution, summarization, and reports. (2) Preparation and handling of financial information wholly or partially by mechanical or electronic means. See Electronic Data Processing (EDP).

Debt. An obligation resulting from the borrowing of money or from the purchase of goods and services. Debts of governments include bonds, time warrants, and notes. See Accounts Payable, Bonds, Note Payable, and General Long-Term Debt.

Debt Extinguishments. See Advance Refunding Bonds, Defeasance, and In-Substance Defeasance of Debt.

Debt Limit. The maximum amount of outstanding gross or net debt legally permitted.

Debt Proceeds. The difference between the face amount of debt and the issuance discount or the sum of the face amount and the issuance premium. Debt proceeds differ from cash receipts to the extent issuance costs, such as underwriters' fees, are withheld by the underwriter.

Debt Ratios. Comparative statistics illustrating the relation between the issuer's outstanding debt and such factors as its tax base, income, or population. These ratios often are used as part of the process of determining the credit rating of an issue, especially with general obligation bonds.

Debt Service. Appropriations required to pay the cost of interest and redemption charges, including the funding of any reserve or sinking fund requirements on indebtedness existing or legally authorized as of January 1, 1979, or on bonded indebtedness thereafter approved according to law by a vote of the electors of the issuing entity, voting in an election for such purpose.

Debt Service Fund. Governmental fund used to account for and report financial resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditure for principal and interest. Debt service funds should be used to report resources if doing so is legally mandated. Financial resources that are being accumulated for principal and interest maturing in future years also should be reported in debt service funds.

Debt Service Requirements. The amount of money required to pay interest on outstanding debt, serial maturities of principal for serial bonds, and required contributions to accumulate money for future retirement of term bonds.

Deduction. A term used to describe decreases in the net position of fiduciary funds.

Deep-Discount Debt. Debt issued with a stated interest rate significantly less than the effective interest rate (e.g., less than 75 percent of the effective interest rate).

Defaulted Taxes. Delinquent secured property taxes that become subject to redemption penalties and fees as of July 1st. Property, by operation of law, becomes subject to the Tax Collector's power to sell five years after becoming tax defaulted.

Defeasance. In the context of financial reporting, netting of outstanding liabilities and related assets on the statement of financial position. Most refundings result in the defeasance of the refunded debt. Defeasance also is sometimes encountered in conjunction with annuity contracts purchased in connection with lottery prizes and settlements of claims and judgments.

Deferred Inflow(s) of Resources. An acquisition of net assets by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period. A deferred inflow of resources has a negative effect on net position, similar to liabilities.

Deferred Outflow(s) or Resources. A consumption of net assets by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period. A deferred outflow of resources has a positive effect on net position, similar to assets.

Deferred Retirement Option Program (DROP). An optional program that permits an employee to elect a calculation of benefit payments based on service credits and salary, as applicable, as of the DROP entry date. The employee continues to provide service by the employer after the DROP entry date; however, the pensions that would have been paid to the employee (if the employee had retired and not entered the DROP) are credited to an individual employee plan until the end of the DROP period.

Deficiency. A general term indicating the amount by which anything falls short of some requirement or expectation. For example, a local governments' net assets may be insufficient to meet its net liabilities. The term should not be used without qualification.

Deficit. (1) The excess of the liabilities of a fund over its assets. (2) The excess of expenditures over revenues during an accounting period; or, in the case of proprietary funds, the excess of expenses over revenues during an accounting period.

Defined Benefit Pension Plan (or OPEB). Pension or OPEB plans that are used to provide defined benefit pensions or OPEB.

Defined Benefit Pensions (or OPEB). Pensions or OPEB for which the income or other benefits that the employee will receive at or after separation from employment are defined by the benefit terms. The pensions or OPEB may be stated as a specified dollar amount or as an amount that is calculated based on one or more factors such as age, years of service, and compensation.

Defined Contribution Pensions (or OPEB) Plan. Pensions or OPEB having terms that (1) provide an individual account for each employee; (2) define the contributions that an employer is required to make (or the credits that it is required to provide) to an active employee's account for period in which that employee renders service; and (3) provide that the pensions (or OPEB) an employee will receive will depend only on the contributions (or credits) to the employee's account, actual earnings on investments of those contributions (or credits), and the effects of forfeitures of contributions (or credits) made for other employees, as well as pension plan administrative costs, that are allocated to the employee's account.

Delinquent (Special) Assessments. Special assessments remaining unpaid on and after the date to which a penalty for nonpayment is attached.

Delinquent Abstract. See Redemption Roll.

Delinquent Roll. See Redemption Roll.

Delinquent Taxes. Taxes remaining unpaid on and after the date a penalty for nonpayment is attached. Even though the penalty may be subsequently waived and a portion of the taxes may be abated or canceled, the unpaid balances continue to be delinquent taxes until abated, canceled, paid, or converted into tax liens.

Delinquent Unsecured Roll. A list of unsecured property declared to be in default by the tax collector in a particular year.

Demand Bonds. Long-term debt issuances with demand (put) provisions that require the issuer to repurchase the bonds upon notice from the bondholder at a price equal to the principal plus accrued interest. To ensure the ability to redeem the bonds, issuers of demand bonds frequently enter into short-term standby liquidity agreements and long-term takeout agreements.

Dependent Special District. A special district that has a legislative body that consists, in whole or part, of ex officio members who are officers of a county or city or who are appointees of those officers and not appointed to a fixed term.

Depletion. The allocation of the cost of wasting assets (e.g., timber, oil, coal) to the periods benefited by their use.

Deposit. Money placed with a banking or other institution or with a person, sometimes for a specific purpose.

Depository Insurance. Depository insurance includes (1) Federal depository insurance funds, such as those maintained by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC or FDICIA), (2) State depository insurance funds, and (3) multiple financial institutions collateral pools that insure public deposits. In such a pool, a group of financial institutions holding public funds pledges collateral to a common pool.

Deposit Warrant. A financial document prepared by an appointed accounting or finance officer authorizing the treasurer of a government to accept for deposit sums of money collected by various departments and agencies of the government. See Warrant.

Depreciation. (1) Expiration in the service life of capital assets, other than wasting assets, attributable to wear and tear, deterioration, the action of the physical elements, inadequacy, and obsolescence. (2) The portion of the cost of a capital asset, other than a wasting asset, charged as an expense during a particular period. In accounting for depreciation, the cost of a capital asset, less any salvage value, is prorated over the estimated service life of such an asset, and each period is charged with a portion of such cost. Through this process, the entire cost of the asset is ultimately charged off as an expense.

Depreciation Schedule. A schedule listing the annual allocation of the cost of capital assets to future periods, using one of the depreciation methods acceptable under GAAP.

Derivative. A financial instrument whose value depends on, or is derived from, the value of an underlying asset, interest rate, foreign exchange or an acceptable index rate. The term also is applied to similar transactions, such as structured financial instruments (for example, mortgage-backed securities).

Derivative Instrument. An arrangement to receive or make payments based on prices related to a specified transaction without actually entering into that transaction. Specifically, a financial instrument or other contract that has (1) the settlement factors, including one or more reference rates and one or more notional amounts, (2) leverage, and (3) net settlement.

Derived Tax Revenues. Nonexchange revenues that result from assessments imposed on exchange transactions (income taxes, sales taxes and other assessments on earnings or consumption).

Developer Fees. Fees charged to developers to cover, in whole or in part, the anticipated cost of improvements that will be necessary as a result of the development (e.g., parks, sidewalks).

Direct Charges. See Direct Expenses.

Direct Costs. See Direct Expenses.

Direct Costing. Use of actual source data (invoices) to establish the historical cost of a capital asset.

Direct Debt. The outstanding long-term debt instruments, including bonds, notes, certificates of participation, loans, and leases, of the government used preparing the statistical section of an ACFR.

Direct Expenses. An expense that is specifically associated with a service, program, or department and, thus, is clearly identifiable with a particular function.

Direct Labor. The cost of labor directly expended in the production of specific goods or rendition of specific services.

Direct Material Cost. The cost of materials that become an integral part of a specific manufactured product or which are consumed in the performance of a specific service.

Director of Finance. In the context of government, an office, created by the voters, with the power and duties of the auditor-controller, treasurer, and tax collector, and such other duties as prescribed by the board of supervisors.

Disallowed Costs. Charges to a federal or state award that the awarding agency or pass through entity determines to be unallowable, in accordance with the applicable federal or state statutes. Regulations, or the terms and conditions of a federal or state award.

Disclaimer of Opinion. In the context of an independent auditors report, a report stating that the auditor does not express an opinion on the financial statements. The disclaimer of opinion is appropriate when the auditor has not performed an examination sufficient in scope to enable him or her to form an opinion on the financial statements. A disclaimer of opinion should not be expressed because the auditor believes, on the basis of the examination, that there are material departures from GAAP. In such circumstances, an adverse opinion would be appropriate. See also Adverse Opinion, Modified Opinion, and Qualified Opinion.

Discount. In the context of bonds payable and investments, the amount by which par value exceeds the price paid for security. The discount generally represents the difference between the nominal interest rate and the actual or effective rate of return to the investor.

Discount Rate. The rate used to adjust a series of future payments to reflect the time value of money. For the purpose of calculating the pension benefit obligation defined by GASB, this rate is equal to the estimated long-term rate of return on current and future investments of the pension plan. In the context of leases, the discount rate used by the lessee is the lessee's incremental borrowing rate unless the lessee is aware of the lessor's implicit rate and that rate is less than the lessee's incremental borrowing rate.

Discount Rate — as used in GASB 73. A yield or index rate for 20-year tax-exempt general obligation municipal bonds with an average rating of AA/Aa or higher (or equivalent quality on another rating scale).

Discount Rate — as used in GASB 87. The rate used for making present value calculations pertaining to lease liabilities.

Discounting. A method used to determine the present value of a future cash payment or series of payments that takes into consideration the time value of money.

Discounted Present Value. See Present Value.

Discrete Presentation (Component Units). Method of reporting financial data of component units separately from financial data of the primary government.

Discrete Presentation (Discretely Presented). The method of reporting financial data of component units in a column(s) separate from the financial data of the primary government. An integral part of this method of presentation is that individual component unit supporting information is required to be provided within condensed financial statements within the notes to the reporting entity's basic financial statements or in combining statements in basic financial statements.

Discussion Memorandum (DM). Due-process document issued by the GASB that solicits comments from interested parties on various aspects of a technical issue that is the subject of research by the board.

Documented Vessel. Any vessel required to have a valid marine document issued by the Bureau of Customs of the United States, subject to special valuation procedures.

Dollar Purchase/Reverse Repurchase Agreement. A repurchase/reverse repurchase agreement that involves the transfer of securities in which the parties agree that the securities returned usually will be of the same issuer but will not be the same certificates. Fixed coupon and yield maintenance agreements are the most common types of dollar agreements.

Double Entry. A system of bookkeeping requiring that, for every entry made on the debit side of an account or accounts, entry or entries be made in an equal amount to the credit side of another account or accounts.

Dry Period Financing. The cash required to for certain periods of time when cash receipts are insufficient to meet the cash demands.

Due from _____ Fund. An asset account used to indicate amounts owed to a particular fund by another fund for goods sold or services rendered. This account includes only short-term obligations on open account, not interfund loans. See Advance from Fund and Interfund Receivable/Payable.

Due from _____ Government. An asset account reflecting amounts due to the reporting government from another government. These amounts may represent grants-in-aid, shared taxes, taxes collected by another unit, loans, and charges for services rendered by a reporting unit for another government.

Due Process. Procedures followed by the GASB to ensure that the views of all interested parties are solicited and considered prior to issuing an authoritative pronouncement. At a minimum, due process requires that all statements and interpretations be preceded by an exposure draft.

Due to Fiscal Agent. A liability account reflecting amounts due to fiscal agents, such as commercial banks, for servicing a government's maturing interest and principal payments on indebtedness.

Due to _____ Fund. A liability account reflecting amounts owed by a particular fund to another fund for goods sold or service rendered. These amounts include only short-term obligations on open account and not interfund loans. See Advance to Fund and Interfund Receivable/Payable.

Duration. In the context of investment disclosure, a measure of a debt investment's exposure to fair value changes arising from changes interest rates. Duration uses the present value of cash flows, weighted for those cash flows as a percentage of the investment's full price.

E

Early Recognition Option. A term used in connection with debt service funds. The option to recognize an expenditure in the current period in a debt service fund for principal and interest payments due early in the subsequent period. This option is available only in situations involving the nondiscretionary transfer of resources to a debt service fund in the current period for payments due shortly after the end of the fiscal year (i.e., usually within one to several days, and never more than one month later).

Earnings. See Income and Revenues.

Economic Gain/Loss. In the context of an advance refunding, the difference between the present value of the old debt service requirements and the present value of the new debt service requirements discounted at the effective interest rate and adjusted for additional cash paid.

Economic Resources Measurement Focus. A measurement focus under which the aim of a set of financial statements is to report all inflows, outflows, and balances affecting or reflecting an entity's net position. The economic resources measurement focus is used for proprietary and fiduciary funds, as well as for government-wide financial reporting. It also is used by business enterprises and not-for-profit organizations in the private sector.

Educational Revenue Augmentation Fund (ERAF). The fund established for the deposit of money (property tax dollars) deducted and transferred from the county, cities, and special districts for subsequent distribution to schools.

Effective Interest Rate (Yield). The rate of earnings on a bond investment, based on the actual price paid for the bond, the coupon rate, the maturity date, and the length of time between interest dates, in contrast with the nominal interest rate.

Effectiveness. A term used by auditors to describe to the degree to which an entity, program, or procedure is successful at achieving its goals and objectives.

Efficiency. A term by auditors to describe the degree to which an entity, program, or procedure is successful at achieving its goals and objectives with the least use of scarce resources.

Electronic Data Processing (EDP). Data processing by means of high-speed electronic equipment. See Data Processing.

Eligibility Requirements. A term used in connection with government-mandated and voluntary nonexchange transactions to describe conditions established by enabling legislation or the resource provided (qualifying characteristics of recipients, timing requirements, allowable costs, other contingencies) that are required to be met before a transaction (other than the provision of cash or other assets received in advance) can occur.

Emerging Issues Task Force. A group established to assist the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) in improving financial reporting through the timely identification, discussion, and resolution of financial accounting issues within the framework of FASB Accounting Standards Codification. (GASB has not established an emerging issues task force, although it is empowered to do so).

Eminent Domain. The power of a government to acquire private property for public purposes. Eminent domain is frequently used to obtain real property that cannot be purchased from owners in a voluntary transaction. When the power of eminent domain is exercised, owners are compensated by the government in an amount determined by the courts.

Employer Entity. The entity that employs the individuals for whom a paying entity makes on-behalf payments for fringe benefits and salaries. The employer entity may be governmental or nongovernmental.

Employer's Contributions. In the context of pension benefit and OPEB plans, these are payments made by the employer into a pension or OPEB plan. Only amounts paid to trustees and outside parties qualify as contributions.

Enabling Legislation. Authorizes the government to assess, levy, charge, or otherwise mandate payment of resources (from external resource providers) and includes a legally enforceable requirement that those resources be used only for the specific purposes stipulated in the legislation. Legal enforceability means that a government can be compelled by an external party such as citizens, public interest groups, or the judiciary to use resources created by enabling legislation only for the purposes specified by the legislation.

Encumbrances. Commitments related to unperformed (executory) contracts for goods or services. Used in budgeting, encumbrances are not GAAP expenditures or liabilities but represent the estimated amount of expenditures ultimately to result if unperformed contracts in process are completed. Any encumbrances remaining at fiscal year-end should be classified as restricted, committed or assigned fund balance in the governmental fund balance sheet.

Endowment. Funds or property donated with either a temporary or permanent restriction as to their use. Endowments with the stipulation that the principal balance not be disbursed are often accounted for in permanent funds. See Permanent Fund.

Enterprise District. A special district operated as a business enterprise, charging customers fees for services. Generally these special type of special districts cannot levy taxes unless statutorily allowed to do so.

Enterprise Fund. Used to report any activity for which a fee is charged to external users for goods or services. Activities are required to be reported as enterprise funds if any one of the following criteria is met. Governments should apply each of these criteria in the context of the activity's principal revenue sources. (1) The activity is financed with debt that is secured solely by a pledge of the net revenues from fees and charges of the activity. Debt that is secured by a pledge of net revenues from fees and charges and the full faith and credit of a related primary government or component unit, even if that government is not expected to make any payments, is not payable solely from fees and charges of the activity. (Some debt may be secured, in part, by a portion of its own proceeds but should be considered as payable solely from the revenues of the activity). (2) Laws or regulations require that the activity's costs of providing services including capital costs (such as depreciation or debt services), be recovered with fees and charges, rather than with taxes or similar revenues. (3) The pricing policies of the activity established fees and charges designed to recover its costs, including capital costs (such as depreciation or debt service).

Entitlement. The amount of payment to which a state or local government is entitled, pursuant to an allocation formula contained in applicable statutes.

Entity. The basic unit upon which accounting and/or financial reporting activities focus. The basic governmental legal and accounting entity is prescribed by GAAP to be the reporting entity for financial statement reporting purposes and it alone may issue ACFRs and BFS.

Entity Differences. A difference between the budgetary basis of accounting and GAAP, arising because the appropriated budget either includes or excludes organizations, programs, activities, and functions which may or may not be compatible with the criteria defining the governmental reporting entity.

Entry. The record of a financial transaction in the appropriate book of account.

Entry Age Actuarial Cost Method. A method under which the actuarial present value of the projected benefits of each individual included in an actuarial valuation is allocated on a level basis over the earnings or service of the individual between entry age and assumed exit age(s). The portion of this actuarial present value allocated to a valuation year is called the normal cost. The portion of this actuarial present value not provided for a valuation date by the actuarial present value of future normal costs is called the actuarial accrued liability.

Equalized Roll. The combination, as of August 20, of the local valuations certified by the assessor, any changes made by the county board of supervisors in July, and the current state-assessed valuations reported by the State Board of Equalization.

Equipment. See Machinery and Equipment.

Equity Accounts. In those accounts presenting either fund balances or net position, this is the difference between assets and liabilities of the fund.

Equity Securities. Any security that represents an ownership interest in an entity, including common, preferred, or other capital stock; unit investment trusts; and closed-end mutual funds. However, the term equity security does not include convertible debt or preferred stock that either is required to be redeemed by the issuing entity or is redeemable at the option of the investor.

Equivalent Single Amortization Period. The weighted average of all amortization periods used when components of the total unfunded actuarial accrued liability are separately amortized and the average is calculated in accordance with the parameters.

Error Correction. A change from (a) applying an accounting principle that is not generally accepted to transactions or other events that previously were significant to (b) applying a generally accepted accounting principle to those transactions or other events is an error correction.

Escheat (Abandoned Property). The reversion of property to a government entity in the absence of legal claimants or heirs. The laws of many governmental entities provide that a rightful owner or heir can reclaim escheated property into perpetuity. This does not necessarily mean that governments hold all escheated property into perpetuity. Because large portions of escheated property are never reclaimed, most governments use some of the property to help finance with either their general or specific operations.

Estimated Life. The expected economic useful life of an asset, from the date placed in service to the projected retirement date.

Estimated Revenue. The amount of revenue estimated to accrue or to be collected during a fiscal period.

Estimated Uncollectible Accounts. See Allowance for Uncollectibles.

Estimated Uncollectible Receivables. See Allowance for Uncollectibles.

Ethics Rule 202. Ethics rule established by the AICPA that places on the independent auditor the burden of proof to justify any material departures from the guidance found in Category B of the GAAP hierarchy.

Ethics Rule 203. Ethics rule established by the AICPA that makes it an ethical violation for the independent auditor to assert that financial statements are fairly presented in conformity with GAAP if those statements materially violate standards issued by the appropriate authoritative standard-setting body. A special exception applies when unusual circumstances would make the application of an authoritative standard misleading. This would apply to guidance found in Category A of the GAAP hierarchy.

Excess Insurance. The transfer of risk of loss from one party (the insured) to another (the excess insurer) in which the excess insurer provides insurances (as defined in this glossary) in excess of a certain, typically large amount. For example, an insurance to transfer risk of aggregate losses above \$5 million by its pool participants.

Exchange (Exchange Transaction). Transactions in which each party receives and surrenders essentially equal values.

Exchange-Like Transaction. Transactions in which there is an identifiable exchange between the reporting government and another party, but the values exchanged may not be quite equal or the direct benefits of the exchange may not be exclusively for the parties to the exchange. Examples include certain fees for regulatory or professional licenses and permits, certain tap fees, certain developer contributions, certain grants and donations, and other transactions that, regardless of the label applied to them, are based on an exchange of similar but not equal values.

Exempt Property. Property acquired by a public entity, which becomes exempt from taxation under the laws of the state.

Exit Price. The price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability.

Expected Useful Life. See Estimated Life.

Expenditure-Driven Grants. Government-mandated or voluntary non-exchange transactions in which expenditure is the prime factor for determining eligibility. Also referred to as reimbursement grants.

Expenditures. Under current financial resources measurement focus, decreases in net financial resources not properly classified as other financing sources nor as deferred outflow of resources. Expenditures are recognized when liabilities are incurred, exceptions apply.

Expenses. In the context economic resources measurement focus, outflows or other using up of assets or incurrences of liabilities (or a combination of both) from delivering or producing goods, rendering services, or carrying out other activities that constitute the entity's ongoing major or central operations.

Explicit Measurable Equity Interest. A term used in connection with joint ventures. An asset resulting from a stipulation in the joint venture agreement that the participants have a present or future claim to the net resources of the joint venture and setting forth the method to determine the participants' shares of the joint venture's net resources.

Exposure Draft (ED). Due-process document issued by the GASB soliciting comments from interested parties on a proposed authoritative pronouncement.

External Auditor. Independent auditor(s) typically engaged to conduct the audit of a government's financial statements.

External Financing Sources. In governmental fund types, includes revenues, other financing sources, and transfers in. This is a conventional term and should not be used in the financial statement presentation.

External Investment Pool. An arrangement that commingles (pools) the money of more than one legally separate entity and invests, on the participants' behalf, in an investment portfolio; one or more of the participants is not part of the sponsor's reporting entity. An external investment pool can be sponsored by an individual government, jointly by more than one government, or by a nongovernmental entity.

Extinguishment of Debt. Using financial resources that did not arise from debt proceeds; the debtor pays the creditor and is relieved of all its obligations with respect to the debt. This includes the debtor's reacquisition of its outstanding debt securities in the public securities markets, regardless of whether the securities are canceled or held as so-called treasury bonds. The debtor is legally released from being the primary obligor under the debt, either judicially or by the creditor, and it is probable that the debtor will not be required to make future payments with respect to that debt under any guarantees.

F

Face Value. As applied to securities, the amount of the issuer's liability stated in the security document. See Par Value.

Fair Value. The price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date or described as an exit price (GASB Statement No. 72, as amended).

Federal Award. Federal financial assistance and federal cost-reimbursement contracts that nonfederal entities receive directly from federal awarding agencies or indirectly from pass-through entities.

Federal Financial Assistance. For purposes of applying the provisions of the Single Audit Act of 1997 and 2 CFR 200 (subpart F), Audits of State and Local Governments, assistance provided by a federal agency in the form of grants, contracts, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Federal financial assistance does not include direct federal cash assistance to individuals.

Federal Program. All Federal awards to a nonfederal entity assigned a single number in the Assistance Listings Numbers (ALN).

Fidelity Bond. A written promise to indemnify against losses from theft, defalcation, and misappropriation of public monies by government officers and employees.

Fiduciary Fund. A category of funds used to report assets held in a trust agreement or equivalent arrangement that has certain characteristics or in a custodial capacity for the benefit of others and which therefore cannot be used to support the government's own programs. The fiduciary fund category includes pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds, investment trust funds, private-purpose trust funds, and custodial funds.

Final Amended Budget. A term used in connection with budgetary reporting. The adopted budget adjusted by all fund balance classifications, transfers, allocations, supplemental appropriations, and other legally authorized legislative and executive changes applicable to the fiscal year, whenever signed into law or otherwise legally authorized.

Final Budget. The original budget adjusted by all reserves, transfers, allocations, supplemental appropriations, and other legally authorized legislative and executive changes applicable to the fiscal year, whenever signed into law or otherwise legally authorized.

Financial Accountability. The level of accountability that exists if a primary government appoints a voting majority of an organization's governing board and is either able to impose its will on that organization or there is a potential for the organization to provide specific financial benefits to, or impose specific financial burdens on, the primary government. Accountability for governmental organizations with a separately elected governing board, a governing board appointed by another government, or a jointly appointed board that is fiscally dependent on the primary government.

Financial Accounting Foundation (FAF). A not-for-profit organization responsible for overseeing the operations of both GASB and FASB.

Financial Accounting Standards Advisory Council (FASAC). An advisory group that assists FASB. FASAC includes representatives of all of FASB's major constituents.

Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB). The authoritative accounting and financial reporting standard-setting body for business enterprises and not-for-profit organizations. FASB is the direct successor of the Committee on Accounting Procedure and the Accounting Principles Board. GASB and its predecessors have elected to apply a number of FASB's standards, as well as those of its predecessors, to state and local government.

Financial Audit. An audit made to determine whether the financial statements of a government are presented fairly, in conformity with GAAP/GASB and conducted in accordance with government auditing standards.

Financial Instrument. A financial instrument is cash, evidence of an ownership interest in an entity, or a contract that both: (1) imposes on one entity a contractual obligation to deliver cash or another financial instrument to a second entity or exchange other financial instruments on potentially unfavorable terms with the second entity (for example, an option), and (2) conveys to that second entity a contractual right to receive cash or another financial instrument from the first entity or to exchange other financial instruments on potentially favorable terms with the first entity (for example, an option).

Financial Reporting Entity. A primary government, organizations for which the primary government is financially accountable, and other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with the primary government are such that exclusion would cause the reporting entity's financial statements to be misleading or incomplete. However, a governmental organization other than a primary government (such as a component unit, a joint venture, a jointly governed organization, or other stand-alone government) serves as the nucleus for its own reporting entity when it issues separate financial statements.

Financing Requirements. In governmental fund types, the total financing needs for the accounting period involved. This is a conventional term and should not be used in the financial presentation.

Financial Resources. Resources that are or will become available for spending. Financial resources include cash and resources ordinarily expected to be converted to cash (receivables, investments). Financial resources also may include inventories and prepaid items (because they obviate the need to expend current available financial resources)

Financial Resources Measurement Focus. A measurement focus according to which the aim of a set of financial statements is to report the near-term (current) inflows, outflows, and balances of expendable (spendable) financial resources. The current financial resources measurement focus is unique to accounting and financial reporting for state and local governments and is used solely for reporting the financial position and results of operations of governmental funds.

Financial Section. One of the three basic sections of an ACFR. The financial section is used to present the independent auditor's report on the financial statements, the basic financial statements (including the notes to the financial statements), required supplementary information, combining statements, individual fund statements and schedules, and supplementary information, as needed.

Financial Statements. A tabulation of amounts, derived from accounting records and expressed in words and dollars, that displays either (1) the financial position of the reporting unit at a moment in time or (2) inflows and outflows of resources from transactions or other events during a period of time.

Financial Uses. In governmental fund types, decreases, excluding expenditure refunds, in the net current assets of a fund. Financing uses includes expenditures, other financing uses, and transfers out.

Finding. In the context of financial statement audits, published communication of an internal control weakness or instance of noncompliance in connection with an audit.

Fiscal Accountability. Responsibility of governments to justify that their actions in the current period have complied with public decisions concerning the raising and spending of public moneys in the short term (usually one budgetary cycle or one year).

Fiscal Agent. A fiduciary agent, usually a bank or a local government officer, who performs the function of paying debt principal and interest when due.

Fiscal Dependence. A term used in connection with the definition of the financial reporting entity. A situation requiring the inclusion of a legally separate entity as a component unit within the financial reporting entity because the governing board of the primary government may arbitrarily override the financial decisions of the legally separate entity regarding (1) its budget, (2) the levying of taxes or the setting of rates or charges, or (3) the issuance of bonded debt.

Fiscal Funding Clause. A provision in a lease that allows a cancellation if a governing body does not appropriate funds to pay for a lease in a given period.

Fiscal Period. Any period at the end of which a government determines its financial position and the results of its operations. Often referred to as an Accounting Period.

Fiscal Year. For financial reporting purposes, any 12 month period to which the annual operating budget applies and at the end of which a government determines its financial position and the results of its operations. For budgetary purposes, the current 12 month period to which the annual operating budget applies and at the end of which a government determines its position and the results of its operations.

Five Percent Criterion. The second of two tests used to determine whether a given governmental fund or enterprise fund should be reported as a major fund in the basic financial statements. This test is applied to the combined total assets, liabilities, revenues or expenses/expenditures of all governmental and enterprise funds for which the 10 percent criterion has been met. See Ten Percent Criterion.

Fixed Budget. A budget setting forth dollar amounts that are not subject to change based on the volume of goods or services to be provided. See Flexible Budget.

Fixed Charge (Fixed Charge Assessment). A charge in addition to any ad valorem taxes included on a tax bill. Fixed charges are not based on the assessed value of the property and are levied on a parcel basis (e.g., for sewer, library, and flood control assessments). See Special Benefit Assessment(s).

Fixed Costs. Costs of providing goods or services that do not vary proportionately with the volume of goods or services provided (e.g., insurance and contributions to retirement systems).

Fixed Coupon Repurchase/Reverse Repurchase Agreement. A repurchase/reverse repurchase agreement in which the parties agree that the securities returned will have the same stated interest rate as, and maturities similar to, the securities transferred.

Fixed-Income Securities. Securities that offer a specified, measurable cash flow (e.g., most bonds).

Fixtures. Attachments to buildings that are not intended to be removed and cannot be removed without damage to the buildings. Those fixtures with a useful life presumed to be as long as that of the building itself are considered a part of the building; all others are classified as equipment.

Flexible Budget. A budget whose dollar amounts vary according to the volume of goods or services to be provided. See Fixed Budget.

Flow of Current Financial Resources. See Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus.

Flow of Economic Resources. See Economic Resources Measurement Focus.

Food Stamps. A federal award program that is intended to improve the diets of members of low-income households by increasing their ability to purchase food.

Force Account. A method employed in the construction and/or maintenance of capital assets whereby a government's own personnel are used instead of an outside contractor. This method also calls for the purchase of materials by the government and the possible use of its own equipment, but the distinguishing characteristic of the force account method is the use of the government's own personnel.

Foreclosure. The seizure of property as payment for delinquent tax or special assessment obligations. Ordinarily, property foreclosed upon is resold to liquidate delinquent tax or special assessment obligations, but on occasion governments retain possession for their own needs.

Foreign Currency Risk. The risk that changes in the exchange rate will adversely affect the cash flows or fair value of a transaction.

Foreign Currency Transactions. Transactions whose terms are denominated in a currency other than the U.S. dollar. Foreign currency transactions arise when a government (1) buys or sells on credit goods or services whose prices are denominated in a foreign currency; (2) borrows or lends resources, and the amounts payable or receivable are denominated in a foreign currency; or (3) for other reasons acquires or disposes of assets, or incurs or settles liabilities denominated in a foreign currency.

Forfeiture. The automatic loss of cash or other property as a punishment for not complying with legal provisions and as compensation for the resulting damages or losses. This term should not be confused with confiscation. The latter term designates the actual taking over of the forfeited property by the government. Even after the property has been forfeited, it cannot be said to be confiscated until the government claims it.

Formal Budgetary Integration. The management control technique through which the annual operating budget is recorded in the general ledger through the use of budgetary accounts. It is intended to facilitate control over revenues and expenditures during the year.

Formula Grants. Government-mandated or voluntary nonexchange transactions involving the provision of resources based on established criteria (e.g., number of full-time equivalent students) other than the incurrence of qualifying expenditures. Also commonly referred to as shared revenues.

Franchise. A special privilege granted by a government permitting the continued use of public property, such as city streets, and usually involving the elements of monopoly and regulation.

Frozen Entry Age Actuarial Cost Method. A method under which the excess of the Actuarial Present Value of Projected Benefits of the group included in an Actuarial Valuation, over the sum of the Actuarial Value of Assets plus the Unfunded Frozen Actuarial Accrued Liability, is allocated on a level basis over the earnings or service of the group between the valuation date and assumed exit. This allocation is performed for the group as a whole, not as a sum of individual allocations. The Frozen Actuarial Accrued Liability is determined using the Entry Age Actuarial Cost Method. The portion of this Actuarial Present Value allocated to a valuation year is called the Normal Cost.

Full Cash Value. The amount of cash or its equivalent that property would bring if exposed for sale in the open market.

Full Faith and Credit. A pledge of the general taxing power for the payment of debt obligations. Bonds carrying such pledges are referred to as general obligation bonds or full faith and credit bonds.

Full Scope Audit. An audit covering: (1) Financial and Compliance, to determine (a) whether the financial statements of an audited entity present fairly the financial position, results of operations, and (when applicable) cash flows in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and (b) whether the entity has complied with the various legal and contractual requirements that may have a material effect on the financial statements; (2) Economy and Efficiency, to determine (a) whether the entity is managing and utilizing its resources (such as personnel, property, space) economically and efficiently, (b) the causes of inefficiencies or uneconomical practices, and (c) whether the entity has complied with laws and regulations concerning matters of economy and efficiency; and (3) Program Results, to determine (a) whether the desired results or benefits established by the legislature or other authorizing body are being achieved, and (b) whether the agency has considered alternatives that might yield the desired results at a lower cost.

Function. A group of related activities aimed at accomplishing a major service or regulatory program for which a government is responsible. For example, public health is a function.

Functional-Basis Combining. The process of grouping or combining similar funds and/or component units on a functional basis (e.g., transportation, economic development) for financial reporting purposes.

Functional Classification. Expenditure classification according to the principal purpose for which expenditures are made. Examples are public safety, public health, and public welfare.

Fund. A fiscal and accounting entity with a self-balancing set of accounts in which cash and other financial resources, all related liabilities and equities or balances, and changes therein, are recorded and segregated to carry on specific activities or attain certain objectives in accordance with special regulations, restrictions or limitations.

Fundamental Analysis. A method of estimating the fair value of a security when it is thinly traded or when quoted market prices are not available. Fundamental analysis considers assets, liabilities, operating statement performance, management, and economic environment of the issuer in estimating a fair value.

Fund Balance. In a governmental fund, the residual of assets, less liabilities and deferred inflows of resources (if applicable). Fund balance has five components: non-spendable, restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned.

Fund Balance Classifications. Financial statements for governmental funds may report up to five components of fund balance: non-spendable, restricted, committed, assigned and unassigned. The General Fund is the only governmental fund with a positive unassigned amount.

Fund Balance Sheet. A balance sheet for a single fund. See Fund and Balance sheet.

Fund Capital Assets. Capital assets that are associated with proprietary or trust funds.

Fund Classifications. One of the three categories (governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary) used to classify fund types.

Fund Financial Statements. Basic financial statements presented for governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary fund categories, in contrast to government-wide financial statements.

Fund Type. Any one of 11 categories into which all funds are classified in governmental accounting. The governmental fund types are General, Special Revenue, Debt Service, Capital Projects, and Permanent. The proprietary fund types are Enterprise and Internal Service. The fiduciary fund types are Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust, Investment Trust, Private-Purpose Trust, and Custodial funds.

Funded Debt. The same as bonded debt, which is the preferred term.

Funded Mandate. Also known as a government-mandated nonexchange transaction. A situation where a government at one level provides resources to a government at another level and requires the recipient to use the resources for a specific purpose (for example, federal programs that state or local governments are mandated to perform).

Funded Ratio (OPEB Only). The actuarial value of assets expressed as a percentage of the actuarial accrued liability.

G

GAAFR. Acronym for *Governmental Accounting, Auditing, and Financial Reporting*, a publication of the GFOA. Also known as the Blue Book.

GAAP Hierarchy. Sets forth what constitutes GAAP for all state and local governmental entities. The hierarchy establishes the order of priority of pronouncements and other sources of accounting and financial reporting guidance that a governmental entity should apply. The sources of authoritative GAAP are categorized in descending order of authority as follows: (1) GASB Statements (Category A); and (2) GASB Technical Bulletins; GASB Implementation Guides; and literature of the AICPA cleared by the GASB (Category B).

Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP). Conventions, rules, and procedures that together serve as the norm for the fair presentation of financial statements. GAAP is considered to be the uniform minimum standards of, and guidelines to, financial accounting and reporting. Adherence to GAAP is intended to assure that financial reports of all state and local governments (regardless of jurisdictional legal provisions and customs) contain the same types of financial statements and disclosures, for the same categories and types of funds and activities, based on the appropriate measurement and classification criteria.

Generally Accepted Auditing Standards (GAAS). Rules and procedures that govern the conduct of a financial audit. The Statements on Auditing Standards issued by the Auditing Standards Board of the AICPA constitute GAAS

Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards (GAGAS). Standards established by the GAO in its publication, *Government Auditing Standards* (GAS), commonly known as the Yellow Book for the conduct and reporting of both financial and performance audits. GAGAS sets forth general standards applicable to both types of audits and separate standards of fieldwork and reporting for financial and performance audits. The GAGAS standards of fieldwork and reporting for financial audits incorporate and build upon GAAS.

General Capital Assets. Capital assets that are not assets of any fund, but of the government unit as a whole. Most often these assets arise from the expenditure of the financial resources of governmental funds.

General Fund. The primary operating fund of a government. The General Fund accounts for and reports all financial resources not accounted for and reported in another fund.

General Journal. A journal in which are recorded all entries not recorded in special journals. See Journal and Special Journal.

General Ledger. A record containing the accounts needed to reflect the financial position and the results of operations of a government. In double-entry bookkeeping, the debits and credits in the general ledger are equal (i.e., the debit balances equal the credit balances). See Subsidiary Ledger, Control Account, and Subsidiary Account.

General Long-Term Debt. Long-term debt expected to be repaid from governmental funds. See Long-Term Debt.

General Obligation Bonds Payable. Bonds backed by the full faith and credit of government. See Full Faith and Credit.

General Obligation Debt. Debt paid by and secured by general taxation, generally income or property taxation. The full faith and credit of the government secure the debt.

General Purpose Government. States, counties, cities, towns and villages, and special districts (and similar).

General Revenues. All revenues are general revenues unless they are required to be reported as program revenues. All taxes, even those that are levied for a specific purpose, are general revenues and should be reported by type of tax — for example, sales tax, property tax, franchise tax, and income tax. All other nontax revenues (including interest, grants, and contributions) that do not meet the criteria to be reported as program revenues should also be reported as general revenues. General revenues should be reported after total net expense of the government's functions.

Going Concern. Significant information that is available raising doubts as to whether a legally separate entity can continue to meet its obligations as they become due without a substantial disposal of assets outside the ordinary course of business, restructuring of operations and debts, oversight of a financial assistance, or oversight or review board or similar.

Government Accountability Office (GAO). The investigative arm of the U.S. Congress charged with improving the performance and accountability of the federal government. The GAO issues the publication Government Auditing Standards (GAS), commonly known as the Yellow Book, which sets generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS).

Government Acquisitions. A situation in which a government acquires another entity, or the operations of another entity, in exchange for significant consideration. The consideration provided should be significant in relation to the asset and liabilities acquired. The acquired entity or operation becomes part of the acquiring government's legally separate entity.

Government Combinations. One of the following types of arrangements, after which a substantial portion of the services provided by the previously separate entities or their operations continue after the transaction has occurred:

- **Merger.** A combination of legally separate entities in which no significant consideration is exchanged and either (1) one or more of the entities cease to exist and one or more new governments are formed or (2) one or more legally separate entities cease to exist and their operations are merged into one or more continuing governments.
- **Acquisition.** A combination in which a new or continuing government acquires one or more other entities, or the operations of one or more other entities, in which no significant consideration is exchanged. The acquired entity or operation becomes part of the acquiring government's legal entity, and the acquired entity or operation ceases to exist as a legally separate entity.
- **Transfer of Operations.** A combination involving the operations of one or more governments or nongovernmental entities (not the entity itself) being moved to a new or existing government, in which no significant consideration is exchanged

Government Finance Officers Association (GFOA). Formerly the Municipal Finance Officers Association. An organization comprised of accounting and finance professionals from throughout the United States and Canada. The GFOA has played a major role in the development and promotion of GAAP for state and local government and sponsored the Certificate of Achievement for Excellence in Financial Reporting Program. Publishes *Governmental Accounting, Auditing, and Financial Reporting* (GAAFR), commonly known as the Blue Book.

Government Mergers. A government merger is a government combination of legally separate entities in which no significant consideration is exchanged and either (1) two or more governments (or one or more government and one or more nongovernmental entities) cease to exist as legally separate entities and are combined to form one or more new governments, or (2) one or more legally separate government or nongovernmental separate entities cease to exist and their operation is absorbed into, and provided by, one or more continuing governments.

Government National Mortgage Association (GNMA). GNMA is a U.S. governmental agency that guarantees certain types of securities (mortgage-backed securities), provides resources for, and administers certain types of low-income housing assistance programs.

Governmental Accounting. The composite activity of analyzing, recording, summarizing, reporting, and interpreting the financial transactions of governments.

Governmental Accounting Standards Advisory Council (GASAC). An advisory body established to assist GASB. The membership of GASAC represents all major groups with an interest in accounting and financial reporting for state and local governments.

Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB). The authoritative accounting and financial reporting standard-setting body for US State and local government entities.

Governmental Accounting, Auditing and Financial Reporting (GAAFR). Published by the GFOA and is also known as the Blue Book. It provides detailed guidance to the application of principles to the accounting and financial reporting activities of state and local governments.

Governmental Activities. Those activities of a government that are carried out primarily to provide services to citizens and that are financed primarily through taxes, intergovernmental grants and other nonexchange revenues. These activities are usually reported in the governmental funds and internal service funds.

Governmental Capital Assets. Assets that directly or indirectly are used in providing services that are not directly associated with fees or other revenues. Examples include roads, bridges, schools, and equipment used for fire protection.

Governmental External Investment Pool. An arrangement that commingles (pools) the money of more than one legally separate entity and invests, on the participants' behalf, in an investment portfolio. In this arrangement, one or more of the participants is not part of the sponsor's reporting entity. In California, it is typical for external pools to be used; the participants that are not typically part of the report local government entity and may include school districts and local-board-governed special districts.

Governmental Entity. For accounting and financial reporting purposes, an entity subject to the hierarchy of GAAP applicable to state and local governments. Composed of public corporations, bodies corporate and politic, and entities that have or are one or more of the following: (1) popular election of officers or appointment or approval of a controlling majority of the members of the entity's governing body by officials of one or more state or local governments, (2) the potential for unilateral dissolution by a government, with the net assets reverting to a government, or (3) the power to enact and enforce a tax levy. Additionally, entities with the ability to directly issue tax-exempt debt are presumed to be governmental

Governmental Funds. Funds generally used to account for tax supported activities. There are five different types of governmental funds consisting of the General Fund, Special Revenue Funds, Capital Projects Funds, Debit Service Funds, and Permanent Funds, as applicable. The funds focus primarily on the sources, uses, and balances of current financial resources and often has a budgetary orientation.

Governmental Financial Reporting Model. The minimum combination of financial statements, note disclosures, and required supplementary information prescribed for state and local governments by GASB.

Government-Mandated Nonexchange Transactions. When a government at one level provides resources to a government at another level and requires the recipient to use the resources for a specific purpose (for example, federal programs that state or local governments are mandated to perform.)

Government-wide Financial Statements. Financial statements that incorporate all of a government's governmental and business-type activities, as well as its nonfiduciary component units. There are two basic government-wide financial statements: the statement of net position and the statement of activities

Grant Anticipation Note (GAN). A short-term interest-bearing note issued by a government in anticipation of grants to be received at a later date. The notes are retired from proceeds of the grants to which they are related. See Interim Borrowing.

Grants. Transactions in which one governmental entity transfers cash or other items of value to (or incurs a liability for) another governmental entity, an individual, or an organization as a means of sharing program costs, subsidizing other governments or entities, or otherwise reallocating resources to the recipients.

Grants-in-Aid. See Grants.

Gross. Gross amount of income, profit, or interest, without deduction of tax or other contributions; total.

Gross Bonded Debt. The total amount of direct debt of a government represented by outstanding bonds before deduction of any assets available and earmarked for their retirement.

Guaranteed Investment Contract (GIC). A general obligation instrument issued by an insurance company, typically to a pension plan, that provides for a guaranteed return on principal over a specified period. The general assets of the issuing company support the GIC. Investment contracts issued by noninsurance companies are similar in substance to GICs, and except for those issued by financial institutions (BICs), are treated like GICs.

H

Historical Cost. The original price paid to acquire an asset or the amount received pursuant to the incurrence of a liability in an actual exchange transaction. See Cost.

Hold-Harmless Agreement. A contract that protects organizations from being sued when someone suffers damage, bodily injury, or financial loss on business property or while a service is being provided, exceptions apply.

Homeowner Exemption. A value reduction provided to homeowners pursuant to Revenue and Taxation Code section 218.

I

Impact Fees. Fees charged to developers to cover, in whole or in part, the anticipated cost of improvements that will be necessary as a result of the development (e.g., parks, sidewalks).

Implementation Guides. Guidance on the proper implementation of authoritative accounting and financial reporting standards issued by the staff of the GASB. Implementation guides use a question-and-answer format and enjoy Category B status on the hierarchy of GAAP for United States state and local governments. The GASB annually issues a Comprehensive Implementation Guide that consolidates, updates, and expands upon the guidance offered in the individual publications

Imposed Nonexchange Revenues. Assessments imposed on nongovernmental entities, including individuals, other than assessments on exchange transactions (for example, property taxes and fines).

Imprest Account. An account into which a fixed amount of money is placed for the purpose of minor disbursements or disbursements for a specific purpose (e.g., payroll). When a disbursement is made, a voucher is completed to record its date, amount, nature, and purpose. From time to time, a report with substantiating vouchers is prepared; the account is replenished for the exact amount of the disbursements and appropriate general ledger accounts are charged.

The total of cash plus substantiating vouchers always should equal the total fixed amount of money set aside in the imprest account. See Petty Cash.

Improvements. Addition made to, or change made in, a capital asset, other than maintenance, to prolong its life or to increase its efficiency or capacity. The cost of the addition or change normally is added to the book value of the asset (the term betterment is sometimes used instead).

Improvements other than Buildings. Attachments or annexations to land that are intended to remain so attached or annexed, such as sidewalks, trees, drives, tunnels, drains and sewers. Sidewalks, curbing, sewers and highways are sometimes referred to as betterments, but the term improvements is preferred.

Inactive Employees. Individuals no longer employed by an employer in the pension or OPEB plan or the beneficiaries of those individuals. Inactive employees include individuals who have accumulated benefits under the terms of a pension or OPEB plan but are not yet receiving benefits and individuals currently receiving benefits.

Inception of the Lease. The date of the lease agreement or commitment, if earlier. For purposes of this definition, a commitment should be in writing, signed by the parties in interest to the transaction, and should specifically set forth the principal provisions of the transaction. If negotiated, such a preliminary agreement or commitment does not qualify for purposes of this definition.

In-Relation-To Opinion. In an in-relation-to opinion, the independent auditor states that (1) the scope of the audit was limited to the basic financial statements and (2) based on the audit of the basic financial statements, it is possible to assert that the combining and individual fund statements and schedules are fairly presented in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole (rather than in their own right). An in-relation-to opinion is a lower level of assurance than as opinion on the fair presentation of the combining and individual fund and component unit financial statements.

Income. A term used in proprietary fund type accounting to represent 1) revenues or 2) the excess of revenues over expenses. See Operating Income, Income Before Transfers, and Net Income.

Income before Transfers. Proprietary fund operating income plus nonoperating revenues and minus nonoperating expenses.

Income Distributions. Interest, dividends, stock splits, and other distributions made by an issuer of securities. Income distributions on underlying securities are payable from the borrower to the lender, and income disruption on collateral securities are payable from the lender to the borrower.

Incurred but not Reported (IBNR) Claims. In the context of risk financing, claims for events that have occurred but have not yet been reported to the governmental entity, public-entity risk pool, insurer, or reinsurer as of the date of the financial statements. IBNR claims include (1) known loss events that are expected to be presented later as claims, (2) unknown loss events that are expected to become claims, and (3) expected future development on claims already reported.

Independent Auditor. An auditor(s) who is independent, both in fact and appearance, of the entities he or she audits. Both GAAS and GAGAS set specific criteria that should be met for an auditor to be considered independent.

Independent District. A special district that is governed by an independent board of directors elected by the districts' voters, or landowners within the district, or appointed to a fixed term of office by either the city council, board of trustees, or board of supervisors.

Indeterminate Appropriation. An appropriation that is not limited either to any definite period of time or to any definite amount. A distinction should be made between an indeterminate appropriation and a continuing appropriation. First, whereas a continuing appropriation is indefinite only as to time, an indeterminate appropriation is indefinite as to both time and amount. Second, even indeterminate appropriations that are indefinite only as to time are to be distinguished from continuing appropriations in that such indeterminate appropriations may eventually lapse (e.g., an appropriation to construct a building may be made to continue in effect until the building is constructed; once the building is completed, the unexpended balance of the appropriation lapses). On the other hand, a continuing appropriation may continue forever and can be abolished only by specific action of the legislative body.

Indirect Expenses. Expenses that are not program-specific and are usually allocated based on a systematic and rational formula. See Overhead.

Indirect Project Costs. Costs incurred after the acquisition of the property, such as construction administration (for example, the costs associated with a field office at a project site and the administrative personnel that staff the office), legal fees, and various office costs, that clearly relate to projects under development or construction. Examples of office costs that may be considered indirect project costs are cost accounting, design, and other departments providing services that are clearly related to real estate project.

Individual Investment (Accounts). An investment service provided by a governmental entity for other, legally separate entities that are not part of the same reporting entity. With individual investment accounts, specific investments are acquired for individual entities and the income from and changes in the value of those investments affect only the entity for which they were acquired.

Industrial Development Bonds. Bonds issued by governments, the proceeds of which are used to construct facilities for a private business enterprise.

Inflows of Resources. An acquisition of net assets by the government that is applicable to the reporting period. Includes revenues and special items and extraordinary items that are gains, and, in governmental funds, other financing sources.

Information Systems. See Data Processing.

Infrastructure (or Infrastructure Assets). Long-lived capital assets that normally are stationary in nature and normally can be preserved for a significantly greater number of years than most capital assets. Examples of infrastructures assets include roads, bridges, tunnels, drainage system, water and sewer systems, dams, and lighting systems. Buildings, except those that are not ancillary part of a network or infrastructure assets, should not be considered infrastructure assets.

Infrequent Items: Transactions and other events that are infrequent in occurrence. See Infrequency of Occurrence.

Infrequency of Occurrence: The underlying event or transactions should be of a type that would not reasonable be expected to recur in the foreseeable future, taking into account the environment in which the government operates.

Initial Direct Costs. In the context of lease accounting, only those costs incurred by the lessor that are (1) costs to originate a lease incurred in transactions with independent third parties that (a) result directly from and are essential to acquire that lease and (b) would not have been incurred had that leasing transaction not occurred and (2) certain costs directly related to specified activities performed by the lessor for that lease. Those activities are evaluating the prospective lessee's financial condition, evaluating and recording guarantees, negotiating lease terms, preparing and processing lease documents, and closing the transaction. The costs directly related to those activities should include only that portion of the employees' total compensation and payroll-related fringe benefits directly related to time spent performing those activities for that lease and other costs related to those activities that would not have been incurred but for that lease. Initial direct costs should not include costs related to activities performed by lessees, servicing existing leases, and other ancillary activities related to establishing and monitoring credit policies, supervision, and administration. Initial direct costs should not include administrative costs, rent, depreciation, any other occupancy and equipment costs and employee's compensation and fringe benefits related to activities described in the previous sentence, unsuccessful origination efforts, and idle time.

Inputs. The assumptions that market participants would use when pricing an asset or liability, including assumptions about risk, such as the following: (1) the risk inherent in a particular valuation technique used to measure fair value (such as a pricing model), and (2) the risk inherent in the inputs to the valuation technique.

In-Substance Assignment. In the context of hedge accounting, a situation that is considered substantially equivalent to an assignment because (1) the original swap counterparty, or the swap counterparty's credit support provider, is replaced; (2) the original swap agreement is ended, and the replacement swap agreement is entered into on the same date; (3) the terms that affect changes in fair values and cash flows in the original and replacement agreements are identical; and (4) any difference between the original swap agreement's exit price and the replacement swap's entry price can be attributed to the original swap agreement's exit price being based on a computation specifically permitted under the original swap agreement.

In-Substance Defeasance of Debt. When debt is considered defeased for accounting and financial reporting purposes, even though a legal defeasance has not occurred. When debt is defeased, it is no longer reported as a liability on the face of the statement of net position.

Insurance. The transfer of risk of loss from one party (the insured) to another party (the insurer) in which the insurer promises (usually specified in a written contract) to pay the insured or others on the insured's behalf an amount of money or services, or both, for economic losses sustained from an unexpected (accidental) event during a period of time for which the insured makes a premium payment to the insurer.

Insured Benefit Plan. In the context of OPEB, a financing arrangement whereby an employer accumulates funds with an insurance company, while employees are in active service, in return for which the insurance company unconditionally undertakes a legal obligation to pay the benefits of those employees or their beneficiaries, as defined in the employer's plan. From an employer perspective, an insured benefit resembles a defined contribution plan, while from an employee perspective it resembles a defined benefit plan.

Intangible Assets. Assets with an initial useful life that extends beyond a single reporting period that lack physical substance and that are neither financial in nature (neither a monetary asset nor a claim to a monetary asset) nor primarily held for the purpose of directly obtaining income or profit.

Interest in Property. Includes any legal or equitable interest in property.

Interest Method. In the context of bonds, a method of periodic amortization of issuance costs and premium or discount over the term of the related debt. The objective of the interest method is to arrive at a periodic interest cost (including amortization) that will represent a level effective rate on the sum of the face amount of the debt and (plus or minus) the unamortized premium or discount and issuance costs at the beginning of each period. The difference between the periodic interest cost so calculated and the nominal interest on the outstanding amount of the debt is the amount of periodic amortization.

Interest Rate Risk. The risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair values of a government's financial instruments or a government's cash flows.

Interest Rate Swap. An interest rate swap is a customized contract between two parties to swap two schedules of cash flows. The most common reason to engage in an interest rate swap is to exchange a variable-rate payment for a fixed rate payment or vice versa.

Interest Receivable on Investments. An asset account reflecting the amount of interest receivable on investments.

Interfund Activity. Activity between funds of the primary government, including blended component units. Interfund activities are divided into two broad categories, reciprocal and nonreciprocal. Reciprocal interfund activity comprises interfund loans and interfund services provided and used. Nonreciprocal interfund activity comprises interfund transfers and interfund reimbursements.

Interfund Loans. Amounts provided between funds and blended component units of the primary government with a requirement for repayment

Interfund Receivable/Payable. Short-term loans made by one fund to another, or the current position of an advance to or from another fund, where both funds are included in the primary government's reporting unit. See Interfund Activity.

Interfund Reimbursements. Repayments by one fund or blended component unit of a primary government to another for expenditures or expense incurred on its behalf.

Interfund Services Provided and Used. Sales and purchases of goods and services between funds and blended component units of the primary government for a price approximating their external exchange value.

Interfund Transaction. Transactions between funds of the same government reporting entity. See Interfund Activity and Internal Activities.

Interfund Transfers. Flows of assets (such as cash or goods) between funds and blended component units of the primary government without equivalent flows of assets in return and without a requirement for repayment

Intergovernmental Payable. A liability account reflecting amounts owed by the reporting government to another government.

Intergovernmental Receivable. An asset account reflecting amounts due to the reporting government from another government. These amounts may represent grants-in-aid, shared taxes, taxes collected by another unit, loans, and charges for services rendered by the government for another government.

Intergovernmental Revenues. Revenues from other governments in the form of grants, entitlements, shared revenues, or payments in lieu of taxes.

Interim Borrowing. (1) Short-term loans to be repaid from general revenues during the course of a fiscal year. (2) Short-term loans in anticipation of tax collections, grants, or bond issuance. See Bond Anticipation Notes, Grant Anticipation Notes and Tax Anticipation Notes.

Interim Financial Statements. Financial statements prepared as of a date or for a period during the fiscal year and including only financial transactions during the current year to date.

Internal Activities (Interfund Transactions). Transfers between funds or activities of a government during a period.

Internal Auditing. An independent appraisal of the diverse operations and controls within a government entity to determine whether acceptable policies and procedures are followed, established standards are met, resources are used efficiently and economically, and the organization's objectives are being achieved. The term (internal auditing) covers all forms of appraisal of activities undertaken by auditors working for and within an organization.

Internal Balances (Interfund Loans). Receivables or payables between funds or activities of a government that exist at the reporting date.

Internal Control Structure. Policies and procedures established to provide reasonable assurance that specific government objectives will be achieved.

Internal Financial Reporting. Financial reporting specifically designed to meet the needs of management.

Internal Investment Pools. An arrangement that commingles (pools) the money of more than one fund or component unit of a reporting entity. Investment pools that include participation by legally separate entities that are not part of the same reporting entity as the pool sponsor are not internal investment pools, but rather are external investment pools.

Internal Service Fund (ISF). Used to report any activity that provides goods or services to other funds, departments, or agencies of the primary governments, on a cost-reimbursement basis. Internal service funds should be used only if the reporting government is the predominant participant in the activity. Otherwise, the activity should be reported as an enterprise fund.

Internally Generated Intangible Asset. Intangible assets that are either (1) created or produced by the government or an entity contracted by the government or (2) acquired from a third party but requiring more than minimal incremental effort on the part of the government to begin to achieve their expected level of service capacity.

Interperiod Equity. The measure of the extent to which current-year revenues are sufficient to pay for the services provided by the government entity during the year, and whether current-year citizens are receiving services by shifting part of the payment burden to future years' citizens or by using up previously accumulated resources.

Intra-Entity Activity. Resource flows between a primary government and blended component units during a period. Should be reclassified as internal activities and treated as interfund activity.

Intra-Entity Leases. These are leasing arrangements between the primary government and the lessee or lessor where the lessee or the lessor is considered a blended component unit of the primary government. (Note: Provisions of GASB 87, as amended, do not apply in this such situations.)

Intrafund Transfer. A transfer of central staff costs to the operating units in the same governmental type fund.

Introductory Section. The first of three essential components of any ACFR. The introductory section typically provides general information on a government's structure and personnel, as well as information useful in assessing the government's economic condition. The contents of the introductory section normally fall outside the scope of the independent audit of the financial statements. The key element of the introductory section is the letter of transmittal. It includes items such as table of contents, letter of transmittal, and other material deemed appropriate by management.

Inventory. The aggregate of those items of tangible personal property that (1) are held for sale in the ordinary course of operations, (2) are in process of production for such sale, or (3) are to be currently consumed in the production of goods or services to be available for sale. Operating materials and supplies (for example, property held for installation or use in the provision of services) or certain business-type activities usually are treated as inventory.

Investee. An entity that issued an equity instrument of which all or a portion is held by an investor.

Investing Activities. In the context of cash flows reporting, cash flows from making and collecting loans (except program loans) and from acquiring and disposing of debt or equity instruments.

Investment. A security or other asset that (1) a government holds primarily for the purpose of income or profit and (2) has presented service capacity based solely on its ability to generate cash or to be sold to generate cash.

Investment Section. One of four sections of an ACFR for an investment pool and one of five sections of an ACFR of a public employee retirement system.

Investment Trust Fund. Fiduciary fund type used to report fiduciary activities from the external portion of investment pools and individual investment accounts that are held in a GASB other fiduciary trust.

Invitation to Comment (ITC). A due-process document that may be released by GASB to solicit the views of interested parties on a topic under study by the board prior to the release of an exposure draft.

Issuer. In the context of bonds, the entity that is legally obligated to make principal and interest payments to bondholders. In the context of investments generally, the entity that has the authority to distribute a security or other investment. In the context of mutual funds/external investment pools/other pooled investments, the entity invested in, rather than the investment company manager or pool sponsor.

J

Job Account. An account pertaining either to an operation that occurs regularly (a standing order) or to a specific piece of work (job order) showing all charges for material and labor used and other costs incurred, together with any allowances or other credits.

Joint Venture. A legal entity or other organization that results from a contractual arrangement and that is owned, operated, or governed by two or more participants as a separate and specific activity subject to joint control, in which the participants retain (1) an ongoing financial interest or (2) an ongoing financial responsibility. Generally, the purpose of a joint venture is to pool resources and share the costs, risks, and rewards of providing goods or services to the joint venture participants directly, or for the benefit of the public or specific service recipients.

Jointly Governed Organization. A regional government or other multi-governmental arrangement that is governed by representatives from each of the governments that create the organization, but that is not a joint venture because the participants do not retain an ongoing financial interest or responsibility.

Journal. A book of original entry. See General Journal, Special Journal, and Register.

Journal Voucher. A standard form provided for the recording of certain transactions or information in place of, or supplementary to, the journals or registers. The journal voucher usually contains an entry or entries, explanations, references to documentary evidence supporting the entry or entries, and the signature or initials of one or more properly authorized officials.

Judgment. An amount to be paid or collected by a government as the result of a court decision, including a condemnation award in payment for private property taken for public use.

Judgment Bonds. Bonds issued to finance judgments.

Judgments Payable. A liability account reflecting amounts owed as the result of court decisions, including condemnation awards for private property taken for public use.

Jurisdiction. A particular geographic area containing a defined legal authority. Examples include counties, cities, special districts, school districts, community college districts, or county superintendents of schools.

Jurisdictional Change. Any changes to the boundaries of a jurisdiction, including formations, consolidations, and dissolutions. Commonly referred to as annexations.

K

NONE

L

Landfill Closure and Postclosure Costs. Costs incurred to provide for the protection of the environment that occur near or after the date that a municipal solid-waste landfill stops accepting solid waste and during the postclosure period. Closure and postclosure care costs include the cost of equipment and facilities (e.g., leachate collection systems and final cover) as well as the cost of services (e.g., postclosure maintenance and monitoring costs).

Lapse. As applied to appropriations, the automatic termination of an appropriation. Except for indeterminate appropriations and continuing appropriations, an appropriation is made for a certain period of time. At the end of this period, any unexpended or unencumbered balance thereof lapses, unless otherwise provided by law. Also referred to as the lapse period.

Lease. A contract that conveys control of the right to use another entity's nonfinancial asset (the underlying asset) as specified in the contract for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

Lease-Leaseback Transactions. In a lease-leaseback transaction, an asset is leased by one party (first party) to another party and then leased back to the first party. The leaseback may involve an additional asset (such as leasing a school building that has been constructed by a developer on land owned by and leased back to a school district) or only a portion of the original asset (such as leasing back only one floor of a building to the owner). A lease-leaseback transaction should be accounted for as a net transaction.

Lease Asset. Intangible asset (right-to-use underlying asset). Sum of the initial measurement of the lease liability plus any lease payments made to the lessor at or before the commencement of the lease term (less any lease incentives received from the lessor at or before the commencement of the lease term), and any initial direct costs that are ancillary charges necessary to place the lease asset into service.

Lease Incentives. Lease incentives are (a) payments made to, or on behalf of, the lessee, for which the lessee has a right of offset with its obligation to the lessor, or (b) other concessions granted to the lessee. A lease incentive is equivalent to a rebate or discount and includes an assumption of, or an agreement to pay, a lessee's preexisting lease obligations to a third party, other reimbursements of lessee costs, rent holidays, and reductions of interest or principal charges by the lessor. Simply put, lease incentives reduce the amount that a lessee is required to pay for a lease.

Lease Liability. The present value of lease payments expected to be made during the lease term by the lessee. Measurement of the lease liability should include (if required by the lease), fixed payments, variable payments that depend on an index or rate (e.g., Consumer Price Index or market interest rate), variable payments that are fixed in substance, amounts reasonably certain of being required to be paid by the lessee under residual value guarantees, the exercise price of a purchase option (if reasonably certain the lessee will exercise that option), payments for penalties for terminating the lease (if the lease term reflects the lessee exercising an option to terminate the lease or exercising a fiscal funding or a cancellation clause), any lease incentives receivable from the lessor, and any other payments reasonably certain of being required based on an assessment of relevant factors. Variable payments (other than those identified in the preceding sentence), such as those based on future performance of the lessee or usage of the underlying asset, should not be included in the measurement of the lease liability.

Lease Modifications and Terminations. These are amendments that modify the provisions of the lease contract. Examples of amendments to lease contracts include changing the contract price, lengthening or shortening the lease term, changing the index or rate upon which variable payments depend, and adding or removing an underlying asset. An amendment should be considered a lease modification unless the lessee's right to use the underlying asset decreases, in which case the amendment should be considered a partial or full lease termination. (Note: some amendments or terminations may require a remeasurement of the lease contract.)

Lease Receivable. The present value of lease payments expected to be received during the lease term (less any provision for estimated uncollectible amounts) by the lessor. Measurement of the lease receivable should include (if required by the lease), fixed payments, variable payments that depend on an index or a rate (e.g., consumer price Index or market interest rate), variable payments that are fixed in substance, residual value guarantee payments that are fixed in substance, and any lease incentives payable to the lessee. Variable payments (other than those identified in the preceding sentence), such as those based on future performance of the lessee or usage of the underlying asset, should not be included in the measurement of the lease receivable.

Lease Rental Bond. A bond usually issued by a nonprofit authority and secured by lease payments to be made by the government leasing the project financed by bond proceeds.

Lease Term. The period during which the lessee has a noncancelable right to use an underlying asset (referred to as the noncancelable period), plus (if applicable) any periods covered by a lessee's or lessor's option to extend or terminate the lease if it is reasonably certain (based on all relevant factors) that the lessee or lessor will exercise that option. Cancellable periods (e.g., rolling month-to-month lease) are excluded from the lease term.

Leasehold. The right to the use of real estate by virtue of a lease, usually for a specified term of years, for which consideration is paid.

Ledger. A group of accounts in which are recorded the financial transactions of an entry. See General Ledger and Subsidiary Ledger.

Legal Debt Limit. See Debt Limit.

Legal Debt Margin. The excess of the amount of debt legally authorized over the amount of debt outstanding. See Debt Limit.

Legal Defeasance. Situation that occurs when debt is legally satisfied based on certain provisions in the debt instrument, even though the debt is not actually repaid. When debt is defeased, it is no longer reported as a liability on the face of the statement of position; only the new debt used to refund it, if any, is reported as a liability.

Legal Enforceability. When a government can be compelled by an external party (e.g., citizens, public interest groups, or the judiciary) to use resources created by enabling legislation only for the purposes specified by the legislation.

Legal Investments. (1) Investments that a regulated entities such as savings banks, insurance companies, trustees and other fiduciaries (individual or corporate) are permitted to make by the laws of the state in which they are domiciled, or under the jurisdiction in which they operate or serve. The investments which meet the conditions imposed by law constitute the legal investment list. (2) Investments that governments are permitted to make by law.

Legal Level of Budgetary Control. The level at which spending in excess of budgeted amounts would be a violation of law.

Legal Opinion. (1) An opinion of an authorized official such as an attorney or county counsel regarding the legal issues applicable to a particular situation. (2) In the case of government bonds, the opinion of a specialized bond attorney as to the legality of a bond issue.

Lender. A governmental entity that transfers its securities to a broker-dealer or other entity in a securities-lending transaction.

Lent Securities. The securities lent by the lender to the borrower in a securities lending transaction. Also referred to as underlying securities.

Lessee. The party to a lease contract who acquires the right to use another entity's nonfinancial asset(s).

Lessor. The party to a lease contract who conveys the right to use its nonfinancial asset(s) to another party.

Lessee's Incremental Borrowing Rate. The rate that, at the inception of the lease, the lessee would have incurred to borrow over a similar term the resources necessary to purchase the leased asset.

Letter of Credit. A financial institution's written guarantee of a customer's drafts, up to a specified amount, for a certain period of time.

Level of Budgetary Control. One of the three possible levels of budgetary control and authority to which organizations, programs, activities and functions may be subject. These levels of budgetary control are (1) appropriated budget, (2) legally authorized nonappropriated budget review and approval process, which is outside the appropriated budget process, and (3) nonbudgeted financial activities, which are not subject to the appropriated budget and the appropriation process or to any legally authorized nonappropriated budget review and approval process, but still are relevant for sound financial management and oversight. See Legal Level of Budgetary Control.

Level of Effort Requirements. A requirement that a grant recipient does not use grant resources to reduce its own participation in a given program or activity.

Leverage. Using debt to control more assets. Generally, the asset obtained outweighs the cost of the borrowed money. In the context of derivative instruments, an essential characteristic of a derivative instrument that requires that the agreement itself involve little or no initial net investment, yet be able to produce the same financial effect as an instrument involving a much larger investment of resources.

Levy. (1) To impose taxes, special assessments, or service charges for the support of government activities. (2) The total amount of taxes, special assessments, or service charges imposed by government.

Liabilities. Present obligations to sacrifice resources that the government has little to no discretion to avoid.

Lien. An enforceable legal claim by a government. The date of the lien may be known as a lien date or an assessment date.

Lien Date. For property (ad valorem) taxes, the date when an enforceable legal claim to taxable property arises. Generally, the lien date is specified in the relevant enabling legislation. Many governments use the term lien date even though a lien is not formally placed on the property at that date. Alternatively, the term assessment date is used to describe this same date.

Liquidity. The ability to convert assets to cash quickly without significant losses.

Loan Premium or Fee. In the context of securities lending arrangements, payments from the borrower to the lender as compensation for the use of the underlying securities when the securities lending arrangement is backed either by a letter of credit, or by securities that cannot be pledged or sold absent a default.

Loans Receivable. An asset account reflecting amounts loaned to individuals or organizations external to a government, including notes taken as security for such loans. Loans to other governments should be recorded and reported separately.

Local Agency. Any city, county, special district, or local government authority (e.g., joint powers authority).

Local Agency Formation Commission (LAFCo). LAFCOs are formed under the California law (refer to Gov. Code §56300 et seq.) and typically oversee boundary changes of counties, cities and special districts, and formation of new agencies, which includes incorporation, consolidation, or reorganization of local government entities.

Local Improvement Tax. See Special Assessment.

Local Roll. Property on the secured and unsecured roll that is the county assessor's duty to assess.

Long-Term Budget. A budget prepared for a period longer than a fiscal year or, in some state governments, a budget prepared for a period longer than a biennium. Long-term budgets concerned with capital outlay plans and capital improvement programs are referred to as capital budgets.

Long-Term Debt. See General Long-Term Debt.

Long-Term Obligations. Obligations scheduled to mature beyond one year from the date of a government's financial statements.

Lump-Sum Appropriation. An appropriation made for a stated purpose, or for a named department, without specifying further the amounts that may be spent for specific activities or for particular objects of expenditure (e.g., a lump-sum appropriation for the police department would not specify the amounts to be spent on uniform patrol, traffic control, etc., or for salaries and wages, materials and supplies, travel).

M

Machinery and Equipment. Property that does not lose its identity when removed from its location and is not changed materially or consumed immediately within one fiscal year.

Maintenance. The act of keeping capital assets in a state of good repair. It includes preventive maintenance; normal periodic repairs; replacement of parts, structural components, and so forth; and other activities needed to maintain the asset so that it continues to provide normal services and achieves its optimum life.

Major Fund. The general fund or its equivalent and any other fund where: (1) total assets, liabilities, revenues, or expenditures/expenses of that individual governmental or enterprise fund are at least 10 percent of the corresponding total (assets, liabilities, and so forth) for all funds of that category or type (that is, total governmental or total enterprise funds, and (2) total assets, liabilities, revenues, or expenditures/expenses of the individual governmental fund or enterprise fund are at least 5% of the corresponding total for all governmental and enterprise funds combined. In addition, to funds that meet the major fund criteria, any other governmental or enterprise criteria, any other governmental or enterprise fund that the government's officials believe is particularly important to financial statement users (for example, because of public interest or consistency) may be reported as a major fund.

Major Program. In the context of a single audit, a federal award program for which the independent auditor must (1) gain an understanding of internal control over compliance, (2) test internal control over compliance, and (3) offer an opinion whether the government recipient complied with compliance requirements that could have a direct and material effect on that program.

Management. Persons who are responsible for achieving the objectives of the government and who have the authority to establish policies and make decisions by which those objectives are to be pursued. Management normally includes the chief executive officer (for example, city manager), directors or secretaries in charge of principal government departments or functions (such as service provision administration or finance), and other persons who perform similar policymaking functions. Persons without formal titles also may be members of management.

Management Letter. In the context of the independent audit of the financial statements, a formal communication by the independent auditor to management that identifies internal control weaknesses discovered in the course of the audit of the financial statements. A management letter typically would be redundant in an audit conducted in accordance with GAGAS, which require that the independent auditor publish internal control weaknesses and instances of noncompliance in conjunction with a formal report on internal control and compliance. The management letter should be distinguished from the management representation letter. The latter is a communication by management to the independent auditor in which management takes formal responsibility for the fair presentation of the financial statements and makes certain specific representations regarding their contents and circumstances.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A). GASB requires that the basic financial statements be preceded by management's discussion and analysis (MD&A), which is presented as required supplementary information (RSI). MD&A provides an objective and easily readable analysis of the government's financial activities based on currently known facts, decisions, or conditions and presents comparisons between the current year and the prior year. Information presented in MD&A is to be limited to the related topics discussed in five sections: (1) Overview of the Financial Statements, (2) Financial Summary, (3) Detailed Analyses, (4) Significant Capital Asset and Long-Term Financing Activity, and (5) Currently Known Facts, Decisions, or Conditions. Furthermore, the Detailed Analyses part of the MD&A should explain why balances and results of operations changed rather than simply presenting the amounts or percentages by which they changed. The analysis provided in MD&A should avoid unnecessary duplication by not repeating explanations that may be relevant to multiple sections and that "boilerplate" discussions should be avoided by presenting only the most relevant information, focused on the primary government. In addition, the information included in the MD&A should distinguish between that of the primary government and its discretely presented component units.

Margin. The excess of the market value including accrued interest of the securities underlying a repurchase/reverse repurchase or a fixed coupon repurchase/reverse repurchase agreement over the agreement amount including accrued interest. It is common practice for a margin to be built into an agreement to protect against declines in the market value of the underlying securities.

Market Approach. A valuation technique that uses prices and other relevant information generated by market transactions involving identical or comparable (similar) assets, liabilities, or groups of assets and liabilities.

Market Risk. The risk that changes in market prices will reduce the fair value of an asset, increase the fair value of a liability, or adversely affected the cash flows of an expected transaction. Market risk comprises of the following: (1) Interest Rate Risk, (2) Currency Risk, and (3) Other Price Risks.

Market Value. See Full Cash Value.

Master Agreement. A written contract covering all future transactions between the parties to repurchase/reverse repurchase agreements that establish each party's rights in the transactions. A master agreement will often specify, among other things, the right of the buyer-lender to liquidate the underlying securities in the event of default by the seller-borrower.

Matched Position. A condition existing when reverse repurchase agreement proceeds are invested in securities that mature at or almost at the same time as the reverse repurchase agreement and the proceeds from those securities will be used to liquidate the agreement.

Matching Requirement. A requirement that a grant recipient contributes resources to a program that equal or exceed a predetermined percentage of amounts provided by the grantor.

Material Weakness. A deficiency or a combination of deficiencies in internal control such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented or detected and corrected on a timely basis.

Materiality. In the context of financial reporting, the notion that an omission or misstatement of accounting information is of such significance as to make it probable that the judgment of a reasonable person relying on the information would be changed or influenced by the omission or misstatement.

Matrix Pricing. In the context of investment valuation, a technique used to value securities based on their relationship to benchmark quoted prices.

Matured Bonds Payable. A liability account reflecting unpaid principal on bonds that have reached or passed their maturity date.

Matured Interest Payable. A liability account reflecting unpaid interest on bonds that have reached or passed their maturity date.

Measurement Date. The date on which the fair value of an asset or liability is determined.

Measurement Focus. Types of balances (and related changes) reported in a given set of financial statements (economic resources, current financial resources). Measurement focus determines what is recognized in financial statements, while basis of accounting determines when recognition takes place.

Measurement Period. The period between the prior and the current measurement dates.

Mineral Rights. Provides the right to enter in or upon the land for the exploration, development, and production of minerals, including oil, gas, and other hydrocarbon.

Mobile Home. A mobile home is a structure designed for human habitation and for being moved on a street or highway under permit pursuant to Section 35790 of the Vehicle Code. Mobile home includes a manufactured home, as defined in Section 18007 of the Health and Safety Code, and a mobile home, as defined in Section 18008 of the Health and Safety Code, but, except as provided in subdivision (b), does not include a recreational vehicle, as defined in Section 18010 of the Health and Safety Code or a commercial modular (commercial coach) as defined in Section 18001.8 of the Health and Safety Code.

Mobile Home Base Year Value. The full cash value on the date a mobile home is purchased or ownership changes. If the mobile home undergoes any new construction after it is purchased or changes ownership, the base year value of the new construction is its full cash value on the date on which the new construction is completed and, if uncompleted, on the lien date.

Modified Accrual Basis of Accounting. The modified accrual basis of accounting adapted to the current financial resources measurement focus. Under this basis of accounting, revenues and other financial resource increments (e.g., bond issue proceeds) are recognized when they become susceptible to accrual, which is when they become both measurable and available to finance expenditures of the current period.

Modified Approach. The election not to depreciate infrastructure assets that are part of a network or subsystem of a network that meet two specific requirements. First, the government manages the eligible infrastructure assets using an asset management system that has certain specified characteristics; second, the government documents that the eligible infrastructure assets are being preserved approximately at (or above) a condition level established and disclosed by the government.

Modified Opinion. A qualified opinion, an adverse opinion, or a disclaimer of opinion on the financial statements. See Adverse Opinion, Disclaimer of Opinion, and Qualified Opinion.

Money Market Investment. A short-term, liquid debt instrument, including commercial paper, banker's acceptances, and U.S. Treasury and agency obligations. Asset-backed securities, derivatives, and structured notes are not included in this term.

Mortgage Bonds. Bonds secured by a mortgage against specified properties of a government, usually its public utilities or other enterprises. If primarily payable from enterprise revenues, they are also classed as revenue bonds. See Revenue bonds.

Multi-Function District. A special district that provides two or more services.

Multi-Purpose Grants. A term used in connection with the identification of program revenues. Grants intended to finance activities reported in different functional categories in the government-wide statement of activities. Multipurpose grants that do not provide for specific identification of the programs and amounts should be reported as general revenues.

Multiple Employer Defined Benefit Pension or OPEB Plan. A defined benefit pension or OPEB plan that is used to provide pensions or OPEB to the employees of more than one employer.

Municipal. Denotes the state and all subordinate units of government. In a more restricted sense, it denotes a city or village, as opposed to other local governments.

Municipal Bond. A bond (debt securities) issued by a state or local government.

Municipal Corporation. A political and corporate body established pursuant to state statutes to provide government services and regulations for its inhabitants. A municipal corporation has defined boundaries and a population, and is usually organized with the consent of its residents. It usually has a seal and may sue and be sued. Cities and villages are examples of municipal corporations. See Quasi-Municipal Corporation.

Municipal Finance Officers Association. Original name of the Government Finance Officers Association of the United States and Canada.

Municipal Improvement Certificates. Certificates issued in lieu of bonds for the financing of special improvements. As a rule, these certificates are placed in the contractor's hands for collection from the special assessment payers.

Municipal Solid-Waste Landfill. A discrete area of land or an excavation that receives household waste, and that is not a land application unit, surface impoundment, injection well, or waste pile, as those terms are defined in regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency. It may also receive other types of Resource Conservation and Recovery Act Subtitle D wastes such as commercial solid waste, nonhazardous sludge, and industrial solid waste. The term municipal indicates the primary type of solid waste received by the landfill, not its ownership.

N

National Advisory Council on State and Local Budgeting (NACSLB). A working group created by eight public-sector organizations to establish a comprehensive framework for public-sector budgeting that could be used by state and local governments as an ideal against which to measure and improve the quality of their own budget practices. The Government Finance Officers Association (GFOA) has formally recommended NACSLB guidelines to its members.

National Committee on Governmental Accounting (NCGA). A committee of the Municipal Finance Officers Association that served as the authoritative accounting and financial reporting standard-setting body for local governments from 1946 until the establishment of the National Council on Governmental Accounting (NCGA) in the 1970s.

National Committee on Municipal Accounting (NCMA). A committee of the Municipal Finance Officers Association that served as the authoritative accounting and financial reporting standard-setting body for local governments prior to 1946. NCMA was one of the predecessors of GASB.

National Council on Governmental Accounting (NCGA). An organization established through the sponsorship of the Government Finance Officers Association to develop, promulgate, and interpret principals of accounting, financial reporting, and related financial management activities for the state and local governments in the United States and Canada. Immediate predecessor of GASB.

Negotiable Certificates of Deposit. Transferable certificates of deposit. Because they are transferable, negotiable certificates of deposit are subject to custodial credit risk.

Net. The net amount is the final amount that remains after all the other amounts have been subtracted from gross. See Gross.

Net Bonded Debt. Gross bonded debt less any cash or other assets available and earmarked for its retirement and less all self-supporting debt (e.g., revenue bonds). Also referred to as net general obligation debt.

Net Book Value. See Book Value.

Net Carrying Amount. In an extinguishment of debt, the amount due at maturity, adjusted for unamortized premium, discount, and cost of issuance.

Net Income. The proprietary fund excess of operating revenues, nonoperating revenues, and transfers-in over operating expenses, nonoperating expenses, and transfers out.

Net Interest Cost. A method used to calculate a bond issuer's interest cost. The net interest cost (NIC) does not take into account the time value of money. The NIC is equal to the total interest payments plus discount (or minus premium) divided by the number of bond years.

Net Investment in Capital Assets. Capital assets, net of accumulated depreciations/amortizations, reduced by the outstanding balances of bonds, mortgages, notes, or other borrowings that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets. Deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets or related debt also should be included in this component of net position. If there are significant unspent resources at the end of the reporting period, the portion of the debt or deferred inflows of resources attributable to the unspent amount should not be included in the calculation of net investment in capital assets. Instead, that portion of the debt or deferred inflows of resources should be included in the same net position component (restricted or unrestricted) as the unspent amount.

Net OPEB Liability. The liability of employers and nonemployer contributing entities to plan members for benefits provided through a defined benefit OPEB plan that is administered through an irrevocable trust.

Net Pension Liability. The liability of employers and nonemployer contributing entities to employees for benefits provided through a defined benefit pension plan that is administered through a trust.

Net Pension/OPEB Obligation. A term used in connection with defined benefit pension/OPEB plans. The cumulative difference between annual pension/OPEB costs and the employer's contributions to the plan, including the pension/OPEB liability (asset) at transition, and excluding (1) short-term differences and (2) unpaid contributions that have been converted to pension-related debt.

Net Position. The residual of assets, plus deferred outflows of resources, less liabilities, less deferred inflows of resources. Net position is displayed in three components: net investment in capital assets, restricted (distinguishing between major categories or restrictions), and unrestricted.

Net Program Cost. A term used in the context of the government-wide statement of activities. The difference between functional expenses and program revenues.

Net Profit. See Net Income.

Net Revenues. See Net Income and Net Revenues Available for Debt Service.

Net Revenues Available for Debt Service. Proprietary fund gross operating revenues less operating and maintenance expenses (which normally does not include depreciation expense or interest expense on bonds). Net revenues available for debt service as thus defined is used to compute coverage on revenue bond issues. Under the laws of some states and the provisions of some revenue bond indentures, to compute revenue bond coverage, net revenues available for debt service should be computed on a cash basis rather than in conformity with GAAP. See Coverage Ratio.

New Construction. Any addition to real property, whether land or improvements (including fixtures) since the last lien date; and any alteration of land or of any improvement (including fixtures), since the last lien date that constitutes a major rehabilitation thereof or that converts the property to a different use.

No-Commitment Special Assessment Debt. Special assessment debt that is secured solely by liens on assessed properties and resources provided from bond proceeds which are not backed by either the full faith and credit of the government or by any other type of general government commitment.

Nominal Account. Those accounts whose balances are transferred to equity or net position accounts at the close of each fiscal year. Examples are revenue and expense accounts.

Nominal Interest Rate. The contractual interest rate shown on the face and in the body of a bond and used to compute the amount of interest to be paid, in contrast to the effective interest rate. See Coupon Rate.

Noncapital Financing Activities. The borrowing of money for purposes other than to acquire, construct, or improve capital assets and repaying those amounts borrowed, including interest. This category includes proceeds from all borrowings (such as revenue anticipation notes) not clearly attributable to capital assets, regardless of the form of the borrowing. Also included are certain other interfund and intergovernmental receipts and payments.

Nonemployer Contributing Entities. Entities (nonemployer) legally required make contributions to a pension or OPEB plan that is used to provide pensions or OPEB to the employees of other entities. Employees are not considered nonemployer-contributing entities. For arrangements in which pensions are provided through a pension plan that is not administered through a trust, entities that make defined benefit payments directly as pensions come due for employees of other entities, including using the entity's assets held by others for the purpose of providing benefits. Employees are not considered nonemployer-contributing entities.

Nonenterprise District. A special district that generally does not charge users for services provided, but rather relies on property tax revenues or special taxes.

Nonexchange Financial Guarantee. A guarantee which requires the guarantor to indemnify a third-party obligation holder, under specified conditions, should the issuer of the guaranteed obligation not fulfill its requirements under an obligation. There are at least three legally separate parties to a nonexchange financial guarantee: (1) the issuer of the guaranteed obligation, (2) those entitled to payment pursuant to the obligation and (3) the guarantor.

Nonexchange Transaction. Transaction in which a government (including the federal government, as a provider) either (a) gives value (benefit) to another party without directly receiving equal value in exchange, or (b) receives value (benefit) from another party without directly giving equal value in exchange. Four classes of nonexchange transactions are used: (1) Derived Tax Revenues, (2) Imposed Nonexchange Revenues, (3) Government-Mandated Nonexchange Transactions, and (4) Voluntary Nonexchange Transactions.

Nonfinancial Assets. A term used in connection with the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Assets that are expected to be used in the provision of goods or services rather than converted to cash. Financial statement preparers have the option of treating prepaid items and inventories of supplies as either a financial asset (consumption method) or as a nonfinancial asset (purchases method).

Nonoperating Nonunitary. Properties that do not operate as a unit and are not part of the primary function of the assessee.

Nonoperating Properties. Properties owned by an enterprise fund but not used in the provision of the fund's primary service activities.

Nonoperating Revenues and Expenses. These are (a) subsidies received and provided, (b) contributions to permanent and term endowments, (c) revenues and expenses related to financing, (d) resources from the disposal of capital assets and inventory, and (e) investment income and expenses.

Note: Revenues or expenses that otherwise would be classified as nonoperating in most proprietary fund financial statements should be classified as operating revenues or operating expenses if those transactions constitute the proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations

Nonparticipating Interest-Earning Investment Contracts. Investment contracts whose value is not affected by market (interest rate) changes (e.g., nonnegotiable certificates of deposit with redemption terms that do not consider market rates). This definition excludes investment contracts that are negotiable or transferable, or whose redemption value considers market rates.

Nonreciprocal Interfund Activity. The internal counterpart to nonexchange transactions. This category includes both interfund transfers and interfund reimbursements.

Nonspendable Fund Balance. The nonspendable fund balance classification includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either (1) not in spendable form or (2) legally or contractually required to be maintained intact. The not in spendable form criterion includes items that are not expected to be converted to cash, for example, inventories and prepaid amounts. It also includes the long-term amount of loans and notes receivable, as well as property acquired for resale. However, if the use of the proceeds from the collection of those receivables or the sale of those properties is restricted, committed, or assigned, then they should be included in the appropriate fund balance classification (restricted, committed, or assigned), rather than nonspendable fund balance. The principal of a permanent fund is an example of an amount that is legally or contractually required to be maintained intact.

Nonspendable Fund Balance. The portion of the fund balance of a governmental fund that cannot be spent either because the underlying resources are not in spendable form or because the government is legally or contractually required to maintain the resources intact

Nonspendable Fund Balance — Advance to Other Funds. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance to indicate that noncurrent portions of long-term interfund receivables do not represent expendable available financial resources.

Nonspendable Fund Balance — Capital Assets Held for Resale. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance to indicate that capital assets held for resale do not represent expendable available financial resources.

Nonspendable Fund Balance — Inventories. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance to indicate that, under the purchases method, inventories of supplies do not represent expendable available financial resources, even though they are a component of net current assets.

Nonspendable Fund Balance — Noncurrent Loans Receivable. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance to indicate that noncurrent portions of long-term loans receivable do not represent expendable available financial resources.

Nonspendable Fund Balance — Prepaid Items. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance to indicate that prepaid items do not represent expendable available financial resources, even though they are a component of net current assets.

Nonunitary. See Operating Nonunitary.

Normal Cost (also known as Service Cost). That portion of the Actuarial Present Value of pension plan benefits and expenses that is allocated to a valuation year by the Actuarial Cost Method.

Normal Costing. The historical cost of an asset is estimated by taking the value of acquiring the asset new today and then discounting that amount by an appropriate inflation factor back to the date of acquisition.

Normally. A term used in connection with the application of the modified accrual basis of accounting to certain long-term liabilities. Specifically, certain accrued liabilities are recognized as expenditures in governmental funds only when they are normally expected to be liquidated with current available financial resources (e.g., compensated absences, claims and judgments, special termination benefits, landfill closure and postclosure care costs). For this purpose, the term normally should be interpreted from the perspective of the practice of state and local governments.

Note Payable. In general, an unconditional written promise signed by the maker to pay a certain sum of money on demand or at a fixed or determinable time, either to the bearer or to the order of a person designated therein. See Temporary Loans.

Note Receivable. A legal right to receive payment of a certain sum of money on demand or at a fixed or determinable time, based on an unconditional written promise signed by the maker.

Notes to the Financial Statements. Presentation of information integral to the financial statements and essential to a user's understanding of financial position or inflows and outflows or resources that includes (1) descriptions of the accounting and finance-related policies underlying amounts recognized in financial statements, (2) more detail about or explanations of amounts recognized in financial statements, and (3) information about financial position or inflows and outflows of resources that does not meet the criteria for recognition.

Number of Funds Principle. The principle that only the minimum number of funds consistent with legal and operating requirements should be established, as unnecessary funds result in inflexibility, undue complexity, and inefficient financial administration.

O

Object. As used in expenditure classification, this term applies to the article purchased or the service obtained, rather than to the purpose for which the article or service was purchased or obtained (e.g., personal services, contractual services, materials, and supplies). See Activity, Account, Character, Classification, Function, and Object Classification.

Object Classification. Expenditure classification according to the types of items purchased or services obtained (e.g., personal services, materials, supplies and equipment).

Object of Expenditure. See Object.

Obligated in Some Manner. A term used in connection with special assessment debt and the determination of the financial reporting entity. A government is obligated in some manner for debt if (1) it is legally obligated to assume all or part of the debt in the event of default, or (2) the government may take certain actions to assume secondary liability for all or part of the debt and the government takes, or has given indications that it will take, those actions.

Obligations. Amounts a government may be legally required to meet out of its resources. Obligations include not only actual liabilities but also unliquidated encumbrances.

Obsolescence. The decrease in the value of capital assets resulting from economic, social, technological or legal changes.

Office of Management and Budget (OMB). An agency of the federal government with regulatory oversight of Single Audits. In fulfillment of this responsibility, the OMB has issued 2CFR 200 (subpart F).

Official Statement. A document published by a government planning to issue long-term debt that provides information on the proposed long-term debt issue, the purpose of the issue, and the means of servicing the indebtedness, as well as other information about the issuer that may be helpful in evaluating credit-worthiness.

OMB. White House Office of Management and Budget. See Office of Management and Budget (OMB).

On-Behalf Payments of Fringe Benefits and Salaries. Direct payments made by one entity (the paying entity or paying government) to a third-party recipient for the employees of another, legally separate entity (the employer entity or employer government). They include payments made by governmental entities on behalf of nongovernmental entities and payments made by nongovernmental entities on behalf of governmental entities, and may be made for volunteers as well as for paid employees of the employer entity.

Ongoing Financial Responsibility. (1) A participating government is obligated in some manner for the debts of a joint venture or a component unit. (2) The joint venture's or component unit's existence depends on continued funding by the participating government.

OPEB Plans. Arrangements through which OPEB is determined, assets dedicated for OPEB (if any) are accumulated and managed, and benefits are paid as they come due.

Open Amortization Period. A term used in connection with defined benefit pension and OPEB plans. An open amortization period (open basis) is one that begins again or is recalculated at each actuarial valuation date. Within a maximum number of years specified by law or policy (for example, 30 years), the period may increase, decrease, or remain stable.

Open-End Mutual Funds. An SEC-registered investment company that issues shares of its stock to investors, invests in an investment portfolio on the shareholders' behalf, and stands ready to redeem its shares for an amount based on its current share price. An open-end mutual fund creates new shares to meet investor demand, and the value of an investment in the fund depends directly on the value of the underlying portfolio. Open-end mutual funds include governmental external investment pools that are registered as investment companies with the SEC and that operate as open-end funds.

Open Space Land (Williamson Act). (1) Land within an agricultural preserve and subject to a contract or an agreement, (2) land subject to a scenic restriction, (3) land subject to an open-space easement.

Open Space Use. The use or maintenance of land in such a manner as to preserve its natural characteristics, beauty, or openness for the benefit and enjoyment of the public, to provide essential habitat for wildlife, or for the solar evaporation of sea water in the course of salt production for commercial purposes, if such land is within a scenic highway corridor; a wildlife habitat area; a salt pond; a managed wetland area; or a submerged area.

Operating Activities (Cash Flows). Cash flows resulting from providing services and producing and delivering goods, including all transactions and other events that are not defined as capital and related financing, noncapital financing, or investing activities. Cash flows from operating activities generally are the cash effects of transactions and other events that enter into the determination of operating income.

Operating Budget. Plans for current expenditures and the proposed means of financing them. The operating budget (for some state governments: the biennial operating budget) is the primary means by which most of the financing, acquisition, spending, and service delivery activities of a government are controlled. The use of operating budgets is usually required by law. Even where not required by law, operating budgets are essential to sound financial management and should be adopted by every government. See Budget.

Operating Expenses. Expenses other than nonoperating expenses. These are expenses that constitute proprietary fund's ongoing operations.

Operating Grants. Grants that are restricted by the grantor to operating purposes or that may be used for either capital or operating purposes, at the discretion of the grantee. See Capital Grants.

Operating Income. The excess of a fund's operating revenues over operating expenses.

Operating Nonunitary. A group of properties that operate as a unit but is not part of the primary function of the assessee.

Operating Revenues. Revenues other than nonoperating revenues. These are revenues that constitute proprietary fund's ongoing operations.

Operational Accountability. Governments' responsibility to report the extent to which they have met their operating objectives efficiently and effectively, using all resources available for that purpose, and whether they can continue to meet their objectives for the foreseeable future.

Optional Bond. See Callable Bond.

Order. A formal legislative enactment by the governing board of certain local governments that has the full force and effect of law (e.g., county governing bodies in some states pass orders rather than laws, resolutions or ordinances).

Operation. An operation is an integrated set of activities conducted and managed for the purpose of providing identifiable services with associated assets or liabilities. For example, an operation may include the assets and liabilities specifically associated with the activities conducted and managed by the fire department in a general-purpose government. Conversely, fire engines donated to or acquired by a first department would constitute only a portion of that activity and, therefore, would not constitute an operation.

Ordinance (Order). A formal legislative enactment by the governing board of a municipality. If it is not in conflict with any higher form of law, such as a state statute or constitutional provision, it has the full force and effect of law within the boundaries of the municipality to which it applies. The difference between an ordinance and a resolution is that the latter requires less legal formality and has a lower legal status. Ordinarily, the statutes or charter will specify or imply those legislative actions that must be by ordinance and those that may be by resolution. Revenue raising measures, such as the imposition of taxes, special assessments and service charges, universally require ordinances. See Resolution.

Original Budget. The first complete adopted budget of a government. The original budget may be adjusted by reserves, transfers, allocations, supplemental appropriations, and other legally authorized legislative and executive changes before the beginning of the fiscal year. The original budget should also include actual appropriation amounts automatically carried over from prior years by law. For example, a legal provision may require the automatic rolling forward of appropriations to cover prior-year encumbrances.

Other Financing Source. Increases in the fund balance of a governmental fund other than revenues and inflows associated with future periods. Only items identified as other financing sources in authoritative accounting standards may be classified as such.

Other Financing Use. Decreases in the fund balance of a governmental fund other than expenditures and outflows of resources associated with future periods. Only items identified as other financing uses in authoritative accounting standards may be classified as such.

Other Postemployment Benefits (OPEB). Benefits other than retirement income (such as death benefits, life insurance, disability, and long-term care) that are paid in the period after employment and that are provided separately from a pension plan, as well as the postemployment health care benefits paid in the period after employer (if any), regardless of the manner in which they are provided. Other postemployment benefits do not include termination benefits or termination payments for sick leave.

Other Sources of GAAP. Potential sources of accounting and financial reporting guidance that may be used in the absence of authoritative GAAP guidance for state and local governments. Examples of other sources of GAAP for state and local governments include concept statements of GASB, pronouncements of FASB that are not authoritative for government, professional publications, textbooks, and position papers of professional organizations. GASB concept statements take precedence as another source of GAAP.

Outflows of Resources (or Outlays). A consumption of net assets by the government that is applicable to the reporting period. Include expenses, unusual or infrequent items that are losses, and, in governmental funds, other financing uses.

Outlays. Synonymous with expenditures. See Capital Expenditures.

Outcome Measures. A term used in connection with service efforts and accomplishments reporting. Indicators that measure accomplishments or results that occur (at least partially) because of services provided. Results also include measures of public perceptions of outcomes.

Output Measures. A term used in connection with service efforts and accomplishments reporting. Indicators that measure the quantity of services provided. Output measures include both measures of the quantity of service provided and measures of the quantity of a service provided that meets a certain quality requirement.

Overdraft. (1) The amount by which checks, drafts, or other demands for payment on the treasury or on a bank exceed the amount of the credit against which they are drawn. (2) The amount by which requisitions, purchase orders, or audited vouchers exceed the appropriation or other credit to which they are chargeable.

Overhead. Those elements of cost necessary in the production of a good or service that are not directly traceable to the product or service. Usually these costs relate to objects of expenditure that do not become an integral part of the finished product or service, such as rent, heat, light, supplies, management and supervision (indirect costs/charges/expenses).

Overlapping Debt. In the context of the statistical section of an ACFR, the outstanding long-term debt instruments of governments that geographically overlap, at least in part, the government preparing the statistical section. That is, debt of another government that at least some of the reporting government's taxpayers will also have to pay in whole or in part. Lower levels of government are not required to treat debt of the state as overlapping debt, even though it technically meets this definition. Furthermore, states, regional governments, and counties are exempted from the requirement to present overlapping debt, although counties are still encouraged to do so.

Overlapping Governments. In the context of the statistical section of an ACFR, other local governments located wholly or in part within the geographic boundaries of the reporting government.

Oversight (Responsibility). A basic criterion for including a government department, agency, institution, commission, public authority, or other organization in a government unit's reporting entity for basic financial reports. Oversight responsibility is derived from the government unit's power and includes financial interdependency, selection of governing authority, designation of management, ability to significantly influence operations, and accountability for fiscal matters.

Oversight Unit. In defining the reporting entity, the component unit that has the ability to exercise oversight responsibility. Typically, an oversight unit is the primary unit of government directly responsible to the chief executive and the elected legislative body.

P

Par Value. In the case of bonds, the amount of principal that should be paid at maturity. Par value is referred to as the face value of the security.

Parameters. In the context of defined benefit pension and OPEB plans, parameters are the set of requirements for calculating actuarially determined OPEB information included in financial reports.

Participation. The ability of an investment to capture market (interest rate) changes through the investment's negotiability or transferability, or redemption terms that consider market rates.

Participating Interest-Earning Investment Contracts. Interest-earning investment contracts whose value is affected by market changes in interest rate (e.g., contracts that are negotiable or transferable or whose redemption value considers market rates).

Passenger Facilities Charges (PFCs). A fixed fee authorized by the Federal Aviation Administration that airports might impose on each departing passenger for use in eligible construction projects or for related debt service. This charge is collected by whoever sells the ticket and then remitted to the airport.

Pass-Through Grants. Grants and other financial assistance received by a governmental entity to transfer to or spend on behalf of a secondary recipient.

Pay-As-You-Go Basis. A method of financing a pension plan under which the contributions to the plan are generally made at about the same time in approximately the same amount as benefit payments and expenses becoming due.

Paying Agent. An entity responsible for paying long-term debt principal and interest on behalf of the government.

Payment in Lieu of Taxes (PILOT). A payment that a property owner not subject to taxation makes to a government to compensate it for services that the property owner receives that normally are financed through property taxes.

Penalty (Leases). Any requirement that is imposed or can be imposed on the lessee by the lease agreement or by factors outside the lease agreement to disburse cash, incur or assume a liability, perform services, surrender or transfer an asset or rights to an asset or otherwise forego an economic benefit, or suffer an economic detriment.

Pension (and OPEB) Trust Fund. Fiduciary fund type used to report resources required to be held in trust for the members and beneficiaries of defined benefit pension plans, defined contribution plans, or other employee benefit plans.

Pension Cost. A measure of the periodic cost of an employer's participation in a defined benefit pension plan.

Pension Benefits. Retirement income and, if provided through a pension plan, postemployment benefits other than retirement income (such as death benefits, life insurance, and disability benefits). Pensions do not include postemployment healthcare benefits and termination benefits.

Pension Obligation Bonds. Bonds issued by employers to finance one or more elements of their pension obligation to employees. Pension obligation bonds may be used (1) to reduce or eliminate the employer's net pension obligation, (2) to pay the employer's annual required contribution for the year, or (3) to reduce or eliminate the plan's unfunded actuarial accrued liability.

Pension/OPEB Expense. Accrual measure of the current year's outflow of resources associated with the employer's pension/OPEB plan. Calculation of pension/ OPEB expense is based on the change in the employer's pension/OPEB liability, adjusted for deferred portions, if any, of (1) differences between expected and actual experience, (2) differences between projected and actual earnings on plan investments, and (3) changes of assumptions or other inputs. For employers in cost sharing plans or special funding situations, pension/OPEB expense is calculated based on the employer's proportionate shares of these items.

Pension Plan. Arrangements through which pensions are determined, assets dedicated for pensions are accumulated and managed, and benefits are paid as they come due.

Pension Related Debt. All long-term liabilities of an employer to a pension plan, the payment of which is not included in the annual required contributions of a sole or agent employer or the actuarially determined required contributions of a cost-sharing employer. Payments generally are made in accordance with installment contracts that usually include interest. Examples include contractually deferred contributions and amounts assessed to an employer upon joining a multiple-employer plan.

Pension Trend Data. Actuarially based data over time concerning the funding progress of a defined benefit pension plan and employers' actual and annual required contributions to the plan.

Pensions. Retirement income and, if provided through a pension plan, postemployment benefits other than retirement income (such as death benefits, life insurance, and disability benefits). Pensions do not include postemployment healthcare benefits and termination benefits.

Performance Auditing. A systematic process of objectively obtaining and evaluating evidence regarding the performance of an organization, program, function or activity. Evaluation is made in terms of its economy and efficiency of operations and its effectiveness in achieving desired regulations, for the purpose of ascertaining the degree of correspondence between performance and established criteria and communicating the results to interested users. The performance audit function provides an independent, third-party review of management's performance and the degree to which the performance of the audited entity meets pre-stated expectations.

Performance Budget. A budget that basis expenditures primarily upon measurable performance of activities and work programs. A performance budget may also incorporate other basis of expenditure classification, such as character and object class, but these are secondary to activity performance.

Performance Measurement. A commonly used term for service efforts and accomplishments reporting.

Permanent Fund. Funds used to account for and report resources that are restricted to the extent that only earnings, and not principal, may be used for purposes that support the reporting government's programs and its citizenry. Permanent funds do not include private-purpose trust funds, which should be used to report situations in which the government is required to use the principal or earnings for the benefit of individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Perpetual Inventory. A system whereby the inventory of units of property at any date may be obtained directly from the records, without resorting to an actual physical count for each item or group of items to be inventoried. This system provides an ongoing record of goods ordered, received, and withdrawn, and the balance on hand, in units and frequently also in value.

Personal Property. Includes all property that is not real property, either tangible or intangible.

Petty Cash. A sum of money set aside on an imprest basis to make change or to pay small obligations for which the issuance of a formal voucher and check would be too expensive and time-consuming. Petty cash accounts are sometimes referred to as petty cash funds. However, they are not funds in the sense of governmental accounting. Petty cash accounts should be reported as assets of the fund of ownership. See Imprest Account.

Petty Cash Voucher. A form used to record individual disbursements of petty cash.

Pledged Receivables. Taxes or other types of receivables either used to secure a collateralized borrowing or sold to a third party in exchange for cash.

Pledged Revenues. Revenues to be either collected in the future securing a collateralized borrowing or sold to a third party in exchange for cash.

Plan Net Position (Plan Net Position Held in Trust for OPEB). The difference between total plan assets and total plan liabilities at the reporting date.

Police Power. The authority for a government to regulate behavior to accomplish a public goal.

Policy. A formal written contract of insurance between an insurer and an insured describing among other things, the period and amount of risk coverage the insurer agrees to provide the insured.

Policyholder. The party to whom an insurance policy is issued and who pays a premium to an insurer for the insurer's promise to provide insurance protection.

Policyholder Dividends. In the context of public-entity risk pools, payments made or credits extended to the insured by the insurer, usually at the end of a policy year, which result in reducing the net insurance cost to the policyholder. These dividends may be paid in cash to the insured or applied by the insured to reduce premiums due from the next policy year.

Policy Year Basis. For disclosure purposes, a method that assigns incurred losses and claim adjustment expenses in the year in which the event that triggered coverage under the pool insurance policy or participation contract occurred. For occurrence-based coverage for which all member has a common contract renewal date, the policy year basis is the same as the accident year basis. For claims made coverages, policy year basis is the same as the report year basis.

Popular Annual Financial Reporting. Supplementary financial reporting designed to meet the special needs of interested parties who are either unable or unwilling to use the more detailed financial information provided in traditional ACFR.

Popular Annual Financial Reporting Award. An awards program sponsored by the GFOA with the objective of encouraging and assisting governments to prepare and publish high-quality popular annual financial reports.

Population. The population of any entity of government other than a school district shall be determined by a method prescribed by the Legislature, provided that such determination shall be revised, as necessary, to reflect the periodic census conducted by the United States Department of Commerce, or successor agency of the United States Government. The population of any school district shall be such school district's average daily attendance as determined by a method prescribed by the Legislature.

Possessory Interests. Possession of, claim to, or right to the possession of land or improvements, except when coupled with ownership of the land or improvements in the same person. Taxable improvements on tax-exempted land.

Postemployment. The period after employment.

Postemployment Benefits. Benefits that are paid subsequent to a termination of employment in exchange for services rendered during employment. Consist of pensions and other postemployment benefits (OPEB).

Postemployment Benefit Trust. A legal trust or equivalent arrangement meeting specific requirements (specified in GASB Cod. Sec. Pe5.101 or Po50.101) through which a postemployment benefit (pension or OPEB) plan is administered.

Postemployment Benefit Changes. Adjustments to the pension of an inactive employee (or plan member).

Postemployment Healthcare Benefits. Medical, dental, vision, and other health-related benefits paid subsequent to the termination of employment.

Posting. The act of transferring to an account in a ledger the data, either detailed or summarized, contained in a book or document of original entry.

Potential Component Unit. A separate government unit, agency, or nonprofit corporation that needs to be evaluated to determine if it is to be included with other component units and the oversight unit to constitute the reporting entity.

Potentially Misleading to Exclude. A term used in connection with defining the financial reporting entity. The basis for including a legally separate entity within the financial reporting entity even though that separate entity does not meet either of the normal criteria for inclusion as a component unit (i.e., board appointment or fiscal dependency).

Preliminary Project Stage. In the context of internally generated computer software, the stage of development that includes the conceptual formulation and evaluation of alternatives, the determination of the existence of needed technology, and the final selection of alternatives for the development of the software.

Preliminary Views (PV). A due-process document issued by GASB that solicits comments from interested parties on a proposed authoritative pronouncement prior to the issuance of an exposure draft.

Premium. (1) The excess of the price of a security over its face value, excluding any amount of accrued interest bought or sold. (2) The consideration paid for an insurance contract.

Premium (Insurance). The consideration paid for an insurance contract.

Premium Deficiency. In the context of public-entity risk pools, the amount by which expected claims costs (including IBNR) and all expected claim adjustment expenses, expected dividends to policyholders or pool participants, unamortized acquisition costs, and incurred policy maintenance costs exceed related unearned premium revenue.

Prepaid Items. Costs of services to be received in future periods that have been paid in advance (insurance), resulting in an asset. Although frequently referred to as prepaid expenses, that terminology is not appropriate for governmental funds.

Preparer. Those who are responsible for producing financial reports that recognize relevant events in the financial statements or that disclose or present messages about such events elsewhere in the financial report.

Prepayment of Taxes. The deposits of money with a government on condition that the amount deposited is to be applied against the tax liability of a designated taxpayer after the taxes have been levied and such liability has been established. See Taxes Collected in Advance.

Present Value. A valuation technique used to link future amounts (cash flows or values) to a present amount by employing a discount rate (an application of the income approach).

Primary Government. In the context of the financial reporting entity, a state government or general purpose local government. Also, a special purpose government that has a separately elected governing body, is legally separate, and is fiscally independent of other state or local governments. The primary government is the focus of the financial reporting entity.

Primary Users of General-Purpose External Financial Reports. Those groups of financial statement users whose needs guide the development of GAAP. For state and local governments, the primary users of general-purpose external financial reports are (1) those to whom government is primarily accountable (the citizenry), (2) those who directly represent the citizens (legislative and oversight bodies), and (3) those who lead or participate in the lending process (investors and creditors).

Principal. In the context of bonds other than deep-discount debt, the face value or par value of a bond or issue of bonds payable on stated dates of maturity. See Face Value and Par Value.

Prior Secured Roll. See Redemption Roll.

Prior Unsecured Roll. Unsecured taxes unpaid as of February 28 of each fiscal year.

Prior Years' Tax Levies. Taxes levied for fiscal periods preceding the current one.

Principal Act. Generic statute that applies to local government agencies. All principal acts are State laws.

Private-Purpose Trust Fund. Used to report escheat property or all other trust arrangements under which principal and income benefit individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Probable. In the context of risk management, classification of a loss contingency where the future event or events are likely to occur.

Pro Forma. Latin: as a matter of form, or an example. Term is used in conjunction with a noun to denote merely a sample form (i.e., pro forma document, statement, certificate, or presentation) the contents of which may be either wholly or partially hypothetical.

Program. Group activities, operations, or organizational units directed to attaining specific purposes or objectives.

Program Budget. A budget wherein expenditures are based primarily on programs of work and secondarily on character and object classification, on the one hand, and performance on the other. See Performance Budget and Traditional Budget.

Program Compliance Audit. An examination leading to the expression of an opinion on the degree of the audited entity's compliance with requirements imposed by intergovernmental grantors and the audited entity's eligibility for grant monies.

Program Loan. A term used in connection with cash flows reporting. A loan made and collected as part of a governmental program that provides a direct benefit to individual constituents.

Program Revenue. In the context of government-wide financial statements, revenues derived directly from the program itself or from parties outside the reporting government's taxpayers or citizenry, as a whole; program revenues reduce the net cost of the function to be financed from the government's general revenues. The statement of activities should separately report three categories of program revenues: (1) charges for services, (2) program-specific operating grants and contributions, and (3) program specific capital grants and contributions.

Program Specific Grants and Contributions (Operating and Capital). Revenues arising from mandatory and voluntary nonexchange transactions with other governments, organizations, or individuals that are restricted for use in a particular program.

Project Costs. Costs clearly associated with the acquisition, development, and construction of a real estate project.

Projected Benefit Payments. All benefits estimated to be payable through the pension or OPEB plan to current active and inactive employees as a result of their past service and their expected future service.

Projected Unit Credit Actuarial Cost Method (PUC). A method under which the benefits (projected or unprojected) of each individual included in an Actuarial Valuation are allocated by a consistent formula to valuation years. The Actuarial Present Value of benefits allocated to a valuation year is called the Normal Cost. The Actuarial Present Value of benefits allocated to all period prior to a valuation year is called the Actuarial Accrued Liability.

Property. Real property (e.g., land and real estate) or Personal Property (which is everything else and commonly referred to as personal property) that is capable of ownership.

Proprietary Funds. Funds consisting of enterprise funds (emphasizing major funds) and internal service funds. The funds focus on the determination of operating income, changes in net position (or cost recovery), financial position, and cash flows.

Provisions. In governmental fund types, budgeted amounts to provide for increases or decreases in fund balance classifications.

Public Authority. See Authority.

Public Corporation. See Municipal Corporation and Quasi-Municipal Corporation.

Public Employee Retirement System (PERS). A special-purpose government that administers one or more pension plans. A PERS may also administer other types of employee benefit plans, including postemployment health care plans and deferred compensation plans.

Public Entity Risk Pool. A cooperative group of governmental entities joining together to finance an exposure, liability, or risk. Risk may include property and liability, workers' compensation, or employee health care. A pool may be a stand-alone entity or included as part of a larger governmental entity that acts as the pool's sponsor.

Public-Public and Public-Private Partnership (PPP). An arrangement in which a government (the transferor) contracts with an operator (may be a governmental or nongovernmental entity, exceptions apply) to provide public services by conveying control of the right to operate or use a nonfinancial asset, such as infrastructure or other capital asset (the underlying PPP asset), for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction.

PPP Asset. Nonfinancial asset (right-to-use underlying asset) — sum of the initial measurement of the liability for installment payments (if applicable), plus any PPP payments made to the transferor at or before the commencement of the PPP term, the cost of the purchased or constructed underlying PPP asset (if the PPP meets the definition of an Service Concession Arrangement), the cost of improvements to an existing underlying PPP asset, and any initial direct costs that are ancillary charges necessary to place the right-to-use asset into service.

PPP Liability for Installment Payments. The present value of PPP payments expected to be made during the PPP term by the operator. Measurement of the liability for installment payments should include (if required by the PPP), fixed payments, variable payments that depend on an index or rate (e.g., consumer price index or market interest rate), variable payments that are fixed in substance, amounts reasonably certain of being required to be paid by the operator under residual value guarantees, payments for penalties for terminating the PPP (if PPP term reflects the operator exercising an option to terminate the PPP or exercising a fiscal funding or a cancellation clause), and any other payments to the transferor associated with the PPP that are reasonably certain of being required based on an assessment of all relevant factors. Variable payments (including payments related to revenue sharing arrangements) based on future performance of the operator, usage of the underlying PPP asset, or variable factors other than an index or a rate, should not be included in the measurement of the liability for installment payments.

PPP Modifications and Terminations. These are amendments that modify the provisions of the PPP arrangement. Examples of amendments to PPP arrangements include changing the price of the arrangement, lengthening or shortening the PPP term, changing the index or rate upon which variable payments depend, and adding or removing an underlying PPP asset. An amendment should be considered a PPP modification unless the operator's right to use the underlying PPP asset decreases, in which case the amendment should be considered a partial or full PPP termination. (Note: some amendments or terminations may require a remeasurement of the PPP arrangement.)

PPP Receivable for Installment Payments. The present value of PPP payments expected to be received during the PPP term by the transferor, less any provision for estimated uncollectible amounts. Measurement of the receivable for installment payments should include (if required by the PPP), fixed payments, variable payments that depend on an index or a rate (e.g., consumer price Index or market interest rate), variable payments that are fixed in substance, and any residual value guarantee payments that are fixed in substance. Variable payments (including payments related to revenue sharing arrangements) based on future performance of the operator, usage of the underlying PPP asset, or variable factors other than an index or a rate, should not be included in the measurement of the receivable for installment payments.

PPP Term. The period during which the operator has a noncancelable right to use an underlying PPP asset (referred to as the noncancelable period), plus (if applicable) any periods covered by an operator's or transferor's option to extend or terminate the PPP if it is reasonably certain (based on all relevant factors) that the operator or transferor will exercise that option. Cancellable periods (e.g., PPP that continues into a holdover period until a new PPP arrangement begins) are excluded from the PPP term.

Purchase Order. A document authorizing the delivery of specified merchandise or the rendering of certain services and the making of a charge for them.

Purchases Method. The method under which inventories are recorded as expenditures when acquired. See Consumption Method.

Pure Cash Conduit. A term used in connection with pass-through grants. A grantor that merely transmits grantor-supplied money without having administrative or direct financial involvement in the program.

Purpose Restrictions. A term used in connection with government-mandated and voluntary nonexchange transactions. Legal limitations that specify the purpose or purposed for which resources are required to be used (as distinguished from eligibility requirements).

Purpose Restrictions (Eligibility). The purpose for which resources is required to be used. All other purposes other than those required are un-allowed (or disallowed).

Q

Qualified Opinion. An opinion stating that except for the effect of the matter to which the qualification relates, the financial statements present fairly the financial position, results of operations, and (when applicable) cash flows in conformity with GAAP. Such an opinion is expressed when a lack of sufficient, competent, evidential matter or restrictions on the scope of the auditor's examination have led the auditor to conclude that an unqualified opinion cannot be expressed, or when the auditor believes, on the basis of the examination, that (1) the financial statements contain a departure from GAAP, the effect of which is material; (2) there has been a material change between periods in accounting principles or in the method of their application; or (3) there are significant uncertainties affecting the financial statements, and the auditor has decided not to express an adverse opinion or to disclaim an opinion. See also Adverse Opinion, Disclaimer of Opinion, and Modified Opinion.

Quasi-Municipal Corporation. An agency (e.g., a county, special district, or school district) established by the state primarily to help the state to carry out its functions. Some counties and other agencies ordinarily classified as quasi-municipal corporations have been granted the powers of municipal corporations by their states. See Municipal Corporation.

Questioned Cost. In the context of single audits, a determination by an auditor that an expenditure under a grant does not meet all of the grantor's requirements and, therefore, may be subject to disallowance and subsequent refund to the grantor.

R

Rate Base. The value of utility property used in computing an authorized rate of return as authorized by law or a regulatory commission.

Rate of Return (ROR). The gain or loss on an investment over a specified period, expressed as a percentage increase over the initial investment cost.

Rating. In the context of bonds, normally an evaluation of credit-worthiness performed by an independent rating service.

Real Account. An account, the balance of which is carried forward into the next fiscal year (a balance sheet account). See Nominal Account.

Real Estate or Real Property. (1) The possession of, claim to, ownership of, or right to possession of land; (2) all mines, minerals, and quarries in the land, all standing timber whether or not belonging to the owner of the land, and all rights and privileges appertaining thereto; and/or (3) improvements.

Realized Gains and Losses. Difference between the carrying value of an asset and its price at the time of sale if the asset had been reported at other than fair value. (The term unrealized gains and losses is used to describe the difference between carrying value and fair value prior to sale.)

Reappropriation. The inclusion of a balance from the prior year's budget as part of the budget of the subsequent fiscal year. Reappropriation is common for encumbrances outstanding at the end of a fiscal year that a government intends to honor in the subsequent fiscal year.

Reasonable Assurance. A term used in connection with financial auditing. The principle that the goal of the independent audit of the financial statements is to ensure that financial statements are free from material misstatement. The principle of reasonable assurance rests on the assumption that it is not cost-beneficial to attempt to ensure that financial statements are free of immaterial misstatements.

Rebatable Arbitrage. A term used in connection with the reinvestment of the proceeds of tax-exempt debt. A requirement to remit to the federal government interest revenue in excess of interest costs when the proceeds from the sale of tax-exempt securities are reinvested in a taxable money market instrument with a materially higher yield.

Recommended Budget. The recommended budget is prepared from compiled budget requests by the administrative officer or the auditor, as designated by the board and is recommended to the board by the designated county official on or before June 30 each year, as the board directs. The recommended budget document is formally approved by the board of supervisors to serve as the basis for public hearings prior to the determination of the adopted budget. See Adopted Budget and Budget Request.

Recipient Government. In a pass-through grant, a governmental entity that receives grants and other financial assistance to transfer to or spend on behalf of a secondary recipient.

Reciprocal Interfund Activity. The interfund counterpart to exchange and exchange-like transactions. This category includes both interfund loans and interfund services provided and used.

Recoverable Expenditure. An expenditure that is made for or on behalf of another government, fund, or department or for a private individual, firm, or corporation and that will subsequently be recovered in cash or its equivalent.

Redemption. The realization of a right to have the title of property restored free and clear of the lien of any taxes, through payment of money.

Redemption Amount. The total amount that would be necessary to redeem tax-defaulted property at the time an election is made to pay delinquent taxes.

Redemption Roll. All secured taxes defaulted as of June 30 of each fiscal year.

Refund. (1) an amount paid back or credit allowed because of an over collection or because of the return of an object sold. (2) to pay back or allow credit for an amount because of an over collection or because of the return of an object sold. (3) to provide for the payment of an obligation through cash or credit secured by a new obligation.

Refunding. Issuance of new debt when proceeds are used to repay previously issued debt. The proceeds may be used currently (current refunding) or either placed in escrow unit or invested until they are used to pay principal and interest on the old debt at later date (advance refunding).

Register. A record for the consecutive entry of a certain class of events, documents, or transactions, with proper notation of all the required details. See Journal.

Registered Bond. A bond whose owner is registered with the issuing government. A registered bond cannot be sold or exchanged without a change of registration.

Registered Security. A security that has the name of the owner written on its face. A registered security cannot be negotiated except by the endorsement of the owner.

Registered Warrant. A warrant which is registered by the paying officer for future payment due to a present lack of monies and which is to be paid in the order of its registration. In some cases, such warrants are registered when issued; in others, when first presented to the paying officer by the holders. See Warrant.

Regular Serial Bonds. Serial bonds in which all periodic installments of principal repayment are equal.

Regulated Enterprises. Enterprises for which (1) rates for regulated services or products are either established by, or subject to approval by, an independent, third-party regulator (or the governing board itself if it is empowered by statute or contract to establish rates that bind customers), (2) the regulated rates are designed to recover the specific enterprise's costs of providing regulated services or products, and (3) it is reasonable to assume that the regulated activity can set and collect charges sufficient to recover its costs. Regulated enterprises have the option of adopting certain specialized guidance issued by FASB. In practice, the term regulated enterprise is normally applied to those enterprises that elect to become a regulated enterprise.

Reimbursable Expenditures. See Recoverable Expenditure.

Reimbursement Grant. A grant for which a potential recipient should first incur qualifying expenditures to be eligible. Reimbursement grants are also referred to as expenditure-driven grants.

Reimbursements. (1) Repayments of amounts remitted on behalf of another party. (2) Interfund transactions that constitute reimbursements of a fund for expenditures or expenses initially made from it that properly apply to another fund (e.g., an expenditure properly chargeable to a Special Revenue Fund is initially made from the General Fund and is subsequently reimbursed). These transactions are recorded as expenditures or expenses, as appropriate, in the reimbursing fund and as reductions of the expenditure or expense in the fund that is reimbursed.

Reinsurance. A transaction in which a reinsurer (assuming enterprise), for a consideration (premium), assumes all or part of a risk undertaken originally by another insurer (government). However, the legal rights of the insured are not affected by the reinsurance transaction and the insurance enterprise issuing the insurance contract remains liable to the insured for payment of policy benefits.

Related Organization. An organization for which a primary government is not financially accountable because it does not impose will or have a financial benefit or burden relationship, even though the primary government appoints a voting majority of the organization's governing board.

Related Parties. A government's related organizations, joint ventures, and jointly governed organizations, elected and appointed officials of the government; its management; members of the immediate families of elected or appointed officials of the government and its management; and other parties with which the government may deal if management or operate policies of the other might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests. Another party also is a related party if it can significantly influence the management or operate policies of the transacting parties (for example, through imposition of will) or if it has an ownership interest in one of the transacting parties and extent that one or more of the transacting parties might be prevented from fully pursuing its own separate interests.

Related Party Transaction. A transaction that an informed observer might reasonably believe reflects considerations other than economic self-interest based upon the relationship that exists between the parties to the transaction. The term often is used in contrast to an arm's length transaction.

Relative Order of Liquidity. An order for presenting assets and liabilities on the statement of net position, based upon how readily they may be converted to cash or will require the use of cash.

Relevance. The principle that there should be a close logical relationship between the financial information provided and the purpose for which it is needed. Information is relevant if it is capable of making a difference in a user's assessment of a problem, condition, or event.

Reliability. The principle that financial information should be verifiable and free from bias, and should faithfully represent what it purports to represent. To be reliable, financial reporting needs to be comprehensive.

Religious Exemption. The tax exemption allowed on property used exclusively for religious purposes.

Replacement Cost. The price that would be paid to acquire an asset with equivalent service potential in an orderly market transaction at the measurement date.

Remote. Classification of a loss contingency where the change of the future event or events occurring is slight.

Report. A statement or description and/or process of communicating information.

Reporting Entity. The oversight unit and all of its related component units, if any, that are combined in the ACFR/BFS.

Reporting Package. A term used in connection with single audits. A package that the auditor must communicate to the Federal Audit Clearing House that includes (1) the government's financial statements, (2) the government's supplementary schedule of expenditures of federal awards, (3) the auditor's reports, (4) a summary schedule of prior audit findings, and (5) a corrective action plan. The reporting package must be accompanied by a special data collection form that summarizes the information contained in the reporting package.

Reproduction Cost. The cost as of a certain date of reproducing an exactly similar new property in the same place. Sometimes this term is designated as Reproduction Cost (New) to distinguish it from depreciated reproduction cost, which is the reproduction cost of a given property less the estimated accumulated depreciation applicable to it. See Replacement cost.

Reporting Date. The date of the financial statements. Generally, the reporting date is the last day of the fiscal year.

Repurchase Agreement. A generic term for an agreement in which a government entity (buyer-lender) transfers cash to a broker-dealer or financial institution (seller-borrower); the broker-dealer or financial institution transfers securities to the entity and promises to repay the cash plus interest in exchange for the same securities or for different securities.

Request for Proposal (RFP). A formalized method used in the procurement of services by soliciting information concerning the qualifications, experience and proposed compensation arrangements of prospective firms. The RFP sets forth the services being sought and requests information from firms interested in procuring the engagement.

Required Supplementary Information (RSI). One of two categories of supporting information: Required Supplementary Information (RSI) and Supplementary Information (SI). RSI is supporting information that the GASB has concluded is essential for placing basic financial statements and notes to basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. RSI is required to accompany the basic financial statements and notes to basic financial statements in a government's general purpose external financial report.

Requisition. A written demand or request, usually from one department to the purchasing officer or to another department, for specified articles or services.

Resolution. A special or temporary order of a legislative body; an order requiring less legal formality than an ordinance of statute. See Ordinance.

Resource. An element of the means available to a government to carry out its functions and activities. This includes money, property, equipment, manpower and other assets both tangible and intangible.

Restricted Assets. Assets whose use is subject to constraints that are either (1) externally imposed by creditors (such as through debt covenants), grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments, or (2) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Restricted Fund Balance. Fund balance should be classified as restricted when constraints placed on the use of resources are either (1) externally imposed by creditors, grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments, or (2) imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Restricted Fund Balance — Debt Service. An account used to segregate a portion of the fund balance for resources legally restricted to the payment of general long-term debt principal and interest maturing in future years.

Restricted Net Position. One of three components of net position reported in both government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements, and represents resources subject to externally enforceable constraints, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation. It consists of restricted assets reduced by liabilities and deferred inflows of resources related to those assets. Generally, a liability or deferred inflow of resources relates to restricted assets if the asset results from a resource flow that also results in the recognition of a liability/deferred inflow of resources or if the liability will be liquidated with the restricted assets reported (exclusive of capital-related borrowings, which are always included as part of the calculation of net investment in capital asset).

Retained Earnings. An equity account reflecting the accumulated earnings of a commercial business in the private sector. This term is not used in governmental accounting, the term net position is used instead.

Retention. A liability account reflecting amounts due on construction contracts not paid pending final inspection of the project or the lapse of a specified period, or both. The unpaid amount is usually a stated percentage of the contract price.

Retirement Allowances. Amounts paid to government employees who have retired from active service or to their survivors.

Retirement Fund. See Pension (and other employee benefits) Trust Fund.

Retrospectively (Experience) Rated Policy. A term used in connection with public entity risk pools. An insurance policy for which the final amount of the premium is determined by adjusting the initial premium based on actual experience during the period of coverage (sometimes subject to maximum and minimum limits). A retrospectively rated policy is designed to encourage safety by the insured and to compensate the insurer if larger-than-expected losses are incurred.

Revenue Anticipation Note (RAN). A short-term, interest-bearing note issued by a government in anticipation of revenues to be received at a later date.

Revenue Bonds. Bonds whose principal and interest are payable exclusively from earnings of an enterprise fund. In addition to a pledge of revenues, such bonds sometimes contain a mortgage on the enterprise fund's property.

Revenue Bonds Payable. A liability account, which reflects the face value of revenue bonds issued and outstanding.

Revenue District. Includes every city and district for which the county officers assess property and collect taxes or assessments.

Revenues. Under the current financial resources measurement focus, increases in net financial resources not properly classified as other financing sources or associated with future periods.

Reverse Repurchase Agreement. An agreement in which a broker-dealer or financial institution (buyer-lender) transfers cash to a government entity (seller-borrower); the entity transfers securities to the broker-dealer or financial institution and promises to repay the cash plus interest in exchange for the same securities or different securities.

Revolving Fund. An imprest account that is accounted for as an asset of a fund.

Risk. Defined variously as uncertainty of loss, change of loss, or the variance of actual from expected results. Also, the subject matter of an insurance contract.

Risk Management. The process of managing an organization's activities to minimize the adverse effects of certain types of losses. The main elements of risk management are risk control to minimize the losses that strike a local government entity, and risk financing to obtain finances to restore the economic damages of those losses.

Risk-Sharing Pools. One of four different types of public entity risk pools. An arrangement by which governments pool risks and funds and share in the cost of losses.

Roll Being Prepared. (1) Assessor's Roll: the roll being compiled by the assessor for the ensuing fiscal year prior to certification of valuations to the county auditor.

(2) Supplemental Roll: the roll for the fiscal year following the fiscal year in which the change in ownership occurs or new construction is completed.

S

Salary-Related Payments. A term used in connection with compensated absences. Payments by an employer that are directly and incrementally associated with payments made for compensated absences on termination. Such salary-related payments include the employer's share of Social Security and Medicare taxes and also might include the employer's contributions to pension plans.

Sale-Leaseback Transactions. Sale-leaseback transactions involve the sale of an underlying asset by the owner and a lease of the property back to the seller (original owner). A sale-leaseback should include a transaction that qualifies as a sale to be eligible for sale-leaseback accounting. A sale-leaseback transaction that does not include a qualifying sale should be accounted for as a borrowing activity by the seller-lessee and a lending activity by the buyer-lessor.

Salvage Value. The estimated value that will be realized upon sale of an asset at the end of its useful life.

Schedule of Employer Contributions. A term used in connection with defined benefit pension and OPEB plans. Trend data on employers' annual required contribution to a plan and actual contributions.

Schedule of Funding Progress. A term used in connection with defined benefit pension and OPEB plans. Trend data on the relationship between the actuarial value of pension plan assets and the related actuarial accrued liability.

Schedules. See Supporting Schedules.

School District or Entity. Any school district, community college district, or county superintendent of schools.

Scrap Value. The value that will be realized upon sale of an asset if sold for its materials.

Scrip. An evidence of indebtedness, usually in small denomination, secured or unsecured, interest bearing or noninterest bearing, stating that the government, under conditions set forth, will pay the face value of the certificate or accept it in payment of certain obligations.

Secured Roll. State-assessed property and property which, in the opinion of the assessor, has sufficient value to guarantee payment of taxes levied, which if unpaid can be satisfied by the sale of the property by the tax collector.

Security. A financial instrument issued by a business entity or government, which gives the buyer the right to either interest payments or a share of the earnings of the issuer. Examples include stocks, bonds, options and warrants.

Securities Lending Transactions. Transactions in which governmental entities transfer their securities to broker-dealers and other entities for collateral, such as cash, securities, or letters of credit, and simultaneously agree to return the collateral for the same securities in the future.

Segment. Identifiable activity (or grouping of activities) reported as or within an enterprise fund (or other stand-alone entity) that has one or more bonds or other debt instruments outstanding, with a revenue stream pledged in support of that debt. In addition, there must be an externally imposed requirement that the activity's revenues, expenses, gains, losses, assets, and liabilities be accounted for separately.

Segment Information. In the context of governmental financial reporting, the presentation of selected information on certain individual enterprise funds. Such disclosures are required by GAAP for primary governments with activities meeting the definition of segments.

Segregation of Incompatible Duties. The principle of internal control that no single employee should be placed in a position that allows that employee both to commit and to conceal an irregularity in the ordinary course of the employee's duties.

Self-Supporting Debt or Self-Liquidating Debt. Debt obligations whose principal and interest are payable solely from the earnings of the enterprise for whose construction or improvement the bonds were originally issued. See Revenue Bonds.

Serial Bonds. Bonds whose principal is repaid in periodic installments over the life of the issue. See Regular Serial Bonds and Straight Serial Bonds.

Service Assessments. Special assessment projects for operating activities that do not result in the purchase or construction of capital assets. Often such service assessments are for services that are normally provided to the public as general government functions and that would otherwise be financed by the general fund or a special revenue fund. Those services include street lighting, street cleaning and snow plowing. Financing for these routine services typically comes from general revenues. However, when routine services are extended to property owners outside the normal service area of the government or are provided at a higher level or at more frequent intervals than that provided the general public, special assessments are sometimes levied. Only the affected property owners are charged for the additional services.

Service Concession Arrangement (SCA). A public-private or public-public partnership (PPP) arrangement between a transferor and an operator in which (a) the transferor conveys to the operator the right and related obligation to provide public services through the use and operation of an underlying PPP asset in exchange for significant consideration, (b) the operator collects and is compensated by fees from third parties, (c) the transferor determines or has the ability to modify or approve which services the operator is required to provide, to whom the operator is required to provide the services, and the prices or rates that can be charged for the services, and (d) the transferor is entitled to significant residual interest in the service utility of the underlying PPP asset at the end of the arrangement. See Public-Private and Public-Public Partnerships (PPPs).

Service Efforts and Accomplishments (SEA) Reporting. GAAP financial statements provide financial performance information about a government's fiscal and operational accountability. However, those statements do not provide all of the information necessary to determine the degree to which the government was successful in helping to maintain or improve the well-being of its citizens by providing services, nor to assess efficiency in meeting those goals. GASB has issued Suggested Guidelines for Voluntary Reporting, SEA Performance Information that are intended to meet these objectives, while acknowledging that setting standards in this area is outside of the scope of GASB authority.

Shared Revenues. Revenues levied by one government but shared on a predetermined basis (often in proportion to the amount collected at the local level) with another government or class of governments.

Shared Taxes. See Shared Revenues.

Short-Term Debt. Debt with a maturity of one year or less after the date of issuance. Short-term debt usually includes variable-rate debt, bond anticipation notes, tax anticipation notes, and revenue anticipation notes.

Short-Term Lease. A lease that at the commencement of the lease term, has a maximum possible term under the lease contract of 12 months (or less), including any options to extend, regardless of their probability of being exercised. Periods for which both the lessee and lessor have an option to terminate the lease without permission from the other party (or if both parties must agree to extend) are cancellable periods and should be excluded from the maximum possible term. For a lease that has cancellable periods, (e.g., a rolling month-to-month lease or year-to-year lease), the maximum possible term of that lease is the noncancelable period, including any notice periods.

Short-Term Obligations. Obligations that are scheduled to mature within one year after the date of government's financial statements.

Significant Deficiency. A significant deficiency is a deficiency or combination of deficiencies in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Single Audit. An audit designed to meet the needs of all federal grantor agencies and performed in accordance with the Single Audit Act of 1984 (as amended) and 2 CFR 200 (subpart F). The Single Audit Act allows or requires governments (depending on the amount of federal assistance received) to have one audit performed.

Single Audit Act of 1984. Federal legislation that provides for state and local government recipients of federal financial awards to have one audit performed to meet the needs of all federal grantor agencies. The Single Audit Act was amended in 1996.

Single Employer. An employer whose employees are provided with pensions or OPEB through a single-employer defined benefit pension or OPEB plan.

Single Employer Defined Benefit Pension/OPEB Plan. A defined benefit pension or OPEB plan that is used to provide pensions or OPEB to employees of only one employer.

Single Function District. A special district that delivers one service such as water, sewage, or fire protection.

Single-Program Government. A term used in connection with financial reporting for special purpose governments. A government that budgets, manages, and accounts for its activities as a single program. Single-program governments that use only governmental funds have the option to combine their fund financial statements and their government-wide financial statements into a single, combining presentation.

Sinking Fund. See Debt Service Fund.

Sinking Fund Bonds. Bonds issued under an agreement which requires the government to set aside periodically out of its revenues a sum that, with compound earnings thereon, will be sufficient to redeem the bonds at their stated date of maturity. Sinking fund bonds are usually term bonds.

Solvency Test. A term used in connection with pension plan financial reporting. Comparison of a pension plan's present assets to its aggregate accrued liabilities classified into the following categories: (1) liability for active member contributions on deposit, (2) liability for future benefits to present retired lives, and (3) liability for service already rendered by active members. In preparing this schedule, valuation assets are arbitrarily allocated first to the liability for active member contributions on deposit, second to the liability for future benefits to present retired lives, and third to the liability for service already rendered by active members, regardless of the method used for asset allocation.

Special Act. Special district created by the Legislature tailored to the unique needs of a specific area. Special District Acts include districts that are regional in nature, have specific governing board requirements, provide unique services, or need special financing.

Special Assessment. Capital improvements or services provided by local government entities that are intended primarily to benefit a particular property owner or group of property owners rather than the general citizenry. The benefitting owners pay a regular assessment to the local government through a lien-assessed properties to secure the debt which may or may not be also backed by the full faith and credit of the local government entity as additional security.

Special Assessment Bonds. Bonds payable from the proceeds of special assessments. If the bonds are payable only from the collections of special assessments, they are known as special assessment bonds. If, in addition to the assessments, the full faith and credit of the government are pledged, they are known as general-obligation special assessment bonds.

Special Assessment Receivable. Claims a government has upon properties until special assessments levied against them have been paid. The term normally applies to those delinquent special assessments the government has taken legal action to collect through the filing of claims.

Special Assessment Liens Receivable. Claims a government has upon properties until special assessments levied against them have been paid. The term normally applies to those delinquent special assessments the government has taken legal action to collect through the filing of claims.

Special Assessment Roll. The official list showing the amount of special assessments levied against each property presumed to be benefited by an improvement or service.

Special Assessments Receivable — Current. Account for uncollected special assessments that a government has levied and are due within one year and are not yet considered delinquent.

Special Assessments Receivable — Delinquent. Account for special assessments remaining unpaid on and after the date to which a penalty for nonpayment is attached.

Special Assessments Receivable — Noncurrent. Account for uncollected special assessments that a government has levied but that are not due within one year.

Special Benefit Assessment. See Special Assessment, Fixed Charge Assessment, and Service Assessment.

Special District. A dependent/independent unit of local government organized to perform a single government function or a restricted number of related functions. Special districts usually have the power to incur debt and levy taxes; however, certain types of special districts are entirely dependent upon enterprise earnings and cannot impose taxes. Examples of special districts are water districts, drainage districts, flood control districts, hospital districts, fire protection districts, transit authorities, port authorities, and electric power authorities. Dependent special districts are usually under the governance of either county or city.

Special Funding Situations. Circumstances in which a nonemployer entity is legally responsible for providing financial support for pension/OPEB of the employees of another entity by making contributions directly to a pension/OPEB plan that is administered through a PEB trust (including making benefit payments as the OPEB comes due for benefits provided through such a plan), or by making benefit payments directly as the OPEB comes due in circumstances in which OPEB is provided through an OPEB plan that is not administered through a PEB trust (including using nonemployer contributing entity assets held by others), and either of the following criteria is met: (1) the amount of contributions or benefit payments for which the nonemployer entity legally is responsible is not dependent upon one or more events or circumstances unrelated to the pension/OPEB; or (2) the nonemployer entity is the only entity with a legal obligation to provide financial support directly to a pension/OPEB plan that is used to provide pension/OPEB to employees of another entity.

Special Journal. Journals other than the general journal used to record high-volume transactions that would otherwise overwhelm the general ledger. A journal in which are entered all entries of a particular type (e.g., cash receipts journals, cash disbursement journals, sales and purchases journals). See Journal and General Journal.

Special Lien Bonds. Special assessment bonds that are liens against particular pieces of property.

Special Revenue Fund. A governmental fund used to account for and report the proceeds of specific revenue sources that are restricted or committed to expenditure for specific purposes other than debt service or capital projects. Special revenue funds should not be used to account for resources held in trust for individuals, private organizations, or other governments.

Special Termination Benefits. Benefits offered for a short period of time to employees in connection with their termination of employment. Special termination benefits serve as an inducement to take early retirement, and often are used to help alleviate near-term budgetary problems.

Stabilization Arrangements. These represent formal arrangements to maintain amounts for budget or revenue stabilization, working capital needs, contingencies or emergencies, and other similarly titled purposes. The authority to set aside these amounts generally comes from statute, ordinance, resolution, charter, or constitution. Stabilization amounts may be expended only when certain specific circumstances exist and those circumstances should be such that they would not be expected to occur routinely. Stabilization funds can be classified as either restricted or committed fund balance if they meet the criteria. If the criteria is not met, then stabilization agreements should be reported as unassigned.

Standard Cost. The predetermined cost of performing an operation or producing a product when labor, materials, and equipment are used efficiently under reasonable and normal conditions. Normal conditions exist when there is an absence of special or extraordinary factors affecting the quality or quantity of the work performed or the time or method of performing it.

Standard Costing. Method of estimating the historical cost of a capital asset by establishing the average cost of obtaining the same or similar asset at the time of acquisition.

State and Local Government Series (SLGS). Direct obligations of the federal government that the U.S. Treasury issues specifically to provide state and local governments as a means to invest proceeds of their own tax-exempt-financing. Interest rates and maturities have to comply with Internal Revenue Service (IRS) arbitrage limits.

State-Assessed Roll. Utility properties assessed by the State Board of Equalization that are comprised of both unitary and nonunitary value, which is considered part of the secured roll.

State Controller. The elected California State fiscal officer prescribed by the constitution with such additional powers, duties, and functions as the Legislature may confer or impose upon the office.

Statement of Cash Receipts and Disbursements. A financial presentation summarizing an entity's cash transactions in an accounting period. This statement is not currently required by GAAP.

Statement of Activities. Report of the results of operations of the reporting government presented in a format that reports the net (expense) revenue of its individual functions. At minimum the statement of activities should present (a) activities accounted for in governmental funds by function and (b) activities accounted for in enterprise funds by different identifiable activities.

Statement of Cash Flows. Required statement for proprietary funds, nonexpendable trust funds, and governmental entities that use proprietary fund accounting, directly showing the cash inflows and outflows of a period and reconciling operating cash flows to operating income.

Statement of Net Position. Report of all financial and capital resources. Local government entities are encouraged to present the statement in a format that displays assets plus deferred outflows of resources less liabilities plus deferred inflows of resources equal net position, although the traditional balance sheet format (assets plus deferred outflows of resources equal liabilities plus deferred inflows of resources plus net position) may be used.

Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance. A report of information about the inflows, outflows, and balances of current financial resources of each major governmental fund and for the nonmajor governmental funds in aggregate. A total column should be presented as of the period ended by the reporting date.

Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position. The operating statement for proprietary funds or fiduciary funds.

Statistical Section. One of three basic components of an ACFR, the objectives is to provide financial statement users with additional historical perspective, context, and detail to assist in using the information in the financial statements, notes to financial statements, and RSI to understand and assess a government's economic condition. The statistical section provides (1) information on financial trends, (2) information on revenue capacity, (3) information on debt capacity, (4) demographic and economic information, and (5) operating information.

Statistical Tables. Presentations included in the statistical section of the ACFR providing detailed data on the physical, economic, social and political characteristics of the reporting government.

Statute. A written law enacted by a duly organized and constituted legislative body. See Ordinance, Resolution, and Order.

Straight Serial Bonds. Serial bonds in which the annual installments of bond principal are equal or nearly equal.

Structured Settlement. A term used in connection with risk financing. A means of satisfying a claim liability, consisting of an initial cash payment to meet specific present financial needs combined with a stream of future payments designed to meet future financial needs, generally funded by annuity contracts.

Subactivity. A special line of work performed in carrying out a governmental activity. (e.g., cleaning luminaries and replacing defective street lamps would be subactivities under the activity of street light maintenance).

Subfunction. A grouping of related activities within a particular governmental function. (e.g., Police is a subfunction of the function public safety.)

Sublease. A sublease involves three parties: the original lessor, the original lessee (who also is the lessor in the sublease), and the new lessee. The original lessor should continue to apply the general lessor guidance. The government that is the original lessee and becomes the lessor in the sublease should account for the original lease and the sublease as two separate transactions, as a lessee and a lessor, respectively. Those two separate transactions should not be offset against one another. The new lessee should apply the general lessee guidance.

Subobject. A subdivision within an expenditure object classification (e.g., regular employees is a possible subobject classification within the personal services — salaries and wages expenditure object classification). May be used in a similar context when revenues utilize object classifications.

Subscription-Based Information Technology Arrangement (SBITA). A contract that conveys control of the right to use another party's (a SBITA vendor's) IT software, alone or in combination with tangible capital assets (the underlying IT assets), as specified in the contract for a period of time in an exchange or exchange-like transaction. (**Note:** A short-term SBITA pertains to a SBITA with a maximum possible subscription term that is 12 months or less, including any options to extend, regardless of their probability of being exercised.)

Subscription Asset. (Intangible right-to-use another party's IT software alone or in combination with tangible capital assets). Sum of the amount of the initial measurement of the subscription liability plus any payments associated with the SBITA contract made to the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term (if applicable), and any capitalizable initial implementation costs, less any SBITA vendor incentives received from the SBITA vendor at the commencement of the subscription term.

Subscription Liability. The present value of subscription payments expected to be made during the subscription term. Measurement of the subscription liability should include (if required by the SBITA), fixed payments, variable payments that depend on an index or rate (e.g., consumer price index or market interest rate), variable payments that are fixed in substance, payments for penalties for terminating the SBITA (if the subscription term reflects the local government exercising an option to terminate the SBITA or exercising a fiscal funding or a cancellation clause), any subscription contract incentives receivable from the SBITA vendor, and any other payments to the SBITA vendor associated with the SBITA contract that are reasonably certain of being required based on an assessment of relevant factors. Variable payments (other than those dependent on an index or a rate) such as those based on future performance of a local government, usage of the underlying IT assets, or number of user seats, should not be included in the measurement of the subscription liability.

SBITA Modifications and Terminations. These are amendments that change or modify the provisions of the SBITA contract. Examples of amendments to SBITA contracts include changing the contract price of the arrangement, lengthening or shortening the subscription term, changing the index or rate upon which variable payments depend, and adding or removing underlying IT assets. An amendment should be considered a SBITA modification unless the local government's right to use the underlying IT assets decreases, in which case the amendment should be considered a partial or full SBITA termination. (Note: some amendments or terminations may require a remeasurement of the SBITA liability.)

Subscription Term. The period during which a local government has a noncancelable right to use the underlying IT assets (referred to as the noncancelable period), plus (if applicable) any periods covered by a local government's or SBITA vendor's option to extend the SBITA if it is reasonably certain (based on all relevant factors) that the local government or SBITA vendor will exercise that option and any periods covered by a local government's or SBITA vendor's option to terminate the SBITA if it is reasonable certain (based on all relevant factors) that the local government or SBITA vendor will not exercise that option. Cancellable periods (e.g., a rolling month-to-month SBITA or a SBITA that continues into a holdover period until a new SBITA contract begins) are excluded from the subscription term.

Subsequent Event. Events or transactions that affect the financial statements after the reporting date. Recognized events require adjustments to the financial statements as they existed prior to the reporting date. Non-recognized events may require disclosure.

Subsidiary Account. One of a group of related accounts supporting in detail the debit and credit summaries recorded in a control account (e.g., the individual property taxpayers' accounts for the taxes receivable control account in the general ledger). See Control Account.

Subsidiary Ledger. A group of subsidiary accounts, the sum of the balances of which should equal the balance of the related control account (or general ledger account). See General Ledger.

Subsidies: Subsidies are defined as follows:

- Resources received from another party or fund (1) for which the proprietary fund does not provide goods and services to the other party or fund and (2) that directly or indirectly keep the proprietary fund's current or future fees and charges lower than they would be otherwise.
- Resources provided to another party or fund (1) for which the other party or fund does not provide goods and services to the proprietary fund and (2) that are recoverable through the proprietary fund's current or future pricing policies.
- All other transfers.

Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (SSAP). First of the notes to the financial statements or a separate section immediately preceding the notes to the financial statements. The basic contents should include a discussion of (1) any selection of an accounting treatment when GAAP permit more than one approach, (2) accounting practices unique to state and local governments, and (3) unusual or innovative applications of GAAP.

Supplemental Roll. The roll prepared or amended in accordance with the provisions of the Revenue and Taxation Code section 75 et seq., and containing properties that have changed ownership or had new construction completed.

Supplementary Information (SI). One of two categories of supporting information: required supplementary information (RSI) and supplementary information (SI). SI is supporting information that places the basic financial statements and the notes to basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context.

Supporting Schedules. Financial presentations used: (1) to demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal and contractual provisions; (2) to aggregate and present in greater detail information spread throughout the financial statements (e.g., cash balances, investments, current and delinquent taxes); (3) to present in greater detail information reported in the financial statements (e.g., additional revenue sources detail, changes in general capital assets by function); and (4) to present information not disclosed in GAAP basic financial statements (e.g., cash receipts and disbursements, changes in Agency Fund assets and liabilities).

Surety Bond. A written promise to pay damages or to indemnify against losses caused by the party or parties named in the document, through nonperformance or through defalcation (e.g., a surety bond might be required of an independent contractor). Surety bonds also include fidelity bonds covering government officials and employees.

Susceptible to Accrual. Revenues of governmental funds that are collected or collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period.

Suspense Account. An account that carries charges or credits temporarily, pending the determination of the proper account or accounts to which they are to be posted.

Swap. A type of derivative instrument in which there is an agreement to exchange future cash flows. These cash flows may be either fixed or variable and may be either received or paid. Variable cash flows depend on the reference rate.

System Development Fees. Fees charged to join or to extend an existing utility system. Also referred to as tap fees or connection fees.

T

Tap Fees. Fees charged to join or to extend an existing utility system. Also referred to as system development fees or connection fees.

Tax Anticipation Note (TAN). Generally speaking, a short-term, interest-bearing note issued by a government in anticipation of tax revenues to be received at a later date. The note is retired from the tax revenues to which it is related

Tax Anticipation Warrants. See Tax Anticipation Notes.

Tax Certificate. A certificate issued by a government as evidence of the conditional transfer of title to tax-delinquent property from the original owner to the holder of the certificate. If the owner does not pay the amount of the tax arrearage and other charges required by law during the specified period of redemption, the holder can foreclose to obtain title. Also called tax sale certificate and tax lien certificate in some jurisdictions. See Tax Deed.

Tax Deed. A written instrument by which title to property sold for taxes is transferred unconditionally to the purchaser. A tax deed is issued upon foreclosure of the tax lien and is obtained by the purchaser at the tax sale. The tax lien cannot be foreclosed until the expiration of the period during which the owner may redeem the property by paying the delinquent taxes and other charges. See Tax Certificate.

Tax-Defaulted Property. See Defaulted Taxes.

Tax-Exempt Bonds. State and local government securities whose interest are exempt from taxation by the federal government or within the jurisdiction issued.

Tax-Increment Financing. Financing secured by the anticipated incremental increase in tax revenues resulting from the redevelopment of an area.

Tax Levy Ordinance. An ordinance through which taxes are levied.

Tax Liens. Claims governments have upon properties until the taxes levied against them have been paid. This term is sometimes limited to those delinquent taxes the government has taken legal action to collect through the filing of liens.

Tax Liens Receivable. Legal claims against property that have been exercised because of nonpayment of delinquent taxes, interest and penalties. Amounts accumulated in this account include delinquent taxes, interest and penalties receivable thereon, and costs of converting delinquent taxes into tax liens.

Tax Notes. See Tax Anticipation Notes.

Tax Rate. The amount of tax stated in terms of a unit of the tax base (e.g., 25 mills per dollar of assessed valuation of taxable property).

Tax Rate Area (TRA). A geographic area served by a unique combination of jurisdictions.

Tax-Rate Limit. The maximum rate at which a government may levy a tax. The limit may apply to taxes raised for a particular purpose or to taxes imposed for all purposes, and may apply to a single government or to a class of governments operating in a particular area. Overall tax-rate limits usually restrict levies for all purposes and of all governments, state and local, having jurisdiction in a given area.

Tax Roll. The official list showing the amount of taxes levied against each taxpayer or property. Frequently, the tax roll and the assessment roll are combined, but even in these cases the two can be distinguished.

Tax Supplement. A tax levied by a local government having the same base as a similar tax levied by a higher level of government, such as a state. The local tax supplement is frequently administered by the higher level of government along with its own tax (e.g., locally imposed, state-administered sales tax).

Tax Title Notes. Obligations secured by pledges of the government's interest in certain tax liens or tax titles.

Taxable Assessed Value. The total assessed value minus all exemptions other than the homeowner's exemption.

Taxable Value. Means and includes the base year full cash value, adjusted for any given lien date as required by law, or the full cash value for the same date, whichever is less.

Taxes. Compulsory charges levied by a government to finance services performed for the common benefit. This term does not include specific charges made against particular persons or property for current or permanent benefits, such as special assessments. Neither does the term include charges for services rendered only to those paying such charges (e.g., sewer service charges).

Taxes Collected in Advance. A liability account reflecting taxes collected before they are formally levied.

Taxes Levied An asset account reflecting taxes that are levied by the reporting government for other governments that, when collected, are to be paid over to those governments.

Tax Power. The authority for a local government entity to raise money to pay for projects and services.

Taxes Receivable — Current. Account for the uncollected portion of taxes that a government has levied, that are due within one year, and that are not considered delinquent.

Taxes Receivable — Delinquent. Account for taxes remaining unpaid on and after the date on which a penalty for nonpayment attaches. Delinquent taxes receivable is classified as such until paid, abated, canceled, or converted into tax liens.

Taxing Agency. Includes the state, county, city, and every district that assesses property for taxation purposes and levies taxes or assessments on the property so assessed.

Technical Agenda. A term used in connection with GASB's due process procedure. A list of research projects formally undertaken by GASB as part of its development of authoritative standards of accounting and financial reporting.

Technical Bulletin. In context of GASB pronouncements, a document issued by the staff of GASB to provide guidance for applying GASB statements and interpretations and resolving accounting issues not directly addressed by them. The Accounting Standards and Procedures Committee of the California State Association of County Auditors issues similar documents that relate to specific accounting issues and their related treatments that are unique to California counties.

Teeter Plan. See Alternate Method of Tax Apportionment.

Temporary Loans. Short-term obligations representing amounts borrowed for short periods of time and usually evidenced by notes payable or warrants payable. They may be unsecured or secured by specific revenues to be collected. See Tax Anticipation Notes.

Ten Percent Criterion. The first of two tests used to determine whether a given governmental fund or enterprise fund should be reported as a major fund in the basic financial statements. For governmental funds, this test is applied to the total assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenditures of all governmental funds. For enterprise funds, this test is applied to the total assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses of all enterprise funds. The test need be met for only one of these four items. See Five Percent Criterion.

Term Bonds. Bonds that mature, in total, on one date.

Termination Benefits. Inducements offered by employers to active employees to hasten the termination of services, or payments made in consequence of the early termination of services. Termination benefits include early-retirement incentives, severance benefits, and other termination related benefits.

Termination Payments Method. A method of calculating the liability for earned sick leave for which it is probable that the benefits will result in termination payments. Under this method, the amount of the liability is estimated based on a governmental entity's past experience of making termination payments for sick leave, adjusted for the effect of changes in its termination policy and other factors.

Timber Advisory Committee. A standing committee appointed by the board and composed of one representative of the Board of Equalization, one representative of the Board of Forestry, five assessors from the rate adjustment counties, one member representing small-scale timber owners, and one member representing large-scale timber owners.

Timberland. (Timber Yield Tax). Privately owned land, or land acquired for state forest purposes, which is devoted to and used for growing and harvesting timber and compatible uses, and which is capable of growing an average annual volume of wood fiber of at least 15 cubic feet per acre.

Timeliness. The principle that financial statements should be issued soon enough after the reported events to affect decisions.

Time Requirements. Specification of (1) the period when resources are required to be used (sold, disbursed, or consumed) or when use may begin (for example, operating or capital grants for a specific period), or (2) that the resources are required to be maintained intact in perpetuity or until a specified date or event has occurred (for example, permanent endowments, term endowments, and similar agreements). Time requirements affect the timing of recognition of nonexchange transactions.

Timing Differences. In the context of budgetary accounting, differences between the budgetary basis of accounting and GAAP that occur when the period used for budgeting differs from the period used for GAAP reporting (e.g., a special revenue fund that uses a grant-year budget rather than a fiscal-year budget).

Total Pension/OPEB Liability. The portion of the actuarial present value of projected benefit payments that is attributed to past periods of employee service. The total pension/OPEB liability is the liability of employers and nonemployer contributing entities to employees for benefits provided through a defined benefit pension/OPEB plan that is not administered through a PEB trust, while employers and nonemployer contributors to trusted plans report the net pension/OPEB liability.

Trade Discount. An allowance, usually varying in percentage with the volume of transactions, made to those engaged in certain businesses and given without respect to when the account is paid. These discounts are commonly considered a reduction of the sales or purchase price, not earnings. The term is not to be confused with cash discount.

Traditional Budget. A term sometimes applied to the budget of a government wherein expenditures are based entirely or primarily on objects of expenditure. See Program Budget and Performance Budget.

Transaction Costs. The costs to sell an asset or transfer a liability in the principal (or most advantageous) market for the asset or liability that (1) are directly attributable to the disposal of the asset or the transfer of the liability, and (2) meet both of the following criteria: they result directly from and are essential to that transaction, and they would not have been incurred by the entity had the decision to sell the asset or transfer the liability not been made.

Transaction Date. The date on which a transaction is recorded in accounting records in conformity with GAAP. A long-term commitment may have more than one transaction date.

Transfers. See Interfund Transfers and Intra-Fund Transfers.

Transfers of Operations. A transfer of operations is a government combination involving the operations of a government or nongovernmental entity, rather than a combination of legally separate entities, in which no significant consideration is exchanged. Operations may be transferred to another existing entity or to a new entity.

Transportation Costs. The costs that would be incurred to transport an asset from its current location to its principal or most advantageous market.

Trial Balance. A list of the balances of the accounts in a ledger kept by double entry with the debit and credit balances shown in separate columns. If the totals of the debit and credit columns are equal or their net balance agrees with a control account, the ledger from which the figures are taken is said to be in balance.

Trust Funds. See Fiduciary Fund.

Trustee. A trustee is a third-party administrator who manages assets on behalf of a third party. This person is responsible for making investment and expenditure decisions on behalf of the beneficiary, such as deciding which investment vehicles to use and which beneficiary expenses to pay. A trustee should be characterized by a high level of integrity, in order to make the best possible decisions on behalf of the beneficiary.

Type A Program. A term used in connection with the determination of major programs for purposes of single audits. Type A programs are defined on the basis of the relationship between program expenditures and total federal awards expended.

Type B Program. A term used in connection with the determination of major programs for purposes of single audits. A Type B program is any program with insufficient program expenditures to qualify as a Type A program.

U

Unallocated Balance of Appropriation. An appropriation balance available for allotment.

Unallocated Claim Adjustment Expenses. A term used in connection with risk financing. Costs that cannot be associated with specific claims but are related to claims paid or in the process of settlement, such as salaries and other internal costs of the pool's claims department.

Unallocated Depreciation. In the context of the government-wide statement of activities, depreciation not properly reported as a direct expense of a function or program

Unamortized Discounts on Bonds Sold. A contra-liability account used to reflect that portion of the face value of bonds exceeding the amount received from their sale (excluding amounts paid for accrued interest) which remains to be amortized over the remaining life of the bonds.

Unamortized Premiums on Bonds Sold. A liability account used to reflect that portion of the excess of bond proceeds over exceeding par value and which remains to be amortized over the remaining life of such bonds.

Unamortized Premiums on Investments. An asset account used to reflect that portion of the excess of the amount paid for investments (excluding amounts paid for accrued interest) over their face value, which remains to be amortized over the remaining life of such investments.

Unanticipated Available Financing. Material sums of available financing not included in the budget, which may legally be made available for the financing requirements of the local government entity.

Unassigned Fund Balance. The residual classification for the general fund. This classification represents fund balance that has not been assigned to other funds and that has not been restricted, committed, or assigned to specific purposes within the general fund. The general fund should be the only fund that reports a positive unassigned fund balance amount. In other governmental funds, if expenditures incurred for specific purposes exceeded the amounts restricted, committed, or assigned to those purposes, it may be necessary to report a negative unassigned fund balance.

Unavailable Fund Balance. That portion of the governmental-type fund balance that is unavailable for financing the budget requirements for the accounting period involved. This is a conventional term, which identifies the nonspendable, restricted, committed and assigned portion of the fund balance, and should not be used in a GAAP financial presentation.

Unbilled Accounts Receivable. An account designating the estimated amount of accounts receivable for service that have not yet been billed.

Uncommitted Balance of Appropriations. The portion of an appropriation remaining after the deduction of expenditures and encumbrances.

Underlying Securities. Securities lent by the lender to the borrower.

Understandability. The principle that information in financial reports should be expressed as simply as possible.

Underwriter. In the context of bonds, a dealer who purchases a new issue for resale.

Underwriting. The process of selecting, classifying, evaluating, rating, and assuming risks. Generally speaking, underwriting is the exchange of a fee for the acceptance of risk. Common in the insurance and investment banking industries.

Undivided Interest. An arrangement (also known as a joint operation) that resembles a joint venture but no entity or organization is created by the participants. An undivided interest is an ownership arrangement in which two or more parties own property in which title is held individually to the extent of each party's interest. Implied in that definition is that each participant is also liable for specific, identifiable obligations (if any) of the operation. Because an undivided interest is not a legal entity, borrowing to finance its operations often is done individually by each participant. An additional consequence of the absence of a formal organizational structure is that there is no entity with assets, liabilities, expenditures/expenses, or revenues, or the resulting equity, to allocate to participants.

Unearned Revenue. Unearned revenues arise when revenues are received in an exchange transaction prior to their normal time of receipt and should be recorded as liabilities. Revenues that are the result of imposed and other nonexchange transactions have separate recognition rules that apply and are generally recorded as deferred inflows of resources.

Unencumbered Allotment. That portion of an allotment not yet expended or encumbered.

Unencumbered Appropriation. That portion of an appropriation remaining after the deduction of expenditures and encumbrances.

Unexpended Allotment. That portion of an allotment not yet expended.

Unexpended Appropriation. That portion of an appropriation not yet expended.

Unit Cost. In the context of cost accounting, the cost of producing a unit of product or rendering a unit of service (e.g., the cost of treating and purifying 1,000 gallons of sewage).

Unit of Account. The level at which an asset or a liability is aggregated or disaggregated for recognition or disclosure purposes.

Unitary Property. A group of properties that operate as a unit as part of the primary function of the assessee.

Unqualified Opinion. An opinion rendered without reservation by the independent auditor that financial statements are fairly presented.

Unliquidated Encumbrances. Encumbrances outstanding. See Encumbrances.

Unrealized Gains and Losses. A term used in connection with the valuation of investments. Cumulative change in the market value of investments prior to their disposition.

Unrealized Revenues. A term used in connection with budgeting. The difference between estimated revenues and actual revenues.

Unrestricted Net Position. One of three components of net position reported in both government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements. It is the difference between total net position and its two other components (net investment in capital assets and restricted net position).

Unsecured Roll. The county assessor's certified assessment listing of properties which, in his opinion, do not constitute sufficient permanence, either through immovability or other intrinsic qualities, to guarantee payment of taxes levied against them.

Unusual Items: These are transactions and events that possess a high degree of abnormality and be a type clearly unrelated to, or only incidentally related to the ordinary and typical activities of the government, taking into account the environment in which the government operates.

V

Value. As used in governmental accounting, (1) the act of describing anything in terms of money, or (2) to measure in terms of money. The term should not be used without further qualification. See Book Value and Face Value.

Valuation Technique. A specific method or combination of methods used to determine the fair value of an asset or liability.

Variable Interest Rate. A rate of interest subject to adjustment (e.g., the rate of interest specified may be a percentage of the prime rate on certain set dates).

Vessel. See Documented Vessel.

Vesting Method. Method of calculating the liability for earned sick leave for which it is probable that the benefits will result in termination payments. Under this method, the amount of the liability is estimated based on the sick leave accumulated at the date of the statement of position for those employees who currently are eligible to receive termination payments as well as for other employees who are expected to become eligible in the future to receive such payments. In calculating the liability, these accumulations are reduced to the maximum amount allowed as a termination payment. Accruals for those employees who are expected to become eligible in the future are based on assumptions concerning the probability that individual employees or classes or groups of employees will become eligible to receive termination payments.

Voucher. A written document that evidences the propriety of transactions and usually indicates the accounts in which they are to be recorded.

Voucher System. A system that calls for the preparation of vouchers for transactions involving payments and for the recording of such vouchers in a special book of original entry, known as a voucher register, in the order in which payment is approved.

Vouchers Payable. Liabilities for goods and services, evidenced by vouchers that have been pre-audited and approved for payment but that have not been paid.

Voluntary Nonexchange Transactions. Transactions that result from legislative or contractual agreements, other than exchanges, entered into willingly by the parties to the agreement (for example, certain grants and private donations).

Voting Majority. In the context of defining the financial reporting entity, a situation in which the number of a government's appointees to a component unit's board is sufficient to exhibit control.

Vulnerability Assessment. A term used in connection with evaluations of internal controls. The risk-based systematic prioritization of internal control evaluations.

W

Warrant. An order drawn by the legislative body or an officer of a government upon its treasurer, directing the latter to pay a specified amount to the person named or to the bearer. It may be payable upon demand, in which case it usually circulates the same as a bank check, or it may be payable only out of certain revenues when and if received, in which case it does not circulate as freely. See Registered Warrant and Deposit Warrant.

Warrants Payable. The amount of warrants outstanding and unpaid.

Wasting Assets. Mines, timberlands, quarries, oil fields and similar assets that diminish in value by the removal of their contents. The decline is generally recorded as depreciation expenses.

Welfare Exemption. A tax exemption on property used exclusively for religious, hospital, scientific, or charitable purposes, owned and operated by community chests, funds, foundations, or corporations organized and operated for religious, hospital, scientific, or charitable purposes.

Widely Recognized and Prevalent Practice. A term used in connections with the hierarchy of GAAP for state and local governments and is considered nonauthoritative accounting literature. The principal that accounting and financial reporting practice should itself serve as a source of GAAP in the absence of higher-level guidance.

Williamson Act. See Open Space Land.

Work in Process. The cost of partially completed products manufactured or processed, such as a partially completed printing job. Sometimes referred to as work in progress. See Construction in Progress.

Work Order. A written order authorizing and directing the performance of a certain task and issued to the person who is to direct the work. Among the items of information included on the order are the nature and location of the job, specifications of the work to be performed, and a job number, which is referred to in reporting the amount of labor, materials and equipment used.

Work Program. A plan of work proposed to be done during a particular period by the administrative agency in carrying out its assigned activities.

Work Unit. A fixed quantity that will consistently measure work effort expended in the performance of an activity or the production of a good.

Working Capital Fund. The difference between current assets and current liabilities. The result is considered a prime measure of short-term liquidity.

X

NONE

Y

Yellow Book. Term commonly used to describe the General Accounting Office's publication, *Government Auditing Standards*, the source of GAGAS.

Yield. See Effective Interest Rate.

Yield-Maintenance Repurchase/Reverse Repurchase Agreement. A repurchase agreement or a reverse repurchase agreement where the parties agree that the securities returned will provide the seller-borrower with a yield as specified in the agreement.

Z

Zero-Coupon Bond. A zero coupon bond is a bond with no stated interest rate. Investors purchase these bonds at a considerable discount to their face value in order to earn an effective interest rate. An example of a zero coupon bond is a U.S. savings bond.

Appendix C: Resources

Appendix Contents

General Governance 733

Local Government Resources 733

State Resources 735

Other.....736

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix C: Resources

General Governance

- Bagley-Keene Open Meeting Act (Gov. Code, §11120 et seq.)
- Cortese-Knox-Hertzberg Local Government Reorganization Act of 2000 (Gov. Code, §56000 et seq.)
- The Ralph M. Brown Act (Gov. Code, §54950 et seq.)
- California Public Records Act (Gov. Code, §7920 et seq.)
- County Budget Act (Gov. Code, §29000 et seq.)

Local Government Resources

Association of California Health Care Districts

www.achd.org

Association of California Water Agencies

www.acwa.com

California Association of Joint Powers Authorities

<https://www.cajpa.org/>

California Association of Public Cemeteries

www.capc.info

California Association of Recreation and Park Districts

www.carpd.net

California Association of Resource Conservation Districts

www.carcd.org

California Association of Sanitation Agencies

www.casaweb.org

California Debt and Investment Advisory Commission

www.treasurer.ca.gov/cdiac

California Association of Local Agency Formation Commissions

www.calafco.org

California Local Government Finance Almanac

www.californiacityfinance.com

Appendix C: Resources

California Special Districts Association

www.csda.net

California Special Districts Finance Corporation

www.csdafinance.net

California State Association of Counties

www.csac.counties.org

Fire Districts Association of California

www.fdac.org

Government Finance Officers Association

www.gfoa.org

Institute for Local Government

www.ca-ilg.org

League of California Cities

www.cacities.org

Mosquito and Vector Control Association of California

www.mvcac.org

Special District Risk Management Authority

www.sdrma.org

Appendix C: Resources

State Resources

California Department of Finance

<https://dof.ca.gov/>

State Administrative Manual (SAM)

<https://www.dgs.ca.gov/Resources/SAM>

Uniform Codes Manual

<https://dof.ca.gov/accounting/accounting-policies-and-procedures/accounting-policies-and-procedures-uniform-codes-manual/>

Office of the Governor

www.gov.ca.gov

Governor's Office of Planning and Research

www.opr.ca.gov

Attorney General's Office (California Department of Justice)

www.oag.ca.gov

California Legislative Information (California Laws, Statutes, Codes, and Other Resources)

www.leginfo.legislature.ca.gov

California Code of Regulations

<https://govt.westlaw.com>

California Department of Tax and Fee Administration (CDTFA)

<https://www.cdtfa.ca.gov/>

California Department of Transportation (Caltrans)

www.dot.ca.gov

California Public Employees' Retirement System (CalPERS)

www.calpers.ca.gov

California State Assembly

www.assembly.ca.gov

California State Board of Equalization

<https://www.boe.ca.gov/>

California State Controller's Office

www.sco.ca.gov

Appendix C: Resources

California State Controller's Office — Local Government Financial Data

<https://bythenumbers.sco.ca.gov/>

California State Controller's Office — Countywide Cost Allocation Plans

https://www.sco.ca.gov/ard_county_cost_allocation.html

California State Controller's Office — Division of Audits

https://www.sco.ca.gov/controller_audits_main.html

California State Senate

www.senate.ca.gov

California State Treasurer

www.treasurer.ca.gov

California Uniform Cost Accounting Commission

www.sco.ca.gov/ard_cuccac.html

California Fair Political Practices Commission

www.fppc.ca.gov

Legislative Analyst's Office

www.lao.ca.gov

Little Hoover Commission (California's Independent State Oversight Agency)

www.lhc.ca.gov

CivicWell (formerly Local Government Commission)

<https://civicwell.org/>

California Secretary of State

www.sos.ca.gov

Other

Governmental Accounting Standards Board

www.gasb.org

GASB User Guides

<https://gasb.org/archive/user-guides>

Office of Management and Budget (OMB)

www.whitehouse.gov/omb

Internal Revenue Service

<https://www.irs.gov>

Questions concerning reporting requirements or submissions, including joint power agreements, should be directed to the **Local Government Reporting Section** of the State Controller's Office at:

Local Government Reporting (Counties or Cities)

LGRsupport@sco.ca.gov

(916) 322-9672

Local Government Reporting (Special Districts)

SDsupport@sco.ca.gov

(916) 327-1017

Questions concerning the *Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties* (ASP) manual, the *Special Districts Uniform Accounting and Reporting Procedures* (SPD) manual, or accounting procedures for counties or special districts, should be directed to the **Local Government Policy Section** of the State Controller's Office at:

Local Government Policy (Counties or Special Districts)

LocalGovPolicy@sco.ca.gov

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROAD FUND ACCOUNTING

*Excerpt from the Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties,
2018 Edition*

The guidance in the following appendix is an excerpt from the 2018 edition of the *Accounting Standards and Procedures for Counties* (ASP) manual. The strike through language used in this appendix addresses superseded references.

The GAAP guidance and language in this extract has not been updated to current GASB Codification as described in the Foreword. At the time of the 2018 ASP publication, the GAAP guidance had only been updated for GASB Standards through Statement No. 72.

The legal statutes referenced in this extract may not reflect the current federal and state guidance. The legal guidance provided in this extract reflect the previous interpretation of the legal statutes as written in the 2018 ASP manual.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

Introduction

D.01 Public Ways and Facilities

Public ways and facilities are a major function of county government. The construction and maintenance of county roads and bridges is one of the major activities within this function that requires special accounting treatment.

D.02 Legal Basis

Divisions 2 and 3 of the *Streets and Highways Code* prescribe the duties and powers of counties in the construction and maintenance of county roads.

D.03 County Road System

Streets and Highways Code section 25 defines a county highway as any highway which is:

- Laid out or constructed as such by the county.
- Laid out or constructed by others and dedicated or abandoned to or acquired by the county.
- Made a county highway in any action for the partition of the real property.
- Made a county highway pursuant to law.

Although the code defines county highways, in order to distinguish among them, reference is usually made to state highways, county roads, and city streets. The total of the highways referred to in *Streets and Highways Code* section 25 is called the county road system.

D.04 Organization

To perform this road function, all counties have a *Road Fund* which may also be a customer of a department of public works. Accounting methods subsequently described are applicable to a road department, whereas a department of public works is an *Internal Service Fund* and is accounted for on a proprietary fund basis (~~See Chapter 13, Proprietary Funds~~).

Financial Accounting

D.05 Fund Type

Special Revenue Funds are used to account for and report the proceeds of specific revenue resources that are restricted or committed to expenditure for specified purposes other than debt service or capital projects. A Special Revenue Fund is established to account for the available financing and financing requirements associated with the *Road Fund*. ~~The Road Fund uses the same balance sheet accounts presented in Chapter 9, General Fund and Special Revenue Funds.~~

D.06 Budgetary Control

Budgetary controls are exercised over Salaries and Employee Benefits, Services and Supplies, Other Charges, Capital Assets, Other Financing Uses, and Residual Equity Transfers. The projects adopted by the board as represented by cost centers are subject to budgetary control unless the board adopts other administrative controls (SHC Code, §2007).

D.07 Revenues and Other Financing Sources

~~Road Fund revenues and other financing sources are accounted for in accordance with Chapter 6: External Financing Sources (Revenues, Other Financing Sources, and Transfers).~~ Additional accounts may be established as necessary for reporting requirements. For example, Streets and Highways Code section 2150 requires that Highway Users Tax revenue be kept in a separate account for snow removal, heavy rainfall, storm damage, etc. An alternative would be to establish and maintain a subsidiary revenue ledger for the desired level of detail.

Motor Vehicle Fuel Taxes are usually the major revenue source for the county road program. Other *Road Fund* revenues include traffic fines and forfeitures, federal forest reserve receipt apportionments, and federal flood control receipt apportionments. The cost of certain projects is shared by the state and federal governments. Counties may supplement these sources by operating transfers from the General Fund and by district assessments for expenditure in the area of benefit. Interest earned on investments of Road Fund money must be deposited in the Road Fund and used for road purposes, per Streets and Highways Code section 1622.

If remittances of Highway Users Tax are reduced by amounts for Federal Aid Secondary (FAS) deposits, the Highway Users Tax must be recorded at its gross amount and a Deposits with Others account should be debited until the expenditure is incurred.

D.08 Expenditures and Other Financing Uses

~~Accounts for expenditures and other financing uses accounts are maintained in accordance with Chapter 7, Financing Uses (Expenditures/Expenses, Other Financing Uses, Transfers, Contingency, Appropriations).~~

D.09 Transactions of Original Entry

Cost Accounting

The information presented in this section is an example of a model used to capture data required for completing the Annual Road Report.

D.10 Cost Accounts

Cost accounts are established to account for the costs associated with an activity, project, or job. Generally, expenditures recorded in object accounts would be allocated to a cost account. They include both the direct and indirect costs that represent the costs of the road program.

D.11 Cost Centers

Work type cost centers should be maintained for the following expenditure categories:

- Administration
- Construction
- Maintenance
- Aid to Other Governmental Agencies
- Acquisition of Equipment
- Plant Acquisition
- Reimbursable Work

D.12 Clearing Accounts

Clearing accounts are those in which expenditures are paid and subsequently allocated or distributed to cost centers. Such accounts are maintained for:

- Labor
- Equipment Maintenance
- General Road Overhead
- Shop Overhead

D.13 Projects

In support of the work type cost centers, job cost or project accounts are maintained in support of the construction, aid to other governmental agencies, plant acquisition, and reimbursable work cost centers. Job/Project costs are segregated into the following categories:

- Contracts
- Other Direct Charges, including Materials from Inventory
- Labor
- Equipment Usage
- General Road Overhead

D.14 Labor — Clearing Account

The Labor — Clearing account is used to distribute all salaries and employee benefits paid by using a subobject account and is credited when labor is distributed by job/project and work type.

Example

The monthly payroll is \$25,000. The county share of retirement is \$1,750. The county also pays \$175 toward employees' health insurance premiums:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures	DR: \$26,925	
Cash		CR: \$26,925
Sales and Employee Benefits	DR: \$26,925	
*Labor — Clearing		CR: \$26,925

The distribution to cost centers is obtained from daily time cards and other sources:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
*Administration	DR: \$2,155	
*Construction	DR: \$10,760	
*Maintenance	DR: \$8,610	
*Aid to Other Governmental Agencies	DR: \$2,180	
*Reimbursable Work	DR: \$3,220	
*Labor — Clearing		CR: \$26,925

Note: An asterisk “*” preceding an account title designates a cost account.

If labor rates were equal to actual costs, the clearing account would be zero after each posting cycle. In practice there will be a variance. Variances should be analyzed periodically to determine the cause and reset rates if necessary. Variances between standard rates and actual charges could be accounted for as an adjustment to the general work overhead account or distributed upon another acceptable basis, such as labor hours.

D.15 Labor Rates

Procedures for distributing labor to cost accounts should provide for uniformity of charges should:

- produce current cost information;
- be standardized;
- facilitate ease in accounting operations; and
- be adaptable to manual or automated methods.

For these reasons, the use of a weighted average labor rate is recommended in the distribution of labor costs to the respective cost accounts.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

In applying this method, a charge is composed of the direct labor per hour, or other appropriate unit, plus a pro rata share of labor-related costs such as the county's share of employees' retirement, old age, survivor, and disability insurance (O.A.S.D.I.), group insurance premiums, vacation, sick leave and other employee benefits. A variance between accumulative allocations to cost accounts and the actual expenditures for payroll and the labor-related items for which the rate is weighted will be reflected in the difference between the debits and credits in the labor-clearing accounts. These variances should be cleared at the end of the fiscal year on a pro rata basis to the appropriate cost centers or as a component of general road overhead. Care should be taken in establishing rates at the start of a fiscal year in order to minimize variance adjustments during or at the close of the period.

The actual computation of rates will depend on:

- 1) gross salary;
- 2) county share of fringe benefits;
- 3) employee absence experience; and
- 4) time reporting basis (hourly, weekly, monthly, etc.).

For employees whose labor costs are chargeable to only one cost center, such as administration, only a monthly rate is needed. For others, an hourly rate is required to distribute costs adequately and accurately.

Example: Computation of weighted average hourly labor rate

General

A labor rate should be computed for each pay range and each step within those pay ranges. The rate should include a weight for the pro rata share of all labor-related indirect costs for which expenditures are charged to the road function object accounts.

Assumptions:

Salary Pay Step/Range	\$1,476 per month
Salary Ordinance Provisions	Vacation Allowance: 15 Working Days Per Year
	Sick Leave: 12 Working Days Per Year
	Work Week 40 Hours
	Holidays: 10 (This Fiscal Year)
County Retirement Contribution	6.70
County Group Insurance Contribution	20.50 per Month per Employee
Average Number of Vacation Days Taken	15
Average Number of Sick Leave Days Taken	6
Average Premium for Worker's Compensation	
Insurance for Field Employees	\$2.83 per \$100

Computation:

Total Annual Employee Cost:

Payroll	$\$1,476 \times 12$	\$17,712.00
Retirement	$\$17,712 \times .067$	\$1,186.70
Group Insurance	$\$20.50 \times 12$	\$246.00
Workman's Compensation	$(\$17,712 \times 2.83)/\$100$	\$501.25
Total Annual Employee Cost		\$19,645.95

Net Productive Working Days:

Total Work Week Days in Year	365 – 104	261

Less Non-Productive Days

Average Vacation	15	
Average Sick Leave	6	
Holidays	10	31
Net Productive Work Days		230
Net Productive Working Hours:		230
Hours per Day		x 8
Net Productive Working Hours		1,840

Weighted Average Hourly Labor Rate	$\$19,645.95 / 1,840$	\$10.68

D.16 Equipment — Clearing Account

As with labor, this account is used to distribute the actual cost of equipment repair and operation. The postings are similar to those for labor.

Total debits to the Equipment — Clearing Account should equal debits to the subsidiary equipment account. A corresponding record should be kept in regard to each piece or class of equipment for which a rate is used and all charges to that equipment are accumulated. Applied credits may also be posted to each record. Additionally, if certain units of equipment are grouped together for purposes of rate computation, then credits on all pieces in the group may be posted to a single record.

D.17 Equipment Rental Rates

Equipment rental rates should be fixed to cover as closely as possible the cost of making the equipment available for each unit of service. This includes not only the direct operating costs, such as fuel, oil, tires, and other operating supplies, but also maintenance and repairs, insurance, and overhead costs. Depreciation is included when equipment usage is purchased from outside the Road Fund, such as an Internal Service Fund for Public Works.

Optionally, depreciation may be based on replacement cost when a fund balance classification is established for a Capital Asset replacement in accordance with Chapter 13, ~~Proprietary Funds~~. It is recommended that those indirect, but related equipment costs, such as upkeep of equipment yards, shops and/or garages, also be considered.

Rates should be established by selected homogeneous classes or types of equipment. This means that all pieces of equipment of relatively the same type, capacity, or other pertinent characteristics should bear the same rate. In some situations, particularly in large fleets, groupings may be advisable for equipment of the same make and/or same relative type of usage.

Equipment rental rates are based on the estimated costs of operating the equipment over a certain period, usually the fiscal year. The total estimated costs for the year are then reduced to a rate per unit of service, based on the estimated number of units of service that will be performed during the year. A sound basis for arriving at estimates of operating costs and operating data is the cost or experience data of the equipment accumulated in prior years. There may be somewhat wide variations in operational costs and in units of service among individual pieces. Therefore, the selection of a rental rate by selected classes or types is recommended as a leveling device and, incidentally, to ease the accounting processes.

Since the first rates established must be based on estimates, they should be subjected to close scrutiny and should be adjusted periodically in light of actual experience data and possible revised estimates. Rental rates should always be reviewed at least at the end of the year, again in light of the actual operational cost and usage data.

For this reason, among others, it is necessary that an accounting system for equipment operating costs and operating usage be maintained. A minimum charge may be set in order to encourage the productive use of equipment, such as a standby rate.

Rental rates are normally stated in dollar amounts per hour or per mile. The unit of measure of service for which the rates are computed should be given careful consideration. Many factors, such as type of usage, loading times, etc. will have an effect. Rental rates for heavy trucks, tractors, loaders, etc., where mileage is not indicative of use are stated in rates per hour, whereas rental rates for passenger cars and light trucks may be set in terms of mileage [this basis is consistent with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) requirements].

Example:

County X has a fleet of six motor graders for which a rate is desired. The experience data summary for the prior year is as follows:

Computation — Rental Rate

Equipment Number	Operating Supplies	Repair Labor	Repair Parts	Insurance	General Road Overhead	Total Costs	Hours Used
101	\$1,030	\$298	\$1,080	\$60	\$338	\$2,806	1,082
102	1,302	198	986	78	224	2,788	1,120
103	834	478	1,876	42	542	3,772	838
104	1,206	168	422	88	192	2,076	1,464
105	1,076	324	1,298	66	368	3,132	1,210
106	1,110	386	1,452	66	438	3,452	1,189
Totals	6,558	1,852	7,114	400	2,102	18,026	6,903

Itemized Costs	Total Costs
Total Costs per Table	\$18,026
Estimated 5% Increase in Cost of Labor and Parts $(1,852 + \$7,114) \times .05$	\$448
Total Estimated Cost of Operation during Ensuing Year	\$18,474
Estimated Hours of Use during Ensuing Year	7,400
Rental Rate for Motor Grader	$\$18,474 / 7,400$ \$2.50 per Hour

Note: No depreciation is considered within the example as it is not a component part of the operating expenditures of a Special Revenue Fund. In practice, most counties operate from a Department of Public Works Internal Service Fund where depreciation would be a component expense and the Road Fund would be a customer.

D.18 Inventory

At the time materials are purchased, it may not be known which project or cost center will use them. They are stockpiled and withdrawn for use as needed. On the other hand, they may have been purchased for a particular project and delivered directly to the job site.

The ending balance of the Services and Supplies object account should reflect the materials actually used during the year. This may be accomplished in two ways:

1. Consumption Inventory Method: Charging purchases initially to the asset account, Inventory. When materials are withdrawn for use, this account is credited and the Services and Supplies object account is charged.
2. Purchases Method: Charging purchases initially to the expenditure object account, Services and Supplies. At the end of the year this account is adjusted to actual usage with an offsetting entry to the asset account.

Under the Purchases Method, an inventory clearing account must be used to receive balancing postings until the materials are withdrawn from stock for use. The clearing account reflects the net change in inventory during the current period. (~~See Chapter 9A.19, Materials Included in Inventory for sample postings of each method.~~)

Job-site deliveries may be routed either through the inventory accounts (Asset Account for the Consumption Inventory Method or Inventory Clearing Account for the Purchases Method) or posted only to the Services and Supplies account and Cost Centers account.

Materials should be centrally stored in one or a few locations, and be under the physical control of a storekeeper. Receiving tickets should be written for all incoming materials and requisitions required for all withdrawals. This information is entered on an individual inventory card for each type of material subject to control, and the balances are periodically verified by a physical count.

D.19 Materials Included in Inventory

It is not necessary to subject all purchases of materials and supplies to formal inventory accounting controls. Minor items such as nuts, bolts, nails, welding rods, small hand tools, etc., may be kept under physical, but not accounting control. This means that such purchases are charged to the Services and Supplies account and the usage is recorded through an overhead rate, rather than as an inventory withdrawal. Inventory accounting itself is a cost and must be balanced against expected benefits. The extent of this accounting is influenced by:

- Misappropriation of materials
- Facilities
- Manpower
- Controls
- Materiality

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

It is recommended that accounting controls be established over the following materials (if stocked):

- Aggregate
- Asphalt, asphalt products
- Automotive supplies
- Pipe, drainage products
- Lumber
- Paint
- Steel
- Gasoline, diesel, grease and oil

Example:

The beginning inventory is \$20,000. During the year, materials in the amount of \$120,000 are purchased:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Compensation Inventory Method:</u>			
Inventory		DR: \$120,000	
Cash			CR: \$120,000
<u>Purchases Method:</u>			
Expenditures		DR: \$120,000	
Cash			CR: \$120,000
Services & Supplies	Sub: \$120,000		
*Inventory Clearing	Sub: \$120,000		

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

80,000 in materials are purchased for direct delivery to job sites:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Compensation Inventory Method:</u>			
Expenditures		DR: \$80,000	
Cash			CR: \$80,000
Services and Supplies	Sub: \$80,000		
*Cost Centers (various)	Sub: \$80,000		

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Purchases Method:</u>			
Expenditures		DR: \$80,000	
Cash			CR: \$80,000
Services & Supplies	Sub: \$80,000		
*Cost Centers (various)	Sub: \$80,000		

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

\$110,000 in materials are withdrawn from inventory for use on projects and maintenance work:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Compensation Inventory Method:</u>			
Expenditures		DR: \$110,000	
Inventory			CR: \$110,000
Services and Supplies	Sub: \$110,000		
*Cost Centers (various)	Sub: \$110,000		

Purchases Method:

*Cost Centers (various)	Sub: \$110,000
*Inventory Clearing	Sub: \$110,000

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

A physical inventory at the close of the year shows the book inventory to be overstated by \$500:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
<u>Compensation Inventory Method:</u>			
Expenditures		DR: \$500	
Inventory			CR: \$500
Services and Supplies	Sub: \$500		
General Overhead Clearing	Sub: \$500		

Purchases Method:

General Overhead Clearing	Sub: \$500
*Inventory Clearing	Sub: \$500

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

Year-end adjusting entry:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>

Consumption Inventory Method:

N/A

Purchases Method:

Inventory		DR: \$9,500	
Reserved for Inventory			CR: \$9,500

Services & Supplies	Sub: \$9,500

*Inventory Clearing	Sub: \$9,500

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

D.20 Pricing

For consistent results, a uniform method of pricing requisitions must be adopted. The three most common methods are:

<u>Date of Purchase</u>	<u>Number</u>	<u>Total Cost</u>	<u>Unit Cost</u>
June 3	25	\$550	\$22.00
August 17	10	\$210	\$21.00
September 16	50	<u>\$1,087.50</u>	\$21.75
Total	85	<u>\$1,847.50</u>	

1. First In-First Out: This method assumes that withdrawals are from the oldest stock on hand. If 30 tires are requisitioned, they would be valued at \$655.00 (25 @ \$22.00 and 5 @ \$21.00)
2. Last In-First Out: This method assumes that withdrawals are from the most recently purchased stock. The 30 tires withdrawn would be valued at \$652.50 (30 @ \$21.75)
3. Average Cost: This method requires the computation of an average unit cost after each purchase. The average cost per tire is \$21.735 (\$1,847.50/85). The 30 tires withdrawn would be valued at \$652.05 (30 @ \$21.735)

The choice made among the above or other methods is not of great significance in governmental accounting. The important point is that the method selected be followed consistently.

D.21 General Road Overhead

This overhead account consists of costs which generally apply to all road activity, but which cannot be charged directly to specific cost centers. The following types of costs are included:

- Cost of overall supervision of field operations (those levels of employees between administrative and the working crew foremen, such as road superintendent, general foreman, etc.);
- Costs of moving equipment that cannot be allocated (moving costs should be allocated to specific cost centers wherever possible);
- Cost of expendable small tools (shovels, picks, axes, etc.);
- Cost of non-permanent reusable barricades, warning signs, and other devices;
- Road operations liability insurance premiums;
- Labor, storage, supplies, materials, handling charges, and other costs attributable to the inventory operation which are not chargeable to shop overhead. (Counties requiring a more precise cost of materials could use an inventory overhead clearing account.); and
- Clearing account variances.

Such costs are usually charged to the General Road Overhead Clearing account.

Overhead is best allocated to cost centers as a percentage of the labor allocated to those cost centers. If the overhead rate is set at 10% of applied labor, which for the accounting period amounted to \$6,750, then \$675 in general road overhead would be applied.

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
*Cost centers (various)	DR: \$675	
*General Road Overhead – Clearing		CR: \$675

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

At the end of the year the clearing account will have a debit or credit balance, representing the under- or over-application of overhead. Size and causes of the variances indicate whether the application rate should be changed for the following year.

D.22 Shop Cost

Shops are operated where certain repairs and maintenance are performed on road equipment. Labor, equipment usage, materials and overhead are applied to equipment maintenance, the expense of which will be charged to cost centers through equipment usage rates. These costs are accumulated through the regular cost media: time cards, requisitions and overhead rates.

For the example below, assume the following in regard to the cost source documents:

- \$300 in labor applied to pickup truck repair;
- \$150 in automotive supplies requisitioned for the above repairs; and
- shop overhead rate is 15% of applied labor.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

The entries in the accounts are:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures	DR: \$150	
Inventory		CR: \$150
Services and Supplies	DR: \$150	
*Equipment Clearing		CR: \$150
*Equipment – Clearing	DR: \$345	
*Shop overhead — Clearing		CR: \$45
*Labor — Clearing		CR: \$300
(The \$495 is charged in the subsidiary equipment ledger to the pickup trucks repaired)		

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

D.23 Shop Overhead

Shop overhead is limited to those shop expenses that cannot be charged to the repair job or for which such a charge is impractical.

Examples of such charges are:

- occupancy expense, such as rent, utilities, and cleaning expense;
- supervision and wage expense of supporting personnel, not chargeable to specific repair jobs;
- repairs and maintenance of shop structures and grounds, cost of alterations, and minor additions;
- premiums on fire, theft and liability insurance, if shop portion is segregated;
- shop supplies, such as expendable tools, oxygen, welding rod, nails, bolts, etc.; or
- repairs to shop equipment not subject to a usage rate.

Certain equipment may be used partly in the shop and partly for other road purposes. Such equipment should carry a usage rate to ensure that costs are correctly allocated. Shop overhead is accounted for as general road overhead, except that its immediate destination is equipment maintenance, rather than cost centers. It is subsequently reflected in the cost centers through equipment rental rates as a component of the rate development, ~~as shown in Chapter 9A.17, Equipment Rental Rates.~~

Shop overhead is best distributed to repair jobs as a percentage of applied labor.

Example:

If the overhead rate is 15% of labor, which for repairing a grader amounted to \$100, \$15 in shop overhead would be applied as shown below:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures	DR: \$50	
Inventory		CR: \$50
Services and Supplies	DR: \$50	
*Equipment — Clearing		CR: \$50
*Equipment — Clearing	DR: \$115	
*Shop overhead — Clearing		CR: \$15
*Labor — Clearing		CR: \$100

(In the subsidiary equipment ledger, the grader is charged with \$165)

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

D.24 Year-End Disposition of Variance

At the end of the year each clearing account will have a debit or credit balance, representing the difference between actual and applied costs. These balances should be cleared to cost centers, as follows:

- If a variance is 10% (5% for labor clearing accounts) or more of total debits to the clearing account, it is allocated to each project within each cost center in proportion to the total prior allocations from that clearing account.
- If the variance is less than 10% (5% for labor clearing accounts), it need only be allocated to each cost center as part of the general road overhead.

Allocations of variances should be made to reimbursable work projects, even if the county does not intend to collect or refund the amount of variance applicable to the project.

D.25 Administration

This cost center receives charges for the cost of administration and management of the road activity. Examples of these types of expenses include:

- salaries and expenses of road commissioners;
- salaries and expenses of deputies or assistants;
- salaries of clerical employees;
- office expense;
- convention and travel expense;
- supervisor's travel allowance; and
- general and undistributed engineering.

In some counties, supervisory personnel may divide time between administrative and road operations. In other counties, administrative personnel may have other duties, such as that of county surveyor or engineer. In these situations, a monthly distribution of time must be made.

General and undistributed engineering is all work of the engineering staff of the road department. Or it is the work of outside engineering services that cannot be allocated to a specific cost center because the work is not specific, or because division by cost center is impractical, such as:

- safety engineering;
- traffic engineering;
- planning studies and investigations;
- appraisals; or
- unallocable engineering.

Unallocable engineering refers to the situation where two or more minor, and perhaps adjacent, projects were without any time segregation. Whenever practicable, such costs should be allocated to the project.

All costs of preliminary engineering for reconnaissance, preliminary and location survey, traffic and speed studies, materials and soils investigations and tests, and preparation of plans relative to a specific project should be charged to that project. Costs of construction engineering, advertising for bids, setting of progress, final reports, and estimates relative to a specific project should be charged to that project.

As a practical matter, administration usually allocated to job/projection costs on the basis of direct expenditures (excluding general undistributed engineering) when an Internal Service Fund such as Public Works is estimated and the Road Fund is a customer.

D.26 Construction

A single construction account controls all construction projects. Project costs are further segregated by category of expenditure.

Betterments that are minor in nature, including right-of-way acquisitions, may be grouped and regarded as a single project, unless it is necessary to subgroup them according to different restricted sources of financing.

D.27 Rights-of-Way

Rights-of-way are land acquired for use as a road, either as an easement or by grant deed conveying title in fee. Rights-of-way costs include ~~(See Chapter 15.16, Intangible Costs):~~

- Payments for the land or interests therein.
- Costs of removing, demolishing, moving, resetting or altering obstruction buildings, structures or other improvements.
- Payment for damages to property arising by reason of the project.
- Court costs in condemnation proceedings.
- Cost of title searches and reports.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

- Salaries, transportation expenses of rights-of-way agents in connection with acquisition of rights-of-way boundaries whenever the right of way is conveyed to the county, and the sole consideration for the conveyance is an agreement by the county to construct such fences.
- All other expenses incurred for the purpose of acquiring rights-of-way free and clear of all physical obstructions and legal encumbrances.

Costs for rights-of-way are charged to the Other Charges object account and to the Construction Cost Center, if they do not meet the county's Capitalization threshold.

D.28 Maintenance

A single maintenance account controls all maintenance work. Subsidiary maintenance, job, or project accounts need to be kept to accumulate for:

- snow removal;
- heavy rainfall and storm damage; and
- other (additional records are kept as deemed necessary).

D.29 Aid to Other Governmental Agencies

This cost center is charged with:

- Cash grants to another governmental agency to be expended on the streets or highways of that agency.
- Amounts expended for work performed on the streets or highways of another agency.

An example within this category would be costs incurred on city streets taken over as an extension of a county road through cities pursuant to Streets and Highways Code section 1700 et al.

Costs of work on city streets which have been deeded to the county under the provisions of Streets and Highways Code section 1723, are not charged to this cost center, but to Construction or Maintenance accounts.

D.30 Acquisition of Equipment

~~Definitions of equipment are set forth in Chapter 15, *Capital Assets*.~~ Equipment is charged to this cost center, as are costs of labor, materials, and overhead applied to the manufacture of equipment. In the latter case, job orders should be used to accumulate costs.

D.31 Plant Acquisition

~~Definitions of land, structures, and improvements are also found in Chapter 15: Capital Assets.~~
Since centralized budgeting and accounting for all county real property acquisition is recommended, structures and improvements acquired by purchase or construction contract may be charged directly to the County Plant Acquisition Budget Unit. Cost of structures and improvements constructed by force are accumulated in the Road Budget Unit account and, upon completion, billed and charged to the General Fund Unit account.

Road Budget Unit	
Revenue.....	\$5,000
<i>Plant Acquisition Budget Unit</i>	
Structures and Improvements.....	\$5,000

D.32 Reimbursable Work

This cost center is charged with the cost of performing work for, rendering services to, or furnishing materials to others on a reimbursable basis. Normally these services are performed on other than the county road system and are not considered to further road purposes. The following are included:

- Services for private parties and business firms, such as snow removal, oiling driveways, etc.
- Work performed or materials furnished for other county departments and other governmental agencies, such as leveling and oiling grounds, maintenance, and repair of non-road department equipment, furnishing gas and oil, building inspection services, and street work for cities when not authorized by the board of supervisors as a contribution (SHC Code §1680 et al).

Equipment depreciation must be included in billings for reimbursable work, in order to comply with the anti-diversion principle.

Billings to outside parties should include charges for certain costs, such as administrative overhead, which may not have been distributed to the Reimbursable Work Cost Center.

Example:

The cost of paving the Hospital District Parking Lot is performed with road fund resources and charged to the Reimbursable Work Cost Center:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Expenditures	DR: \$700	
Inventory		CR: \$700
Services and Supplies	DR: \$700	
*Reimbursable Work		CR: \$700
*Reimbursable Work	DR: \$3,530	
*Labor — Clearing		CR: \$2,300
*Equipment — Clearing		CR: \$1,000
General Road Overhead — Clearing		CR: \$230

*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account

The Hospital District pays in full the cost of paving the parking lot:

<u>Account</u>	<u>Sub</u>	<u>Debit (DR)</u>	<u>Credit (CR)</u>
Road Fund Cash		DR: \$4,230	
Road Fund Revenues			CR: \$4,230
Charges for Services	Sub: \$4,230		

D.33 Encumbrances

An encumbrance system may be used at either the object or project level depending upon the budgetary control exerted locally. ~~Encumbrance accounting is presented in Chapters 8, *Specific Accounting Procedures* and Chapter 16, *Budgetary*.~~

D.34 Internal Service Funds

~~Internal service funds are the subject of Chapter 13, *Proprietary Funds*.~~ If financing is available, it is advantageous to assign equipment ownership, maintenance, and rental to an internal service fund. Accounting in the road department is simplified and depreciation may be included in the rental rates. (Depreciation rates based on replacement costs and moneys set aside for asset replacement are allowable ~~as presented with Chapter 13, *Proprietary Funds*.~~)

Definitions

D.35 General Definitions

The following definitions are those which are associated with the County Road Fund. The two general classifications of road working activities are:

Construction — The building or rebuilding of a road or its component parts to a degree that improved traffic service is provided and geometric or structural improvements are effected.

Maintenance — The preservation and upkeep of a road's constructed condition, and the operation of a road facility and its integral services to provide safe, convenient and economical highway transportation.

In addition to these general classifications of road activities, definitions for bridging are required because of their traditional separation from roads.

Bridge — A single-span structure of more than 20 feet, measured under the copings along the center line of the road, and multiple-span structures where the individual spans are in excess of 10 feet, measured from center to center of supports along the center line of the road. (The width of a bridge is the distance between the inside faces of curbs, or railings where no curbs exist, measured perpendicularly to the center line of the road.)

Ferries are classified as bridges.

Culverts — Single-span structures of less than 20 feet center to center of supports, all pipe culverts, and all closed waterway structures not defined as bridges. Culverts are to be recognized as an integral part of the road not as a bridge.

Because of their unusual nature and infrequent occurrence, disaster operations should be separately identified in the road accounts. The most frequent of this type of item, storm damage, is defined as follows:

Storm Damage — Extensive repair or replacement due to damage resulting from storm or flood.

The two general classifications, construction and maintenance, are further elaborated by the following discussion and examples of types of work to be included in each.

D.36 Construction: Categories and Examples

Construction work includes three categories:

- 1) New Location — A construction which substantially deviates from the existing alignment and provides for an entirely new roadbed for the greater part of its length.
- 2) General Reconstruction — A construction involving realignment or the use of standards well above those of the existing element, whereby the type or the geometric and structural features are significantly changed.
- 3) Betterments — Minor construction which enhances traffic operation or increases the value or life of the facility or its components.

D.37 Maintenance: Categories and Examples

A.37 Maintenance: Categories and Examples
Types of Work Included in Road Construction:
The removal of old roadbeds and structures and detour expense when connected with a construction project
Changes of alignment, profile, and cross-sections
Addition of a frontage road
Original surfacing of shoulders with material higher in quality than the adjacent roadside
The installation of an original set of traffic signs and markers on routes
Drainage and earth work protective structures within or adjacent to the right-of-way area
A complete reconstruction of or an addition to a culvert
Widening of a bridge
Installations or extensions of curb, gutter or under drain
Extensions and new installations of walls
Reconstruction of an intersection and its approaches to a substantially higher type, involving a change in its character and layout, including changes from a plain intersection to a major channelized intersection, or to a grade separation and ramps
Placing sufficient new material on soil surface or gravel road to substantially improve the quality of the original surface
Improvement of a surface to a higher type
Resurfacing of concrete or brick pavement with bituminous material
Bituminous material of 1" or more placed on bituminous. Remix of existing bituminous surfacing with added materials to provide a total thickness of 1" or more
Stabilization of road base by the addition of cement, lime, or asphaltic material
Replacement of existing pavement with one of a higher standard
Widening of existing roadbed or pavement, with or without resurfacing
Addition of auxiliary lanes such as speed change, storage, or climbing lanes
Resurfacing, stabilizing, or widening of shoulders (including side road approaches)
Substantial addition to landscape treatment, such as top soil, sod, shrubs, trees, etc.
Extension of old culverts and replacement of headwalls
Replacement of culvert with a facility of greater capacity
Replacement of walls to a higher standard
Replacement of all major signs or traffic control devices on a route with a substantially improved set of signs
Installation of a new sign or replacement of an old sign with one of superior design, such as increased size, illumination, or overhead installation
Installation or improvement of traffic signal controls at intersections and protective devices at railroad grade crossings
Installation or expansion of lighting system
Replacement of structures and utilities that have been related
Extension or new installation of guard rail
Installation of a new facility for roadside rest areas or a complete replacement with major modifications

Note: Where an improvement as a whole is classed as construction, incidental operations of the normal maintenance type should be considered as part of the construction.

Maintenance work includes two general categories: physical maintenance, and the operation of traffic services, the latter being (as defined Chapter 9A.35, ~~General Definitions~~) the operations of safety facilities.

Examples of Maintenance Work	
Scarifying, reshaping, and restoring material losses	
Applying dust palliatives	
Patching, repairing, surface treating, and joint filling on bituminous or concrete surfaces	
Mud jacking concrete pavements	
Repairing traveled ways and shoulders	
Adding bituminous material of less than 1" to bituminous, including dealing costs	
Remixing existing bituminous surfacing with added materials to provide a total thickness of less than 1"	
Patching operations, including base restoration	
Resealing road shoulders and side road approaches	
Reseeding and re-sodding shoulders and approaches	
Reshaping of drainage channels and side slopes	
Restoring erosion controls	
Cleaning culverts	
Removing slides and restoring facility damages by slides (additional new facilities shall be constructed)	
Mowing, tree trimming and watering	
Replacing top soil, sod, shrubs etc. on roadside	
Repairing curbs, gutters, rip rap, under drains, and culverts	
Cleaning, painting and repairing bridges and structures	
Repairing of drawbridges and ferries	
All snow control operations, such as erection of snow fences and the actual removal of snow from the traveled way	
Repainting pavements, striping's and markings	
Repainting and repairing signs, guard rails, traffic signals, lighting standards, etc.;	
Maintaining roadside rest areas	
Adding small numbers of conventional traffic control devices, including signs	
Servicing highway lighting and traffic control devices	
Furnishing power for highway lighting and traffic control devices	
Operating costs of draw bridges and ferries	

Examples

D.38 Background

The County of X operates as follows:

Organization — The Road Department is a separate county department with a full-time road commissioner.

Plant — There is an administration building with adjoining facilities for storage of materials and for repair of equipment.

Budgeted Positions — There are 55 Road Department employees:

Administrative:

Road Commission	1
Clerical	3
Engineers	2
Shop	2
Construction and Maintenance	<u>47</u>
Total	<u><u>55</u></u>

The engineering, shop, construction, and maintenance employees have weighted-average hourly labor rates and prepare daily job-cost time cards.

Equipment — The department owns and operates its own equipment. Composite rental rates are used for each group, with the exception of the miscellaneous group, each unit of which has its individual rates:

Group	No. of Units	Description
1	5	Passenger Cars
2	12	Pickup Trucks
3	12	Trucks
4	3	Motor Graders
5	3	Rollers (Self-Propelled)
6	5	Tractors, Loaders (Small)
7	2	Tractors, Loaders (Large)
8	1	Cranes, Including Boom Tractors
9	25	Miscellaneous

Usage rates are not used for shop equipment. Any repairs and maintenance are charged to the **Shop Overhead — Clearing** account and are distributed as a percentage of direct shop labor.

Stores — Control and detail inventory records are kept for the following classes of materials:

10	Aggregate
20	Asphalt
30	Automotive Supplies
40	Pipe, Drainage Products
50	Lumber
60	Paint
70	Steel
80	Gas, Oil, Diesel

All other materials and supplies are charged to one of the overhead accounts and are issued on memo requisitions.

General Ledger Accounts: The general ledger accounts and their post-closing balances at June 30, 20X1, are as follows:

General Ledger

Assets

101	Cash	\$	50,000
107	Accounts Receivable		7,000
110	Deposits with Others		15,000
123	Inventory of Materials and Supplies		30,000
	Total	\$	<u>102,000</u>

Liabilities and Fund Equity

203	Accounts Payable	\$	23,800	
220	Deposits from Others		1,500	\$ 25,300
241	Non-Spendable Fund Balance — Inventories	\$	30,000	
*243	Committed Fund Balance — Encumbrances		18,000	
244	Assigned Fund Balance		28,700	\$ 76,700
	Total			<u>\$ 102,000</u>

*The actual Reserved for Encumbrances account has been reclassified to Committed Fund Balance in this post-closing illustration to comply with GASB Statement No. 54, *Fund Balance Reporting and Governmental Fund Type Definitions*.

Operating Accounts

- 301** Revenues and Other Financing Sources
- 305** Expenditures and Other Financing Uses

Budgetary Accounts

- 401** Estimated Revenues and Estimated Other Financing Sources
- 403** Unanticipated Revenues and Other Financing Sources
- 404** Unrealized Estimated Revenues and Estimated Other Financing Sources
- 405** Appropriations and Estimated Other Financing Uses
- 406** Budgetary Nonspendable Fund Balance
- 407** Budgetary Restricted Fund Balance
- 408** Budgetary Committed Fund Balance
- 409** Budgetary Assigned Fund Balance
- 411** Encumbrances
- 412** Budgetary Fund Balance — Reserved for Encumbrances

Subsidiary Revenue Accounts

- 20** Vehicle Code Fines
- 30** Interest
- 41** State Highway Users Tax:
 - .1** Administration & Engineering (SHC Code, §2104a)
 - .2** Snow Removal (SHC Code, §2104b)
 - .3** Heavy Rainfall and Storm Damage (SHC Code, §2104c)
 - .4** Rights-of-Way and Construction (SHC Code, §2106)
 - .5** Any Road Purpose (All Other)
- 96** Road and Street Services
- 106** Other
- 121** Sale of Capital Assets

If these codes are prefixed by a 4, they refer to estimated revenues — If prefixed by a 5, they refer to actual revenues.

Subsidiary Ledger Expenditure Accounts**Objects**

- 1** Salaries and Employee Benefits
- 2** Services and Supplies
- 3** Other Charges
- 4** Capital Assets
- 5** Other Financing Uses

Clearing Accounts

- 21** Labor –Clearing
- 22** Equipment – Clearing
- 24** Shop Overhead – Clearing

Cost Centers

- 31** Administration
- 32** Construction
- 34** Aid to Other Governmental Agencies
- 35** Acquisition of Equipment
- 36** Plant Acquisition
- 37** Reimbursable Work
- 50** Operating Transfers
 - 1. Plant
 - 2. Interfund Reimbursable Work

Codes prefixed by a 6, refer to appropriations; by a 7, to encumbrances (applicable to objects only); and by an 8, to expenditures.

A three-digit number identifies each project. The block within which a number falls identifies the cost center. Projects are numbered in sequence within each block. A fourth digit is used to designate the type of expenditure.

Work Type Code (First Three Digits)

Digits	Project Name	Digits	Project Name
101–179	Road Construction	*350–399	Other Maintenance
181–199	Rights of Way	401–499	Aid to Other Governmental Agencies
201–299	Bridge Construction	501–599	Acquisition of Equipment
*300–324	Snow Removal	601–699	Plant Acquisition
*325–349	Heavy Rainfall & Storm Damage	701–799	Reimbursable Work

* In this example, maintenance is segregated only by snow removal, heavy rainfall and storm damage, and all other maintenance. If additional detail were desired, project numbers could be assigned within the indicated blocks.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

Source of Cost (Fourth Digit)

Direct Charges

- 1 Contracts
- 2 Other

Applied Charges

- 3 Labor
- 4 Equipment
- 5 General Road Overhead

D.39 Budget

The 20X1 budget is adopted as follows:

Budget Summary

Budgetary Assigned Fund Balance	\$ 28,000	Appropriations	\$ 800,000
Estimated Revenues	648,000		
Other Financing Sources	<u>123,700</u>		<u> </u>
Total	<u>\$ 800,000</u>		<u>\$ 800,000</u>

Detail of Estimated Revenues

Fines, Forfeits, and Penalties

420 Vehicle Code Fines	\$ 11,000

Revenue From Other Governmental Agencies

441 State Highway Users Tax	611,800

Charges for Current Service

495 Road and Street Services	7,000

Other Revenues

121 Sale of Capital Assets	8,500

Other	<u>10,000</u>

Total	<u>\$ 648,300</u>

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

Detail of Requirements

Function: Public Ways and Facilities
Activity: Public Ways
Budget Unit: Road Construction and Maintenance

Road Department

Objects

601	Salaries and Employee Benefits	\$	300,000
602	Services and Supplies		335,000
603	Other Charges		100,000
604	Capital Assets		45,000
605	Appropriation for Contingencies		<u>20,000</u>
Total		\$	<u><u>800,000</u></u>

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

Proposed Work Program			
Administration			40,000.00
Construction			
Roads			
101	\$ 25,000.00		
102	21,500.00		
103	40,000.00		
104	18,500.00		
105	17,000.00		
106	28,500.00		
107	37,000.00		
108	9,500.00		
109	3,000.00		
110	3,500.00		
111	2,500.00		
112	16,000.00		
113	3,000.00		
114	3,500.00		
115	5,000.00		
116	6,500.00		
117	7,000.00		
118	7,500.00		
119	9,000.00		
120	5,000.00		
121	5,500.00		
122	8,500.00		
123	4,000.00		
124	4,500.00		
125	6,500.00		
126	4,000.00	\$ 301,500.00	
Rights of Way			
181	\$ 28,500.00		
182	8,000.00		
183	6,000.00		
184	4,500.00		
185	7,000.00	54,000.00	
Bridges			
201	\$ 3,500.00		
202	9,500.00		
203	5,500.00		
204	10,000.00		
205	27,500.00		
206	4,000.00		
207	5,000.00		
208	14,500.00	79,500.00	435,000.00
Maintenance			
	HR-SD	7,500.00	7,500.00
	Other	212,500.00	212,500.00
	Aid to Other Government Agencies	10,000.00	
	Equipment Acquisition	35,000.00	
	Point Acquisition	10,000.00	
	Reimbursable Work	30,000.00	85,000.00
	Total Work Program		780,000.00
	Appropriation for Contingencies		20,000.00
	Total Requirements		\$ 800,000.00

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

D.40 Books and Records

The tables on the following pages are sample transactions entries.

Roads County of X General Journal (J)					
Accounts		Subsidiary Ledger		General Ledger	
Folio #	Title	Debit	Credit	Debit	Credit
July 1					
409	Budgetary Assigned Fund Balance	28,000.00		28,000.00	
401	Estimated Revenues and Other Financial sources	772,000.00		772,000.00	
600	Appropriations		800,000.00		800,000.00
	(To record Appropriation Budget for Road Fund)				
July 2					
301	Revenues			7,000.00	
107	Accounts Receivable				7,000.00
96	Road and Street Services	5,000.00			
121	Sale of Capital Assets	2,000.00			
	(To reverse revenue accruals at June 30)				
July 3					
203	Accounts Payable			23,800.00	
	Inventory				21,700.00
	Expenditures				2,100.00
	Aggregate		14,740.00		
	Asphalt		3,600.00		
	Auto Supplies		960.00		
	Pipe		630.00		
	Lumber		420.00		
	Paint		190.00		
	Steel		640.00		
	Gas, Oil, Diesel		520.00		
	Services and Supplies		2,100.00		
	*Equipment Clearing		1,000.00		
	*General Road Overhead — Clearing		200.00		
	*Shop Overhead — Clearing		200.00		
	*Administration		700.00		
	(To reverse inventory and expenditure accruals at June 30)				
*An asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account					
July 4					
	Budgetary Fund Balance — Reserved for Encumbrances			18,000.00	
	Budgetary Assigned Fund Balance				18,000.00
	Budgetary Committed Fund Balance	18,000.00			
	Encumbrances	18,000.00			
	Appropriations		18,000.00		
	Budgetary Fund Balance — Reserved for Encumbrances		18,000.00		
	Services and Supplies	13,500.00	13,500.00		
	Equipment	4,500.00	4,500.00		
	(To re-appropriate and encumber items encumbered at June 30)				
July 5					
	Expenditures			26,000.00	
	Cash				26,000.00
	Salaries and Employee Benefits	26,000.00			
	*Labor — Clearing	26,000.00			
	(To record payroll and transfer cash to Payroll Revolving Fund)				

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

Roads County of X General Journal (J)					
Accounts		Subsidiary Ledger		General Ledger	
Folio #	Title	Debit	Credit	Debit	Credit
July 6					
	Expenditures			2,100.00	
	Cash				2,100.00
	Salaries and Employee Benefits	2,100.00			
	*Labor — Clearing	2,100.00			
	(To record county share of retirement and transfer cash to trust fund)				
August 7					
	Expenditures (continued)			11,000.00	
	Deposits With Others				11,000.00
	Services and Supplies		11,000.00		
	*Construction		11,000.00		
	[To record expenditure by State of Federal Aid Secondary (FAS) deposit]				
August 8					
	Budgetary Fund Balance — Reserved for Encumbrances			11,000.00	
	Encumbrances				11,000.00
	Services and Supplies		11,000.00		
	(To record...)				
	*An Asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account				
August 9					
	Expenditures			25,500.00	
	Cash				25,500.00
	Salaries and Employee Benefits	25,500.00			
	*Labor - Clearing	25,500.00			
	(To record payroll and transfer cash to Payroll Revolving Fund)				
August 10					
	Expenditures			2,050.00	
	Cash				2,050.00
	Salaries and Employee Benefits	2,050.00			
	*Labor - Clearing	2,050.00			
	(To record county share of retirement and transfer cash to trust fund)				
August 11					
	Cash			25,000.00	
	Revenue and Other Financing Sources				25,000.00
	Operating Transfers-In		25,000.00		
	(To charge \$25,000 of expenditures to General Fund)				
	*An Asterisk preceding an account title designates a cost account				

Because of space limitations, the detail of encumbrances and appropriations is not posted to the subsidiary records. This comment applies to journal entries 1 and 4.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

D.41 Subsidiary Ledgers

Following are sample subsidiary ledgers:

Roads County of X Daily Labor and Applied Overhead Summary (L)					
	Code	Total	Labor	Gen. Road Overhead (5% of Labor)	Shop Overhead (15% of Labor)
July					
Equipment Repair	102		\$ 65.00		\$ 9.75
	202		160.00		24.00
	305		275.00		41.25
	308		120.00		18.00
	312		95.00		14.25
		\$ 822.25	\$ 715.00		\$ 107.25
Administration		\$ 3,070.00	\$ 3,070.00		
Construction:					
Road	101		\$ 2,450.00	\$ 122.50	
	102		2,140.00	107.00	
	104		960.00	48.00	
	105		1,610.00	80.50	
	106		3,690.00	184.50	
	107		920.00	46.00	
Bridge	201		1,200.00	60.00	
	202		2,350.00	117.50	
	203		130.00	6.50	
		\$ 16,222.50	\$ 15,450.00	\$ 772.50	
Maintenance	350	\$ 6,373.50	\$ 6,070.00	\$ 303.50	
Equipment Acquisition	501	\$ 293.25	\$ 255.00		\$ 38.25
Totals		\$ 26,781.50	\$ 25,560.00	\$ 1,076.00	\$ 145.50

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS County of X Material Requisition Summary (M)			
	Code	July	August
Administration		\$ 150.00	\$ 180.00
Construction:			
Road	101	\$ 570.00	\$ 210.00
	102		125.00
	103		355.00
	104	90.00	
	105	340.00	55.00
	106	190.00	75.00
	107		25.00
	108		35.00
	109	160.00	200.00
	110	70.00	40.00
	111		85.00
Bridge	201	85.00	80.00
	202	240.00	210.00
	203		30.00
	204	10.00	
		\$ 1,755.00	\$ 1,525.00
Maintenance	350	\$ 725.00	\$ 840.00
Reimbursable Work	701		\$ 45.00
Totals		\$ 2,630.00	\$ 2,590.00
Summary by Equipment Group	100	\$ 395.00	\$ 425.00
	200	320.00	325.00
	300	375.00	440.00
	400	380.00	310.00
	500	280.00	290.00
	600	305.00	300.00
	700	330.00	265.00
	800	130.00	90.00
	900	115.00	145.00
		\$ 2,630.00	\$ 2,590.00

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS County of X Material Requisition Summary (M) Summary by Cost Center			
	Code	July	August
Equipment Repair	102	\$ 32.00	
	104		\$ 22.00
	105		87.00
	202	94.00	
	203		15.00
	206		26.00
	207		51.50
	305	110.00	
	308	65.00	
	312	36.80	
	315		69.50
		\$ 337.80	\$ 271.00
Equipment Maintenance — Gas, Oil, Diesel		\$534.20	\$554.00
Construction:			
Bridge	201	\$ 3,430.00	\$ 420.00
	202	2,020.00	600.00
	203		230.00
	204	68.00	
Road	101	1,770.00	510.00
	102		1,400.00
	103		4,093.00
	104	1,927.00	
	105	926.00	
	106	2,442.00	405.00
	107		480.00
	108		750.00
	109	1,165.00	2,150.00
	110	1,040.00	1,870.00
		\$ 14,788.00	\$ 12,908.00
Maintenance	350	\$ 2,730.00	\$ 3,060.00
Equipment Acquisition	501	\$ 134.00	\$ 19.00
	502		\$ 163.00
		\$ 134.00	\$ 182.00
Reimbursable Work	706		\$ 385.00
Totals		\$ 18,524.00	\$ 17,360.00

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS Material Requisition Summary (M) Summary by Gas, Diesel, Oil Usage by Equipment			
	Equipment #	July	August
Passenger Cars	101	\$ 17.00	\$ 22.30
Group 1	102	13.20	26.80
	103	1.10	6.15
	104	7.00	1.50
	105	18.00	16.75
		\$ 56.30	\$ 73.50
Pickups	201	\$ 1.80	\$ 4.90
Group 2	202	8.05	9.30
	203	1.40	2.10
	204	4.80	1.00
	205	2.40	6.00
	206	7.20	2.55
	207	2.60	1.10
	208	1.90	1.40
	209	5.90	1.60
	210	2.40	7.55
	211	1.75	2.75
	212	2.20	4.30
		\$ 42.40	\$ 44.55
Trucks	301	\$ 7.60	\$ 5.95
Group 3	302	2.90	11.05
	303	10.50	6.55
	304	7.40	8.65
	305	2.25	4.65
	306	8.30	2.60
	307	5.60	13.15
	308	4.20	2.75
	309	3.05	6.25
	310	6.30	7.20
	311	4.40	10.10
	312	6.10	6.75
		\$ 68.60	\$ 85.65
Motor and Graders	401	\$ 29.90	\$ 18.40
Group 4	402	35.10	37.30
	403	31.60	32.10
		\$ 96.60	\$ 87.80
Rollers	501	\$ 24.00	\$ 41.80
Group 5	502	38.50	19.90
	503	5.20	9.80
		\$ 67.70	\$ 71.50
Tractor and Loaders, Small	601	\$ 11.00	\$ 8.55
Group 6	602	22.50	16.75
	603	9.10	15.85
	604	10.80	22.05
	605	19.70	11.10
		\$ 73.10	\$ 74.30
Tractor and Loaders, Large	701	\$ 34.25	\$ 30.05
Group 7	702	61.05	57.90
		\$ 95.30	\$ 87.95
Cranes	801	\$ 34.20	\$ 28.85
Group 8			
Totals		\$ 534.20	\$ 554.10

ROADS Material Requisition Summary (M) Summary by Class of Material		
104-10	\$ 9,138.00	\$ 7,960.00
104-20	6,815.00	5,305.00
104-30	402.00	395.00
104-40	392.00	1,421.00
104-50	460.00	397.00
104-60	172.00	186.00
104-70	610.80	1,142.00
104-80	534.20	554.10
	\$ 18,524.00	\$ 17,360.10

ROADS County of X Subsidiary Cost Center Ledger (July Only)								
ADMINISTRATION								
Services & Supplies								
Date	Ref.	Salaries & Employee Benefits	Direct	Equipment	Other	Other Charges	Fixed Assets	Total
7-31	L	3,070.00						
31	E			150.00				
31	W		761.00					
31	J-3		(700.00)					
		3,070.00	61.00	150.00				3,281.00
Number in parenthesis next to cost centers indicates financing source								

ROADS County of X Subsidiary Cost Center Ledger								
CONSTRUCTION								
Direct				Applied				
Project	Date	Ref.	Contracts	Other	Labor	Equipment	Overhead	Total
101	7-31	L			2,450.00		122.50	
	31	E				570.00		
	31	M		1,770.00				
				1,770.00	2,450.00	570.00	122.50	4,912.50
104	7-31	L			960.00		48.00	
	31	E				90.00		
	31	M		1,927.00				
				1,927.00	960.00	90.00	48.00	3,025.00
106	7-31	L			3,690.00		184.50	
	31	E				340.00		
	31	M		2,442.00				
				2,442.00	3,690.00	340.00	184.50	6,656.50

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS County of X Subsidiary Cost Center Ledger (July Only)						
Equipment						
Group	Number	Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Variance
1	101	7-31	M	17.00		
	101	31	W	58.00		
	101	31	J-3		55.00	
	102	31	L	78.00		
	102	31	M	32.00		
	102	31	M	13.20		
	103	31	M	1.10		
	104	31	M	7.00		
	105	31	M	18.00		
			E		395.00	(225.70)
2	201	7-31	M	1.80		
	202	31	L	192.00		
	202	31	M	94.00		
	202	31	M	8.05		
	203	31	M	1.40		
	204	31	M	4.80		
	205	31	M	2.40		
	206	31	M	7.20		
	207	31	M	2.60		
	208	31	M	1.90		
	209	31	M	5.90		
	210	31	M	2.40		
	211	31	J-3	1.75		
	211	31	M		47.00	
	212	31	W	2.20		
			E	47.00		
					320.00	8.40
3	301	7-31	M	7.60		
	302	31	M	2.90		
	303	31	M	19.50		
	304	31	M	7.40		
	305	31	L	330.00		
	305	31	M	110.00		
	305	31	M	2.55		
	306	31	M	8.30		
	307	31	M	5.60		
	307	31	M	95.00		
	307	31	J-3		105.00	
	308	31	L	144.00		
	308	31	M	65.00		
	308	31	M	4.20		
	309	31	M	3.05		
	310	31	M	6.00		
	310	31	M	140.00		
	310	31	J-3		164.00	
	311	31	M	4.40		
	312	31	L	114.00		
	312	31	M	36.80		
	312	31		6.10		
		31			375.00	468.40

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS County of X Subsidiary Cost Center Ledger (July Only)						
Equipment						
Group	Number	Date	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Variance
4	401	7-31	M	29.90		
	401	31	M	127.00		
	401	31	J-3		119.00	
	402	31	M	35.10		
	403	31	M	31.60		
		31	E		380.00	(275.40)
5	501	7-31	M	24.00		
	502	31	M	38.50		
	502	31	W	218.00		
	502	31	J-3		234.00	
	503	31	M	5.20		
		31			280.00	(228.30)
6	601	7-31	M	11.00		
	602	31	M	22.50		
	603	31	M	9.10		
	604	31	M	10.80		
	605	31	M	19.70		
	605	31	M	307.00		
	605	31	J-3		279.00	
		31	E		305.00	(203.90)
7	701	7-31	M	34.25		
	701	31	M	61.05		
		31	E		33.00	62.30
8	801	7-31	M	34.25		
	801	31	M	61.05		
		31	E		191.05	(95.75)
9	901	7-31	E		115.00	(115.00)
Net Variance						(856.05)

At the end of the year, the net variance is cleared to the cost centers in proportion to total prior allocations.

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

ROADS County of X Subsidiary Inventory Ledger ACCOUNT 104									
Transactions									
July				August					
#	Subaccount Title	Balance 7-1-XX	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Balance 8-31-XX
10	Aggregate	14,268.00	W	14,748.00		W	8,210.00		
			J-3		14,740.00	M		7,960.00	
			M		9,138.00				
			D		35.00				5,353.00
20	Asphalt	9,799.00	W	3,601.00		W	460.00		
			J-3		3,600.00	M		395.00	
			M		6,815.00				3,050.00
30	Auto Supplies	1,339.00	W	968.00		W	6,980.00		
			J-3		960.00	M		5,305.00	
			M		402.00				2,620.00
40	Pipe	1,148.00	W	624.00		W	1,471.00		
			J-3		630.00	M		1,421.00	
			M		392.00				800.00
50	Lumber	743.00	W	420.00		W	504.00		
			J-3		420.00	M		397.00	
			M	460.00					1,310.00
60	Paint	159.00	W	186.00		W	252.00		
			J-3		190.00	M		186.00	
			M		1,172.00				(951.00)
70	Steel	1,676.80	W	628.00		W	738.00		
			J-3		640.00	M		1,142.00	
			M		610.80				650.00
80	Gas, Oil, Diesel	867.20	W	522.00		W	597.00		
			J-3		522.00	M		554.00	
			M		534.20				376.00
Totals		30,000.00		22,157.00	40,801.00		19,212.00	17,360.00	13,208.00

ROADS County of X Road Department Expenditure Reconciliation (Object Accounts and Cost Accounts)								
Note: The sample worksheets illustrate how the objects, expenditures, and cost account charges should be reconciled. It is suggested that this reconciliation be done on a monthly basis.								
OBJECT ACCOUNTS								Balance
July				August				8/31/XX
#	Title	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Debit
811	Salaries and Employee	J-5	\$ 26,000.00		J-9	\$ 25,500.00		
	Benefits	J-6	2,100.00		J-10	2,050.00		\$ 55,650.00
812	Services and Supplies	M	18,524.00		J-7	11,000.00		
		W	2,195.00		M	17,360.00		
		J-3		2,100.00	W	4,398.00		51,377.00
813	Other Charges				W	12,000.00		12,000.00
814	Capital Assets				W	4,500.00		4,500.00
Total								\$ 123,527.00

LEGEND

J Journal

Appendix D: Road Fund Accounting

M Material
W Warrant
L Labor
E Equipment
ROH Road Overhead
SOH Shop Overhead

ROADS								
County of X								
Road Department Expenditure Reconciliation								
(Object Accounts and Cost Accounts)								
COST ACCOUNTS								
		July			August			Balance
#	Title	Ref.	Debit	Credit	Ref.	Debit	Credit	8/31/XX
821	Labor Clearing	J-5	\$ 26,000.00		J-9	\$ 25,500.00		
		J-6	2,100.00		J-10	2,050.00		
		L		25,560.00	L		26,270.00	\$3,820.00
822	Equipment Clearing	SOH	107.25		SOH	97.50		
		L	715.00		L	650.00		
		M	337.80		M	271.00		
		M	534.20		M	554.00		
		W	1,001.00		W	1,413.00		
		J-3		1,000.00	E		2,590.00	
		E		2,630.00				(539.25)
823	General Road Overhead Clearing	W	210.00		W	1,754.00		
		J-3		200.00	ROH		1,108.75	
		ROH		1,076.00				(420.75)
825	Shop Overhead Clearing	W	223.00		L	251.00		
		J-3		200.00	L		150.00	
		SOH		145.00				(21.00)
831	Administration	L	3,070.00		L	3,095.00		
		W	761.00		W	380.00		
		E	150.00		E	180.00		
		J-3		700.00				6,936.00
832	Construction	ROH	772.5		J-7	11,000.00		
		L	15,450.00		L	14,931.00		
		E	1,755.00		E	1,525.00		
		M	14,783.00		M	12,908.00		
					W	2,600.00		75,724.50
833	Maintenance	L	6,373.50		L	7,875.00		
		E	725.00		E	840.00		
		M	2,730.00		M	3,060.00		21,603.50
834	Aid to Other Governmental Agencies				W	10,000.00		10,000.00
835	Acquisition of Equipment	SOH	38.25		SOH	52.52		
		L	255.00		L	350.00		
		M	135.00		M	182.00		
					W	4,500.00		5,512.77
837	Reimbursement				L	477.75		
					E	45.00		
					M	385.00		907.75
	Total							\$ 123,523.52

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Appendix Contents

Example 01 Table of Contents	785
Example 02 Independent Auditor's Report	790
Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis	793
Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued	794
Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued	795
Government-wide Financial Statements	805
Example 04 Government-wide Statement of Net Position	805
Example 05 Government-wide Statement of Activities	809
Fund Financial Statements	811
Example 06 Balance Sheet	811
Example 07 Reconciliation of the Balance Sheet of Governmental Funds To Statement of Net Position	812
Example 08 Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Balances	813
Example 09 Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances of Governmental Funds to Statement of Activities	815
Example 10 General Fund — Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances — Budget and Actual	816
Proprietary Fund Financial Statements	818
Example 11 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Net Position	818
Example 12 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Net Position	820
Example 13 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Cash Flows	821
Fiduciary Funds Financial Statements	822
Example 14 Fiduciary Fund — Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	823
Example 15 Fiduciary Fund — Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	823
Notes to the Financial Statements	824
Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies	825
Notes to Financial Statements — Detailed Notes on All Activities and Funds	836
Example 17 Cash and Investments	837
Example 18 Cash Deposits with Financial Institutions	840

Example 19 Investments	843
Example 20 Receivable Note Disclosure	849
Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure	850
Example 22 Construction and Other Significant Commitments	855
Example 23 Risk Management	856
Example 23 Risk Management (Continued)	857
Example 24 Leases	858
Example 25 Short Term Debt and Accrued Liabilities	859
Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities	860
Example 27 Pension — Employee’s Retirement Plan	868
Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee’s Retirement Plan	874
Example 29 Contingencies and Commitments	881
Example 30 Information about Unusual or Infrequent Item	882
Required Supplementary Information — Pension Plans	883
Example 31 Schedule of Changes in Employer’s Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios	883
Example 32 Schedule of the Government’s Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability .	884
Example 33 Schedule of Employer Contributions Pension Plan	885
Example 34 Schedule of Investment Returns — Pension Plan	886
Example 35 Notes to Required Supplementary Information — Pension Plan	887
Required Supplementary Information — OPEB Plans	889
Example 36 Schedule of Changes in Net OPEB Liability and Related Ratios	889
Example 37 Schedule of Employer Contributions — OPEB Plan	890
Example 38 Schedule of Investments Returns — OPEB Plan	891
Example 39 Notes to Required Supplementary Information — OPEB Plan	893
Required Supplementary Information — Combining Statements	894
Example 40 Combining Statements — Nonmajor Governmental Funds	894
Example 41 Combining Statements — Major Governmental Funds	897
Example 42 Combining Statements — Fiduciary Funds	899
Example 43 Combining Statement of Net Position	901
Example 44 Combining Statement of Activities	902
Examples by Revenue Statements by Type of Enterprise Activity	904
Example 45 Statement — Other	905
Example 46 Statement — Water Utility	906

Example 47 Statement — Harbor and Port	907
Example 48 Statement — Transit.....	908
Example 49 Statement — Airport	909
Example 50 Statement — Electric Utility	910
Example 51 Statement — Waste Disposal	911
Example 52 Statement — Multiple Enterprise	912

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Introduction

This appendix offers examples of pertaining to the components of an annual comprehensive financial report (ACFR.). Users of this manual should note that the information presented in this chapter is not all-inclusive. It is strongly suggested that local government entities design their financial reporting systems based on their specific operational needs.

Following is a quick snapshot of recent GASB guidance that has been incorporated into this edition of the manual:

GASB 102 — Certain Risk Disclosures:

- **Effective:** for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2024, and all reporting periods thereafter. Earlier implementation is encouraged.
- **Key Change:** requires governments to disclose essential information about risks associated with vulnerabilities due to certain concentrations or constraints that is essential to their analysis for making decisions or assessing accountability.
 - Concentration: A lack of diversity related to an aspect of a significant inflow or outflow of resources. Examples include, but not limited to, employers, providers of financial resources, suppliers of material, labor or services.
 - Constraint: a limitation imposed by an external party or by a formal action of a government's highest level of decision-making authority. Examples include, but not limited to, limitations of raising revenue and limitations on spending.
- **Suggestions:** local government entities should identify all potential concentrations or constraints within their operations and report them if they meet the disclosure criteria outlined in GASB Statement 102.

GASB 103 — Financial Reporting Model Improvements:

- **Effective:** for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2025, and all reporting periods thereafter. Earlier implementation is encouraged.
- **Key Change:** GASB 103 establishes new accounting and financial reporting requirements or modifies existing requirements related to the following:
 - Management discussion and analysis (MD&A)
 - Unusual or infrequent items
 - Presentation of the proprietary statement of revenue, expenses and changes in fund net position
 - Budgetary comparison information
 - Financial trends information in the statistical section

- **Suggestions:** local government entities will need to review their current accounting and reporting processes and identify areas that will need to be updated to be compliant with the requirements of GASB Statement 103. This will include (not all-inclusive) development of new procedures, revising or creating new templates for your financial statements, and making changes to the accounting systems and reporting tools.

GASB 104 — Disclosure of Certain Capital Assets

- **Effective:** for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2025, and all reporting periods thereafter. Earlier implementation is encouraged.
- **Key Change:**
 - Separate disclosure of certain intangible assets
 - Disclosure of capital assets held for sale
- **Suggestions:**
 - Local government entities should review their current inventory of capital assets and determine:
 - which intangible assets will need to be disclosed separately
 - which capital assets meet the requirements for disclosure as “capital assets held for sale” as outlined in GASB 104.
 - Update accounting reporting systems — this will include (not all-inclusive) development of new procedures and revising or creating new templates for reporting capital assets.

Example 01 Table of Contents

GOVERNMENT ENTITY BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS For the Years Ended June 30, 20X2 and 20X1

Table of Contents

Page

Introductory Section

Government-wide Statement of Net Position	X
GFOA Certificate of Achievement	X
Organizational Chart	X
List of Elected and Appointed Officials	xx

Financial Section

Independent Auditor's Report	X
Management's Discussion and Analysis	X

Basic Financial Statements

Government-wide Financial Statements

Statement of Net Position	xx
Statement of Activities	xx

Fund Financial Statements

Balance Sheet – Governmental Funds	xx
Reconciliation of the Balance Sheet – Governmental Funds to the Government-wide Statement of Net Position	xx
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances – Governmental Funds	xx
Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances -Governmental Funds to the Government-wide Statement of Activities)	xx
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances – Budget and Actual – General Fund	xx
Statement of Net Position – Proprietary Funds	xx
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Net Position – Proprietary Funds	xx
Statement of Cash Flows– Proprietary Funds	xx
Statement of Fiduciary Net Position– Fiduciary Funds	xx
Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position– Fiduciary Funds	xx

Notes to the Financial Statements

Summary of significant accounting policies	xx
Description of government-wide financial statements	xx
Reporting entity	xx
Basis of presentation – government-wide financial statements	xx
Basis of presentation – fund financial statements	xx
Budgetary information	xx
Assets, liabilities, deferred outflows/inflows of resources, and net position/fund balance	xx
Reconciliation of government-wide and fund financial statement	xx
Explanation of certain differences between the governmental fund balance sheet and the government-wide statement of net position	xx
Explanation of certain differences between the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances and the government-wide statement of activities ...	xx
Explanation of certain differences between the proprietary fund statement of net position and the government-wide statement of net position	xx
Stewardship, compliance, and accountability	xx
Violations of legal or contractual provisions	xx
Deficit fund equity	xx
Detailed notes on all activities and funds	xx
Cash deposits with financial institutions	xx
Investments	xx
Receivables	xx

Capital assets	XX
Accrued liabilities.....	XX
Pension plans.....	XX
Other postemployment benefit (OPEB) plans	XX
Construction and other significant commitments.....	XX
Risk management	XX
Leases	XX
Short-term debt	XX
Long-term liabilities	XX
Fund balance.....	XX
Interfund receivables and transfers.....	XX
Interfund transfers	XX
Discretely presented component units.....	XX
Contingencies.....	XX
Tax abatements	XX
Subsequent events	XX
Required Supplementary Information	
General Employees Retirement Fund:	
Schedule of the Government's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability	XX
Schedule of Employer's Contributions.....	XX
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	XX
Police Pension Fund:	
Schedule of Changes in the Government's Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios.....	XX
Schedule of Employer's Contributions.....	XX
Schedule of Investment Returns.....	XX
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	XX
Firefighters Pension Fund:	
Schedule of Changes in the Government's Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios.....	XX
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	XX
State Retiree Health Insurance Trust Fund:	
Schedule of the Government's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability	XX
Schedule of Employer Contributions	XX
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	XX
Public Safety Other Postemployment Benefit Plan:	
Schedule of Changes in the Government's Net OPEB Liability and Related Ratios.....	XX
Schedule of Employer Contributions	XX
Schedule of Investment Returns.....	XX
Notes to Required Supplementary Information	XX
Combining and Individual Fund Financial Statements and Schedules	
Combining Balance Sheet – Nonmajor Governmental Funds	XX
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund	
Balances – Nonmajor Governmental Funds	XX
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund	
Balance – Budget and Actual – Library Fund	XX
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund	
Balance – Budget and Actual – Debt Service Fund	XX
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual	
– From Inception of Current Projects and for the Year ended	
June 30, 20XX – Capital Projects Fund	XX
Combining Statement of Net Position – Internal Service Funds	XX
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in	
Net Position – Internal Service Funds	XX
Combining Statement of Fiduciary Net Position – Fiduciary Funds - Pension	
(and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds.....	XXX
Combining Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position – Fiduciary Funds –	
Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds	XXX

Statistical Section

Financial Trends:	
Net Position by Component.....	XXX
Changes in Net Position	XXX
Fund Balances of Governmental Funds.....	XXX

Changes in Fund Balances of Governmental Funds	xxx
Revenue Capacity:	
Assessed Value and Estimated Actual Value of Taxable Property	xxx
Property Tax Rates – Direct and Overlapping Governments.....	xxx
Principal Property Taxpayers.....	xxx
Property Tax Levies and Collections	xxx
Debt Capacity:	
Ratios of Outstanding Debt by Type.....	xxx
Ratios of General Bonded Debt Outstanding	xxx
Direct and Overlapping Governmental Activities Debt.....	xxx
Legal Debt Margin Information	xxx
Pledged-Revenue Coverage	
Demographic and Economic Information:	
Demographic and Economic Statistics	xxx
Principal Employers	xxx
Operating Information:	
Full-Time Equivalent Employees by Function	xxx
Operating Indicators by Function	xxx
Capital Asset Statistics by Function.....	xxx

Note: This is an example of what a Table of Contents (TOC) would look like within a typical ACFR. The examples illustrated under Appendix E are not all-inclusive of what is illustrated in the TOC.

Example 02 Independent Auditor's Report

INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

Board of Directors
Government Entity
City, California

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of each major fund and the discretely presented component unit, of the Government Entity as of and for the years ended June 30, 20X2 and 20X1, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Government Entity's basic financial statements as listed in the Table of Contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in Government Auditing Standards, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the Government Entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Government Entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Example 02 Independent Auditor's Report — Continued

Opinions

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial positions of each major fund and the discretely presented component unit of the Government Entity as of June 30, 20X2 and 20X1, and the respective changes in the financial positions and cash flows, where applicable, thereof for the years then ended, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Other Matters

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that Management's Discussion and certain schedules related to the Pension and Post-Employment Healthcare Plans be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to this information in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the Government Entity's basic financial statements as a whole. The Supplemental Information as listed in the Table of Contents are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not required parts of the basic financial statements.

The Supplemental Information is the responsibility of management, was derived from, and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the financial statements. The information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the financial statements or to the financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards in the United States of America. In our opinion, the Supplemental Information is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

Example 02 Independent Auditor's Report — Continued

Other Reporting Required by Government Auditing Standards

In accordance with Government Auditing Standards, we have also issued our report dated Month XX, 20X2 on our consideration of the Government Entity's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with Government Auditing Standards in considering the Government Entity's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Auditor

Name of Firm

Government Entity, California

Month XX, 20X2

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis

This section presents management's analysis of the Government Entity's (the Government Entity) financial condition and activities as of and for the year ended June 30, 20X2.

Management's Discussion and Analysis (MD&A) is intended to serve as an introduction to the Government Entity's basic financial statements. If you have any questions about this report, contact the local government entity's department of finance at [dof@local government entity.gov](mailto:dof@localgovernmententity.gov) or XXX-XXX-XXXX.

Overview of the Financial Statements

The Government Entity's basic financial statements are comprised of three components:

(1) Government-wide Financial Statements, (2) Fund Financial Statements and (3) Notes to Basic Financial Statements. The report also contains other required supplementary information in addition to the basic financial statements.

Government-wide Financial Statements. The government-wide financial statements are designed to provide readers with a broad overview of the Government Entity's finances, in a manner similar to a private-sector business.

The statement of net position presents financial information on all of the Government Entity's assets, liabilities, and deferred inflows/outflows of resources, with the difference reported as net position. Over time, increases or decreases in net position may serve as a useful indicator of whether the financial position of the Government Entity is improving or deteriorating.

The statement of activities presents information showing how the Government Entity's net position changed during the most recent fiscal year. All changes in net position are reported as soon as the underlying event giving rise to the change occurs, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Thus, revenues and expenses are reported for some items that will only result in cash flows in future fiscal periods (e.g., uncollected taxes and earned but unused vacation leave).

Both of the government-wide financial statements distinguish functions of the Government Entity that are principally supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues (governmental activities) from other functions that are intended to recover all or a significant portion of their costs through user fees and charges (business-type activities). The governmental activities of the Government Entity include general government, public safety, highways and streets, and sanitation. The business-type activities of the Government Entity include transit operations.

The government-wide financial statements include not only the Government Entity itself (known as the primary government), but also a legally entities such as special districts and county service area's which the government entity is financially accountable. For more information on financial statements pertaining to major component units refer to [www.local government entity.ca.gov](http://www.localgovernmententity.ca.gov).

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

Fund Financial Statements. A fund is a grouping of related accounts that is used to maintain control over resources that have been segregated for specific activities or objectives. The Government Entity, like other special purpose governments, uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with financial-related legal requirements.

Governmental Funds. Governmental funds are used to account for essentially the same functions reported as governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. However, unlike the government-wide financial statements, governmental fund financial statements focus on near-term inflows and outflows of spendable resources, as well as on balances of spendable resources available at the end of the fiscal year. Such information may be useful in assessing a government's near-term financing requirements.

Because the focus of governmental funds is narrower than that of the government-wide financial statements, it is useful to compare the information presented for governmental funds with similar information presented for governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. By doing so, readers may better understand the long-term impact of the government's near-term financing decisions. Both the governmental fund balance sheet and the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances provide a reconciliation to facilitate this comparison between governmental funds and governmental activities.

Information in the governmental funds are presented separately in the governmental fund balance sheet and in the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances for the general fund, the capital projects fund, and the debt service fund, which are considered to be major funds. Individual fund data for nonmajor governmental funds are provided in the form of combining statements in the combining and individual fund statements and schedules section of this report.

The Government Entity adopts an annual appropriated budget for its general fund. A budgetary comparison statement has been provided for the general fund to demonstrate compliance with this budget.

Proprietary Funds. The Government Entity's proprietary funds consist of enterprise funds and internal service funds. Enterprise funds are used to account for operations that are financed and operated in a manner similar to private business enterprises — where the intent of the governing body is that the costs (including depreciation) of providing goods or services to the general public on a continuing basis be financed or recovered primarily through user charges. Internal service funds primarily provide benefits or goods or services to other funds, departments, or agencies of government. The goal is not to make a profit but to break-even through cost-reimbursement.

The Statement of Net Position presents information on the Government Entity's assets and deferred outflows, and liabilities and deferred inflows, with the difference between the two reported as net position. Over time, increases or decreases in net position may serve as a useful indicator of whether the financial position of the Government Entity is improving or deteriorating.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

While the Statement of Net Position provides information about the nature and amount of resources and obligations at year-end, the Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position presents the results of the Government Entity's operations over the course of the fiscal year and information as to how the net position changed during the year. This statement can be used as an indicator of the extent to which the Government Entity has successfully recovered its costs through user fees and other charges.

All changes in net position are reported during the period in which the underlying event giving rise to the change occurs, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows. Thus, revenues and expenses are reported in this statement for some items that will result in cash flows in future fiscal periods, such as delayed collection of operating revenues and the expense of employee earned but unused vacation leave.

The Statement of Cash Flows presents changes in cash and cash equivalents resulting from operational, capital, noncapital, and investing activities. This statement summarizes the annual flow of cash receipts and cash payments, without consideration of the timing of the event giving rise to the obligation or receipt and excludes noncash accounting measures of depreciation or amortization of assets.

Fiduciary Funds. Fiduciary funds are used to account for resources held for the benefit of parties outside of the government. Fiduciary funds are *not* reported in the government-wide financial statements because the resources of those funds are not available to support the Government Entity's own programs. The accounting used for fiduciary funds is much like that used for proprietary funds.

The Government Entity maintains four different types of fiduciary funds. The Pension (and other employee benefit) trust funds are used to report resources held in trust for retirees. The Private-purpose trust fund is used to report resources held in trust for various charities. The Custodial funds report resources, not in a trust, that are held by the Government Entity for other parties outside of Government Entity's reporting entity. One custodial fund, the external investment pool fund, accounts for the deposits, withdrawals, and earnings of the local government investment fund, and is separately reported as an external investment pool for local governments.

Notes to Basic Financial Statements. The notes provide additional information that is essential to a full understanding of the data provided in the basic financial statements. The notes to basic financial statements can be found on pages XX to XXX of this report.

Other Information. In addition to the basic financial statements and accompanying notes, this report also presents certain required supplementary information concerning the Government Entity's progress in funding its obligation to provide pension and other post-employment healthcare benefits to its employees. Such required supplementary information can be found on pages XXX to XXX of this report.

Financial Summary

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY STATEMENT OF NET POSITION JUNE 30 20X2 AND JUNE 30 20X1

	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total		Total Percentage Change 20X2–20X1
	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	
Current and other assets	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Capital assets, net	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	XX%
Total assets	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX%
Deferred outflows of resources	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Long-term liabilities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX%
Other liabilities	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	XX%
Total liabilities	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX%
Deferred inflows of resources	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Net position							
Net investment in capital assets	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX%
Restricted	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Unrestricted	<u>(XXX,XXX)</u>	<u>(XXX,XXX)</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>(XXX,XXX)</u>	<u>(XXX,XXX)</u>	XX%
Total net position	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	XX%

As shown in the table above the local government entity's total net position—assets and deferred outflows minus liabilities and deferred inflows—was \$XX billion, which is an increase of \$XX million or XX% over 20X1. This increase can be primarily be ascribed to a \$XX million or XX% increase in unrestricted net position. This increase is reflective of the financial performance of the governmental activities. In the following sections of MD&A the finances of the governmental activities and business-type activities are analyzed separately.

Governmental Activities

As shown in the below table, revenues continued to exceed expenses in the current year which resulted in an increase in net position. The total net position of the government entity increased by \$XX million or XX percent from 20X1. Below are the primary factors that affected the change in net position:

- Increase in intergovernmental grant revenues, particularly related to capital assets.
- Growth in various revenues reflective of the relative strength of the national and local economies.
- Increases in expenses for certain programs and functions.
- Transfers to the business-type activities.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY CHANGES IN NET POSITION JUNE 30 20X2 AND JUNE 30 20X1

	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	20X2–20X1
Revenues							
Program revenues:							
Charges for services	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	XX%
Operating grants and contributions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Capital grants and contributions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
General revenues:							
Property taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Other taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Payments in lieu of taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Investment earnings	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Other	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Total revenues	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Expenses							
General government	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Public safety	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Public works	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Culture and recreation	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Social and economic development	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Interest on long-term debt	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Public utility	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Transit authority	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Golf courses	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Total expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Excess (deficiency) before unusual/infrequent items and transfers	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX%
Transfers	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Unusual or infrequent item—storm damage:							
Grant revenue	X,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX	-	XX%
Cleanup	XX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX	-	XX%
Change in net position	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net position—beginning of period	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net position—end of period	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%

Detailed Analysis

Growth in Intergovernmental Grant Revenues

In 20X2, there were significant increases in both operating and capital grants for governmental activities largely due to a one-time \$XX million capital contribution from the federal government in the form of the land and facilities. Operating grants rose by XX% to \$XX million, driven primarily by a surge in public safety grants from state and federal sources, which were used to enhance local emergency services.

Increases in Revenues due to Economic Growth

The government entity's economy has experienced significant growth, leading to increased revenue across several key sources. Property tax revenue, which constitutes XX% of the government entity's total revenue, saw a XX% rise due to an update in assessed property values that had not been revised since 19X2. This adjustment in property valuations has positively impacted the government entity's revenue from property taxes.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

In addition to property taxes there was also a significant rise in sales tax revenues. Sales tax revenues grew XX.X% in part because of the economy but significantly because of an increase in the sales tax rate from X.XX% to X.XX%. Lastly, investment earnings saw a dramatic increase of XX%. Investment earnings were XX% of the governmental activities revenues. This has resulted in more cash to invest. The value of the government entity's investments related to governmental activities increased XX% last year, accounting for the majority of the overall XX% increase in current assets.

Growth in Expenses

The increase in revenue was matched by a faster increase in the government entity's cost of providing services. Overall, expenses for governmental activities surged by XX%. Particularly notable was the tripling of expenses for social and economic development, which reached XX million in 20X2. Consequently, these expenses made up XX% of total expenses, compared to just XX% in 20X1. This increase was entirely due to the government entity's \$XX million contribution of infrastructure and facilities to various non-profit organizations.

The overall rise in governmental activities expenses for most programs can be partly attributed to salary and benefit increases from the new collective bargaining agreement with the employees of the government entity, which provided for raises ranging from XX% to XX% in 20X2, depending on the position.

Expenses for culture and recreation programs, which constituted XX% of total expenses, increased by XX% in 20X2. This increase was largely due to the one-time cost of a feasibility study assessing the condition of pools, parks, playgrounds, and other recreational facilities, along with estimating the required capital investments. Personnel costs also contributed, with about half of these costs linked to the contract-related salary increases.

Interest on long-term debt for governmental activities, making up approximately XX% of total expenses, also rose by XX% to \$XX million in 20X2. This increase was partly due to interest on the \$XX million tax-backed debt issued during the year, as well as the refunding of general obligation debt. The latter initially raised interest costs but is expected to reduce them in the future.

In contrast, the largest expense category—public safety, accounting for XX% of total expenses—saw a decrease of XX% from 20X1 to 20X2. Although there were salary increases and a slight rise in staffing by XX% for police, fire, and emergency services, these were more than offset by a reduction in pension expenses due to the growth in the Public Safety Retirement Plan's investments.

Other Changes in Net Position

In 20X2, revenues from governmental activities exceeded expenses by \$XX million. This figure is higher than the \$XX million increase in net position due to two factors. First, \$XX million was moved from governmental activities to business-type activities to fund capital projects for those activities. This transfer included \$XX million in cash and \$XX million of the proceeds of the tax-backed bonds, with more than XX% of the funds going to the Transit Authority.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

Second, the government entity incurred \$XX million in expenses related to recovery from severe flooding that affected the government entity and its neighboring areas in March 20X2. This was partly covered by \$XX million in state grants. It is currently uncertain if additional recovery costs will be reimbursed through insurance claims or federal assistance. These flood-related revenues and expenses are reported separately from other financial data in the Changes in Net Position table given above as well as the government-wide statement of activities due to their infrequent nature; the government entity has not experienced such heavy rainfall in the last XX years.

Governmental Funds

The government entity separately reports four major funds in its governmental fund financial statements. These are the general fund, the public safety and transportation special revenue fund, the debt service fund, and the infrastructure capital projects fund. Although much of the discussion on governmental activities applies to these funds, certain aspects of the government entity's current financial status are more evident in the fund financial statements than in the government-wide statements. Notable changes occurred in three of the four major funds which are illustrated in the table below.

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES JUNE 30 20X2 AND JUNE 30 20X1

	General Fund		Debt Service Fund		Infrastructure Capital Projects Fund	
	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1
Total Revenues	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Total Expenditures	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Excess (deficiency) of revenues over expenditures	XX,XXX	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	X,XXX	(XX,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Financing Sources (Uses)						
Other debt activity (net)		-	XX	-	XXX,XXX	-
Proceeds from the sale of capital assets	XXX	XXX	-	-	-	-
Transfers in	X,XXX	XXX	-	-	XXX	-
Transfers out	(XXX)	-	-	-	(XX,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Total other financing sources (uses)	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX	-	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX)
Unusual or Infrequent Item—Flood Damage						
Grant revenue	X,XXX	-	-	-	-	-
Cleanup	(XX,XXX)	-	-	-	-	-
Total unusual or infrequent item	(X,XXX)	-	-	-	-	-
Net change in fund balances	XX,XXX	(XXX)	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	(X,XXX)
Fund balances—beginning of period	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Fund balances—end of period	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Fund balance represents the financial standing of a governmental fund as of the end of the fiscal year from a short-term perspective.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

General Fund

The government entity's general fund balance saw a XX% increase. Without accounting for the impact of storm damage, the fund balance would have been \$XX million higher. This increase is attributed to: (1) the allocation of a XX% property tax into a reserve as mandated by the ordinance enacted in 20X1, (2) an increase in revenues (as previously mentioned), and (3) a postponement of planned public safety expenditure increases due to the delayed opening of a new law enforcement facilities, partially offset by net expenditures related to storm damage.

Debt Service Fund

The government entity's property tax revenues are exclusively allocated for repaying existing general obligation bonds. The modest rise in property tax revenues previously noted was more than adequate to meet the debt service fund's expenditures for both principal and interest. As a result, the fund balance in the debt service fund grew by XX% overall.

Infrastructure Capital Projects Fund

In 20X2, spending on capital assets in the capital projects fund reached its highest point in ten years. This rise was due to the conclusion of several major county-wide highway and street improvement projects and substantial progress made on others. (Additional details on capital asset activity are provided below.) Despite these capital outlays and transfers out to finance capital investments in other funds, the combination of increased property tax revenues and tax-backed bond proceeds led to a XX% increase in the fund balance.

Business-type Activities and Enterprise Funds

In 20X2, the government entity's business-type activities—reported as major enterprise funds—saw a net position increase, though less significant compared to the governmental activities. The net position for business-type activities rose by \$XX million, or XX%, reaching \$XX million from the previous year. This growth is partially due to a \$XX million transfer from governmental activities. Without this transfer, the net position would have decreased by \$XX million, indicating that expenses would have surpassed revenues for the year. Additionally, unrestricted net position fell by XX % for the year. However, this is an improvement over 20X1 when the net position decreased by \$XX million.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY REVENUES AND EXPENSES JUNE 30 20X2 AND JUNE 30 20X1

	Public Utility		Transit Authority		Golf Courses	
	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1	20X2	20X1
Total operating revenues	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Total operating expenses	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Operating income (loss)	XXX	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Noncapital Subsidies						
Transfers in	-		X,XXX	X,XXX	XXX	X,XXX
Transfers out	(X,XXX)	-	-	-	-	-
Total noncapital subsidies	(X,XXX)	-	X,XXX	X,XXX	XXX	X,XXX
Operating income (loss) and noncapital subsidies	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Nonoperating Revenues (Expenses)						
Earnings on investments	X,XXX	XXX	XX	XX	XXX	-
Interest expense	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)	-
Capital contributions	X,XXX	X,XXX	-	-	-	-
Transfers in restricted for capital assets	X,XXX	XXX	XX,XXX	-		XXX
Total other nonoperating revenues (expenses)	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	(XXX)	X,XXX	XXX
Increase (decrease) in fund net position	X,XXX	(X,XXX)	XX,XXX	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(XXX)
Total fund net position—beginning of period	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total fund net position—end of period	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Among the three enterprise funds, only the Public Utility demonstrated positive financial performance in 20X2 (refer to the above table). The Public Utility saw a XX% increase in operating expenses, primarily due to a substantial rise in pension costs of \$XX million. However, operating revenues—XX% of which came from charges for services—grew by XX%, exceeding the increase in expenses.

The Transit Authority's net position increased due to a \$XX million transfer, which is restricted for investment in capital assets. Without this transfer, operating expenses would have exceeded operating revenues, mainly because of the addition of six new routes. To support the increased ridership, the government entity also purchased two new buses that had been planned for the 20X3 bus replacement program. Additionally, ridership fell by nearly XX% in 20X2, primarily due to significant flood damage that led to the cancellation of most public transit services for about six weeks, making certain roads impassable. This decrease in ridership resulted in a nearly XX percent drop in fare revenue.

The net position of the Golf Courses fell by \$XX million. Despite efforts to attract more golfers by lowering green fees and rental charges, the number of rounds played fell by XX%. This decline was partly due to delayed opening of two of the three courses late in the spring because of flooding. Moreover, the trends observed at the government entity's courses align with a national reduction in golf participation.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

Significant Capital Asset and Long-Term Financing Activity

The overall carrying value of capital assets, calculated as original cost minus accumulated depreciation, increased by XX% compared to 20X1. However, this small change does not fully reflect the extensive capital investment activity that took place in 20X2.

The Government Entity's governmental activities started in 20X2 with a construction-in-progress balance of \$XX million and began new capital projects totaling \$XX million. During the year, \$XX million of these projects were completed and reclassified to other capital asset categories, such as infrastructure and buildings and improvements. Additionally, the Government Entity donated \$XX million in capital assets to not-for-profit organizations. Consequently, the ending balance for construction in progress remained at \$XX million. Many of these projects, both completed and ongoing, are part of the Government Entity-wide highway and street improvement initiative.

As discussed earlier, a portion of property tax revenue is allocated to a reserve fund dedicated to road and bridge construction, as well as other infrastructure projects.

In 20X1, voters approved a referendum permitting the Government Entity to issue up to \$XX million in tax-backed bonds to fund a county-wide capital program. This program includes major route reconstructions, lane additions, street surface upgrades, and expansion of bus services. In 20X2, the Government Entity issued \$XX million of these bonds, which was the primary factor behind a XX% increase in long-term liabilities for governmental activities. This rise was somewhat offset by a XX% decrease in general obligation debt, due to several bond calls and refundings carried out during the year.

Total bonds and notes payable outstanding rose by XX% to \$XX million in 20X2. The main contributor to this increase was the issuance of \$XX million in bonds backed by the Government Entity's sales tax, as authorized by the 20X1 referendum. After accounting for principal repayments throughout the year, this new issuance resulted in a XX% rise in outstanding tax-backed bonds.

By contrast, the amount of general obligation bonds outstanding decreased by XX% to \$XX million. Each year since 20X8, the Government Entity has routinely recalled and refunded significant portions of its general obligation debt, which has effectively reduced annual debt payments. In 20X2 alone, the Government Entity called and refunded \$XX million of general obligation bonds. Additionally, no new general obligation debt has been issued since fiscal year 20X9.

As of the end of 20X2, both general obligation and tax-backed bonds issued by the Government Entity continue to hold the highest available rating from municipal bond rating agencies. Since all of the Government Entity's debt is approved by the voters, it is not subject to the state-imposed debt limit.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

Currently Known Facts, Decisions, or Conditions

There are five major developments that will potentially impact the Local Government Entity's finances in the future and have been incorporated into next year's budget. These are as follows:

1. Public safety employee unions' new contract
2. Amendments to the Government Entity's budget
3. Recent economic reports
4. Adoption of the State budget
5. Pension plan changes

Public safety employees new contract

The collective bargaining agreement for uniformed police officers and firefighters expired at the end of fiscal year 20X2. On September 15, 20X2, the public safety employee unions approved a new four-year contract, which is effective from the beginning of fiscal year 20X3. The contract includes annual base pay increases of XX%, additional pay for rank, shift premiums, and other benefits averaging XX%, and annual non-pensionable bonuses. There are updates to staffing rules per the contract to give the Government Entity more flexibility in managing its uniformed employees, which is expected to lower overtime costs. The Government Entity's Labor Relations Division has planned an annual expense increase of \$XX million for public safety functions which offsets the reduced overtime costs.

Amendments to the Government Entity's Budget

The first mid-year amendment to the Government Entity's operating budget addresses variances noted in the first quarter ending September 30, 20X2. The amendment was approved by the Board of Supervisors on November 1, 20X2 and accounts for the increased public safety expenses due to the new contract. Property tax revenues for the first quarter were XX% below budget, and if this trend continues, the shortfall could reach \$XX million for the whole year. The Board of Supervisors has taken the decision to fill certain vacant or soon-to-be-vacant positions at a slower pace and adjust department budgets accordingly in order to offset this revenue loss.

Recent Economic Reports

The Government Entity's unemployment rate has been rising slightly for five consecutive months up to September 20X2 as per the latest data available. It was XX% in May 20X2 and increased to XX% by September 20X2.

Building permit applications were expected to increase XX% per the adopted budget for fiscal year 20X3, which is lower than the average annual increase of XX% since 19X7. However, in the first quarter of fiscal year 20X3, building permit applications remained unchanged compared to the same period last year.

Example 03 Management's Discussion and Analysis — Continued

Adoption of the State Budget

In May 20X2, the State adopted its operating budget for the fiscal year ending June 30, 20X3. There are two provisions in this budget that may adversely impact the Government Entity's finances. First, the State plans to retain XX% of the local option sales tax collected by counties and municipalities starting in calendar year 20X3. This is projected to affect the Government Entity's revenues by approximately \$XX million in fiscal year 20X3 and \$XX million in fiscal year 20X4.

Second, the budget phases out a Department of Transportation grant program that funds transportation and mass transit projects and their maintenance. The Government Entity had relied on this grant to support parts of its highway and street improvement program. The Government Entity had budgeted \$XX million from this grant through 20X7 based on its long-term capital plan, and continues to plan for this funding despite the program's reduction.

Pension Plan Changes

The Government Entity offers pension benefits to its employees through a cost-sharing defined benefit plan overseen by the State of Example Retirement System. In April 20X2, the System announced changes to the assumptions used to calculate the total pension liability for all participating governments. These updates include reducing the long-term expected rate of return on investments (and the discount rate) from XX% to XX%, and adopting new mortality tables that reflect longer life expectancies. These adjustments will take effect for the State fiscal year 20X3.

Consequently, the Government Entity's required contribution for the fiscal year starting July 1, 20X3 is expected to increase. However, the exact amount has not yet been determined.

Request for Information

This financial report is designed to provide ratepayers and creditors with a general overview of the Government Entity's finances and demonstrate the Government Entity's accountability for the monies it receives. If you have any questions about this report or need additional information contact: Finance, Attention: XXX, P.O. Box XXXX, City, CA XXXXX-XXXX or visit our website at: <http://www.the Government Entity.com>.

Government-wide Financial Statements

Example 04 Government-wide Statement of Net Position

Page 1: Assets/Deferred Outflows of Resources and Liabilities Page

**EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X2**

	Primary Government			Component Units	
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Urban Removal Agency	Cable Television
Assets					
Current Assets					
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Investments	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-
Restricted Assets- Customer Deposits	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-
Receivables (Net of Allowance for Uncollectibles)	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental Receivable	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Leases Receivable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-
Due from Component Unit	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Internal Balances	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Inventories	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-
Prepayments	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	X,XXX
Non Current Assets					
Lease Asset - Vehicles	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Subscription Asset - Toll Software Systems	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
PPP Receivable - Toll Roads	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Leases Receivable	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX		
Capital Assets (Non- Depreciable)	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Capital Assets, Net of Accumulated Depreciation and Amortization	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Assets	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Deferred Outflows of Resources					
Pension	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Other Post-Employment Benefits	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Deferred Charge on Refunding of Debt	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-	-
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-

Example 4 Statement of Net Position — Continued

Page 2: Liabilities and Deferred Inflows of Resources Page

**EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X2**

	Primary Government			Component Units	
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Urban Removal Agency	Cable Television
Liabilities					
Accounts Payable and Other Accrued Liabilities	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Contracts and Retainage Payable	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Accrued Interest Payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-
Deposits Payable	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Intergovernmental Payable	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-
Due to Primary Government	-	-	-	XX,XXX	-
Bond Anticipation Notes Payable	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Revenue Anticipation Notes Payable	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-
Unearned Revenues	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Noncurrent Liabilities:					
Due within one year:					
Bonds, notes, leases, claims, compensated absences	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX
Due in more than one year:					
Net Pension Liability – Actuarially Funded	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-
Total Pension Liability – Non-Funded Plan	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-
Net OPEB Liability	XX,XXX,XXX		XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX
Bonds, notes, leases, claims, compensated absences	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX
Total Liabilities	\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Deferred Inflows of Resources					
PPP - Toll Roads Related	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Leases	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Pension	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Other Post-Employment Benefits	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-

Example 4 Statement of Net Position — Continued

Page 3: Net Position Page

**EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X2**

	Primary Government			Component Units	
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total	Urban Removal Agency	Cable Television
Net Position					
Net Investment in Capital Assets	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Restricted For:					
Capital Projects	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-	-
Debt Service	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Housing Services	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-	-
Law Enforcement	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-	-
Community Redevelopment - Expendable	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Community Redevelopment - Non-Expendable	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Other Restricted Purposes	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Unrestricted Resources (Deficit)	(XX,XXX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Total Net Position	\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Example 05 Government-wide Statement of Activities

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20X2

Functions/Programs	Program Revenues				Net (Expense) Revenue and Change in Net Position				
	Expenses	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Capital Grants and Contributions	Primary Government		Component Units		
					Governmental Activities	Business Type Activities	Total	Urban Renewal Agency	Cable Television
Primary Government:									
Governmental Activities:									
General Government	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	-	\$ XXX,XXX	(\$ XX,XXX,XXX)	-	(\$ XX,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Public Safety	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Highways and Streets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Culture and Recreation	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Interest	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Total Government Activities	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Business Type Activities									
Water	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Transit	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Total Business Type Activities	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Total Primary Government	\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	(\$ XXX,XXX,XXX)	(\$ X,XXX,XXX)	(\$ X,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Component Units:									
Urban Renewal Agency	XXX,XXX	-	-	-				(XXX,XXX)	-
Cable Television	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	\$ -	-				-	XX,XXX
Total Component Units	\$ X,XXX,X XX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ -	-				(\$ XXX,XXX)	\$ XX,XXX
General Revenues and Transfers:									
General Revenues									
Property Taxes					XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-
Sales Tax					XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-
Franchise Taxes					X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Grants and Contributions not Restricted to Specific Programs					X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Unrestricted Investment Earnings					X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX
Payments in Lieu of Taxes					X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Gains on Sale of Capital Assets					XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Miscellaneous					X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX
Transfers					(X,XXX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Unusual or Infrequent Item – storm damage:									
Grant Revenues					X,XXX		X,XXX		
Cleanup					(XX,XXX)		(XX,XXX)		
Total General Revenues, Transfer, and Unusual or Infrequent Item					XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX
Change in Net Position					(XX,XXX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Net Position - Beginning					XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Position - Ending					\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Fund Financial Statements

Example 06 Balance Sheet

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY BALANCE SHEET GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS JUNE 30, 20X2

	General	Capital Projects	Debt Service	Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
Assets					
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Investments	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Receivables (Net of Allowance For Uncollectibles)	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental Receivable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Lease Receivable	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	-
PPP Receivable - Toll Roads	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	-
Due from Other Funds	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Due from Component Units	XX,XXX	-	-	-	-
Inventories	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	-
Prepaid Items	XX,XXX	-	-	XXX	-
Advances to Other Funds	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	-
Total Assets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Liabilities					
Account Payable	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Contracts Payable	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Retainage Payable	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Accrued Liabilities	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Deposits Payable	-	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Due to Other Funds	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Advances from Other Funds	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Bond Anticipation Notes Payable	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Unearned Revenue-Other	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Liabilities	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Deferred Inflow of Resources					
Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Unavailable Revenue - Special Assessments	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Leases	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
PPP - Toll Roads Related	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Total Deferred Inflow of Resources	XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Fund Balances					
Nonspendable:					
Endowment	-	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Inventories	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Prepaid Items	XX,XXX	-	-	XXX	XX,XXX
Long-term interfund advances	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Restricted:					
Special Assessment Project	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Public Service Vehicles	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Library Purposes	-	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Housing Services	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Community Redevelopment	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Law Enforcement	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Youth Programs	-	-	-	X,XXX	X,XXX
Nonrecurring Repairs and Other Parking Improvements	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
General Obligation Debt	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Special Assessment Debt	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Committed:					
Special Assessment Project	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Revenue Stabilization Reserve	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Open Space	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Assigned:					
Purchases on Order	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Subsequent Year's Budget - Appropriation Fund Balance	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Unassigned (Deficits)	XX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Total Fund Balances (Deficits)	XX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflow of Resources and Fund Balances (Deficits)	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX

Example 07 Reconciliation of the Balance Sheet of Governmental Funds To Statement of Net Position

Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds		\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Capital assets of \$ XXX,XXX,XXX, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization of \$ XXX,XXX,XXX, used in governmental activities are not financial resources and, therefore, are not reported in the funds.		XXX,XXX,XXX
Differences between expected and actual experiences, assumption changes and net differences between projected and actual earnings and contributions subsequent to the measurement date for the postretirement benefits (pension and OPEB) are recognized as deferred outflows of resources on the statement of net position.		
Deferred Outflows - Pension Related	X,XXX,XXX	
Deferred Outflows - OPEB Related	X,XXX,XXX	
Deferred Inflows - Pension Related	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Deferred Inflows - OPEB Related	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Total Deferred Outflows and Inflows related to postemployment benefits		X,XXX,XXX
Other long-term assets that are not available to pay for the current period expenditures and therefore are either deferred or not reported in the funds.		X,XXX,XXX
Internal Service Funds are used by management to charge the cost of fleet management and risk management to individuals funds. The assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources of the internal service funds are included in governmental activities in the statement of net position.		X,XXX,XXX
Long-term liabilities that are not due and payable in the current period and therefore are not reported in the funds.		
General Obligation Bonds Payable	(XX,XXX,XXX)	
Notes Payable	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Special Assessments Bonds Payable	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Compensated Absences	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Pension Related Debt	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Leases Payable	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Accrued Interest Payable on Long-Term Debt	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Net OPEB Liability	(XX,XXX,XXX)	
Net Pension Liability	(XX,XXX,XXX)	
Total Long-Term Liabilities		(XXX,XXX,XXX)
Governmental Funds report the effect of premiums, discounts, and refundings and similar items when debt is first issued, whereas these amounts are deferred and amortized in the statement of activities		
Deferred Amounts on Refunding	XXX,XXX	
Premium on General Obligation Bonds	(XXX,XXX)	
Discount on Special Assessment Bonds	X,XXX	
Total Premiums, discounts and deferred items		XX,XXX
Net Position of Governmental Activities		<u>\$ XXX,XXX,XXX</u>

Example 08 Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Balances

Page 1: Revenues and Expenditures

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
JUNE 30, 20X2

	General	Capital Projects	Debt Service	Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
Revenues					
Property Taxes	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	-	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Sales Taxes	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Franchise Taxes	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Licenses and Permits	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,X,XXX,XXX
Charges for Services	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Fines and Forfeitures	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Fees	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Special Assessments	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Payments In-Lieu of Taxes	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous Revenues	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Revenues	XXX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX
Expenditures					
Current:					
General Government	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Public Safety	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Highways and Streets	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Sanitation	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Culture and Recreation	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Debt Service:					
Principal	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Interest	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Issuance Cost	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Capital Outlay:					
General Government	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Public Safety	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Highways and Streets	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Sanitation	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Culture and Recreation	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Total Expenditures	XXX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over Expenditures	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX,XXX)	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX,XXX)

Example 8 Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Balances — Continued

Page 2: Other Financing Sources (Uses) and Net Position

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
JUNE 30, 20X2

	General	Capital Projects	Debt Service	Total Nonmajor Funds	Total Governmental Funds
Other Financing Sources (Uses)					
Transfers In	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Transfers Out	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Notes Issued	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Refunding Bonds Issued	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Premium Refunding Bonds Issued	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Special Assessment Bonds Issued	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Discount on Special Assessment Bonds Issued	-	(XX,XXX)	-	-	(XX,XXX)
Payment to Refunded Bond Escrow Agent	-	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)
Leases (as Lessee)	XX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX
SBITA - IT Hardware/Software	XX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX
Sale of General Capital Assets	XX,XXX	-	-	-	XX,XXX
Insurance Recoveries	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(X,XXX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Storm Damage					
Grant Revenues	X,XXX				X,XXX
Cleanup	(XX,XXX)				(XX,XXX)
Total Unusual of Infrequent Item	(X,XXX)				(X,XXX)
Net Change in Fund Balances	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Fund Balances – Beginning of Period	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Fund Balances – End of Period	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Example 09 Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances of Governmental Funds to Statement of Activities

Amounts reported for governmental activities in the statement of activities are different because:

Net change in the fund balances - total governmental activities	(\$ XX,XXX,XXX)

Governmental funds report capital outlays as expenditures. However, in the statement of activities, the cost of assets is allocated over their estimated useful lives and reported as depreciation and amortization expense.

This is the amount by which capital outlays exceeded depreciation and amortization expense in the current period.	X,XXX,XXX

Revenues in the statement of activities that do not provide current financial resources are not reported as revenues in the funds

Earned but unavailable taxes and special assessments revenues	X,XXX,XXX	
Property Taxes	(XX,XXX)	
Interest	(XX,XXX)	
		X,XXX,XXX

The net effect of various miscellaneous transactions involving capital assets (i.e., sales, trade-ins, and donations) is to increase net position

Donation of capital assets	XXX,XXX	
Gain on sale of assets	(X,XXX)	
		XXX,XXX

Bond and other debt proceeds provide current financial resources to governmental funds, but issuing debt increases long-term liabilities in the Statement of Net Position. Repayment of bond and other debt principal is an expenditure in the governmental funds, but repayments reduces long-term liabilities in the Statement of Net Position. Also, governmental funds report the effect of premiums, discounts, and similar items when debt is first issued, whereas these amounts are deferred and amortized in the statement of activities.

Issuance of special assessment debt	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Issuance of refunding bonds	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Payment to escrow agent	X,XXX,XXX	
Note issued	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Lease issued	(XX,XXX)	
Premium	(XXX,XXX)	
Discounts	XX,XXX	
Principal paid on pension related debt	XXX,XXX	
Principal paid on bonds	X,XXX,XXX	
		(XXX,XXX)

The internal service funds are used by management to charge the costs of fleet management and risk management to individual funds. The net revenue of certain activities of internal service funds is reported with governmental activities.

(XXX,XXX)

Some expenses reported in the statement of activities do not require the use of current financial resources and therefore are not reported as expenditures in the governmental funds.

Accrued interest on long-term debt	XX,XXX	
Amortization of bond premiums and discounts	XX,XXX	
Amortization of deferred amounts of refunding	(XX,XXX)	
Compensated absences	(XXX,XXX)	
Changes in pension liabilities and related deferred outflows and inflows of resources	(X,XXX,XXX)	
Changes in OPEB liabilities and related deferred outflows and inflows of resources	(X,XXX,XXX)	
		(X,XXX,XXX)

Change in net position of governmental activities	(\$ XX,XXX,XXX)

Example 10 General Fund — Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances — Budget and Actual

Page 1: Revenues and Expenditures

	Budgeted Amounts		Actual	Variance with Final Budget
	Original	Final		
Revenues				
Taxes:				
Property Taxes	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	(\$ XXX,XXX)
Sales Taxes	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Franchise Taxes	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Licenses and Permits	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Intergovernmental	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Charges for Services	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Fines and Forfeitures	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous Revenues	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Total Revenues	XXX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Expenditures				
Current:				
General Government:				
Council	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Manager	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Attorney	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Clerk	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX)
Personnel	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Financial Administration	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Other - Unclassified	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Total General Government	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Public Safety:				
Police	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Fire	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Protective Inspection	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Total Public Safety	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Highways and Streets:				
Engineering	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Maintenance	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Total Highways and Streets	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Sanitation	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Culture and Recreation	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Debt Service:				
Principal	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	(XXX,XXX)
Interest	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	(XXX,XXX)
Issuance Cost	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Total Debt Service	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Total Expenditures	XXX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over Expenditures	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 10 General Fund — Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances — Budget and Actuals — Continued

Page 2: Other Financing Sources

	Budgeted Amounts		Actual	Variance with Final Budget
	Original	Final		
Other Financing Sources (Uses)				
Transfers In	\$ -	\$ -	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Transfers Out	(X.XXX,XXX)	(X.XXX,XXX)	(X.XXX,XXX)	X.XXX,XXX
Notes Issued	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Leases Issued		-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
SBIAT - IT Hardware/Software	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Sale of General Capital Assets		-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Insurance Recoveries		-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(X.XXX,XXX)	(X.XXX,XXX)	(X.XXX,XXX)	X.XXX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Flood Damage				
Grant Revenues			X,XXX	(X,XXX)
Cleanup			(XX,XXX)	XX,XXX
Total Unusual or Infrequent Item			(XX,XXX)	XX,XXX
Net Change in Fund Balances	(XX.XXX,XXX)	(XX.XXX,XXX)	(X.XXX,XXX)	X.XXX,XXX
Fund Balances - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	-
Fund Balances (Deficit) - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Proprietary Fund Financial Statements

Example 11 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Net Position

Page 1: Assets and Deferred Outflow of Resources Page

	Business Type Activities		Governmental Activities	
	Water	Transit	Total Enterprise Funds	Internal Service Funds
Assets				
Current Assets				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Investments	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Restricted Assets - Customer Deposits	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-
Interest Receivable	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX
Accounts Receivable, Net	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Due From Other Funds	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Intergovernmental Receivable	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Inventories	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX
Prepaid Items	-	-	-	XX,XXX
Total Current Assets	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Noncurrent Assets				
Capital Assets				
Land	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	-
Buildings	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX
Lease Asset - Vehicles	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Subscription Asset - Toll Software Systems	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
PPP Receivable - Toll Roads	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Water Distribution System	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	-
Construction In-Progress	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-
Less Accumulated Depreciation and Amortization	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Total Noncurrent Assets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Assets	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Deferred Outflows of Resources				
Pension Related	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
OPEB Related	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	\$ XX,XXX	\$ -	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Example 11 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Net Position — Continued

Page 2: Liabilities, Deferred Inflow/Outflows and Net Position Page

	Business Type Activities		Governmental Activities	
	Water	Transit	Total Enterprise Funds	Internal Service Funds
Liabilities				
Current Liabilities				
Accounts Payable	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Accrued Liabilities	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Compensated Absences	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	XX,XXX
Claims and Judgments	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Retainage Payable	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-
Customer Deposits Payable - Restricted Assets	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-
Accrued Interest Payable	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-
Bond Anticipation Note Payable	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-
Intergovernmental Payable	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Bonds Payable - Current	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-
Unearned Revenue	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Total Current Liabilities	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Noncurrent Liabilities				
Compensated Absences	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Claims and Judgments	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Bonds Payable	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-
Lease Asset - Vehicles	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Subscription Asset - Toll Software Systems	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Net Pension Liability	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net OPEB Liability	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Noncurrent Liabilities	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Liabilities	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Deferred Inflows of Resources				
Pension Related	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	X,XXX
OPEB Related	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
PPP - Toll Roads Related	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Position				
Net Investment in Capital Assets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Restricted for:				
Debt Service	X,XXX		X,XXX	
Capital Projects	X,XXX		X,XXX	
Unrestricted	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Net Position	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Adjustment to report the cumulative internal balance for the net effect of the activity between the internal service funds and the enterprise funds over time

Net Position of Business-Type Activities

XXX,XXX

\$ XX,XXX,XXX

Example 12 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Net Position

	Business Type Activities			Governmental Activities
	Water	Transit	Total Enterprise Funds	Internal Service Funds
Operating Revenues				
Charges for Services				
Metered Water Sales	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ -	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ -
Tap Fees	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	-
Passenger Fares	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Contract Transit	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Charter	-	XXX	XXX	-
Risk Management	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Fleet Management	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Total Operating Revenues	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses				
Personnel Services	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Materials and Supplies	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Contractual Services	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Claims	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Depreciation and Amortization	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss)	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Noncapital Subsidies				
Intergovernmental Revenue	-	-	-	XXX
Transfer in	-	X,XXX	X,XXX	XXX
Transfers out	(X,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)	-
Total noncapital Subsidies	-	-	-	-
Operating Income (Loss) and noncapital subsidies	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Nonoperating Revenues (Expenses)				
Intergovernmental	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Investment Earnings	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Loss on Disposal of Property	(X,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-
Interest Expense	(XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX)	-
Total Nonoperating Revenues (Expenses)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Income (Loss) before Unusual or Infrequent Items	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Unusual or Infrequent Items - Fire				
Cleanup	-	(XX,XXX)	-	-
Change in Net Position	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Net Position - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Net Position - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Adjustment to report the cumulative internal balance for the net effect of the activity between the internal service funds and the enterprise funds over time			(XX,XXX)	
Change in Net Position of Business-Type Activities			<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	

Example 13 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Cash Flows

Page 1 of 2: Statement of Cash and Cash Equivalents

	Business Type Activities			Governmental Activities
	Water	Transit	Total Enterprise Funds	Internal Service Funds
Cash Flows From Operating Activities				
Receipts From Customers	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Receipts From Interfund Charges for Transit Services	-	X,XXX	X,XXX	-
Receipts From Interfund Charges for Fleet Management Services	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Receipts From Interfund Charges for Risk Management Services	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Receipt of Customer Deposits	X,XXX	-	-	-
Other Receipts	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Payments to Suppliers and Service Providers	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Payments to Employees for Salaries and Benefits	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Payments to Other Funds for Services Provided	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	-
Return of Customer Deposits	(X,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)	-
Net Cash Provided by (used for) Operating Activities	X,XXX,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Cash Flows from Noncapital Financing Activities				
Transfers from Other Funds	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Operating Grants	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Net Cash Provided by Noncapital Financing Activities	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Cash Flows from Capital and Related Financing Activities				
Proceeds from Bond Anticipation Notes	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-
Connection Fees	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	-
Capital Grants	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Acquisition and Construction of Capital Assets	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Principal Paid on Capital Debt	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	-
Interest Paid on Capital Debt	(XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX)	-
Proceeds from the Sale of Assets	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-
Net Cash Provided by (used for) Capital and Related Financing Activities	(XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Cash Flows from Investing Activities				
Purchase of Investments	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Proceeds from Sale of Investments	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Interest on Investments	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Cash Provided by Investing Activities	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)
Cash and Cash Equivalents - Beginning (Including \$XX,XXX for the water fund reported in restricted accounts)	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Cash and Cash Equivalents - Ending (Including \$XX,XXX for the water fund reported in restricted accounts)	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 13 Proprietary Fund — Statement of Cash Flows — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Page 2 of 2: Reconciliation of Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash provided by (used for) Operating Activities

	Business Type Activities			Governmental Activities
	Water	Transit	Total Enterprise Funds	Internal Service Funds
Reconciliation of Operating Income (loss) to Net Cash Provided by (Used for) Operating Activities				
Operating Income (Loss)	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (XXX,XXX)
Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash				
Provided by (Used For) Operating Activities:				
Depreciation and Amortization Expense	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
(Increase) Decrease in Accounts Receivable	(XXX,XXX)	X,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	-
(Increase) in Due From Other Funds	-	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-
(Increase) in Intergovernmental Receivables	-	-	-	(XX,XXX)
(Increase) Decrease in Inventories	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	(XX,XXX)
(Increase) Decrease in Prepaid Items	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Decrease in Pension Related Deferred Outflows of Resources	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Decrease in OPEB Related Deferred Outflows of Resources	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
(Decrease) in Deposits Payable	(X,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)	-
(Decrease) in Accounts Payable	(XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
(Decrease) in Amounts Payable Related to Equipment Purchases	(XX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX)	-
(Decrease) in Accrued Liabilities	-	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	-
(Decrease) Increase in Compensated Absences	(X,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)	XX,XXX
(Decrease) in Intergovernmental Payable	-	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-
(Decrease) in Claims and Judgments Payable	-	-	-	(XXX,XXX)
(Decrease) in Net Pension Liability	(XX,XXX)	-	-	(XX,XXX)
(Decrease) in Net OPEB Liability	(XX,XXX)	-	-	(XX,XXX)
(Decrease) in Pension Related Deferred Inflows of Resources	(XX,XXX)	-	-	(XX,XXX)
Increase in OPEB Related Deferred Inflows of Resources	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Total Adjustments	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Cash Provided by (Used For) Operating Activities	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX
Schedule of Non-Cash Capital and Related Financing Activities:				
Contributions of Capital Assets	-	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	-
Purchase of Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles on Account	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	-

Fiduciary Funds Financial Statements

Example 14 Fiduciary Fund — Statement of Fiduciary Net Position

	Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds	Investment Trust Funds	Private-Purpose Trust Funds	Custodial Funds
Assets				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Receivables:				
Employee	X,XXX	-	-	-
Employer	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Taxes for Other Governments	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Interest and Dividends	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-
Sale of Investments	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Total Receivables	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Investments at Fair Value:				
Short-Term Investments	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Bonds, Notes, Mortgages, and Preferred Stock	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Common Stock	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-
Real Estate	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
International Investments	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Mutual Funds	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-
Pooled Investment Funds	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Total Investments	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Securities Lending Collateral	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Other Assets	XX,XXX	XXX	XX,XXX	XXX
Total Assets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Liabilities				
Accounts Payable and Other Liabilities	XXX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX
Claims Payable	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Refunds Payable	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Due to Local Governments	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Obligations Under Securities Lending	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Other Long-Term Liabilities	X,XXX	-	X,XXX	-
Total Liabilities	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Position				
Restricted For:				
Pensions	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions	XX,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Pool Participants	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Individuals, Organizations, and Other Governments	-	-	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX
Other Governments	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Total Net Position	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 15 Fiduciary Fund — Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

	Pension (and Other Employee Benefit) Trust Funds	Investment Trust Funds	Private- Purpose Trust Funds	Custodial Funds
Additions				
Contributions				
Members	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Employers	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Other Plans	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Gifts and Bequests	-	-	-	-
Sale of Investments	-	-	XXX,XXX	-
Total Contributions	X,XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	-
Investment Earnings				
Net Increase in Fair Value of Investments	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Interest, Dividends, and Other Securities Lending Income	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Total Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Less Investment Costs:				
Investment Activity Costs	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX	-
Securities Lending Costs	XX,XXX	-	-	-
Net Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-
Capital Share and Individual Account Transactions				
Shares Sold	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-
Reinvested Distributions	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Shares Redeemed	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	-	-
Net Capital Share and Individual Account Transactions	-	XXX,XXX	-	-
Sales Tax Collections for Other Governments	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous	X,XXX	-	-	X,XXX
Total Additions	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Deductions				
Benefits Paid to Participants or Beneficiaries	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Medical, Dental, and Life Insurance for Retirees	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Refunds and Transfers to Other Systems	XXX,XXX	-	-	-
Administrative Expense	XX,XXX	-	XX	XXX
Beneficiary Payments to Individuals	-	-	XXX,XXX	-
Payments of Sales Tax to Other Governments	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Distributions to Shareholders	-	XX,XXX	-	-
Total Deductions	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Net Increase (Decrease) in Fiduciary Net Position	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX
Net Position - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX
Net Position - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Notes to the Financial Statements

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

The financial statements of the Government Entity have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, as applied to government units (hereinafter referred to as generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP)). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard-setting body forestablishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles. The Government Entity's significant accounting policies are described below.

A. Description of Government-wide Financial Statements

The government-wide financial statements (i.e., the statement of net position and the statement of activities) report information on all of the nonfiduciary activities of the primary government and its component units. All fiduciary activities are reported only in the fund financial statements. Governmental activities, which normally are supported by taxes, intergovernmental revenues, and other nonexchange transactions, are reported separately from business-type activities, which rely to a significant extent on fees and charges to external customers for support. Likewise, the primary government is reported separately from certain legally separate component units for which the primary government is financially accountable.

B. Reporting Entity

The Government Entity is a municipal corporation governed by an elected board and six-member Governing Council (Council). The accompanying financial statements present the government and its component units, entities for which the government is considered to be financially accountable. Blended component units are, in substance, part of the primary government's operations, even though they are legally separate entities. Thus, blended component units are appropriately presented as funds of the primary government. Each discretely presented component unit is reported in a separate column in the government-wide financial statements to emphasize that it is both legally and substantively separate from the government.

Blended Component Unit. The Water Authority (Authority) serves all the citizens of the Government Entity and is governed by a board composed of the Government Entity's elected Council. The rates for user charges and bond issuance authorizations are approved by the Government Entity's Council and the Government Entity is legally obligated to provide resources in case there are deficiencies in debt service payments and resources are not available from any other remedies. The Authority is reported as an enterprise fund and does not issue separate financial statements.

Discretely Presented Component Units. The Urban Renewal Agency (Agency) was created in 19XX by state law for the purpose of eliminating and preventing the development and spread of deterioration and blight through the clearance, re-planning, reconstruction, rehabilitation, conservation, or renewal of areas designated for residential, commercial, industrial, community, public, and other uses. The Agency is governed by five members who are appointed by and serve at the pleasure of the board.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

The governing board may also appoint itself as one of the members and is currently serving as Chairperson. The Government Entity periodically provides subsidies to support the Agency when it experiences operating deficits that are not financed by other means. Separately issued financial reports are available for the Urban Renewal Agency. These reports may be obtained by contacting the Urban Renewal Agency at the following address:

Urban Renewal Agency
1234 Sample Road
Government Entity

C. Basis of Presentation – Government-wide Financial Statements

The fund financial statements provide information about the Government Entity's funds, including its fiduciary funds and blended component units. Separate statements for each fund category — governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary — are presented. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental and enterprise funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental and enterprise funds are aggregated and reported as nonmajor funds. Major individual governmental and enterprise funds are reported as separate columns in the fund financial statements.

The accounts of the Government Entity are organized and operated on a fund basis. The operations of each fund are accounted for with a separate set of self-balancing accounts that comprise its assets, deferred outflows, liabilities, deferred inflows, net position, revenues, and expenses.

The basic financial statements include prior year comparative information. A complete presentation of the prior year information can be found in the Government Entity's financial statements for the year ended June 30, 20X2.

D. Basis of Presentation – Fund Financial Statements

The Government Entity reports the following major governmental funds:

- The general fund is the Government Entity's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the general government, except those accounted for in another fund.
- The capital projects fund accounts for the acquisition and construction of the Government Entity's major capital facilities, other than those financed by proprietary funds.
- The debt service fund is used to account for the accumulation of resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned for the payment of principal and interest on long-term obligations of governmental funds.

The Government Entity reports the following major proprietary (enterprise) funds:

- The Government Entity is engaged in the collection, transmission, and distribution of water to communities within XXXXXX and XXXXXX counties of California.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Additionally, the Government Entity reports the following fiduciary fund:

- Internal service funds account for fleet management and risk management services (including claims for workers' compensation, general liability, and property damage) provided to other departments or agencies of the Government Entity, or to other governments on a cost-reimbursement basis.
- The Pension and Other Employee Benefit Trust is used to account for the resources held by the Employees' Retirement System which provides retirement, disability, and survivorship benefits for eligible directors, officers, and employees of the Government Entity.
- The investment trust fund accounts for the deposits, withdrawals, and earnings of the local government investment trust fund, an external investment pool for local governments.
- The private-purpose trust funds accounts for contributions made on behalf of children housed at various orphanages.
- The custodial funds account for monies held for the Children's Fund, a local 501(c)(3) not-for-profit agency to which the Government Entity provides accounting and investing services; and monies held for an external investment pool for local fire protection districts, neither of which are held in trust.

Enterprise funds are used to account for operations that are financed and operated in a manner similar to private business enterprises — where the intent of the governing body is that the costs (expenses, including depreciation and amortization) of providing goods or services to the general public on a continuing basis be financed or recovered primarily through user charges. The Pension and Other Employee Benefit Trust fund is maintained to account for assets held by the Employees' Retirement System in a trustee capacity.

While separate government-wide and fund financial statements are presented, they are interrelated. The governmental activities column incorporates data from governmental funds and internal service funds, while business-type activities incorporate data from the Government Entity's enterprise funds. Separate financial statements are provided for governmental funds, proprietary funds, and fiduciary funds, even though the latter are excluded from the government-wide financial statements. The Government Entity has two discretely presented component units which are shown in separate columns within the government-wide financial statements.

As a general rule, the effect of interfund activity has been eliminated from the government-wide financial statements. Exceptions to this general rule are payments in lieu of taxes where the amounts are reasonably equivalent in value to the interfund services provided, and other charges between the Government Entity's water and transit functions and various other functions of the Government Entity. Elimination of these charges would distort the direct costs and program revenues reported for the various functions concerned.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

E. Measurement Focus and Basis of Accounting

The accounting and financial reporting treatment is determined by the applicable measurement focus and basis of accounting. Measurement focus indicates the type of resources being measured such as current financial resources or economic resources. The basis of accounting indicates the timing of recognition in the financial statements of various kinds of transactions or events.

The government-wide, proprietary, and fiduciary fund financial statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

The governmental fund financial statements are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recognized when they have been earned and they are both measurable and available. Revenues are considered to be available when they are collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to pay liabilities of the current period. For this purpose, the Government Entity considers revenues to be available if they are collected within 60 days of the end of the current fiscal period. Expenditures generally are recorded when a liability is incurred, as under accrual accounting. However, debt service principal and interest expenditures on general long-term debt, including lease liabilities, as well as expenditures related to compensated absences, and claims and judgments, postemployment benefits and environmental obligations are recognized later based on specific accounting rules applicable to each, generally when payment is due. General capital asset acquisitions, including entering into contracts giving the Government Entity the right to use leased assets, are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Issuance of long-term debt and financing through leases are reported as other financing sources.

Property taxes, sales taxes, franchise taxes, licenses, and interest associated with the current fiscal period are all considered to be susceptible to accrual and so have been recognized as revenues of the current fiscal period. Entitlements are recorded as revenues when all eligibility requirements are met, including any time requirements, and the amount is received during the period or within the availability period for this revenue source (within 60 days of year-end). Expenditure-driven grants are recognized as revenue when the qualifying expenditures have been incurred and all other eligibility requirements have been met, and the amount is received during the period or within the availability period for this revenue source (within 60 days of year-end). All other revenue items are considered to be measurable and available only when cash is received by the Government Entity.

F. Budgetary Information

Budgetary basis of accounting

Annual budgets are adopted on a basis consistent with generally accepted accounting principles for the general fund, library fund, and debt service fund. The capital projects fund is appropriated on a project-length basis. Other special revenue funds and the permanent fund do not have appropriated budgets since other means control the use of these resources (e.g., grant awards and endowment requirements) and sometimes span a period of more than one fiscal year.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

The appropriated budget is prepared by fund, function, and department. The Government Entity's department heads may make transfers of appropriations within a department. Transfers of appropriations between departments require the approval of the board. The legal level of budgetary control (i.e., the level at which expenditures may not legally exceed appropriations) is the department level.

Appropriations in all budgeted funds lapse at the end of the fiscal year even if they have related encumbrances. Encumbrances are commitments related to unperformed (executory) contracts for goods or services (i.e., purchase orders, contracts, and commitments). Encumbrance accounting is utilized to the extent necessary to assure effective budgetary control and accountability and to facilitate effective cash planning and control. While all appropriations and encumbrances technically lapse at year end, valid outstanding encumbrances (those for which performance under the executory contract is expected in the next year) are reappropriated and become part of the subsequent year's budget pursuant to state regulations, and the encumbrances are automatically reestablished in the next year.

Excess of expenditures over appropriations

For the year ended June 30, 20XX, expenditures exceeded appropriations in the protective inspection department (the legal level of budgetary control) within the public safety function of the general fund by \$XX,XXX. While overspending of this appropriation is authorized by law up to \$XXX,XXX if related to cases involving imminent public endangerment (e.g., the need to inspect properties with damage from collision, natural disaster, fire, or water to determine their inherent stability), which was the case this year, it is nevertheless considered a budgetary violation. Further, the overspending comes with a consequence for the subsequent year's budget. In accordance with the requirements of the law, there was a decrease of \$XX,XXX in the protective inspection appropriation for routinely scheduled inspections that was legally adopted for the subsequent year's budget.

G. Assets, Liabilities, Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources, and Net Position/Fund Balance

Cash and Cash Equivalents

For purposes of the statement of cash flows, the Government Entity considers all highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less at the date of purchase to be cash equivalents.

Investments

Government Entity Investments

Investments are stated at fair value. Included in investment income (loss) is the net change in the fair value of investments, which consists of the realized gains or losses and the unrealized appreciation (depreciation) of those investments.

Measurement of the fair value of investments is based upon quoted market prices, if available. The estimated fair value of investments that have no quoted market price is determined based on equivalent yields for such securities or for securities of comparable maturity, quality, and type as obtained from market makers.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Each of the financial instruments invested in by the Government Entity represents a potential concentration of credit risk. However, as the portfolio and the components of the various instruments are diversified, and issuers of securities are dispersed throughout many industries and geographic locations, the concentrations of credit risk are limited.

Retirement System Investments

Investments are reported at fair value. Securities and bonds traded on a national or international exchange are valued at the last reported sales price at current exchange rates. Investments that have no quoted market price are reported at estimated fair value, which is determined based on yields equivalent for such securities or for securities of comparable maturity, quality, and type as obtained from market makers. Measurement of the fair value of real estate investments is estimated by the investment managers and reflects both internal and independent appraisals of real estate properties.

The System presents in the Statements of Changes in Plan Net Position the net change in the fair value of its investments, which consists of the realized gains or losses and the unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on those investments. Purchases and sales of securities are recorded on a trade-date basis. Interest income is recorded on the full accrual basis. Dividends are recorded on the ex-dividend date.

Each of the financial instruments invested in by the System represents a potential concentration of credit risk. However, as the portfolio and the components of the various instruments are diversified and issuers of securities are dispersed throughout many industries and geographical locations, the concentrations of credit risk are limited.

Retirement Board policies permit the Employees' Retirement System to use investments of the pension plan to enter into securities lending transactions, which are loans of securities to broker-dealers and other entities for collateral with a simultaneous agreement to return collateral for the same securities in the future.

The System's securities custodian is an agent in lending the Plan's securities for cash collateral, U.S. government securities, and irrevocable letters of credit of XXX% for domestic securities lent and XXX% for international securities lent. As of June 30, 20X2, the Employees' Retirement System had no credit risk exposure to borrowers because the amounts the Employees' Retirement System owes the borrowers exceed the amounts the borrowers owe the Employees' Retirement System.

Contracts with the lending agent require them to indemnify the Employees' Retirement System under certain circumstances if the borrowers fail to return the securities (and if the collateral is inadequate to replace the securities lent) or fail to pay the System for income distributions by the securities issuers while the securities are on loan. The risk of any loss of collateral or investment of cash collateral (including a loss of income or principal, or loss of fair value thereon) lies with the System, except for losses resulting from negligence or intentional misconduct of the agent in performing the duties allocated under the securities lending agreement with respect to collateral.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

During the year ended June 30, 20XX, there were no violations of legal or contractual provisions, and no borrower or lending agent default losses known to the securities lending agent.

In lending securities, cash collateral is invested in the lending agent's short-term investment pool, which as of June 30, 20X2, had a weighted average maturity of XX days. The relationship between the maturities of the investment pool and the System's loans is affected by the maturities of the securities loans made by other entities that use the agent's pool, which the System cannot determine. Cash collateral may also be invested separately in term loans, in which case the maturity of the collateral investment generally matches the term of the loan. Noncash collateral cannot be pledged or sold unless the borrower defaults. All securities loans can be terminated on demand by either the lender or the borrower, although the average term of overall loans for the System was approximately XXX days. There are no dividends or coupon payments owing on the securities lent. Cash received as collateral on securities lending transactions is reported as an asset of the System with a corresponding liability.

As of June 30, 20X2, the fair value of securities on loan, which was comprised of Global Equities, US Corporate Fixed Equities, US Equities, and US Government Fixed Equities, was \$XXX,XXX. The total cash collateral held by the System's custodian to secure these securities on loan was valued at \$XXX,XXX.

Inventories and prepaid items

Inventories are valued at cost using the first-in/first-out (FIFO) method and consist of expendable supplies and vehicle repair parts. The cost of such inventories is recorded as expenditures/expenses when consumed rather than when purchased.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items in both the government-wide and fund financial statements. The cost of prepaid items is recorded as expenditures/expenses when consumed rather than when purchased.

Capital Assets

Capital assets are tangible and intangible assets, which include property, plant, equipment, and infrastructure assets (e.g., roads, bridges, sidewalks, and similar items), are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities column in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets, except for infrastructure assets, are defined by the Government Entity as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$X,XXX and an estimated useful life in excess of two years. For infrastructure assets the same estimated minimum useful life is used (in excess of two years), but only those infrastructure projects that cost more than \$XX,XXX are reported as capital assets.

As the Government Entity constructs or acquires capital assets each period, including infrastructure assets, they are capitalized and reported at historical cost (except for intangible right-to-use lease assets, the measurement of which is discussed in Leases note below).

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

The reported value excludes normal maintenance and repairs, which are amounts spent in relation to capital assets that do not increase the asset's capacity or efficiency or increase its estimated useful life. Donated capital assets are recorded at acquisition value at the date of donation.

Acquisition value is the price that would be paid to acquire an asset with equivalent service potential on the date of the donation. Intangible assets follow the same capitalization policies as tangible capital assets and are reported with tangible assets in the appropriate capital asset class.

Land and construction in progress are not depreciated. The other tangible and intangible property, plant, equipment, the right to use leased equipment, and infrastructure of the primary government are depreciated/amortized using the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Capital Asset Classes</u>	<u>Lives</u>
Buildings	20-70
Improvements	10-20
Machinery, Equipment, and vehicles	5-30
Right-to-use Leased Equipment	5-30
Infrastructure	50-100
Water Distribution System	50-75

Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources

In addition to assets, the statement of financial position or balance sheet will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, deferred outflows of resources, represents a consumption of net position or fund balance that applies to a future period(s) and so will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until that time.

In addition to liabilities, the statement of financial position or balance sheet will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, deferred inflows of resources, represents an acquisition of net position or fund balance that applies to a future period(s) and so will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. Unavailable Revenue is reported only in the governmental funds balance sheet. The governmental funds report unavailable revenues from two sources: property taxes and special assessments. These amounts are deferred and recognized as an inflow of resources in that period that the amounts become available.

Deferred Amount on Bond Refundings

Gains and losses incurred in connection with debt refunding transactions are deferred and amortized over the shorter of the life of the refunded debt or the new debt.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Net Position

For government-wide reporting as well as in proprietary funds, the difference between assets and deferred outflows of resources less liabilities and deferred inflows of resources is called net position. Net position is comprised of three components: net investment in capital assets, restricted, and unrestricted.

Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization, and reduced by outstanding balances of bonds, notes, and other debt that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets. Deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets or related debt are included in this component of net position.

Restricted net position consists of restricted assets reduced by liabilities and deferred inflows of resources related to those assets. Assets are reported as restricted when constraints are placed on asset use either by external parties or by law through constitutional provision or enabling legislation. The amount of net position restricted by enabling legislation was \$XX,XXX at June 30 20X2.

Unrestricted net position is the net amount of the assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources that does not meet the definition of the two preceding categories.

Sometimes the Government Entity will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the Government Entity's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

Fund Balance

In governmental funds types, the difference between assets and deferred outflows of resources, less liabilities and deferred inflows of resources, is called fund balance. The Government Entity's governmental funds report the following categories of fund balance, based on the nature of any limitations requiring the use of resources for specific purposes.

Nonspendable fund balance represents amounts that are either not in a spendable form, or are legally or contractually required to remain intact.

Restricted fund balance includes amounts that can be spent only for the specific purposes stipulated by external resource providers such as grantors or enabling federal, state, or local legislation. Restrictions may only be changed or lifted with the consent of the resource providers.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Committed Fund balance represents amounts that can be used only for the specific purposes determined by the adoption of an ordinance committing fund balance for a specified purpose by the Government Entity's board prior to the end of the fiscal year. Once adopted, the limitation imposed by the ordinance remains in place until the resources have been spent for the specified purpose, or the board adopts another ordinance to remove or revise the limitation.

Assigned fund balance represents amounts that are intended to be used for specific purposes, but do not meet the criteria to be classified as committed. Unlike committed fund balance, assigned fund balance generally only exists temporarily. Thus, an assigned fund balance does not normally need an additional action for the removal of an assignment.

Unassigned fund balance represents the residual amount for the general fund that is not encompassed by the other classifications. The general fund is the only fund that reports a positive unassigned fund balance. Any deficit fund balance within the other governmental fund types is reported as unassigned.

Leases

Lessee: The Government Entity is a lessee for a noncancellable lease of equipment. The Government Entity recognizes a lease liability and an intangible right-to-use lease asset (lease asset) in the government-wide financial statements. The Government Entity recognizes lease liabilities with an initial, individual value of \$X,XXX or more.

At the commencement of a lease, the Government Entity initially measures the lease liability at the present value of payments expected to be made during the lease term. Subsequently, the lease liability is reduced by the principal portion of lease payments made. The lease asset is initially measured as the initial amount of the lease liability, adjusted for lease payments made at or before the lease commencement date, plus certain initial direct costs. Subsequently, the lease asset is amortized on a straight-line basis over its useful life.

Key estimates and judgments related to leases include how the Government Entity determines (1) the discount rate it uses to discount the expected lease payments to present value, (2) the lease term, and (3) lease payments.

- The Government Entity uses the interest rate charged by the lessor as the discount rate. When the interest rate charged by the lessor is not provided, the Government Entity generally uses its estimated incremental borrowing rate as the discount rate for leases.
- The lease term includes the noncancellable period of the lease. Lease payments included in the measurement of the lease liability are composed of fixed payments and purchase option price that the Government Entity is reasonably certain to exercise.

The Government Entity monitors changes in circumstances that would require a remeasurement of its lease and will remeasure the lease asset and liability if certain changes occur that are expected to significantly affect the amount of the lease liability.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Lease assets are reported with other capital assets and lease liabilities are reported with long-term debt on the statement of net position.

Lessor: The Government Entity is a lessor for a noncancellable lease of a building. The Government Entity recognizes a lease receivable and a deferred inflow of resources in the government-wide and governmental fund financial statements.

At the commencement of a lease, the Government Entity initially measures the lease receivable at the present value of payments expected to be received during the lease term. Subsequently, the lease receivable is reduced by the principal portion of lease payments received. The deferred inflow of resources is initially measured as the initial amount of the lease receivable, adjusted for lease payments received at or before the lease commencement date.

Subsequently, the deferred inflow of resources is recognized as revenue over the life of the lease term. Key estimates and judgments include how the Government Entity determines (1) the discount rate it uses to discount the expected lease receipts to present value, (2) the lease term, and (3) lease receipts.

The Government Entity uses its estimated incremental borrowing rate as the discount rate for leases.

The lease term includes the noncancellable period of the lease. Lease receipts included in the measurement of the lease receivable is composed of fixed payments from the lessee.

The Government Entity monitors changes in circumstances that would require are measurement of its lease, and will remeasure the lease receivable and deferred inflows of resources if certain changes occur that are expected to significantly affect the amount of the lease receivable.

H. Revenue and Expenditure/Expenses

Program revenues

Amounts reported as program revenues include (1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided or fines imposed by a given function or segment, and (2) grants and contributions (including special assessments) that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular function or segment. All taxes, including those dedicated for specific purposes, and other internally dedicated resources are reported as general revenues rather than as program revenues.

Property Taxes

Property taxes attach as an enforceable lien on real property and are levied as of July 1. The tax levy is divided into two billings: the first billing (mailed on July 1) is an estimate of the current year's levy based on the prior year's taxes; the second billing (mailed on January 1) reflects adjustments to the current year's actual levy. The billings are considered past due XX days after the respective tax billing date, at which time the applicable property is subject to lien, and penalties and interest are assessed.

Example 16 Summary of Significant Accounting Policies — Continued

Compensated Absences

Compensated absences as of June 30, 20X2, are included on the balance sheet in accounts payable and accrued expenses. In previous years, trends have shown that the Government Entity's employees utilize the accruals annually; therefore, amounts payable are accrued and reported as a current liability on the financial statements.

The changes in compensated absences were as follows:

	<u>June 30, 20X2</u>	<u>June 30, 20X1</u>
Beginning Balance	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Additions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Payments	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Ending Balance	<u>\$ XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ XXX,XXX</u>

Proprietary Funds Operating and Nonoperating Revenues and Expenses

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues and expenses generally result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. The principal operating revenues of the water fund, transit fund, and internal service funds are charges to customers for sales and services. The water fund also recognizes as operating revenue the portion of tap fees intended to recover the cost of connecting new customers to the system. Operating expenses for enterprise funds and internal service funds include the cost of sales and services, administrative expenses, and depreciation/amortization on capital assets. All revenues and expenses not meeting this definition are reported as nonoperating revenues and expenses.

Example 17 Cash and Investments

Liquidity

The Government Entity had \$XX million in combined current and non-current Government Entity Cash and Investments as of June 30, 20X2, an increase of \$X million compared to \$XX million as of June 30, 20X1. Components of cash and investments for the year ended June 30, 20X2 were:

- Utility System total combined current and non-current Cash and Investments increased by \$XX million or X% from \$X million as of June 30, 20X1 to \$XX million as of June 30, 20X2. Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents increased by \$XX million compared to the prior year. This was primarily due to an increase of \$XX million from capital and related financing activities as a result of new revenue bonds issuances and an increase of \$XX million from the reallocation of investments between short-term and long-term, offset by decrease of \$XX million in cash provided from operating activities. Net increase (decrease) in investments decreased by \$XX million also primarily due to reallocation of investments between short-term and long-term.

The Government Entity's cash flow for the fiscal years ended June 30, 20XX, 20X1, and 20X2:

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY CASH FLOW FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20X2 AND 20X1

	20X2	20X1	Variance	% Change
Cash and Cash Equivalents				
Beginning of Year	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by (Used In) Capital and Related Financing Activities	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by (Used In) Investing Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
End of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Investments				
Beginning of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Increase (Decrease) in Investments	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XX%
End of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Local Government Entity Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%

Example 17 Cash and Investments — Continued

**EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
CASH FLOW
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20X1 AND 20XX**

	20X1	20XX	Variance	% Change
Cash and Cash Equivalents				
Beginning of Year	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by Financing Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by (Used In) Capital and Related Financing Activities	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Cash Provided by (Used In) Investing Activities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
End of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Investments				
Beginning of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Net Increase (Decrease) in Investments	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XX%
End of Year	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Local Government Entity Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%

Example 17 Cash and Investments — Continued

Classification

Appendix E: Examples of Financial Reporting

Reconciliations of cash and investments reported on the financial statements as of June 30, 20X2, are as follows:

Government Entity Enterprise Funds:

	Total
Cash and Investments Included in Current Assets	\$ XXX,XXX
Cash and Investments Included in Restricted Investments	XX,XXX
Total Government Entity Cash and Investments	XXX,XXX
Less Investments	(XXX,XXX)
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ XXX,XXX

System Pension Trust Funds:

	Total
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ XXX,XXX
Invested Securities Lending Collateral	XXX,XXX
Retirement System Investments	X,XXX,XXX
Total System Cash and Investments	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 18 Cash Deposits with Financial Institutions

Cash and Investments by Fund

In fiscal years 20X2 and 20X1, total cash and investments available for operating and capital activities are reported in current and noncurrent assets as unrestricted and restricted funds. Significant activities were as follows: Utility System reserved an additional \$XX million in revenues in the rate stabilization fund, additional \$X million in working capital, additional \$XX million in capital reserve, and released \$XX million debt service reserve fund due to revenue bonds' refunding.

In the previous fiscal year, significant activities were as follows: Utility System reserved an additional \$XX million in revenue in the rate stabilization funds and used \$XX million in capital reserves to fund capital projects. Operating and Capital Reserves are components of Unrestricted Cash and Investments. Individual funds within Operating and Capital Reserves are funded pursuant to Board policy but are unrestricted as to use. For additional information see Note XX on page XX. The following tables show the Government Entity's cash and investment by fund for the fiscal years ended June 30, 20XX, 20X1, and 20X2.

Example 18 Cash Deposits with Financial Institutions — Continued

**EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
CASH AND INVESTMENT BY FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X2 AND 20X1**

	Local Government Entity		Increase (Decrease)	
	20X2	20X1	Amount	% Change
Unrestricted Cash and Investments				
Operating Reserves:				
Rate Stabilization Fund	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Working Capital Reserve	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Self-Insurance	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Workers Compensation	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Operating Revenues	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Capital Reserves:				
Reserves for Capital Projects	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Reserve funded CIP - Wastewater	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Vehicle Replacements	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Equipment Replacements	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Capital Reserves	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Unrestricted Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Restricted Cash and Investments				
Bond Interest and Redemption Fund	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Debt Service Reserve Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Funds Received for Construction	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
FERC Partnership Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Monetary Reserve	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
ABAG Program Restricted Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Restricted Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%

Example 18 Cash Deposits with Financial Institutions — Continued

**EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
CASH AND INVESTMENT BY FUND
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X1 AND 20XX**

	Local Government Entity		Increase (Decrease)	
	20X1	20XX	Amount	% Change
Unrestricted Cash and Investments				
Operating Reserves:				
Rate Stabilization Fund	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Working Capital Reserve	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Self-Insurance	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Workers Compensation	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Operating Reserves	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Capital Reserves:				
Reserves for Capital Projects	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Reserve funded CIP - Wastewater	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Vehicle Replacements	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Equipment Replacements	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Capital Reserves	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Unrestricted Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Restricted Cash and Investments				
Bond Interest and Redemption Fund	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%
Debt Service Reserve Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Funds Received for Construction	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
FERC Partnership Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Monetary Reserve	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
ABAG Program Restricted Fund	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX%
Total Restricted Cash and Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	XX%

Example 19 Investments

Government Entity Enterprise Fund Investments Authorized by the California Government Code and the Government Entity's Investment Policy

The Government Entity's Investment Policy and the California Government Code allow the Government Entity to invest in the following investment types, provided the credit ratings of the issuers are acceptable to the Government Entity; and approved percentages and maturities are not exceeded. The table below also identifies certain provisions of the California Government Code, or the Government Entity's Investment Policy where the Government Entity's Investment Policy is more restrictive and provides information as to the limitations as they relate to interest rate risk, credit risk and concentration risk.

Authorized Investment Type	Maximum Maturity	Minimum Credit Quality	Maximum in Portfolio	Maximum Investment in One Issuer
Repurchase Agreements	270 Days	N/A	20%	10%
State of California Local Agency Investment Fund (LAIF Pool)	Upon Demand	N/A	\$50,000 per account	N/A
U.S. Treasury Bonds, Notes and Bills	5 Years	N/A	0 to 100%	N/A
U.S. Government Agency and U.S. Government-Sponsored Enterprise Obligations	5 Years	N/A	0 to 100%	40% in each Agency
Bankers' Acceptances	180 Days	N/A	40%	10%
Commercial Paper	270 Days	A1, P1, or F1	\$25	10%
Negotiable Certificates of Deposit	5 Years	AA	30%	10%
Time Certificates of Deposit – Banks or Savings and Loans	5 Years	N/A	30%	10%
Medium Term Corporate Notes	5 Years	AA	30%	10%
Money Market Mutual Funds	N/A	AAA	40%	10%
Municipal Bonds	5 Years	AA	40%	10%
Calif. Asset Management Program (CAMP)	Upon Demand	Highest Rating	10%	10%

The Government Entity does not enter into reverse repurchase agreements.

Example 19 Investments — Continued

Government Entity Enterprise Fund Investments Authorized by Debt Agreements

The Government Entity must maintain required amounts of cash and investments with trustees or fiscal agents under the terms of certain debt issues. These funds are unexpended bond proceeds or are pledged reserves to be used if the Government Entity fails to meet its obligations under these debt issues. The California Government Code requires these funds to be invested in accordance with Government Entity resolutions, bond indentures or State statutes. The table below identifies the investment types that are authorized for investments held by fiscal agents. The table also identifies certain provisions of these debt agreements:

Authorized Investment Type	Minimum Credit Quality
Repurchase Agreements	Top Four Short term Rating Category
U.S. Treasury Bonds, Notes, and Bills	N/A
U.S. Government Agency and U.S. Government-Sponsored Enterprise Obligation	N/A
State Obligations	Not lower than Government Entity's bond rating
Commercial Paper	Top Rating Category
Negotiable Certificates of Deposit	FDIC insured or collateralized
Time Certificates of Deposits – Banks or Savings and Loans	FDIC insured or collateralized
Corporate Notes and Bonds	Not lower than Entity's bond rating
Variable Rate Obligations	Not lower than Entity's bond rating
Cash Swap Agreements	Top Rating Category
Guaranteed Investment Contract	Not lower than Entity's bond rating
Shares of Beneficial Interest	Top Rating Category

Example 19 Investments — Continued

Interest Rate Risk

Interest rate risk is the risk that changes in market interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. Normally, the longer the maturity of an investment, the greater the sensitivity of its fair value to changes in market interest rates. The Government Entity generally manages its interest rate risk by holding investments to maturity.

Information about the sensitivity of the fair values of the Government Entity's and System's investments (including investments held by bond trustees) to market interest rate fluctuations is provided by the following table that shows the distribution of the Government Entity's investments by maturity or earliest call date.

Investment Type	12 Months or Less	13 to 24 Months	25 to 60 Months	Total
Asset Back Securities	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ X,XXX
Equity Securities	XXX			XXX
Mortgage Backed Securities		XXX	XXX	X,XXX
Corporate Bonds	XXX	XXX	XXX	X,XXX
Government Agencies	XX,XXX	XXX		XX,XXX
Short Term Investments	XXX	XXX		XXX
Municipal Bonds	XXX	XXX		X,XXX
Mutual Funds	XX,XXX	XXX		X,XXX
Real Estate	XX,XXX	XXX		XX,XXX
Demand Deposits	XX,XXX			XX,XXX
LAIF	XX,XXX			XX,XXX
CAMP	XX,XXX			XX,XXX
Total Investments	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Cash in Banks				XX,XXX
Total Cash and Investments				\$ XXX,XXX

Example 19 Investments — Continued

Credit Risk

Credit risk is the risk that an issuer of an investment will not fulfill its obligation to the holder of the investment. This is measured by the assignment of a rating by a nationally recognized statistical credit rating organization. Presented below is the actual rating as of June 30, 20X2, for each investment type as provided by Moody's.

Government Entity Enterprise Funds:

Investment Type	Aaa	Aa1	Aa2	Aa3	Baa	Ba	Total
Asset Back Securities	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XXX	\$ X,XXX
Equity Securities							XXX
Mortgage Backed Securities		XXX	XXX				X,XXX
Corporate Bonds	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX	XXX		X,XXX
Government Agencies							XX,XXX
Short Term Investments							XXX
Municipal Bonds	XXX	XXX					X,XXX
Mutual Funds		XXX	XXX				X,XXX
Real Estate							XX,XXX
Not Rated							
Demand Deposits							XX,XXX
LAIF							XX,XXX
CAMP							XX,XXX
Cash in Banks							XX,XXX
Total Cash and Investments	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Example 19 Investments — Continued

Custodial Credit Risk

Custodial credit risk for cash on deposits is the risk that, in the event of the failure of a depository financial institution, a government will not be able to recover its deposits or will not be able to recover collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. The custodial credit risk for investments is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty (e.g., broker-dealer) to a transaction, the Government Entity will not be able to recover the value of its investment or collateral securities that are in the possession of another party.

California Law requires banks, savings, and loan institutions to pledge government securities with a fair value of XXX% of the Government Entity's cash on deposit, or first trust deed mortgage notes with a fair value of XXX% of the deposit, as collateral for these deposits. Under California Law this collateral is held in a separate investment pool by another institution in the Government Entity's name and places the Government Entity ahead of general creditors of the institution.

The Government Entity invests in individual investments and in investment pools. Individual investments are evidenced by specific identifiable securities instruments, or by an electronic entry registering the owner in the records of the institution issuing the security, called the book entry system. In order to increase security, the Government Entity employs the Trust Department of a bank or trustee as the custodian of certain Government Entity and System managed investments, regardless of their form.

As of June 30, 20X2 and 20X1, the Government Entity's brokers/dealers held \$XXX and \$XX, respectively, in cash and US government bonds exposed to custodial credit risk.

Concentration of Credit Risk

The concentration of credit risk is the risk of loss that may be caused by the Government Entity's investment in a single issuer. The Government Entity's investment policy limits the amount of the portfolio that can be invested in any one investment vehicle to no more than XX% of the portfolio, except for U.S. Treasury obligations.

Significant Government Entity investments in the securities of any individual issuers, other than U. S. Treasury securities, LAIF, and mutual funds, are set forth below:

Government Entity Enterprise Funds:

<u>Reporting Unit</u>	<u>Issuer</u>	<u>Investment Type</u>	<u>Reported amount</u>
Government Entity-Wide	FHLB	Federal Agency Securities	\$XX,XXX
	FNMA	Federal Agency Securities	\$XX,XXX
	FFCB	Federal Agency Securities	\$XX,XXX

Example 19 Investments — Continued

The Government Entity's credit ratings are below.

Credit Ratings**District****June 30, 20X2**

<u>District Debt by Type</u>	<u>Rating by</u>		
	<u>Standard & Poor's</u>	<u>Moody's Investors Service</u>	<u>Fitch</u>
District:			
Fixed Rate Revenue Bonds	AA	Aa	AA
Variable Rate Revenue Bonds:			
Long-term Underlying Rating	AA+	Aa1	-
Short-Term Rating	A-1+	VMIG-1	-
Extendable Commercial Paper	A-1+	P-1	F1+

For detail credit rating by bond issue, visit our website at <http://www.the Government Entity.com>.

Revenue-supported debt authorization for the Government Entity can be approved by the Government Entity's board of directors, subject to a referendum process. At 20X2, the Utility System had \$XXX million in authorized but unissued revenue bonds. Additional information on the Government Entity's long-term debt can be found in Note X to the financial statements.

Example 20 Receivable Note Disclosure

Receivables at June 30, 20X2 for the Government Entity consist of the following amounts.

	Current	Noncurrent	Total
General	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Interest	X,XXX	-	X,XXX
Allowance for Doubtful Accounts	(XXX)	-	(XXX)
Accounts Receivable, Net	X,XXX	-	X,XXX
Grants and Contracts	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Due From Other Agencies	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Subtotal	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Receivables	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>

Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure

Summary

The Government Entity capitalizes all assets with a historical cost of at least \$5,000 and a useful life of at least three years. Contributed property is recorded at estimated fair value at the date of donation.

The purpose of depreciation or amortization is to spread the cost of capital assets equitably among all customers over the life of these assets, so that each customer's bill includes a pro rata share of the cost of these assets. The amount charged to depreciation or amortization expense each year represents that year's pro rata share of depreciable capital assets.

Depreciation or amortization of all capital assets in service, excluding land, is charged as an expense against operations each year and the total amount of depreciation or amortization taken over the years, called accumulated depreciation or amortization, is reported on the balance sheet as a reduction in the book value of the capital assets.

Capital assets are depreciated or amortized using the straight-line method of depreciation or amortization, which means the cost of the asset is divided by its expected useful life in years and the result is charged to expense each year until the asset is fully depreciated or amortized. The Government Entity has assigned the useful lives listed below to capital assets:

Utility Plant	Years
Source of supply	25 – 100
Raw Water transmission and storage	25 – 100
Interception and outfall	60 – 75
Pumping	25 – 75
Treatment	20 – 75
Distribution	25 – 75
Power Generation	25 – 75
Equipment	5 – 20
Plant Structures	25 – 75
Other	5 – 40

Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure — Continued

Additions and Retirements — Sample 1 (Business-type Activities)

Capital assets activity for all business-type activities for the year ended June 30, 20X2, was as follows:

	Balance at June 30, 20X1	Additions and Transfers, Net	Retirements and Transfers, Net	Balance at June 30, 20X2
Government Entity Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated or Amortized:				
Land	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ (XX)	\$ XX,XXX
Rights-of-Way	X,XXX	XX	-	X,XXX
Construction in Progress - Land	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX)	XXX
Construction in Progress	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(X,XXX)	XXX
Total Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated or Amortized	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Capital Assets Being Depreciated or Amortized:				
Buildings and Improvements	XXX,XXX	X,XXX	(XX)	XXX,XXX
Infrastructure and Improvements	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX
Machinery and Equipment	XX,XXX	X,XXX	(X,XXX)	XX,XXX
Right-to-use Leased Equipment	X,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX
Right-to-use Software	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated or Amortized	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX
LESS: Accumulated Depreciation and Amortization For:				
Buildings and Improvements	(XX,XXX)	(X,XXX)	XXX	(XX,XXX)
Infrastructure and Improvements	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Machinery and Equipment	(XX,XXX)	(X,XXX)	X,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Right-to-use Leased Equipment	-	(X,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)
Right-to-use Software	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX)
Total Accumulated Depreciation and Amortization	(X,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX	(X,XXX,XXX)
Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated and Amortized, Net	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX,XXX
Business-type Activities, Net	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	(\$ XXX,XXX)	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure — Continued

Additions and Retirements — Sample 2 (Governmental Activities)

Capital assets activity for all governmental activities for the year ended June 30, 20X2, was as follows:

	Primary Government			
	Beginning Balance June 30, 20X1	Increases	Decreases	Ending Balance June 30, 20X2
Government activities:				
Capital Assets not being depreciated				
Land and improvements	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ XX,XXX
Construction in progress	X,XXX	X,XXX	(XX,XXX)	X,XXX
Total capital assets not being depreciated	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ XX,XXX
Capital assets being depreciated:				
Building and improvements	XX,XXX	XXX		XX,XXX
Equipment	XX,XXX	X,XXX	(X,XXX)	XX,XXX
Road network	XX,XXX	XX,XXX		XX,XXX
Bridge network	XX,XXX	X,XXX		XX,XXX
Software	XX,XXX	XXX	(XXX)	XX,XXX
Lease assets:				
Buildings	XX,XXX	XXX		XX,XXX
Equipment	XX,XXX	X,XXX	(X,XXX)	XX,XXX
Subscription assets	X,XXX	XXX	(XXX)	XX,XXX
Total capital assets being depreciated	XX,XXX		(X,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Less Accumulated depreciation for:				
Building and improvements	(XX,XXX)	(XXX)		(XX,XXX)
Equipment	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	XXXX	(XX,XXX)
Road network	(XX,XXX)	(XXX)		(XX,XXX)
Bridge network	(X,XXX)	(XXX)		(X,XXX)
Software	(X,XXX)	(XXX)	XX	(XXX)
Lease assets:				
Buildings	(X,XXX)	(XXX)		(X,XXX)
Equipment	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)		(X,XXX)
Subscription assets	(X,XXX)	(XXX)		(X,XXX)
Total accumulated depreciation	(XX,XXX)	(X,XXX)	X,XXX	(XX,XXX)
Government activities capital assets, net	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure — Continued

Capital Assets Held For Sale Disclosure

Included in capital assets are equipment type assets that are capital assets held for sale. Those equipment are reported in governmental activities. They have a total historical cost of \$X.0 million and an accumulated depreciation of \$X.0 million, and they are pledged as collateral for debt with a balance of \$X.X million.

Modified Approach for Reporting Infrastructure Assets

The local government entity manages its bridge network using its Bridge Management and Inspection Program and accounts for them using the modified approach. The bridge condition rating is a numerical condition scale ranging from 1 (impaired or load restricted) to 7 (new). A bridge is considered deficient — that is, needs maintenance or preservation — when it falls below level 5. A bridge is unsafe — impaired or load restricted — when it falls below condition level 2. It is the Government Entity's policy to keep the number and square footage of deck area of unsafe bridges below one percent. The most recent condition assessment shows that the condition of the Government Entity's bridges is in accordance with the Government Entity's policy. Actual maintenance and preservation costs were less than estimated by approximately XX percent. Due to an unusually mild winter in the previous year, less maintenance and preservation efforts were necessary to keep the Government Entity's bridges at or above the established condition level.

The condition of the local government entity's bridges is determined using its Bridge Management and Inspection Program (BMIP). The bridge condition rating, which is a weighted average of an assessment of the ability of individual components to function structurally, uses a numerical condition scale ranging from 1.0 (impaired or load restricted) to 7.0 (new). It is the Government Entity's policy to keep the number and square footage of deck area of bridges with a condition rating of 1.0 to 1.9 below one percent. All bridges are inspected every two years.

Note: Governments that use the modified approach to report infrastructure will no longer include information about that approach in the MD&A; rather, that information should be included in the notes to the RSI for the modified approach.

Example 21 Capital Assets Note Disclosure — Continued

Modified Approach for Reporting Infrastructure Assets (Continued)

Number of Bridges

	BMIP Condition Rating						
		2002 Number	2002 %	2000 Number	2000 %	1998 Number	1998 %
Acceptable	5.0-7.0	15,582	89.80%	15,182	87.5%	14,835	85.5%
Marginally Deficient	4.0-4.9	1,232	7.10%	1,544	8.9%	1,666	9.6%
Moderately Deficient	2.0-3.9	504	2.90%	538	3.1%	781	4.5%
Severely Deficient	1.0-1.9	33	0.20%	87	0.5%	69	0.4%
Total		17,351	100.0%	17,351	100.0%	17,351	100.0%

Square Feet of Deck Area (1000s of Square Feet)

	BMIP Condition Rating						
		2002 Square Feet	2002 %	2000 Square Feet	2000 %	1998 Square Feet	1998 %
Acceptable	5.0-7.0	124,656	85.8%	127,102	87.5%	125,649	86.5%
Marginally Deficient	4.0-4.9	9,856	6.8%	8,570	5.9%	11,040	7.6%
Moderately Deficient	2.0-3.9	10,452	7.2%	8,570	5.9%	7,408	5.1%
Severely Deficient	1.0-1.9	295	0.2%	1,017	0.7%	1,162	0.8%
Total		145,259	100.0%	145,259	100.0%	145,259	100.0%

Comparison of Estimated-to-Actual Maintenance/Preservation (In Thousands)

		2002		2001		2000		1999		1998
Estimated	\$	2,650	\$	2,798	\$	2,541	\$	2,487	\$	2,301
Actual		2,322		2,623		2,765		2,245		2,105

Example 22 Construction and Other Significant Commitments

The Government Entity has active construction projects as of June 30, 20XX. At year end, the Government Entity's commitments with contractors are as follows:

District	<u>Expended to date</u>	<u>Remaining Commitment</u>
Project A	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Project B	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Project D	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Project xyz	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Adm. Bldg. modifications	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Main Facility Rehab/Maintenance	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Summit Improve	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
SRV Program	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Equipment	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>
Total Construction in Progress	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

At June 30, 20X2, the Government Entity's remaining current major project commitments are estimated to be \$ XXX,XXX.

Example 23 Risk Management

The Government Entity has purchased commercial insurance for general, property, public officials' liability and workers' compensation. During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X2, the Government Entity paid \$X,XXX for current year coverage.

The Government Entity's liability, property, and workers' compensation risks are insured by commercial insurance carriers, all of which are subject to the Government Entity's self-insurance retentions, which vary by type of coverage.

Selected other coverages are:

Coverage	Policy Limit	Self-insurance Retention
Worker's Compensation	Statutory Limit	\$ X,XXX
All risk Property	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Flood	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Liability	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Crime	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Boiler and Machinery	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Facilities	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX

Settled claims have not exceeded the Government Entity's policy limits in any of the past five fiscal years.

Claim expenses and liabilities are recorded when it is probable that a loss has occurred and the amount of that loss can be reasonably estimated. As of June 30, 20X2, the amount of these liabilities was \$XX,XXX. This amount (which has not been discounted) has been actuarially determined and includes an estimate of incurred but not reported losses. Changes in the reported liability are as follows:

	20X2	20X1
Liability at beginning of year	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Current claims and estimates	X,XXX	X,XXX
Payment of claims	<u>(X,XXX)</u>	<u>(X,XXX)</u>
Liability at end of year	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Estimated liability:		
Due within one year	\$ X,XXX	\$ X,XXX
Due in more than one year	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Liability at end of year	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Example 23 Risk Management (Continued)

Concentration related Risk Disclosure Example

The Ports Authority Fund accounts for the local government entity's port operations and reports \$X million of revenue bonds outstanding on June 30, 20X2. The bond indentures state that the revenue generated by port operations is pledged as the sole source of repayment for the bonds. XX percent of the Port Authority Fund's revenues are associated with a single shipping operator who has notified the local government entity that it plans to terminate its lease and discontinue service to the local government entity's port by December 31, 20X2. A loss of revenue from that airline could adversely affect the Port Authority's Fund.

Note: "Concentration" is defined in section 11.09 *Risks Related to Certain Concentrations and Constraints*.

Constraint related Risk Disclosure Example

The local government entity's plastics and motor oil recycling operations are subject to environmental regulations established by the California's Department of Resources Recycling and Recovery (CalRecycle). CalRecycle proposed new regulations that would add more processes to the current recycling practices pertaining to plastics and motor oil. If adopted, the local government entity would be responsible for complying with the regulations by modifying the recycling plant at a substantial cost to its ratepayers by September 20X4. On September 12, 20X2, the Board of the local government entity approved an increase in the rates charged to private and commercial customers to partially address the improvements needed to bring its recycling plant to meet the new environmental regulations issued by CalRecycle.

Note: "Constraint" is defined in section 11.09 *Risks Related to Certain Concentrations and Constraints*

Example 24 Leases

Lease Receivable

During the current fiscal year, the Government Entity began leasing two floors of one of its buildings to a third party. The lease is for ten years and the Government Entity will receive monthly payments of \$X,XXX. The Government Entity recognized \$XX,XXX in lease revenue and \$X,XXX in interest revenue during the current fiscal year related to this lease. As of June 30, 20X2, the Government Entity receivable for lease payments was \$XXX,XXX. Also, the Government Entity has a deferred inflow of resources associated with this lease that will be recognized as revenue over the lease term. As of June 30, 20X2, the balance of the deferred inflow of resources was \$XXX,XXX.

Lease Payable

During the current fiscal year, the Government Entity entered into a five-year lease agreement as lessee for the acquisition and use of playground equipment. An initial lease liability was recorded in the amount of \$XX,XXX during the current fiscal year. As of June 30, 20X2, the value of the lease liability was \$XX,XXX. The Government Entity is required to make monthly principal and interest payments of \$X,XXX. The lease has an interest rate of X%. In addition, the Government Entity will purchase the equipment for \$X,XXX at the end of the lease term. The equipment has a seven-year estimated useful life. The value of the right-to-use asset as of the end of the current fiscal year was \$XX,XXX and had accumulated amortization of \$X,XXX.

The future principal and interest lease payments as of June 30, 20X2, were as follows:

Fiscal Year Ending June 30	Principal	Interest	Total
20X2	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
20X3	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX
20X4	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX
20X5	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX
20X6	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

Example 25 Short Term Debt and Accrued Liabilities

Accrued Liabilities

Accrued Liabilities reported by governmental funds at June 30, 20XX were as follows:

	General Fund	Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
Salary and other employee benefits	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Other	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Accrued Liabilities	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Short-Term Debt

The schedule below details the changes in short-term capital borrowings during the year ended June 30, 20XX, for both governmental and business-type activities:

	Original Issue	Interest Rate	Balance Beginning of Year	Issues	Redemptions	Balance End of Year
Governmental Activities						
Community Theater	20XX	3%	\$ XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Rolling Stock Acquisition	20XX	3%	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Library Roof Replacement	20XX	2%	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Governmental Activities			\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Business Type Activities						
Pump Station Upgrades	20XX	2%	\$ XX,XXX	\$ -	\$XX, XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Water Transmission Facilities	20XX	2%	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Business Type Activities			\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Total Short-term Capital Borrowings			\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities

A. Extendable Commercial Paper Notes

The Government Entity's Board of Directors has authorized a short-term commercial paper borrowing program of up to the lesser of either (1) the average of the total annual revenue for the three preceding years or (2) 25% of the Government Entity's total outstanding bonds. As of June 30, 20X2, the Government Entity had \$XXX million authorized for this program. The proceeds from the issuance of commercial paper are restricted as to use. Under this program, which must be authorized by the Board of Directors every seven years and is subject to the right of referendum, the Government Entity may issue commercial paper and bank notes at prevailing interest rates for periods of not more than 270 days from the date of issuance. The program was last authorized on March 10, 20XX.

The Government Entity replaced the commercial paper program with an extendable commercial paper program in March 20XX. Under the extendable commercial paper program, no liquidity support agreement (line of credit) with a commercial bank is needed. Instead, the Government Entity limits the term of the extendable commercial paper to 120 days, and the investor agrees to extend the maturity of their investment by 150 days at a higher interest rate in the event of a failed remarketing, giving the Government Entity sufficient time to find a replacement investor or refund the extendable commercial paper with a different form of debt (e.g., fixed or variable rate revenue bonds) to repay the investor.

As of June 30, 20X2, \$XXX million commercial paper notes were outstanding under this program. The Water Series included terms of 68 to 120 days and interest rates ranging from X.XX% to X.XX% as of June 30, 20XX, and terms of 50 to 119 days and interest rates ranging from X.XX% to X.XX% as of June 30, 20X1.

Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities — Continued

Long Term Debt

B. Composition Changes

The Government Entity generally incurs long-term debt to finance projects or purchase assets that will have useful lives equal to or greater than the related debt. The Government Entity’s debt issues and transactions are summarized below and discussed in detail thereafter.

	Original Issue Amount	Balance at June 30, 20X1	Additions	Retirements	Balance June 30, 20X2	Amount Due Within One Year
Revenue Bonds						
20X2						
2.51%, due 1/1/X2	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ -	\$ XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX
20X1						
2.40%, due 4/1/X8	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX
Long Term Bonds		X,XXX,XXX	-	XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX
Loans	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX		XXX	XX,XXX	XX
Commercial Paper (See Note 5)		XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Amount Due Within One Year		(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX)	-
Add: Unamortized Premium, Net		XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Total Long-Term Liabilities, Net		\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities — Continued

C. Description of the Government Entity's Long-Term Debt Issues

General obligation and revenue bonds are generally callable at future dates. The general obligation bonds are repaid from property taxes levied on property within the Government Entity.

Revenue-supported debt can be authorized by the Government Entity's Board of Directors, subject to a referendum process.

The net revenues of the Government Entity are pledged toward the repayment of the Revenue Bonds and the Water Resources Control Board Parity Loans.

The Government Entity is subject to certain revenue bond covenants on outstanding debt that require the setting of rates and charges to yield net revenues equal to at least 110% of the current annual debt service requirements for all revenue bonds and other parity obligations. The Government Entity has designated \$XX million of operating reserves as a rate stabilization fund, which is available to satisfy the coverage requirements for debt service in future years. There have never been any draws for this purpose.

D. Debt Issuance During the Year

20XX Revenue Refunding Bonds, Series 20XX — the Government Entity issued \$xxx million principal amount of Series 20XX Bonds on March 3, 20XX, to provide funds, together with certain other available monies, to refund \$XX million principal amount of the Government Entity's Subordinated Revenue Bonds Series 20X5, and \$XXX million principal amount of the Government Entity's Subordinated Revenue Bonds Series 20X7A to fund the costs of terminating certain interest rate swap agreements relating to the Government Entity's outstanding variable rate Revenue Bonds to be refunded, and to pay the costs of issuance in connection with the Series 20X5 Bonds. The Series 20XX Bonds are special obligations of the Government Entity and are payable solely from and secured by a pledge of Subordinated Revenues. Principal payments commence on June 1, 2X23 and are payable annually on June 1 thereafter. Interest payments are payable on June 1st and December 1st of each year, commencing June 1, 2X15.

The refunding of Revenue Bonds, Series 20XX created an economic gain of \$XX.X million.

Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities — Continued

E. Debt Service Requirements

Annual debt service requirements, are shown below for the above debt issues:

For the Year Ending June 30	Principal	Interest
2016	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
2017	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
2018	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
2019	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
2020	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX
2021-2025	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
2026-2030	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
2031-2035	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
2036-2038	\$ <u>XXX,XXX</u>	\$ <u>XX,XXX</u>
Totals	\$ <u>X,XXX,XXX</u>	\$ <u>XXX,XXX</u>

Interest payments on debt subject to swap agreements were calculated using the variable rates at June 30, 20X2.

F. Prior-Year Defeasances

In prior years, the Government Entity defeased certain debt issues by placing proceeds of new bonds in an irrevocable trust to provide for all future debt service payments on the refunded bonds. Accordingly, the trust account assets and the liability for the Defeased debt are not included in the Government Entity's financial statements. On June 30, 20X2, \$XXX million of the bonds outstanding are considered Defeased.

Example 26 Long-Term Liabilities— Continued

G. Variable Rate Debt

The Government Entity has a number of bond issues with variable interest rates. The Series 20XX Bonds are subject to purchase on the demand of the holder with seven days prior notice at a price equal to the principal plus accrued interest. The remarketing agent is authorized to use its best efforts to sell the repurchased bonds at a price equal to 100 percent of the principal amount by adjusting the interest rate. In the event that they not sold, under Standby Bond Purchase Agreements (SBPAs) issued by banks for the above variable rate debt issues, the trustee or the remarketing agent is entitled to draw an amount sufficient to pay the purchase price of delivered bonds. The Government Entity is required to pay an annual commitment fee to the banks issuing SBPAs.

Expiration dates of these SBPAs are presented below by debt issue. In addition, the remarketing agent receives an annual fee of seven basis points of the outstanding principal amount of the bonds.

<u>Standby Purchase Agreement terms</u>			
<u>Issue</u>	<u>Expiration Date</u>	<u>Interest Rate</u>	<u>Rate Swap Rate</u>
Revenue 20XX series 1	6/19/2X16	Reset Weekly	See Below
Revenue 20XX series 2	7/02/2X17	Reset Weekly	See Below
Revenue 20XX series 3	7/08/2X19	Reset Weekly	See Below

H. Financed Purchase Obligations (Debt Borrowing)

The Government Entity has entered into direct borrowing lease agreements as the lessee for financing the acquisition or construction of administrative buildings, equipment and vehicles. The related assets and obligations are recorded using the Government Entity's incremental borrowing rate at the inception of the leases.

The Government Entity's lease agreements for the buildings and for a vehicle contain provisions that in the event of default or termination of the lease, the Government Entity is liable for the payment of all lease payments.

The net carrying amount of assets acquired under financed purchase obligations totaled \$X,XXX which included \$X,XXX of accumulated depreciation as of June 30, 20X2. The future obligations and net present value of these minimum lease payments as of June 30, 20X2 were as follows:

Fiscal Year					
Ending June 30,	Principal	Interest	Total		
20X3	\$ X,XXX	\$ XXX	\$ X,XXX		
20X4	X,XXX	XXX	X,XXX		
20X5	X,XXX	XXX	X,XXX		
20X6	X,XXX	XXX	X,XXX		
Total	<u>\$ XX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX</u>	<u>\$ XX,XXX</u>		

I. General Obligation Bonds Payable from Direct Placements

During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X5, the Government Entity Public Financing Authority (GEPFA) issued general obligation bond series 20X5 R-A in the amount of \$XX,XXX,XXX 20X5 DT-A in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y5.

During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X6, the GEPFA issued general obligation bond series 20X5 DT-B in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y6.

During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X7, the GEPFA issued general obligation bond series 20X6 DT-A in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y7.

During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X8, the GEPFA issued general obligation bond series 20X7 T in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX and 20X7 DT in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y8. The GEPFA also issued general obligation bond series 20X8G in the amount of \$XX,XXX,XXX and 20X8F in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y8. The 20X8G and 20X8F bonds were issued to refinance the remaining initial loan, the Series 20X5 T-D Loan, and a portion of the 20X5 T-E Loan and cause a redemption of the remaining initial bond, Series 20X5 T-D Bonds, Series 20X5-X6 Bond, Series T 20X6-X7 Bond, and a portion of the Series T 20X7-X8 Bond.

During the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X9, the GEPFA issued revenue bond series 20X8 T in the amount of \$XXX,XXX and 20X8 NR in the amount of \$XX,XXX. These general obligation bonds have a maturity date of September 2, 20Y9.

These general obligation bonds are summarized as follows:

Bond Series Number	Remaining Principal Balance	Interest Rate	Original Issuance Amount
20X8 T	\$ XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	\$ XXX,XXX
20X8 DT	XX,XXX	X.XXX%	XX,XXX
20X8 F	XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
20X8 G	X,XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	XX,XXX,XXX
20X7 T	XX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
20X7 DT	XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
20X6 DT-A	X,XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
20X5 DT-B	X,XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
20X5 T-A	X,XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	XX,XXX,XXX
20X5 DT-A	XXX,XXX	X.XXX%	X,XXX,XXX
Total	<u>\$ XX,XXX,XXX</u>		<u>\$ XX,XXX,XXX</u>

J. Changes in Long-Term Liability

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
NOTE X – DETAIL NOTES ON ALL FUNDS
LONG-TERM DEBT
LONG-TERM LIABILITY ACTIVITY

	Beginning Balances	Additions	Reductions	Ending Balances	Amounts Due Within One Year
Governmental Activities					
Bonds and Notes Payable:					
General Obligations Bonds	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Notes Payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Bonds and Notes Payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Liabilities:					
Compensated Absences	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Obligations	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Other Liabilities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Governmental Activities Long-Term Liabilities	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Business-Type Activities					
Bonds and Notes Payable					
General Obligation Bonds	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Sales Tax-Backed Bonds	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Bonds and Notes Payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Liabilities:					
Compensated Absences	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Developer Agreements	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Obligations	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Other Liabilities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	(XX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Business-Type Activities Long-Term Liabilities	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ (XXX,XXX)	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan

The Government Entity contributes to three defined benefit pension plans, (1) the Statewide General Employees Retirement Fund (GERF), as cost-sharing, multi-employer defined benefit pension plan administered by the Public Employees Retirement Association (PERA) of California, which is a statutorily funded plan. As of and for the year ended June 30, 20XX, the pension plan had the following balances reported in the government-wide financial statements:

	Total Pension Liability	Net Pension Liability	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources	Pension Expense
GERF (Proportionate share)	N/A	\$XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Total Pension Plans	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Statewide General Employees Retirement Fund

Plan Description

The Government Entity participates in the General Employees Retirement Fund (GERF), a cost-sharing, multi-employer defined benefit pension plan administered by the Public Employees Retirement Association (PERA) of California. GERF assets are held in trust for the plan beneficiaries. GERF is established and administered in accordance with California Compiled Statutes, and is a tax-qualified plan under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (IRC). All full-time, permanent employees of the Government Entity are covered by the GERF.

Benefits Provided

GERF provides retirement, disability, and death benefits, and annual cost-of-living adjustments to eligible participants. Benefit provisions are established by state statutes and can only be modified by the State Legislature. Benefit increases are provided to benefit recipients each January when the plan's funding ratio has met a specified level. Increases are related to the funding ratio of the plan as of the prior March 31. In those years that the plan did not exceed XX% funded, but was at least XX% funded, members are eligible to receive a X% increase. When the funded status was above XX%, members are eligible to receive a X.X% increase. When funded status drops below XX%, no increase is provided.

GERF members belong to either the Coordinated Benefits Plan or the Basic Benefits Plan. Coordinated Benefits Plan members are covered by Social Security and Basic Benefits Plan members are not. The Basic Plan is open to employees who are not being provided social security by their employer. Employees enrolled in the GERF prior to July 1, 19X1, vest at six years of creditable service and employees enrolled in the Plan on or after July 1, 19X1, vest at eight years of creditable service. All members enrolled in the GERF on or after July 1, 19X1, once vested, are eligible for normal retirement benefits at age 65 or any time after 33 years of creditable service, except for members classified as special risk, who are eligible for normal retirement benefits at age 60 or at any age after 30 years of service.

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Members of GERF may include up to four years of credit for military service toward creditable service. GERF also includes an early retirement provision; however, there is a benefit reduction for each year a member retires before their normal retirement date. The benefit provisions stated in this section are current provisions and apply to active GERF participants. Vested, terminated employees who are entitled to benefits, but are not receiving them yet, are bound by the provisions in effect at the time they last terminated their public service.

Benefits are based on a member's highest average salary for any five successive years of allowable service, age, and years of credit at termination of service. The retiring member receives a step-rate benefit accrual formula. The annuity accrual rate for a Basic Benefits Plan member is X.X% of average salary for each of the first 10 years of service and X.X% for each remaining year. The annuity accrual rate for a Coordinated Benefits Plan member is X.X% of average salary for each of the first 10 years and X.X% for each remaining year.

Contributions and Funding Policy

California Statutes, Chapter XXX sets the rates for employer and employee contributions. Contribution rates can only be modified by the State Legislature. Basic Benefits Plan members and Coordinated Benefits Plan members were required to contribute X.XX% and X.XX%, respectively, of their annual covered salary in fiscal year 20X7. The Government Entity was required to contribute XX.XX% of pay for Basic Benefits Plan members and X.XX% for Coordinated Benefits Plan members in fiscal year 20X7. The Government Entity's contributions to the GERF for the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X7, were \$X,XXX,XXX. The Government Entity's contributions were equal to the required contributions as set by state statutes.

Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability

At June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity reported a liability of \$XX,XXX,XXX for its proportionate share of the GERF's net pension liability. GERF's pension liability was measured as of March 31, 20X7, and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The Government Entity's proportion of GERF's liability was based on the Government Entity's contributions received by the GERF during the measurement period for employer payroll paid dates from April 1, 20X6 through March 31, 20X7 relative to the total employer contributions received from all of the GERF's participating employers. The Government Entity's proportionate share was 0.0XXX% at the end of the measurement period and 0.0XXX% for the beginning of the period, which represents an increase of 0.00XX%.

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the March 31, 20X7, actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Actuarial Valuation Date	March 31, 20X7
Measurement Date	March 31, 20X7
Actuarial Cost Method	Entry-Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Fair Value

Assumptions

Inflation	X.XX%
Active Member Payroll Growth	X.XX%
Investment Rate of Return	X.XX%
Discount Rate	X.XX%
Cost of Living Adjustments	Assumed to be X.X% per year through 20Y4, then X.X% thereafter.

Salary increases were based on a service-related table. Mortality rates for active members, retirees, survivors, and disabled annuitants were based on RP-20X5 tables for all plans for males or females, as appropriate, with slight adjustments to fit the PERA's experience.

Actuarial assumptions used in the March 31, 20X7, valuation were based on the results of actuarial experience studies. The most recent four-year experience study in the GERP was completed in 20XX-2. The following changes in actuarial assumptions occurred in 20X5:

- The Combined Service Annuity (CSA) loads were changed from X.X% for active members and XX.X% for vested and nonvested inactive members. The revised CSA loads are now X.X% for active member liability and XX.X% for vested inactive member liability.
- The assumed post-retirement benefit increase rate was changed from 1.0% per year for all years, to X.X% per year through 20Y4, and X.X% per year thereafter.
- Assumed rates of retirement were changed, resulting in fewer retirements.
- The base mortality table for healthy annuitants was changed from the RP-20X2 Fully Generational Table to the RP-20X5 Fully Generational Table (with a base year of 20X3), with male rates adjusted by a factor of X.XX. The mortality improvement scale was changed from Scale AA to Scale MP-20X5. The base mortality table for disabled annuitants was changed from the RP-20X2 Disabled Mortality Table to the mortality tables assumed for healthy retirees.

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

- Assumed termination rates were decreased to X.XX% for the first three years of service. Rates beyond the select period of three years were adjusted, resulting in more expected terminations overall.
- The assumed percentage of female members electing joint and survivor annuities was increased.

Long-term Expected Rate of Return

The State Board of Investment, which manages the investments of the PERA, prepares an analysis of the reasonableness of the long-term expected rate of return on a regular basis using a building-block method in which best-estimate ranges of expected future rates of return are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce an expected long-term rate of return by weighting the expected future rates of return by the target asset allocation percentages. The target allocation and best estimates of arithmetic real rates of return for each major asset class are summarized in the following table:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return	Expected Money-Weighted Rate of Return
Domestic Stocks	XX%	X.XX%	X.XXX%
International Stocks	XX%	X.XX%	X.XXX%
Bonds	XX%	X.XX%	X.XXX%
Alternative Assets	XX%	X.XX%	X.XXX%
Cash	XX%	X.XX%	X.XXX%
Total	100%		
Inflation			X.XXX%
Investment Rate of Return			X.XXX%

Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was X.XX%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and employers will be made at rates set in California Statutes. Based on these assumptions, the fiduciary net position of GERS was projected to be available to make all projected future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on GERS investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability.

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following presents the Government Entity's proportionate share of the GERS net pension liability, calculated using the discount rate disclosed in the preceding paragraph, as well as what the Government Entity's proportionate share of the GERS net pension liability would be if it were calculated using a discount rate one percentage point lower or one percentage point higher than the current discount rate:

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate X.X%	Current Discount Rate X.X%	1% Increase in Discount Rate X.X%
Government Entity's proportionate share of GERS net pension liability	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX

Pension expense and deferred items summary

For the year ended June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity recognized pension expense of \$X,XXX,XXX for its proportionate share of the GERS's pension expense. At June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity reported its proportionate share of the GERS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX
Changes in actuarial assumptions	X,XXX,XXX	-
Differences between projected and actual investment earnings	-	XXX,XXX
Changes in proportion	XXX,XXX	-
Contributions paid to the PERA subsequent to the measurement date	XXX,XXX	-
Totals	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 27 Pension — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Deferred outflows of resources reported \$XXX,XXX related to pensions resulting from the Government Entity's contributions subsequent to the measurement date that will be recognized as a reduction of the GERS net pension liability in the year ending June 30, 20X8. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year Ending June 30,	Pension Expense Amount
20X8	\$ XXX,XXX
20X9	XXX,XXX
20X0	XXX,XXX
20X1	XXX,XXX
20X2	XXX,XXX
Thereafter	XXX,XXX
Total	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>

Pension Plan fiduciary net position

The GERS's pension trust fiduciary net position has been determined using the same basis used to determine the GERS net pension liability, deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pension, and pension expense. For this purpose, revenues are recognized when earned and expenses are recognized when incurred. Therefore, benefit and administrative expenses are recognized when due and payable. Investments are reported at fair value.

Detailed information about the GERS's fiduciary net position is available in a separately issued PERA financial report. That report may be obtained on the PERA website at www.website.org; by writing to the PERA at 203 N Main Street, Suite 2700, Sacramento, CA 95833; or by calling (555) 555-5555.

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee's Retirement Plan

The Government Entity contributes to two defined benefit OPEB plans, the State Retiree Health Insurance Trust Fund (SRHITF), a cost-sharing, multi-employer defined benefit retiree health plan administered by the Public Employee Benefit Authority (PEBA) of California, which is a single-employer plan. As of and for the year ended June 30, 20X7 the OPEB plan had the following balance reported in the government-wide financial statements:

	Total Pension Liability	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources	OPEB Expense
SRHITF (Proportionate share)	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Total OPEB Plans	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

State Retiree Health Insurance Trust Fund

Plan Description

The Government Entity participates in the State's Other Post-Employment Benefits Trust Fund (OPEB Trust), referred to as SRHITF. The SRHITF was created to fund and account for the employer costs of California's retiree health and dental plans for retired employees, other than retired police and firefighters, in California. In accordance with Compiled Statutes Section XXX, the SRHITF is administered by the Public Employee Benefit Authority (PEBA) and the State Treasurer is the custodian of the funds held in trust. The Board of Directors of PEBA has been designated as the Trustee.

The SRHITF is a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit plan. Article X of the California Code of Laws defines the plan and authorizes the Trustee to at any time to adjust the plan, including its benefits and contributions, as necessary to ensure the fiscal stability of the plan. In accordance with the California Code of Laws and the annual Appropriations Act, the State of California provides postemployment health and dental benefits to retired State and other participating local governments' employees (other than police and firefighters) and their eligible dependents.

Benefits Provided

The SRHITF is a retiree healthcare plan that covers retired employees (other than police and firefighters) of the State and other participating local governments. The SRHITF provides health (general inpatient and outpatient medical services; mental, nervous, and substance abuse care; vision care; and prescriptions) and dental insurance benefits to eligible retirees. Generally, retirees are eligible for the health and dental benefits if they have established at least ten years of retirement service credit.

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

For new hires beginning employment May 1, 200X, and after, retirees are eligible for benefits if they have established XX years of service for XXX% employer funding and at least XX but fewer than XX years of service for XX% employer funding.

Contributions and Funding Policy

Section XXX of the California Compiled Statutes requires these postemployment benefits to be funded through annual appropriations by the General Assembly for active employees and participating retirees of the state to PEBA. For active employees who are not funded by State general fund appropriations, participating employers are mandated by State statute to contribute at a rate assessed each year by the Department of Administration Executive Budget Office. For the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity was required to contribute X.XX% of covered payroll to SRHITF. Other sources of funding for the SRHITF include mandatory transfers of PEBA's accumulated reserves and income generated from investments.

Employer contributions also include the implicit subsidy, or age-related subsidy inherent in the healthcare premiums structure. The implicit subsidy represents a portion of the health care expenditures paid on behalf of the employers' active employees that represents the amount of the active employee premiums that subsidize higher cost retiree benefits. For purposes of financial reporting in accordance with GAAP, this expenditure on behalf of the active employee is reclassified as a retiree health care expenditure so that the employer's contributions towards the plan reflect the underlying age-adjusted retiree benefit costs.

The Government Entity made employer contributions applicable to benefits for active SRHITF participants in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX for the fiscal year ended June 30, 20X8.

The SRHITF's OPEB trust fiduciary net position has been determined using the same basis used to determine the SRHITF net OPEB liability, deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB, and OPEB expense. For this purpose, revenues are recognized when earned and expenses are recognized when incurred. Therefore, benefit and administrative expenses are recognized when due and payable. Investments are reported at fair value.

PEBA issues audited financial statements and required supplementary information for the SRHITF. This information is publicly available on PEBA's website at www.website.gov or a copy may be obtained by submitting a request to PEBA, 203 N. LaSalle Blvd, City, CA 88888. PEBA is considered a fiduciary component unit of the STATE and therefore OPEB Trust fund financial information is also included in the annual comprehensive financial report of the state of California.

Proportionate share of SRHITF net OPEB liability

At June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity reported a liability of \$XX,XXX,XXX for its proportionate share of the SRHITF's OPEB liability. The Collective Net OPEB Liability (NOL) is calculated for the SRHITF and represents the SRHITF's Total OPEB Liability (TOL) less the amount of the SRHITF fiduciary net position. The Government Entity's percentage of the collective SRHITF net OPEB liability was X.XXXXX% and 0.XXXXX% as of June 30, 20X7, and June 30, 20X6, respectively, which represents an increase of X.XXXXX%.

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee’s Retirement Plan — Continued

The Government Entity’s proportionate share amount of the collective SRHITF net OPEB totals, as of June 30, 20X7, is presented below:

(A) Proportion of Total OPEB Liability	(B) Proportion of Plan Fiduciary Net Position	(A-B) Proportion of Net OPEB Liability	(A/B) Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of Total OPEB Liability
\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	XX.X%

The TOL is calculated by the SRHITF’s actuary, and the SRHITF’s fiduciary net position is reported in the SRHITF’s financial statements. The NOL is disclosed in accordance with GAAP in the SRHITF’s notes to the financial statements and required supplementary information. Liability calculations are performed by the SRHITF actuary for the purpose of satisfying the requirements of financial reporting in accordance with GAAP, and are not applicable for other purposes, such as determining the SRHITF’s funding requirements.

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Actuarial assumptions

Actuarial valuations of an ongoing plan involve estimates of the value of reported amounts and assumptions about the probability of occurrence of events far into the future. Examples include assumptions about future employment, mortality, and the healthcare cost trend. The following actuarial assumptions and methods were used in the June 30, 20X7, actuarial valuation for SRHITF:

Valuation Date	March 31, 20X7
Measurement Date	March 31, 20X7
Actuarial Cost Method	Entry-Age Normal
Actuarial Assumptions	
Inflation	X.XX%
Investment Rate of Return	X.XX% net of OPEB Plan investment expense, including inflation
Single Discount Rate	X.XX% as of June 30, 20X7
Demographic Assumptions	Based on the experience study performed for the State Retirement Systems for the 5-year period ending June 30, 20X5
Healthcare Trend Rate	Initial trend starting at X.XX% and gradually decreasing to an ultimate trend rate of X.XX% over a period of XX years.
Aging Factors	Based on plan-specific experience
Expenses	The investment return assumption is net of the investment expenses; administrative expenses related to the health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs

The assumed rate on high quality XX-year tax exempt general obligation bonds was changed from X.XX% to X.XX%.

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Long-term expected rate of return

The long-term expected rate of returns represent assumptions developed using an arithmetic building block approach primarily based on consensus expectations and market based inputs. The expected returns, along with the expected inflation rate, form the basis for the target asset allocation adopted at the beginning of the 20X7 fiscal year. The long-term expected rate of return is produced by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target allocation percentage and adding expected inflation. This information is summarized in the following table:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return	Expected Money- Weighted Rate of Return
Cash	XX%	X.XX%	X.XX%
Fixed Income	XX%	X.XX%	X.XX%
Total	100%		
Inflation			X.XX%
Investment Rate of Return			X.XX%

The annual money-weighted rate of return on the plan investments was 1.36% for the year ended June 30, 20X7.

Discount rate

The discount rate of X.XX% was used to measure the total OPEB liability for the SRHITF. The accounting policy for this plan is to set the discount rate equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. Due to the plan's investment and funding policies, the difference between a blended discount rate and the municipal bond rate would be minimal. The discount rate was based on the Bond Buyer 20-Bond Index as published by the Bond Buyer for tax exempt general obligation municipal bonds rated AA or better at June 30, 20X7.

Discount Rate and Healthcare Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following table presents The Government Entity's proportionate share of the SRHITF net OPEB liability calculated using the discount rate of X.XX%, as well as what the Government Entity's proportionate share of the SRHITF net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a discount rate that is one percentage point lower, or one percentage point higher than the current rate:

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate X.X%	Current Discount Rate X.X%	1% Increase in Discount Rate X.X%
Net OPEB liability	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee's Retirement Plan — Continued

Sensitivity of the net OPEB liability to changes in the healthcare cost trend rates.

The following presents Government Entity's proportionate share of the SRHITF net OPEB liability, as well as what the Government Entity's proportionate share of the SRHITF net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using healthcare cost trend rates that are one percentage point lower or one percentage point higher than the current healthcare cost trend rate:

	1% Decrease in Healthcare Cost Trend Rate (X.X% decreasing to X.XX%)	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate (X.X% decreasing to X.XX%)	1% Increase in Healthcare Cost Trend Rate (X.X% decreasing to X.XX%)
Net OPEB Liability	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX

SRHITF OPEB Expense and Deferred Items Summary

The Government Entity recognized OPEB expense related to the SRHITF in the amount of \$X,XXX,XXX in the current fiscal year. Differences between expected and actual experience and changes in assumptions are recognized in OPEB expense using a systematic and rational method over a closed period equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided OPEB through the SRHITF (active and inactive members) determined as of the beginning of the measurement period. Additionally, differences between projected and actual earnings on the SRHITF investments should be recognized in OPEB expense using a systematic and rational method over a closed five-year period. For this purpose, the deferred outflows and inflows of resources are recognized in the OPEB expense as a level dollar amount over the closed period identified above.

At June 30, 20X7, the Government Entity reported deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources for the SRHITF related to OPEB from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ -	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Changes in actuarial assumptions	XXX,XXX	-
Changes in proportionate share	(XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Differences between projected and actual investment earnings	-	X,XXX,XXX
Totals	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 28 OPEB Note Disclosure — Employee’s Retirement Plan — Continued

Amounts reported as deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources for the SRHITF related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Year Ending June 30,	OPEB Expense Amount
20X8	\$ (X, XXX,XXX)
20X9	(X,XXX,XXX)
20Y0	(X,XXX,XXX)
20Y1	(X,XXX,XXX)
20Y2	(XXX,XXX)
Thereafter	(XXX,XXX)
Total	<u>\$ (X,XXX,XXX)</u>

Example 29 Contingencies and Commitments

Contingencies

The Government Entity is a defendant in a number of lawsuits that have arisen in the normal course of business including challenges over certain rates and charges. The ultimate outcome of these matters is not presently determinable. In the opinion of the Government Entity, these actions when finally adjudicated will not have a material adverse effect on the financial position of the local government entity.

Commitments

In December 19X7, the Government Entity entered into a contract with the US Bureau of Reclamation to.... Deliveries to the Government Entity are limited to a 200 acre-foot total over any three successive dry years. In years in which the Government Entity takes delivery of CVP water, the Government Entity's allocated CVP capital cost and the Government Entity's operations and maintenance deficit balance will be paid down commensurately with the quantity of water delivered. For example, if the Government Entity had to take delivery of XXX acre-feet in fiscal year 15, the Government Entity's CVP capital and deficit balances would each be reduced by approximately XX%. The balances must be paid off by 20Y0.

Example 30 Information about Unusual or Infrequent Item

In March of 20X2, the Government Entity faced a devastating storm which was beyond the management's control. The Government Entity incurred \$XX million in cleanup expenses, with \$XX million allocated to public works and \$XX million to public safety. Furthermore, the Government Entity received \$XX million in state grants to support the cleanup efforts.

Required Supplementary Information — Pension Plans

Example 31 Schedule of Changes in Employer's Net Pension Liability and Related Ratios

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3	20X2	20X1	20X0	19X9	19X8
Total Pension Liability										
Service Costs	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Interest	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Assumption Changes	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Member Contributions	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)
Net Change in Total Pension Liability	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX
Total Pension Liability - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Total Pension Liability - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Fund Fiduciary Net Position										
Contributions - Employer	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Contributions – Members	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Investment Income	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Employee Contributions	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Administrative Expense	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Net Change in Plan Fiduciary Function	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Government Entity's Net Pension Liability	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of Total Pension Liability	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %
Pension Covered Payroll	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Net Pension Liability as a Percentage of Pension Covered Payroll	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Example 32 Schedule of the Government’s Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3	20X2	20X1	20X0	19X9	19X8
Proportion of the Net Pension Liability	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%	X.XXX%
Proportional Share of the Net Pension Liability	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
GERF Covered Payroll	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability as a Percentage of its GERF Covered Payroll Plan	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%
Fiduciary net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%	XX.X%

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Example 33 Schedule of Employer Contributions Pension Plan

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3	20X2	20X1	20X0	19X9	19X8
Actuarially Determined Contribution	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Contributions in Relation to the Actuarially Determined Contribution	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Contribution Excess (Deficiency)	\$ X,XXX	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ (XXX,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)
Pension Covered Payroll	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Example 34 Schedule of Investment Returns — Pension Plan

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3	20X2	20X1	20X0	19X9	19X8
Annual Money-Weighted Rate of Return, Net of Investment Expense	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Example 35 Notes to Required Supplementary Information — Pension Plan

Government Entity

Notes to Required Supplementary Information

General Employees Retirement Fund (GERF)

- 1. For 20X6, the inflation rate assumption was decreased from X.XX% to X.XX%, the overall payroll growth rate assumption was decreased from X.XX% to X.XX%. The long-term expected rate of return decreased from X.XX% to X.XX%. change with respect to actuarial assumptions from the prior year to reflect revised expectations with respect to the discount rate in 20X7. The discount rate increased from X.XX% to X.XX%.
- 2. The total pension liability in the March 31, 20X7, actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Actuarial Valuation Date	March 31, 20X7
Measurement Date	March 31, 20X7
Actuarial Cost Method	Entry-Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Fair Value
Assumptions	
Inflation	X.XX%
Active member payroll growth	X.XX%
Investment Rate of Return	X.XX%
Discount Rate	X.XX%
Cost of Living Adjustments	Assumed to be X.X% per year though 20Y4, and then X.X% thereafter

Salary increases were based on a service-related table. Mortality rates for active members, retirees, survivors, and disabled annuitants were based on RP-20X5 tables for all plans for males or females, as appropriate, with slight adjustments to fit the PERA’s experience.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Required Supplementary Information — OPEB Plans

Example 36 Schedule of Changes in Net OPEB Liability and Related Ratios

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3
Total OPEB Liability					
Service Costs	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Interest	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Differences Between Expected and Actual Experience	(X,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Assumption Changes	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XXX,XXX
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Member Contributions	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)	(X, XXX,XXX)
Net Change in Total Pension Liability	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX
Total OPEB Liability - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Total OPEB Liability - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position					
Contributions - Employer	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Contributions – Members	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Investment Income	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Member Contributions	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
Administrative Expense	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Net Change in Plan Fiduciary Net Position	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	X, XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
Government Entity's Net OPEB Liability	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of Total Pension Liability	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %
Pension Covered-Employee Payroll Net OPEB Liability as a Percentage of Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX
	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %	XX,X %

Example 37 Schedule of Employer Contributions — OPEB Plan

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3
Actuarially Determined Contribution	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Contributions in Relation to the Actuarially Determined Contribution	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Contribution Excess (Deficiency)	\$ X,XXX	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (X,XXX)	\$ (XX,XXX)
Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX	\$ X, XXX,XXX
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Example 38 Schedule of Investments Returns — OPEB Plan

	20X7	20X6	20X5	20X4	20X3
Plan Annual Money-Weighted Rate of Return, Net of Investment Expense	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %	X.X %

See Notes to Required Supplementary Information

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Example 39 Notes to Required Supplementary Information — OPEB Plan

Government Entity

Notes to Required Supplementary Information

Public Safety Other Post-Employment Benefit Plan

1. The schedules are intended to show information for ten years. The Public Safety Other Post-Employment Benefit Plan started in 20X3. Additional years will be displayed as they become available.
2. There was a change with respect to actuarial assumptions from the prior year to reflect revised expectations with respect to the discount rate in 20X7. The discount rate decreased from X.XX% to X.XX%.
3. In 20X5, there was a change with respect to actuarial assumptions from the prior year to reflect revised expectations with respect to mortality rates and retirement rates.
4. Methods and assumptions used to determine contribution rates for the most recent year include:
 - a. Valuation date: June 30, 20X7
 - b. Inflation: X.XX%
 - c. Investment Rate of Return: X.XX%
 - d. Discount Rate: X.XX% for 20X7, X.XX% for 20X6
 - e. Healthcare cost trend rate: X.X% in Fiscal 20X7, decreasing to an ultimate trend rate of X.XX% in 2080. In 20X7, changes were made to the healthcare trend rate to reflect recent healthcare trend rate surveys, blended with the long-term rates from the Getzen model published by the Society of Actuaries.
 - f. Medicare eligibility: All current and future retirees are assumed to be eligible for Medicare at age 65
 - g. Mortality Rate: RP-20X5 Generational Table using Scale MP-20X5, applied on a gender-specific basis
 - h. Actuarial cost method: Entry age normal based on level percentage of projected salary.
 - i. Amortization method: Experience gains and losses are amortized over a closed period equal to the average remaining service of active and inactive plan members (who have no future service). Investment gains and losses are amortized over a closed period of five years.

Required Supplementary Information — Combining Statements

Example 40 Combining Statements — Nonmajor Governmental Funds

Special Revenue Funds

Special revenue funds are used to account for specific revenue sources that are restricted, committed, or assigned to expenditures for particular purposes.

Library Fund — to account for the operation and maintenance of the library and the application of any gifts and donations received for the benefit of the library. A portion of the property tax levy is dedicated to the library.

Housing Grants Fund — to account for state and federal grants that provide housing assistance for low and moderate income families within the Government Entity. This fund is also used to account for gifts, grants, and contributions used for the purpose of enhancing public housing occupancy.

Community Development Block Grants Fund — to account for programs and activities which will benefit low and moderate income families through the prevention or elimination of slums and blight.

Public Safety Grants Fund — to account for grants received from the federal, state and local governments for the enhancement of public safety activities.

Youth Development and Recreation Fund — to account for various grants received from the federal, state and local governments and private contributions for youth development programs that are designed to build skills and competencies among the Government Entity's youth. This fund is also used to account for the acquisition and/or development of recreational facilities and open space.

Garage Fund — to account for parking revenues, which are restricted to the operation and maintenance of the parking structure.

Permanent Fund

The permanent fund is used to report resources that are legally restricted to the extent that only earnings, not principal, may be used for purposes that support the Government Entity's programs.

Tracy Sylvia Memorial Fund — accounts for an endowment whose earnings are restricted to expenditures for urban concerns.

Combining Balance Sheet — Nonmajor Governmental Funds

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY COMBINING BALANCE SHEET NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS JUNE 30, 20XX

	Special Revenue Funds						Permanent Fund	
			Community Development Block Grant	Public Safety Grants	Youth Development and Recreation	Garage	Tracy Sylvia Memorial	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
	Library	Housing Grants						
Assets								
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Investments	-	-	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Receivables (Net of Allowance For Uncollectibles)	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental Receivable	-	-	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Prepaid Items	XXX	XXX	-	-	-	-	-	XXX
Total Assets	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Liabilities								
Account Payable	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Accrued Liabilities	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Deposits Payable	-	XX,XXX	-	-	-	-	-	XX,XXX
Due to Other Funds	-	-	X,XXX	X,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Advances From Other Funds	-	-	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Unearned Revenue-Other	-	-	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Liabilities	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Fund Balances								
Nonspendable:								
Endowment	-	-	-	-	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Prepaid Items	XXX	XXX	-	-	-	-	-	XXX
Restricted:								
Library Purposes	XX,XXX	-	-	-	-	-	-	XX,XXX
Housing Services	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Community Redevelopment	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Law Enforcement	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	-	XXX,XXX
Youth Programs	-	-	-	-	X,XXX	-	-	X,XXX
Nonrecurring Repairs and Other Parking Improvements	-	-	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Committed:								
For Open Space	-	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Total Fund Balances	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances— Nonmajor Governmental Funds

EXAMPLE - GOVERNMENT ENTITY COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUE, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX

	Special Revenue Funds						Permanent Fund	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
	Library	Housing Grants	Community Development Block Grant	Public Safety Grants	Youth Development and Recreation	Garage	Tracy Sylvia Memorial	
Revenue								
Property Taxes	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Intergovernmental	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX
Investment Earnings	XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XXX	XX,XXX
Fees	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Miscellaneous	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	-	XXX,XXX
Total Revenue		X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX		XXX
Expenditures								
Current:								
Public Safety	-	-	-	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Highways and Streets	-	-	-	-	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Culture and Recreation	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX	-	XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Total Expenditures	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-	XXX
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (under) Expenditures	XXX,XXX	(XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Financing Sources (Uses)								
Transfer In	-	X,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX
Transfer Out	(XXX,XXX)	-	-	-	-	-	-	(XXX,XXX)
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(XXX,XXX)	X,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	-	-	(XX,XXX)
Net Change In Fund Balances	(X,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX	XXX,XXX
Fund Balance - Beginning	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Fund Balance - Ending	\$ XX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 41 Combining Statements — Major Governmental Funds

Debt Service Fund

The debt service fund is used to account for the accumulation of resources that are for the payment of principal and interest on the Government Entity's general long-term debt.

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGE IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL — DEBT SERVICE FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 JUNE 20X2

	Final Budgeted Amount	Actual Amounts	Variance with Final Budget
Revenue			
Property Taxes	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Investment Earnings	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Special Assessments	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Total Revenue	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Expenditures			
Debt Service			
Principal	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Interest	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX
Refunding Bond Issuance Costs	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Total Expenditures	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (under) Expenditures	(XXX,XXX)	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other Financing Sources (Uses)			
Transfer In	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Transfer Out	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)	-
Refunding Bonds Issued	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Premium On Refunded Bond Escrow Agent	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Payment to Refunded Bond Escrow Agent	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	-
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-
Net Change In Fund Balances	-	XXX,XXXX	XXX,XXX
Fund Balance - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	-
Fund Balance - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

Example 41 Combining Statements — Major Governmental Funds — Continued

Capital Projects Fund

The capital projects fund accounts for the cost of planned current and future major projects for the acquisition and construction of buildings, infrastructure, and related improvements, and traffic and environmental projects.

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGE IN FUND BALANCE
BUDGET AND ACTUAL — CAPITAL PROJECTS FUNDS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 JUNE 20X2

	Prior Years Actual	Current Year Actual	Total Actual To Date	Project Authorization
Revenue				
Intergovernmental - State	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Revenue	<u>X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX,XXX</u>
Expenditures				
Debt Service:				
Insurance Costs	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Capital Outlay				
General Government	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Public Safety	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Highways and Streets	XX,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Sanitation	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Culture and Recreation	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Expenditures	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>
Deficiency of Revenue (under) Expenditures	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX,XXX)	(XX,XXX,XXX)
Other Financing Sources (Uses)				
Transfer In	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Transfer Out	-	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)	(X,XXX,XXX)
General Obligation Bonds Issued	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Special Assessment Bonds Issued	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Discount On Special Assessment Debt	-	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	-
Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX,XXX</u>
Net Change In Fund Balances	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>(\$ X,XXX,XXX)</u>	<u>(\$ X,XXX,XXX)</u>	<u>-</u>
Fund Balance - Beginning		<u>X,XXX,XXX</u>		
Fund Balance - Ending		<u><u>\$ (X,XXX,XXX)</u></u>		

Example 42 Combining Statements — Fiduciary Funds

The pension and other postemployment benefit (OPEB) trust funds accounts for activities of the Employee Retirement System Trust Fund which accumulates resources for the pension and OPEB payments to qualified beneficiaries.

Combining Statement of Fiduciary Net Position — Pension/OPEB Trust Funds

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
COMBINING STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
FIDUCIARY FUNDS—PENSIONS (AND OTHER EMPLOYEE BENEFIT) TRUST FUNDS
JUNE 30 20X2

	Employee Pension Trust Fund	Employee Postemployment Benefit Trust Fund	Total Pension (and Other Employee Benefit Trust Fund
Assets			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Investments			
U.S. Government and Agency Obligations	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
State and Local Obligations	-	-	XX,XXX
Corporate Bonds	X,XXX,XXX	-	X,XXX,XXX
Mutual Funds	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Other Assets			
Receivables	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Assets	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Liabilities			
Account Payable	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX
Claims Payable	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Refunds Payable	X,XXX	-	X,XXX
Total Liabilities	<u>X,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Net Position			
Restricted For:			
Pensions	XX,XXX,XXX	-	XX,XXX,XXX
Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions	-	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Net Position	<u>\$ XX,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ XX,XXX,XXX</u>

Example 42 Combining Statements — Fiduciary Funds — Continued

Combining Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position — Pension/OPEB Trust Funds

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
COMBINING STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION
FIDUCIARY FUNDS—PENSIONS (AND OTHER EMPLOYEE BENEFIT) TRUST FUNDS
JUNE 30 20X2

	Employee Pension Trust Fund	Employee Postemployment Benefit Trust Fund	Total Pension (and Other Employee Benefit Trust Fund
Additions			
Contributions:			
Employer	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX
Plan Members	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Contributions	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Investment Earnings:			
Interest	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Dividends	XX,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX
Net Increase in the Fair Value of Investments	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Less Investment Expense	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Net Investment Earnings	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Total Additions	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Deductions			
Benefits	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Refunds of Contributions	X,XXX	-	X,XXX
Administrative Expenses	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Deductions	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Net Increase (Decrease) In Fiduciary Net Position	X,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Net Position - Beginning	XX,XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX,XXX
Net Position - Ending	\$ XX,XXX,XXX	\$X,XXX,XXX	\$ XX,XXX,XXX

Example 43 Combining Statement of Net Position

Combining Statement of Net Position – Discretely Presented Component Units

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
COMBINING STATEMENT OF NET POSITION
DISCRETELY PRESENTED COMPONENT UNITS
JUNE 30 20X2

	Energy Authority	Airport	Nonmajor Component Units	Total
Assets				
Cash and cash equivalents	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Investments	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Receivables, net	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Inventories	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other assets	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Capital assets:				
Nondepreciable capital assets	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Depreciable capital assets, net	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total assets	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Deferred Outflows of Resources				
Pension-related items	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
OPEB-related items	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Debt refundings	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total deferred outflows of resources	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Liabilities				
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Advances	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Long-term liabilities:				
Short-term portion	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Bonds payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Long-term portion				
Bonds payable	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net pension liability	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net OPEB liability	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total liabilities	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Deferred Inflows of Resources				
Pension-related items	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
OPEB-related items	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total deferred inflows of resources	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Position				
Net investment in capital assets	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Restricted for:				
Debt service	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Capital projects	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Other purposes	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Unrestricted	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total net position	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Example 44 Combining Statement of Activities

EXAMPLE – GOVERNMENT ENTITY
COMBINING STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES
DISCRETELY PRESENTED COMPONENT UNITS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30 20X2

Functions/Programs	Expenses	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Capital Grants and Contributions	Energy Authority	Airport	Nonmajor Component Units	Total
Component Units:								
Energy authority	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Airport	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Nonmajor component units	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total component units	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX

General revenues:

Taxes:

Sales taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Property taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Investment earnings	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total general revenues	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Change in net position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Net position—beginning of period	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Net position—end of period	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Examples by Revenue Statements by Type of Enterprise Activity

Example 45 Statement — Other

GENERAL DISTRICT
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION
FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1
(DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Charges for Services	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Governmental Aid	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Miscellaneous	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Operating Revenue	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Operating Expenses:		
Personal Service, Including Annual Net Pension Fund Expenses	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Material	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Professional Services	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Utilities	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Fuel	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Repairs and Maintenance	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Other Service and Supplies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Insurance Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Operating Income (Losses)	<u>X,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX</u>
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Revenue From Service Concession Arrangement	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Sale of Asset		
Revenue from Sale of Asset	<u>XX,XXX</u>	
Change In Net Position	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>

Example 46 Statement — Water Utility

WATER DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Water	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Power	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Revenue	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses:		
Raw Water and Water Purchases	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Water Treatment and Distribution	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Recreation Area, Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Customer Accounting and Collecting	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Facilities Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expense	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plan and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Income (Losses)	X,XXX	X,XXX
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Increase (Decrease) of Equity in JPA Partnership Fund	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Flood Control		
Cleanup	(XX,XXX)	
Change in Net Position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 47 Statement — Harbor and Port

HARBOR AND PORT DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Marine	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Harbor	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Other Sales	XXX	XXX
Total Operating Revenue	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Operating Expenses:		
Operating and Security	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Maintenance	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Customer Accounting and Collecting	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Facilities Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expense	(XX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Net Operating Income (Losses)	<u>X,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX</u>
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Increase (Decrease) of Equity in JPA Partnership Fund	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Flood Damage		
Cleanup	<u>(XX,XXX)</u>	
Change In Net Position	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>

Example 48 Statement — Transit

TRANSIT DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Passenger Fares	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Special Transit Fares	X,XXX	X,XXX
School Bus Revenues	X,XXX	X,XXX
Freight Tariffs	X,XXX	X,XXX
Charter Service	XXX	XXX
Total Operating Revenue	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Operating Expenses:		
Labor and Fringe Benefits	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Cost of Services	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Materials and Supplies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Lease and Rentals	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expense	(XX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Operating Expenses	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Net Operating Income (Losses)	<u>X,XXX</u>	<u>X,XXX</u>
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	<u>XXX,XXX</u>	<u>XXX,XXX</u>
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Earthquake		
Cleanup	<u>(XX,XXX)</u>	
Change in Net Position	<u>XX,XXX</u>	<u>XX,XXX</u>
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>	<u>\$ X,XXX,XXX</u>

Example 49 Statement — Airport

AIRPORT DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Landing Fees	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Aircraft Storage Fees	X,XXX	X,XXX
Fuel Flowage Fees	X,XXX	X,XXX
Concessions	X,XXX	X,XXX
Other Sales	XXX	XXX
Total Operating Revenue	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses:		
Landing Areas	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Terminal Building and Areas	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Shops and Equipment	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Taxes	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Other Operating Expenses	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Operating Income (Losses)	X,XXX	X,XXX
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	X,XXX	X,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Insurance Recovery		
Insurance Recovery	XX,XXX	
Change in Net Position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 50 Statement — Electric Utility

ELECTRIC DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Sales of Electricity	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Other Revenue	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Operating Revenue	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses:		
Production Steam Power Generation	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Production Nuclear Power Generation	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Production Hydraulic Power Generation	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Production Other Power Generation	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Purchased Power	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Customer Services	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Operating Income (Losses)	X,XXX	X,XXX
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	X,XXX	X,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Increase (Decrease) of Equity in JPA Partnership Fund	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Fire Damage		
Cleanup	(XX,XXX)	
Change in Net Position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 51 Statement — Waste Disposal

WASTE DISPOSAL DISTRICT STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20XX AND 20X1 (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:		
Service Charges	\$XXX,XXX	\$XXX,XXX
Power	X,XXX	X,XXX
Total Operating Revenue	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses:		
Waste - Collection	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Waste - Treatment	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Waste - Disposal	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Customer Accounting and Collecting	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Facilities Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Operating Income (Losses)	X,XXX	X,XXX
Noncapital Subsidies:		
Intergovernmental revenue	X,XXX	X,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):		
Investment Income	X,XXX	X,XXX
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond Expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Increase (Decrease) of Equity in JPA Partnership Fund	(X,XXX)	(X,XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Unusual or Infrequent Item – Flood Damage		
Cleanup	(XX,XXX)	
Change in Net Position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	(XXX,XXX)
Total Net Position - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Example 52 Statement — Multiple Enterprise

DISTRICT STATEMENTS OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR THE YEAR ENDED JUNE 30, 20X1 AND 20XX (DOLLARS IN THOUSANDS)

	Water System		Sewer System		Total	
	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX	June 30, 20X1	June 30, 20XX
Operating Revenue:						
Water	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX	-	-	\$ XXX,XXX	\$ XXX,XXX
Sewer	-	-	\$XX,XXX	\$XX,XXX	XX,XXXX	XX,XXXX
Power	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXXX	XX,XXXX
Other Facilities Charges	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXXX	XX,XXXX
Total Operating Revenue	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Operating Expenses:						
Raw Water and Water Purchases	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Water Treatment and Distribution	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	-	-	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Recreation Areas, Net	X,XXX	X,XXX	-	-	X,XXX	X,XXX
Sewer Lines and Pumping	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Sewer Treatment Plant Operations	-	-	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Customer Accounting and Collecting	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Financial and Risk Management	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX	XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Facilities Management	X,XXX	X,XXX	-	-	X,XXX	X,XXX
General Administration	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Pension Expenses	(XX,XXX)	-	(X,XXX)	-	(XX,XXX)	-
Depreciation on Utility Plant and Vehicle	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Total Operating Expenses	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Net Operating Income (Losses)	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Noncapital Subsidies:						
Intergovernmental revenue	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX	X,XXX
Transfers in	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Transfers out	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Total Noncapital Subsidies	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Operating Income (Loss) and Noncapital Subsidies	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX	XXX,XXX
Non-Operating Income (Expenses):						
Investment Income						
Taxes and Subventions	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Interest and Amortization of Bond expenses	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)	(XX,XXX)
Increase (Decrease) of Equity in JPA Partnership Fund	(XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)	(XXX)
Other Income	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Non-Operating Income (Losses), Net	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Income (Losses) Before Unusual or Infrequent Items	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Storm Cleanup	XX,XXX		XX,XXX		XX,XXX	
Change in Net Position	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX	XX,XXX
Total Net Position - Beginning	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX	X,XXX,XXX
Prior Period Adjustment	(XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX)	-	(XXX,XXX)	-
Total Net Position - Ending	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX	\$ X,XXX,XXX

Appendix F: Record Retention

Appendix Contents

Contents

Code Sections on Records Disposition.....	915
F.01 Bonds	915
F.02 Claims (Also Refer to F.08, Warrants).....	915
F.03 General Record	916
F.04 Permits, Deposit	916
F.05 Receipts (Also Refer to F.04, Permits, Deposit)	917
F.06 Rolls, Tax	918
Sheets, Layout.....	919
F.07 Statements	919
Statements of Fees	919
F.08 Warrants (Also Refer to F.04, Permits, Deposit)	919
F.09 Records Retention Schedule	921

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Appendix F: Record Retention

Code Sections on Records Disposition

Due to the volume of record retention codes, this appendix is limited to record retention codes impacting the auditor-controller and treasurer-tax collector offices, and is not all-inclusive. The term Data Storage in Chapter sections F.01– F.08 includes (but is not limited to) the following: microfilming, photographic records, electronic recording (video tapes, etc.), electronic data recording systems and optical disk recording.

F.01 Bonds

1. Destruction of canceled bonds and coupons	
Responsible department	Treasurer/Fiscal Agent
Code section	Government Code section 53921
Retention period	Until paid or canceled
Data storage required	Not specified
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Conditions fixed by treasurer
Approval of Board required	Yes

2. Canceled county, school, special district bonds and coupons	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 26907.1
Retention period	Not less than five years
Data storage required	Not specified
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Not specified

F.02 Claims (Also Refer to F.08, Warrants)

3. Preparation of duplicate lists of claims allowed	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 29747
Retention period	Not specified
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Specifies the contents of the required duplicate lists

F.03 General Record

4. County records, generally	
Responsible department	All county departments
Code section	Government Code section 26205
Retention period	Not specified
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	A county officer can request the board of supervisors to authorize the destruction of any record, paper, or document that is not expressly required by law to be filed and preserved if specified conditions are met.

5. County records, generally	
Responsible department	All county departments
Code section	Government Code section 26202
Retention period	Two years
Data storage required	No
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	The Board of Supervisors may authorize the destruction or disposition of any record, paper, or document that is more than two years old and that was prepared or received in any manner other than pursuant to a state statute or county charter. Additionally, the board, by four-fifths vote, may authorize the destruction or disposition of any record, paper, or document whose retention is no longer necessary or required for county purposes, that is more than two years old, that was prepared or received pursuant to state statute or county charter, and that is not expressly required by law to be filed and preserved. Such records, papers or documents need to be photographed, reproduced or microfilmed prior to destruction and no copy thereof need to be retained.

F.04 Permits, Deposit

6. Deposit permits	
Responsible department	Treasurer
Code section	Government Code section 27001
Retention period	Five years or 1 year if the criteria in Government Code section(b) has been met.
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	Destruction subject to the conditions specified in Government Code section 26205.5

7. Books of account for receipts and warrants	
Responsible department	Treasurer
Code section	Government Code section 27002.1
Retention period	Not stated
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Not specified

8. Deposit permits and deposit receipts	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 26907.2
Retention period	Five years
Data storage required	Not specified
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	Not specified

F.05 Receipts (Also Refer to F.04, Permits, Deposit)

9. Special district records	
Responsible department	Special districts
Code section	Government Code section 60201
Retention period	The legislative body may, by resolution, adopt and comply with a record retention schedule that complies with guidelines provided by the Secretary of State pursuant to Government Code section 12236, that classifies all of the district's records by category, and that establishes a standard protocol for destruction or disposition of records.
Data storage required	No
Board resolution required	Yes (legislative body of district)
Remarks	Records required by statute excepted (i.e. not expressly required by law)

10. Special district records	
Responsible department	Special districts
Code section	Government Code sections 60203 and 26205
Retention period	None
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes (legislative body of district)
Remarks	Establishes conditions for data storage

11. Receipt and disbursement reports	
Responsible department	Treasurer/Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 27061
Retention period	Not specified
Data storage required	Not specified
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Requirements for settling accounts relating to the collection, care, and disbursements of public revenues of whatsoever nature and kind.

F.06 Rolls, Tax

12. Tax rolls, generally	
Responsible department	Tax Collector
Code section	Government Code sections 26908 and 26205
Retention period	Two years
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	Per Government Code section 26908, photographic record of the tax roll must be made prior to destruction and one copy must be permanently retained. Additional conditions are in Government Code section 26205.

13. Original secured and delinquent tax rolls	
Responsible department	Auditor/Tax Collector/Redemption Officer
Code section	Revenue and Taxation Code section 4377 and Government Code section 26205
Retention period	None
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	Prior to destruction, the abstract list must be certified as correct and complete by the county auditor and a certified permanent record is prepared on a substitute media that will be retained for at least 12 years from the date of the creation of the original document.

14. Unsecured tax rolls	
Responsible department	Tax Collector
Code section	Revenue and Taxation Code section 2928
Retention period	None
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Yes
Remarks	Prior to destruction, the abstract list or delinquent roll must be certified as correct and complete by the county auditor and a certified permanent record is prepared on a substitute media that will be retained for at least five years from the date of the creation of the original document.

Sheets, Layout

F.07 Statements

15. Statements of cash in treasury	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code sections 26920 and 26922
Retention period	Original: permanent; Duplicate: one quarter
Data storage required	Yes.
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Permanent copies of both the quarterly and annual audit reports are filed with the Clerk. Auditor responsible for posting and maintaining separate copies of both reports in their office for at least one quarter.

Statements of Fees

F.08 Warrants (Also Refer to F.04, Permits, Deposit)

16. County school, special district claims, warrants, warrant vouchers	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 26907(a)
Retention period	Five Years
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	The original document may be destroyed so long as the original document has been photographed, microphotographed, electronically recorded, or reproduced on any other medium that does not permit additions, deletions, or changes to the original document, and the copy is held for the length of the retention period.

17. Warrants index or register	
Responsible department	Auditor
Code section	Government Code section 26907(b)
Retention period	Five years
Data storage required	Yes
Board resolution required	Not specified
Remarks	Auditor may make a photographic record of an index or warrant register and may provide for their destruction. Any index or warrant register over five years old may be destroyed without being photographically or microphotographically reproduced.

F.09 Records Retention Schedule

The following Records Retention Schedule is an example only and is not intended to be authoritative or all-inclusive. However, the schedule does provide general retention guidelines that may be used by county auditor-controllers. Included in the schedule are retention periods as required by various code sections of the law or as recommended as “best practice” by the California State Association of County Auditors (CalSACA), Accounting Standards Committee (ASC), and subsequently approved by the Advisory Committee on County Accounting Procedures (Committee). Additionally, in the “Title” column of the subsequent schedule, the years indicated are an example only and each county needs to determine which years are applicable.

Due to the large number of California statutes with county record retention information, CalSACA ASC and the Committee decided to limit the listings in this section to retention codes impacting the county auditor-controller and treasurer-tax collector offices. Documents related to any current or ongoing litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues should be retained until the applicable matter has been resolved.

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Budget			
Board of Supervisors: Actions	Items acted upon by the board of supervisors and accompanying materials. Includes resolutions, agenda item transmittal reports, agenda item summary reports, and background materials.	FY + 1Y ¹	Official records retained by the board of supervisors.
Budgets: Final-from 1970	Informational copies of the final budgets for the county and special districts. Includes copies of budgets	Permanent ¹	One copy retained permanently for reference purposes. Other copies may be destroyed when obsolete. Official records retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors.
Budgets: Final through 1969	Final budgets and statistical reports for the county and special districts. Includes final budgets and statistical reports.	Permanent ¹	One copy retained permanently for reference purposes. If department no longer wants to retain records, they should be sent to county archives for permanent retention.
Budgets: Proposed	Recommended budget available for public review. Includes: recommended budget and back-up.	FY + 5Y ¹	Official records of recommended budget retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors.
“Best Practice” retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Cost			
Cost Plan: Audited	Back up for cost plan and duplicate worksheets. Includes: audited cost plan and worksheets.	After audit settled + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins on the date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan.
Cost Plan: Charges	Support services billings for non-general fund departments. Includes journal vouchers and receipts.	After audit settled + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins on the date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan.
Cost Plan: Equipment and building use	Cost plan back-up. Includes special capital asset report.	After audit settled + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins on the date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan.

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Cost (Continued)			
Cost Plan: Formal plan	All information sent to the state. Includes costs plans, and exhibits.	After audit settled + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins the on date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan.
Cost Plan: Working papers	Back-up for cost plan and duplicate reports. Includes quarterly cost comparison, insurance losses, property insurance breakdown, DP cost, time sheets, expenditure and revenue ledger, labor distribution, etc.	After audit settled + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins on the date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan.
Cost Plan: State approval and approved exhibit	State approval and approved exhibit/summary	FY + 3Y ¹	<i>Handbook of Cost Plan Procedures for California Counties</i> , section 2180. Retention of documents until resolution of any litigation, claim, negotiation, or audit issues. Documents must be retained for three years. The three year period begins on the date the State Controller's Office receives the countywide cost allocation plan. (<u>Note</u> : the State Controller's Office retains the original state approval and approved exhibit permanently.)
"Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Financial			
Audit Reports	Financial statements and auditor's report for the county. Includes annual external county audit. Supplemental report to the annual external county audit. Supplemental report to the annual external audit of the county, as required for federal award programs. Includes single audit report.	FY + 5Y ¹	Official records kept by the clerk of the board of supervisors.
Audit Work papers	Work papers for financial statements and auditor's report for the county. Includes internal work papers (e.g. internal audit reports and internal audit workpapers, etc.) and correspondence.	FY+ 5Y ¹	
Capital Asset Records	Inventories of county-owned capital assets. Includes department inventories, work papers, and related computer reports. Also known as certified property account and capital asset inventories. The records of property and equipment acquired with the support of federal funds must be retained for three years after the final disposition.	FY+ 5Y	Government Code section 24051 permits the destruction of annual inventories of county property after five years. At least one annual inventory must be performed within each three year period.
Land, Buildings and Improvements Values	Historical costs for land, buildings and improvements for use in financial reports. Includes lists of costs.	FY+ 5Y ¹	May be maintained in original form or in machine-readable format within any secure electronic data storage device.
"Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — General			
1099's	To record and report vendor amounts to the federal government; also known as information returns.	FY + 5Y ¹	
General Ledger	Alternate media	Permanent ¹	If department no longer wants to retain records, they should be sent to county archives for permanent retention.
Appropriation Transfers	Transfers of unanticipated revenues, appropriation contingencies, unassigned fund balances, and other transfers.	FY + 5Y ¹	
Claims	Claims and invoices for materials and services. Includes transfers, other billings, purchase orders, vendor lists, forms, and purges.	FY + 5Y	Government Code section 26907 permits the destruction of records after five years.
Contracts	Contracts used as back-up for payment or encumbrance.	Expiration of contract + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after expiration or termination of contract. Official records retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors, purchasing agent, or the originating department.
Journal Vouchers	Documents used to enter postings to the general ledger that are not automatically generated by the accounting system.	FY + 5Y ¹	Save original or transfer to alternate media.
Treasurer's Disbursement Report	Monthly report used to balance outstanding warrants.	FY + 5Y ¹	Official records retained by the treasurer.
Treasurer's Monthly Cash Count	Report used to count and balance the treasurer's cash count.	FY + 1Y ¹	Official records retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors. For work papers, refer to the Treasurer's monthly inventory and/or monthly cash reports.
Accounting — General (Continued)			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Warrant Registers	Listing of warrants issued by the county for claims.	FY + 5Y	Government Code section 26907 permits destruction of records after five years.
Warrants: Schools	Auditor's copy of warrants issued by the superintendent of schools.	FY + 5Y	Government Code section 26907 permits destruction of records after five years.
Warrants: Stale-dated	Records used to cancel warrants with stale dates for reconciliation with outstanding warrants.	FY + 5Y	Government Code section 26907 permits the destruction of records after five years.
Warrants: Stop payments	Documents needed to stop payment of warrants. Includes affidavits of lost warrants, stop payment notices and notices to rescind.	FY + 5Y ¹	Government Code section 26907 permits the destruction of records after five years.
"Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Long-Term Debt			
Leases (including short-term leases)	Information on all leases (including short-term leases) needed to keep track of payments on outstanding leases.	After final payment + 5Y ¹	After final payment. Official records retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors.
Long-term Loans	Records of long-term loans.	After final payment + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after final payment.
Mandated Cost Claims	Claims for reimbursement of state mandated costs. Includes claim and back up information. Filed numerically by chapter number.	10 Years or three years after final payment unless audit exceptions are not yet resolved ¹	Requires less retention; however, a longer period is recommended due to state funding practices. Government Code section 17558.5(a).
"Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounting — Revenue			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Accounts Receivable	Material used to invoice billings by the auditor's office for services to other departments and agencies, state tax refunds, and any reimbursable costs. Costs due the county through the auditor's office.	After final payment + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after the close of the fiscal year in which the final payment is made.
Annual Reports of Financial Transactions	Various annual financial reports for county offices and special districts prepared by the auditor-controller's office in accordance with Government Code sections 26909 and 53891.	FY + 5Y ¹	Copy is sent to the State Controller's Office.
"Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Payroll			
Payroll Records (Auditor-Controller's Office)	All records used to support payroll transactions not otherwise listed in the schedule.	CAL ² + 5Y ¹	
Employee Year-end List	Year-end cumulative employee list. Includes department, section, job class, and pay rate. Microfiche and alternate media.	CAL ² + 40Y ¹	
Employee's Earning Record	Year-end record of employee's net pay showing gross pay minus deductions. Microfiche and alternate media.	CAL ² + 40Y ¹	
Garnishments and Wage Attachments	Attachments against wages. Includes garnishments from different sources, attachments, and court orders.	After final payment + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after the close of the calendar year in which the final payment is made.
Payroll Masters Year-end Report	Records all; yearly payroll activity for all county departments. Includes sick leave, vacation, and accrued compensation hours. Microfiche or alternative media.	CAL ² + 40Y ¹	
Personnel Files	File on permanent and extra help employee's personnel activities. Includes job application, loyalty oaths, performance evaluations, disciplinary actions, personnel forms such as Change of Status (COS) and Notice of Employment (NOE), correspondence, and training records.	Termination of employee + 7Y ¹	Official records retained by departments for seven years after separation of employee. If employee transfers to another department, the complete personnel file will also be transferred to the new department.

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Payroll (Continued)			
Personnel Forms	Personnel forms used to record new employees, separations and salary or withholding changes. Includes: Notice of Employments (NOE) and Change of Status (COS). File by pay date.	CAL ^{1,2}	Official records retained in the departmental personal folder. Official records of withholding kept by the auditor-controller.
Payroll Tax Reports	Records used to report federal and state quarterly and annual meetings and taxes withheld.	CAL ² + 15Y ¹	
W2 Forms: Employer's Copies	Employer's copies of W2 forms used to report employee's income to the state and federal governments. Includes completed W2 forms and balancing worksheets. Filled alphabetically by individual. Also known as audit of W2s.	CAL ² + 15Y	The IRS permits destruction of W2 forms four years after the date the tax is due or has been paid, whichever is later. For more information refer to the IRS website at: https://www.irs.gov/publications
Warrant Registers: Payroll Revolving	Listing of payroll warrants issued by the county. Microfiche or alternate media.	CAL ² + 15Y	Government Code section 26907 permits destruction of warrant registers after five years. Stored at off-site vault. Official Record.
Workers' Compensation	Files used to maintain records of payments from the payment system for workers' compensation. See Labor Code section 4850.	After close + 15Y ¹	Destroy records 15 years after last transaction.
¹ "Best Practice" retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			
² End of Current Calendar Year (December 31)			

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Taxes			
Apportionment of State Allocations	Apportionment of the county share of state subventions and reimbursements. Processes by the count from magnetic tape or computer printouts received from the state. Includes journal vouchers, computer printouts.	FY + 5Y ¹	Maintain in hard copy or electronically until audited and cleared without exception by the State Controller's Office.
Bond Records	Informational material on bond elections and authorizations. Includes resolutions and, certifications from the elections department, bonding attorney, and the auditor-controller. Filed alphabetically, then by date.	After final bond payment + 5Y ¹	
Bond Registers	Register of bonds sold. Includes principal and interest. Filed alphabetically, then by date.	After final bond payment + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after final payment. Official records retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors.
LAFCO correspondence and TRAs	Information needed to update the tax rate area code assignments, property tax exchange chart, and changes to the allocation of annual growth agreements related to property tax apportionments.	Superseded or obsolete + 5Y ¹	
Paying Agent: Agreements	Back-up authority for payments to paying agent for bonds, coupons, and costs. Includes agreements and board of supervisors resolutions.	Superseded or obsolete + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after superseded or obsolete. Official record retained by the clerk of the board of supervisors.

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Taxes (Continued)			
Paying Agent: Certificates	Paying agent and coupon destruction certificates. Includes certificates.	After final payment + 5Y	Government Code section 26907.1 allows destruction of records five years after bonds or coupons have been paid or canceled.
Paying Agent: Statements	Statement of accounts for each bond fund. Back- up for payments received by paying agent. Includes payments to bond and coupon holders and balances for each bank account.	FY + 2Y ¹	
Property Tax Administration Fees	Records and calculations used to apportion and charge agencies for annual property tax administration fees.	Until audited and cleared without exception by the State Controller's Office ¹	Government Code section 12468 audit schedule
Redevelopment Agencies	Back-up for tax roll entries and allocations. Includes adopted plan, annual tax increment, agreements base year values, maps, and resolutions in hard copy of or electronic format. Filed chronologically by agency.	Superseded or obsolete + 5Y ¹	Destroy records five years after record is superseded or obsolete.
School Bonds	Documents and electronic files used to calculate annual tax rates and allocations for school bonds.	Until year of maturity is audited and clears audit without exception by the State Controller's Office. ¹	

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Taxes (Continued)			
State Tax Reports	Tax information reports to state agencies as required by various state code sections. Includes reports to State Controller, State Board of Education, Chancellor of Community Colleges, State Board of Equalization, and California municipal statistics.	FY + 5Y ¹	Retain original or on alternate media.
Tax Rate Booklet	Information taken from the tax rate computer printout. Includes the booklet.	Permanent ¹	One copy is kept permanently. Duplicate bound copies or a master printout are kept for four years after the close of the fiscal year.
TRAs and Tax Rates Back-up	Information needed to set the annual tax rate and to create the tax roll files. Includes tax code area and fund masters, tax rates, calculations, resolutions to set rate rates, and work papers.	FY + 2Y, or until audited and cleared without exception by the State Controller's Office. ¹	Information may be original or on alternate media.
Tax Rolls: Secured, Supplemental and Delinquent	Records used to create annual tax billing roll, print tax bills, process tax roll changes, apportion collections and refunds, and maintain balance of tax rolls. Includes reports. File chronologically by activity.	FY + 2Y	Revenue and Tax, Code section 109.5 allows machine prepared rolls to be displayed on alternate media.
Tax Rolls: Secured, Supplemental and Delinquent	Tax rolls, hardcopy of substitute media.	FY + 2Y	Revenue and Tax Code section 4377 permits destruction of records after 12 years.

Title	Description	Retention Period	Remarks
Taxes (Continued)			
Tax Rolls: Unsecured	Records used to create annual tax billing roll, print tax bills, process tax roll changes, apportion collections and refunds, and maintain balance of tax rolls. Includes tax roll, including changes, apportionment collections refunds, and balances.	FY + 5Y	Revenue and Tax Code section 109.5 allows machine-prepared rolls to be displayed on alternate media. Revenue and Tax Code section 2928 permits destruction of the tax roll after five years.
¹ “Best Practice” retention period as recommended by CalSACA ASC and approved by the Committee.			

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Acknowledgements

State of California
Office of the State Controller

Local Government Programs and Services Division

Local Government Policy Unit
Publication Team

The Local Government Programs and Services Division values and appreciates the support and ongoing contributions of the following organizations:

Advisory Committee on County Accounting Procedures
State Association of County Auditors Accounting Standards Committee

The Local Government Programs and Services Division would also like to acknowledge the tremendous efforts of the working group(s) that collaborated and produced the foundations for the current guidance:

County Auditor-Controllers
State Association of County Auditors Policy and Interpretation Committee

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

California State Controller's Office
Local Government Programs and Services Division
Local Government Policy Unit
P.O. Box 942850
Sacramento, CA 94250

If you have any questions please contact the Local Government Policy Unit:

LocalGovPolicy@sco.ca.gov

